







Longitude West 15 from Washington

1
A HISTORY

OF

7446
915
THE UNITED STATES

FOR SCHOOLS

WITH AN INTRODUCTORY HISTORY OF THE DISCOVERY AND ENGLISH COLONIZATION
OF NORTH AMERICA

WITH MAPS, PLANS, ILLUSTRATIONS, AND QUESTIONS

BY

ALEXANDER JOHNSTON, LL.D.

Author of a "History of American Politics," Professor in Princeton College



NEW YORK

HENRY HOLT AND COMPANY

1894

BY THE SAME AUTHOR.

HISTORY OF AMERICAN POLITICS. Third Edition, Enlarged. Revised by WILLIAM M. SLOANE, Ph.D., L.H.D. New York : HENRY HOLT & Co. 10mo, pp. 355.

HISTORY OF THE UNITED STATES. For Schools. With an Introductory History of the Discovery and English Colonization of North America. With Maps, Plans, Illustrations, and Questions. New York : HENRY HOLT & Co. 12mo, pp. 473.

A SHORTER HISTORY OF THE UNITED STATES. For Schools. With an Introductory History of the Discovery and English Colonization of North America. With Maps, Plans, and References to Supplementary Reading. New York : HENRY HOLT & Co. 12mo, pp. 340.

AMERICAN ORATIONS. FROM THE COLONIAL PERIOD TO THE PRESENT TIME. Selected as specimens of eloquence, and with special reference to their value in throwing light upon the more important epochs and issues of American History. Edited, with introductions and notes, by ALEXANDER JOHNSTON. New York : G. P. PUTNAM'S SONS. Three volumes, 16mo.

COPYRIGHT, 1885, 1894,

BY

HENRY HOLT & CO.

PREFACE.

So many school histories of the United States are already in existence, and their preparation has been so excellent in the details of idea and execution, that some apology seems to be needed for this addition to their number. The apology will be found, it is hoped, in the special purpose with which this book has been written.

It is submitted that the designs which have usually controlled our school histories are impossible of fulfilment, and, even if possible, would not serve the most useful purpose. There are already in existence books in abundance which tell stories in the manner most attractive to pupils at the most imaginative period of life; and the pupil's mind, if properly directed by the teacher, will turn to them naturally and derive more satisfaction and instruction from them than can be gained from any school history of usable compass. It hardly seems wise for a school history to force itself into a hopeless competition in a field which has already been so fully pre-empted. History is a task and a method of mental discipline; our school histories attempt to relieve it, as no one attempts to relieve grammar or arithmetic, by story-telling. One result has been that the history of the comparatively unimportant colonial period has been assigned an inordinately large space. So much room is given to the stories of Smith and Pocahontas, Putnam and the wolf, and similar episodes, that the real history of the United States is cramped, marred, and brought to a lame and impotent conclusion. Judging from the space usually assigned to each, a reader must conclude that the history of the United States deserves a much larger

treatment for the time when the United States did not exist than for the time of its prominence as a nation—for a time when the population was but 200,000 than for the time when the population was 50,000,000.

The reason generally advanced for the transfer of the stirring stories of the past out of the reading book or general reading into the school histories is that they stimulate the minds of pupils to an emulation of the great deeds which are narrated. In isolated cases the reason may be valid; there may have been cases in which the mind of some pupil has been thus stimulated with useful effect. But the mass of pupils have no opportunity to exhibit any such result; their need is to learn from the history of the past how best to perform the simple and homely duties of good citizenship. Very few of the boys in our schools will ever have an opportunity to exhibit, in the foundation of a colony, the patient virtues of the Pilgrim Fathers or the executive ability of John Smith; almost every one of them will soon be called upon to give his conclusion by vote upon questions which involve some understanding of the political, financial, or economic problems of the past. It seems unfair, as well as unwise, to disregard the needs of the great mass in favor of the desires of the very few, especially as the latter will be certain to gratify their desires in a more natural way elsewhere.

In the ordinary school course, no place can well be made for treatises on the duties of citizenship, on political economy, or on finance. Even if they could be introduced, their most valuable portions would consist of deductions from the *events* recorded in a history such as this. The effort to inculcate the lesson with the facts, if applied to the usual school history, would make it hopelessly bulky. Something must be dropped; and it seems unwise to retain the stories where they conflict with far more important matters whose omission the ordinary school course will never supply. The typical school-boy must get his political, economic, and financial education from his school history of the United States, if he is to get it at all.

The design of this book, then, is not simply to detail the events which make up the history of the United States, but to group those events which seem likely to shed light on the responsibilities of the citizen to the present or future, and to give the student the light in connection with the event. In this process the effort has

been made, with caution and with a studied simplicity of language, to interest the pupil in the wonderful development of the United States and the difficult economic problems which have grown out of it. If, in so doing, the peculiar province of the story-writer has been abandoned, the abandonment does not seem to the writer a real sacrifice. Wherever further compression has been necessary, it has been applied at the beginning, at the time when there was no "United States," with the design of giving as much space as possible to our *national* history. And in every place where it has seemed possible, the attention of the pupil has been directed to the peculiar circumstances and limitations of the time under consideration, and to the idea of growth to be attained by a comparison with the present. For much the same reasons, other topics, not essential to the main subject, such as the tribal institutions of the aborigines, and the Spanish conquests of Mexico and Peru, have been left untouched. And, in narrating the wars of the United States, while the effort has been made to give the pupil a definite idea of the purposes, plans, and results of campaigns, it has not seemed best to cumber the narration with a catalogue of engagements and commanders, whose very names are only a spring of confusion to the mind of the pupil.

As the book is not intended to be a story-book, so it is not intended to be a picture-book. Maps in abundance seem to the author the only legitimate embellishment of a school history. While the pictures in this volume have been restricted to illustrations of such persons and things as are pertinent to the text, they have been introduced with regret, and only as a yielding to the present prejudice which denies an effective audience to the school history not so illustrated. It is to be hoped that the time will soon come when the space now surrendered to the graphic additions of the average school-boy's pencil will be utilized to better purpose.

The special features of treatment in the volume are grouped in the "Suggestions to Teachers," which follow, and the attention of those interested is invited to them.

The commanding position already attained by the United States, which can only become more overshadowing in the future, has made it evident that the future American citizen must be taught to think more of the responsibilities of the present than of the picturesque events of the past. The enormous political edifice which

has appeared in central North America is rising with such increasing swiftness that every good citizen must feel a sense of personal responsibility for its continuance and good management. This volume is an attempt to lead American youth to be "good citizens," in this sense of the phrase; and, whatever defects of execution it may show, the writer is confident that the spirit of the attempt will have the sympathy of every friend of education.

PRINCETON, N. J., June 1, 1885.

SUGGESTIONS TO TEACHERS.

I. GEOGRAPHY has been applied to the history by the introduction of questions on the locations of the places referred to in the text. These have been placed at the end, instead of at the beginning, of the chapters, merely because most teachers prefer them in that position. They may be used at the end, at the beginning, or in connection with the text, according to the teacher's preference.

II. MAPS have been supplied, the author hopes, in abundance. The general map contains most of the geographical names referred to in the text. In addition, the small maps will furnish the special locations called for by the chapter. But, in all cases, the school atlas is a better aid to recitation than any maps which a history can offer. It is recommended that the pupil be allowed and directed to keep his school atlas open before him during recitations, and to answer geographical questions from it. This is no more than is done by adults in *reading* history. This note will explain the occasional introduction of questions, such as the location of Geneva, Switzerland, which can only be answered from a school atlas.

III. GEOGRAPHICAL GROUPS. — The text itself has been arranged, as far as possible, with careful attention to geographical unity. In the narrative of the Revolution, for example, the operations in each geographical section have been kept distinct and complete in themselves, with only the suggestion, by cross-references, of the connecting links which show the unity of the whole conflict.

IV. CHRONOLOGY has been treated as subordinate, in the text, to the greater importance of geographical unity. It has not seemed proper to sacrifice it altogether; and an exact chronological summary has therefore been added to each chapter. Geog-

raphy and chronology, "the two eyes of history," have thus been given, it is hoped, their due and proper places.

V. TWO SIZES OF TYPE have been used throughout the book. The matter in larger type is itself a complete work. The smaller type is not intended necessarily for recitation, but for reading, for reference, or for comment and amplification by the teacher. The plan of the work requires the introduction of a considerable amount of statistics. As a general thing these have been introduced in the finer type only. Where it has seemed necessary to introduce them in the coarser type, it is recommended that only round numbers be called for. To many pupils, their school history remains in after-life their chief book of reference on the subject. For this reason, it has been necessary to introduce more exact figures than should be demanded in recitation.

VI. CROSS-REFERENCES are, as teachers know, one of the most essential features of historical study. Under the current systems it is impossible to induce the average pupil to use them, for they are placed in foot-notes, and expressed in language which requires a technical mode of thought to comprehend. The new feature of this book is that its sections are numbered consecutively from beginning to end, from § 1 to § 953. It is thus easy to introduce the cross-references, in parentheses, into the body of the text, where the pupil cannot fail to see them and can comprehend them with a single and very slight mental effort. Cross-references are therefore profuse in this book. It is hoped that the teacher will make constant use of them, for they are in themselves the best of reviews.

VII. STATE HISTORIES, in brief summary, have been given for all the new States. No pupil is expected to recite on any of them except that of his own State. This will explain the absence of questions for these portions of the work.

VIII. QUESTIONS are given at the foot of the page, except in the cases of the State histories just mentioned, and in some of the notes in fine print which are evidently only explanatory.

IX. CATCH-WORDS, covering the general topic under treatment, are printed in heavy type at the beginning of each section. It is recommended that, for each recitation, the pupil be required to write in order the catch-words of all the sections of the lesson, and that his list be used by him in following the recitation throughout. It is well, occasionally and without previous notice, to con-

duct the recitation *entirely* from these lists, the teacher doing nothing more than call up successive pupils for recitation, and each reciting from the catch-word of the section under consideration.

X. Under all circumstances, it must be remembered that no school history can do anything more than provide the skeleton, which the teacher must direct the pupil in clothing with flesh and blood. A book which promises or attempts to do the teacher's work for him is a predestined failure and disappointment. The very best that can be hoped for a work of this kind is that it may add a percentage to the efficiency of the teacher's work. If that purpose has been attained, the author will feel under personal and professional obligations to teachers who direct his attention to defects or difficulties in execution.

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

INTRODUCTION.

DISCOVERY AND COLONIZATION.

	PAGE
PERIOD I.—Discovery.....	1
PERIOD II.—Settlement.....	12
PERIOD III.—Colonization to 1750.....	21
The English Colonies in general....	21
Massachusetts Bay Colony.....	25
New Hampshire.....	31
Connecticut.....	32
Rhode Island.....	35
Vermont.....	37
New England in general.....	37
Virginia.....	42
Maryland.....	47
North Carolina.....	49
South Carolina.....	52
Georgia.....	54
The Southern Colonies in general.....	56
New York.....	57
New Jersey.....	61
Pennsylvania.....	62
Delaware.....	64
The Colonies in general.....	65
PERIOD IV.—Colonial History, 1750-63.....	68
French Settlement.....	68
French and Indian War.....	72
State of the Colonies in 1763.....	79
PERIOD V.—Colonial Resistance, 1763-75.....	82
The Stamp Act and Tea Tax.....	83
Lexington and Concord.....	91
State of the Colonies, 1775.....	95

HISTORY OF THE UNITED STATES.

CHAPTER I.—THE REVOLUTION: 1775–83.

	PAGE
The Rise of the Republic.....	97
Events at Boston.....	98
Events in Canada.....	102
Events in England and on the Coast.....	103
Independence.....	104
Events in the Middle States, 1776–8.....	106
Burgoyne's Expedition, 1777.....	111
Aid from France, 1778.....	114
Events in the North, 1778–83.....	116
Events on the Ocean, 1776–83.....	122
Events in the South, 1778–81.....	124
Yorktown, 1781.....	130
Peace, 1783.....	133

CHAPTER II.—THE CONFEDERATION: 1781–9.

Failure of the Confederation	136
Formation of the Constitution	140
State of the Country, 1789.....	144

CHAPTER III.—WASHINGTON'S ADMINISTRATIONS: 1789–97.

Washington's Administrations.....	148
-----------------------------------	-----

CHAPTER IV.—JOHN ADAMS'S ADMINISTRATION: 1797–1801.

John Adams's Administration.....	161
----------------------------------	-----

CHAPTER V.—JEFFERSON'S ADMINISTRATIONS: 1801–9.

Jefferson's Administrations.....	166
Domestic Affairs.....	167
Foreign Affairs.....	170

CHAPTER VI.—MADISON'S ADMINISTRATIONS: 1809–17.

Madison's Administrations.....	174
Declaration of War against Great Britain.....	174
State of the Country, 1812.....	175
Failures in the North, 1812–14.....	177
Successes on the Ocean.....	181
Successes on the Lakes.....	186
Disasters on the Atlantic Coast.....	189
Dissatisfaction at Home.....	191

	PAGE
Successes in the North, 1814.....	192
Successes in the Southwest, 1813-15.....	194
Peace.....	196
Internal Affairs.....	197

CHAPTER VII.—MONROE'S ADMINISTRATIONS. 1817-25.

Monroe's Administrations.....	201
-------------------------------	-----

CHAPTER VIII.—J. Q. ADAMS'S ADMINISTRATION: 1825-9.

John Quincy Adams's Administration.....	209
---	-----

CHAPTER IX.—JACKSON'S ADMINISTRATIONS: 1829-37.

Jackson's Administrations.....	214
Internal Affairs.....	214
Political Affairs.....	225

CHAPTER X.—VAN BUREN'S ADMINISTRATION: 1837-41.

Van Buren's Administration.....	233
---------------------------------	-----

CHAPTER XI.—HARRISON'S AND TYLER'S ADMINISTRATION:
1841-5.

Harrison's and Tyler's Administration.....	239
--	-----

CHAPTER XII.—POLK'S ADMINISTRATION: 1845-9.

Polk's Administration.....	247
Internal Affairs.....	247
War with Mexico, 1846.....	251
Operations on the Pacific Coast, 1846-7.....	253
Operations in Northern Mexico, 1846-7.....	254
Operations in Central Mexico, 1847.....	256
Peace, 1848.....	259

CHAPTER XIII.—TAYLOR'S AND FILLMORE'S ADMINISTRATION:
1849-53.

Taylor's and Fillmore's Administration....	264
--	-----

CHAPTER XIV.—PIERCE'S ADMINISTRATION: 1853-7.

Pierce's Administration.....	271
Internal Affairs.....	271
Foreign Affairs.....	272
Slavery and Politics.....	274

CHAPTER XV.—BUCHANAN'S ADMINISTRATION: 1857-61.

	PAGE
Buchanan's Administration.....	280
Internal Affairs.....	280
Slavery and Politics.....	286
Sectional Division.....	289
Secession.....	292

CHAPTER XVI.—LINCOLN'S ADMINISTRATION: 1861-5.

Lincoln's Administration.....	297
Events of 1861.....	297
Events of 1862.....	307
In the West.....	307
On the Coast.....	313
In the East.....	317
Internal Affairs.....	323
Foreign Affairs.....	324
Events of 1863.....	326
In the East.....	326
In the West.....	323
On the Coast.....	334
Internal Affairs.....	335
Foreign Affairs.....	337
Events of 1864.....	338
In the East.....	339
In the West.....	344
On the Coast.....	348
On the Ocean.....	350
Internal Affairs.....	351
Events of 1865; Conclusion of the War.....	353
Death of President Lincoln.....	357
Military Summary of the War.....	359

CHAPTER XVII.—JOHNSON'S ADMINISTRATION: 1865-9.

Johnson's Administration.....	365
Internal Affairs.....	365
Reconstruction.....	367
Impeachment.....	372

CHAPTER XVIII.—GRANT'S ADMINISTRATIONS: 1869-77.

Grant's Administrations.....	375
Foreign Affairs.....	375
Internal Affairs.....	377
The End of Reconstruction.....	380
Political Affairs.....	382

CHAPTER XIX.—HAYES'S ADMINISTRATION: 1877-81.

	PAGE
Hayes's Administration.....	387
Internal Affairs.....	387
Financial Affairs.....	389
Foreign Affairs.....	391
Political Affairs.....	391

CHAPTER XX.—GARFIELD'S, ARTHUR'S, AND CLEVELAND'S
ADMINISTRATIONS: 1881-5.

Garfield's and Arthur's Administrations.....	393
--	-----

CHAPTER XXI.—CLEVELAND'S ADMINISTRATION: 1885-9.

Cleveland's Administration.....	398
---------------------------------	-----

CHAPTER XXII.—HARRISON'S ADMINISTRATION: 1889-93.

Harrison's Administration.....	403
--------------------------------	-----

CHAPTER XXIII.—GENERAL SUMMARY.

General Summary.....	412
State of the Country, 1885.....	413
Causes of Growth.....	419
The Future.....	422

APPENDIX I.—THE DECLARATION OF INDEPENDENCE.....	425
--	-----

APPENDIX II.—THE CONSTITUTION OF THE UNITED STATES (with Questions).....	429
---	-----

APPENDIX III.—FORMATION OF THE STATES.....	445
--	-----

APPENDIX IV.—GROWTH OF THE STATES.....	446
--	-----

APPENDIX V.—GROWTH OF THE CITIES.....	448
---------------------------------------	-----

APPENDIX VI.—WASHINGTON'S FAREWELL ADDRESS (Extracts)..	449
---	-----

INDEX.....	459
------------	-----

NOTE ON THE MAPS.

In the historical maps, the colors show the political divisions at the time the map refers to; but to aid in impressing these on the memory, other political divisions and prominent facts that may not strictly belong to the time, are sometimes indicated in black.

M A P S .

 See note on opposite page.

COLORED.

	FACING PAGE
THE UNITED STATES IN 1891,	<i>Frontispiece.</i>
EUROPEAN PROVINCES, 1655,	20
BRITISH CESSIONS TO 1732,	67
THE UNITED STATES AT THE PEACE OF 1783,	133
THE UNITED STATES, SHOWING ACQUISITION OF TERRITORY,	167
THE UNITED STATES IN 1830,	218
THE AREAS OF SECESSION,	293

UNCOLORED.

	PAGE
NORTH AND CENTRAL AMERICA,	2
THE WORLD AS KNOWN IN 1490,	4
TRACK OF COLUMBUS,	6
ATLANTIC DISCOVERIES,	7
DE SOTO'S EXPEDITION,	9
PACIFIC DISCOVERIES,	10
ATLANTIC SETTLEMENTS,	12
MASSACHUSETTS BAY COLONY,	30
NEW HAMPSHIRE COLONY,	32
CONNECTICUT COLONY,	34
RHODE ISLAND COLONY,	36
EARLY FRENCH WARS,	41
VIRGINIA COLONY,	46
CAROLINA,	51

	PAGE
THE MIDDLE COLONIES,	60
THE FRENCH WAR,	77
THE REVOLUTION IN NEW ENGLAND,	99
BATTLE OF BUNKER HILL,	100
THE REVOLUTION IN THE MIDDLE STATES,	106
BURGOYNE'S EXPEDITION,	112
THE BRITISH ISLES,	123
THE REVOLUTION IN THE SOUTHERN STATES,	125
THE YORKTOWN CAMPAIGN,	131
KENTUCKY AND TENNESSEE,	151
OHIO,	168
SEAT OF WAR IN THE NORTH,	178
WASHINGTON AND VICINITY,	191
NIAGARA FRONTIER,	193
SEAT OF WAR IN THE WEST,	194
ARKANSAS,	219
SEMINOLE WAR,	223
OPERATIONS IN NORTHEASTERN MEXICO,	252
SCOTT'S MARCH TO MEXICO,	257
OPERATIONS IN VIRGINIA,	302
OPERATIONS IN THE WEST,	309
OPERATIONS IN THE EAST,	318
THE SEVEN DAYS' BATTLES,	320
OPERATIONS IN THE EAST,	326
THE VICKSBURG CAMPAIGN,	329
OPERATIONS IN THE SOUTHEAST,	331
OPERATIONS IN THE EAST,	340
OPERATIONS IN THE SOUTHEAST,	345
OPERATIONS IN VIRGINIA,	354

ARMS AND FLAGS OF THE UNITED STATES,	410
--	-----

ILLUSTRATIONS.

	PAGE		PAGE
OLD MILL AT NEWPORT	3	PATRICK HENRY.....	84
CHRISTOPHER COLUMBUS.....	5	GEORGE III.	85
SIR WALTER RALEIGH.....	14	JOHN HANCOCK.....	87
HENRY HUDSON.....	16	THE MINUTE-MAN.....	91
CAVALIER AND PURITAN.....	18	CARPENTER'S HALL.....	98
SHIPS, SHOWING THEIR CHARACTER- ISTICS AND RELATIVE SIZES	25	UNION FLAG.	101
SEAL OF MASSACHUSETTS.....	26	RATTLESNAKE FLAG.....	101
PLYMOUTH ROCK.....	27	PHILIP SCHUYLER.....	102
GOVERNOR JOHN WINTHROP	28	LIBERTY BELL.....	105
SITE OF BOSTON IN 1620.....	29	MARQUIS DE LA FAYETTE.....	109
SEAL OF NEW HAMPSHIRE	31	GEN. JOHN BURGoyNE.....	111
SEAL OF CONNECTICUT	32	HORATIO GATES.....	113
CHARTER OAK.....	33	BENJAMIN FRANKLIN.....	115
SEAL OF RHODE ISLAND.....	35	PRISON-SHIP "JERSEY".....	117
SEAL OF VERMONT	37	CONTINENTAL MONEY.....	118
KING PHILIP.....	39	ANTHONY WAYNE.....	120
CAPTAIN JOHN SMITH.....	43	JOHN ANDRÉ.....	121
SEAL OF VIRGINIA.....	43	JOHN PAUL JONES.....	122
POCAHONTAS.....	44	NATHANIEL GREENE.....	127
SEAL OF MARYLAND.....	47	ALEXANDER HAMILTON	136
SEAL OF NORTH CAROLINA.....	50	STATE HOUSE AT ANNAPOLIS....	140
SEAL OF SOUTH CAROLINA.....	52	GEORGE WASHINGTON.....	149
SEAL OF GEORGIA.....	54	SEAL OF KENTUCKY.....	152
SEAL OF NEW YORK	57	SEAL OF TENNESSEE.....	152
PETER STUYVESANT ..	57	MOUNT VERNON.....	156
NEW YORK CITY IN 1664.....	59	FITCH'S STEAMBOAT.....	157
SEAL OF NEW JERSEY	61	CINCINNATI IN 1787 (Fort Washing- ton).....	158
SEAL OF PENNSYLVANIA.....	62	COTTON-GIN	159
WILLIAM PENN.....	62	JOHN ADAMS.....	161
SEAL OF DELAWARE	65	THE CAPITOL AT WASHINGTON.....	163
SAMUEL DE CHAMPLAIN.....	69	THOMAS JEFFERSON.....	166
WILLIAM PITT.....	75	SEAL OF OHIO	168
JAMES WOLFE.....	76	ROBERT FULTON.....	169
BRITISH STAMP ..	83	JAMES MADISON.....	174

	PAGE		PAGE
AMERICAN GUNBOAT.....	183	FRANKLIN PIERCE.....	271
JAMES LAWRENCE.....	184	JAMES BUCHANAN.....	280
OLIVER H. PERRY.....	188	SEAL OF MINNESOTA.....	281
THOMAS MACDONOUGH.....	189	SEAL OF OREGON.....	282
SEAL OF LOUISIANA.....	197	SEAL OF KANSAS.....	282
SEAL OF INDIANA.....	197	KING COTTON.....	286
JAMES MONROE.....	201	SECESSION HALL.....	292
SEAL OF MISSISSIPPI.....	202	SECESSION COCKADE.....	293
SEAL OF ILLINOIS.....	202	JEFFERSON DAVIS.....	294
SEAL OF ALABAMA.....	203	ALEXANDER H. STEPHENS.....	294
SEAL OF MAINE.....	203	ABRAHAM LINCOLN.....	298
SEAL OF MISSOURI.....	203	FORT SUMTER.....	299
JOHN QUINCY ADAMS.....	209	GEO. B. MCCLELLAN.....	303
ANDREW JACKSON.....	214	ULYSSES S. GRANT, IN 1863.....	307
EARLY RAILROAD TRAIN.....	215	ALBERT SIDNEY JOHNSTON.....	308
CHICAGO IN 1830 (Fort Dearborn)....	217	WESTERN GUNBOATS.....	311
SEAL OF ARKANSAS.....	218	CONFEDERATE RAM.....	312
SEAL OF MICHIGAN.....	219	JOHN ERICSSON.....	313
WILLIAM CULLEN BRYANT.....	220	THE MONITOR AND THE MERRIMAC..	314
J. FENIMORE COOPER.....	220	DAVID G. FARRAGUT.....	315
WASHINGTON IRVING.....	220	ROBERT E. LEE.....	317
HENRY W. LONGFELLOW.....	221	THOMAS JONATHAN JACKSON.....	317
NATHANIEL HAWTHORNE.....	221	AMBROSE E. BURNSIDE.....	322
EDGAR A. POE.....	221	THE ALABAMA.....	325
DANIEL WEBSTER.....	228	GEORGE E. MEADE.....	327
JOHN C. CALHOUN.....	228	LOOKOUT MOUNTAIN.....	333
HENRY CLAY.....	228	DRAFTING SOLDIERS.....	336
MARTIN VAN BUREN.....	233	SEAL OF VIRGINIA.....	337
WILLIAM HENRY HARRISON.....	239	W. T. SHERMAN.....	343
JOHN TYLER.....	239	JOSEPH E. JOHNSTON.....	344
SEAL OF FLORIDA.....	243	GEORGE H. THOMAS.....	346
SAMUEL F. B. MORSE.....	244	SEAL OF NEVADA.....	353
JAMES K. POLK.....	247	PHILIP H. SHERIDAN.....	355
THE HOE PRINTING MACHINE.....	248	SIGNATURES OF GRANT AND LEE....	356
ANCIENT HAND PRINTING PRESS.....	248	ANDREW JOHNSON.....	365
SEAL OF TEXAS.....	249	SEAL OF NEBRASKA.....	367
SEAL OF IOWA.....	250	EDWIN M. STANTON.....	373
SEAL OF WISCONSIN.....	250	ULYSSES S. GRANT, IN 1875.....	375
WINFIELD SCOTT.....	256	SEAL OF COLORADO.....	379
ZACHARY TAYLOR.....	264	R. B. HAYES.....	387
MILLARD FILLMORE.....	264	W. S. HANCOCK.....	292
SEAL OF CALIFORNIA.....	265	JAMES A. GARFIELD.....	393
CHARLES SUMNER.....	268	CHESTER A. ARTHUR.....	393
SALMON P. CHASE.....	268	GROVER CLEVELAND.....	398
WILLIAM H. SEWARD.....	268	BENJAMIN HARRISON.....	400

INTRODUCTORY.

DISCOVERY AND COLONIZATION.

PERIOD I.—DISCOVERY.

1. The United States of America cover the central portion of North America, from the Atlantic Ocean to the Pacific. Four hundred years ago this territory was unknown to men of the Eastern Hemisphere. Its lakes, rivers, and mountains were just as we know them now; and the face of the country has changed very little, except in the disappearance of the forests. But the great cities, the railroads, the telegraphs, and all the works of civilized man were lacking. The territory has been changed from a wilderness to one of the most powerful nations of the earth; and the story of this change is the history of the United States of America.

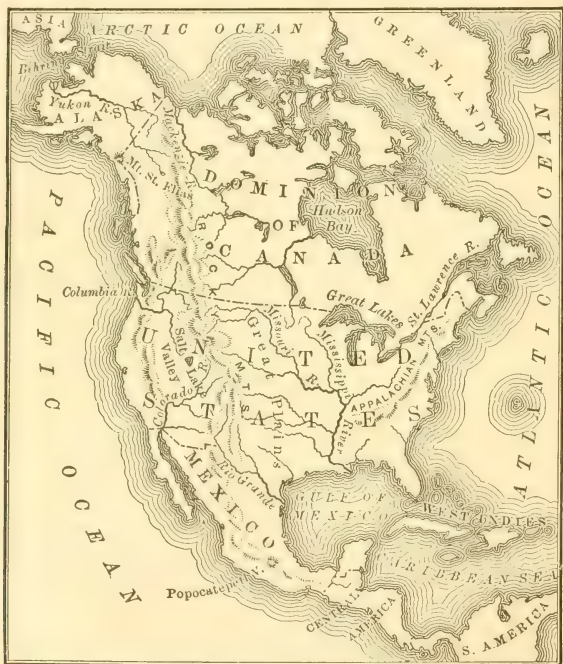
2. The Inhabitants were then altogether red men, whom we call Indians, Columbus having first so called them because he thought that he had struck the east coast of India. They built no cities, made no great inventions, knew nothing of books, and led a rude and wandering life, their chief business and pleasure being war and hunting, while their women worked in the fields. It is supposed that they came originally from eastern Asia, and that they drove out or destroyed another people whom they found already settled in America, a people whom we call the "mound-builders." Of this people we know little, except that the mounds of earth which they built for forts or temples are scattered through the Mississippi valley, and contain curious relics of their builders. Perhaps some of them fled far to the south, and there established the empires of Mexico and Peru, the only Indian coun-

1. In what part of the world are the United States? What was the condition of this territory four hundred years ago? How has it been changed since?

2. Who were then the inhabitants? From what part of the world did they come? What is said of the mound-builders? What may have become of them?

tries in which the European discoverers found cities, orderly governments, and attempts to make books.

3. The Indians have been gradually pushed back from the coast by the white settlers, until they are now almost all beyond the Mississippi, controlled and cared for by the Government of the United States. When America was discovered the Indians were divided into tribes, though there was no exact boundary-line between the countries of different tribes. The Indians of the Atlantic coast were generally Algonquins; the names



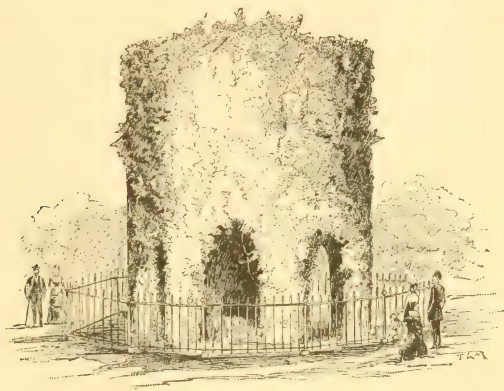
NORTH AND CENTRAL AMERICA.

of some of their tribes are preserved in our names of places, such as Narragansett, Massachusetts, and the Indian names of Maine. The Indians of the interior or Middle States were Iroquois; their strongest branch was a confederacy in New York, called the Six Nations, composed of the Mohawks, Oneidas, Onondagas, Cayugas, Senecas, and Tuscaroras (§ 99). On the other side of the Iroquois, along the Missis-

3. What has become of the Indians? How were they divided? What is said of the Indians of the Atlantic coast? Of the Middle States? Of the Mississippi? Of the south?

sippi, there were other Algonquins, some of whom, as the Shawnees, Peorias, Pottawatomies, Sacs, and Foxes, still survive in the Indian Territory across the Mississippi; while others, as the Illinois, are remembered only by names of places. The tribes of the south, Creeks, Cherokees, Chickasaws, and others, were kindred to the Iroquois. Their descendants are in the Indian Territory.

4. The Northmen, or people of Norway and Denmark, had pushed their way, about the year 1000, from Norway to Iceland, from Iceland to Greenland, from Greenland to the coast of North



OLD MILL AT NEWPORT.

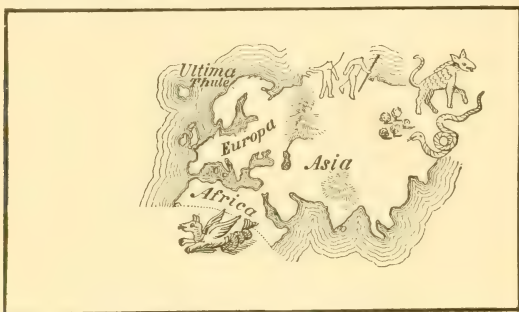
America, and so down the coast as far as Rhode Island, where some of them settled. It is believed by some that the "old mill," which still stands in Newport, Rhode Island, was built by them; but the story is unfounded. The Norse discoverers sent back descriptions of the new country; but their discoveries were little heard of, and were soon forgotten altogether, because printing had not yet been invented. Almost all men still believed that the earth was flat, and that it contained only Europe, with parts of Asia and Africa.

The figure given on next page is that of the earth as it was represented up to the time of Columbus's discovery. The monsters mark unknown regions.

5. Europe had advanced so far in civilization, about the year 1450, that its people were fitted to discover and conquer a new

4. How did the Northmen reach America? Where did some of them settle? What is said of the old mill at Newport? Was there any result from their discoveries? What was the common belief in Europe?

world. They had discovered the use of gunpowder, which made them superior to peoples who did not possess it; of the mariner's compass, which enabled them to sail out of sight of land, and thus discover new countries; and of printing by movable types, which made books abundant, and thus spread the news of discoveries. Many of them had come to believe that the earth was round, though nobody suspected that there was a great continent between western Europe and eastern Asia. Portuguese sailors were exploring the west coast of Africa, and one of them, in 1486, succeeded



THE WORLD AS KNOWN IN 1490.

in reaching the Cape of Good Hope. Everywhere men were beginning to think and talk of discovery; and the man who was to make the greatest of modern discoveries was already planning it.

6. Christopher Columbus, a sailor of Genoa, in Italy, had spent many years in exploration, and had come to the conclusion that the earth was round, and that he could reach the Indies, or eastern Asia, by sailing westward part of the distance around the world. He had no money to fit out ships, and when he asked for money from Genoa, Portugal, England, and Spain, they refused it. Finally Queen Isabella of Spain supplied him with money enough to fit out three small vessels. The largest of them would hardly be thought safe for a sea-voyage at present.

The discoverer's name was, in Italian, Cristoforo Colombo, and, in Spanish, Christoval Colon; Christopher Columbus is its form in Latin.

5. What is said of Europe in 1450? What discoveries had its people already made? What had many of them come to believe? What were Portuguese sailors doing?

6. What is said of Columbus? What conclusion had he come to? What difficulties did he meet? How were his ships finally fitted out?

7. Columbus's First Voyage began at Palos, in Spain (August 3, 1492). As far as the Canary Islands the way was well known. Thence he sailed out into the west on a way that no man had ever sailed before. His men became frightened and rebellious as the days passed by without the sight of land, but he induced them to press onward. On the morning of October 12, the sailors saw before them one of the Bahamas (Guanahani), to which Columbus gave the name of San Salvador. He had been the first to see a light from the island during the previous night. Sailing slowly south and southeast for several months, he explored the West Indies to their northeast corner. Then his little fleet spread its sails and returned to Europe, carrying specimens of unknown men and plants as proofs that a new world had been discovered.



CHRISTOPHER COLUMBUS.

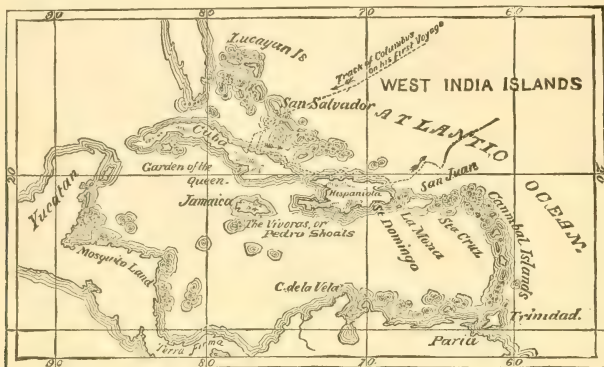
8. Columbus's Discovery caused a great excitement in Europe, as the printing-press scattered the news of it. Spanish ships, with soldiers and sailors, at once began to sail boldly westward, now that it was known that there was a new world and wealth across the Atlantic. Their adventures, particularly in Mexico and Peru, make up a wonderful and interesting story, but it does not fall within the limits of our history. Before many years had passed, Spain had conquered for herself nearly all South America and that part of North America which is now called Mexico. But the Spaniards paid little attention to the territory which now belongs to the United States, preferring countries where gold and silver were easily obtained.

9. Four Voyages in all were made by Columbus, but without any further great discovery. He was treated unkindly by Ferdinand, king of Spain, and on one occasion was sent home in chains by one of the king's officials. He never touched on the continent of North America,

7. Describe Columbus's first voyage. His difficulties with his men. His discovery. His explorations.

8. What were the results of Columbus's discovery? Where were the Spanish conquests made? Why were none made in central North America?

though on his third voyage, in 1498, he landed on the continent of South America, near the Orinoco River. He died without knowing that he had discovered a new world, but still supposing that he had only reached the East Indies. The world which he had discovered was not named for him. It was called America from Amerigo Vespucci (in Latin *Americus Vespucius*), a merchant and traveller of Florence, who



TRACK OF COLUMBUS.

was the first to describe it as a separate continent. Before this happened, the native inhabitants were generally called Indians, from the belief that their country was the Indies; and the name has been retained.

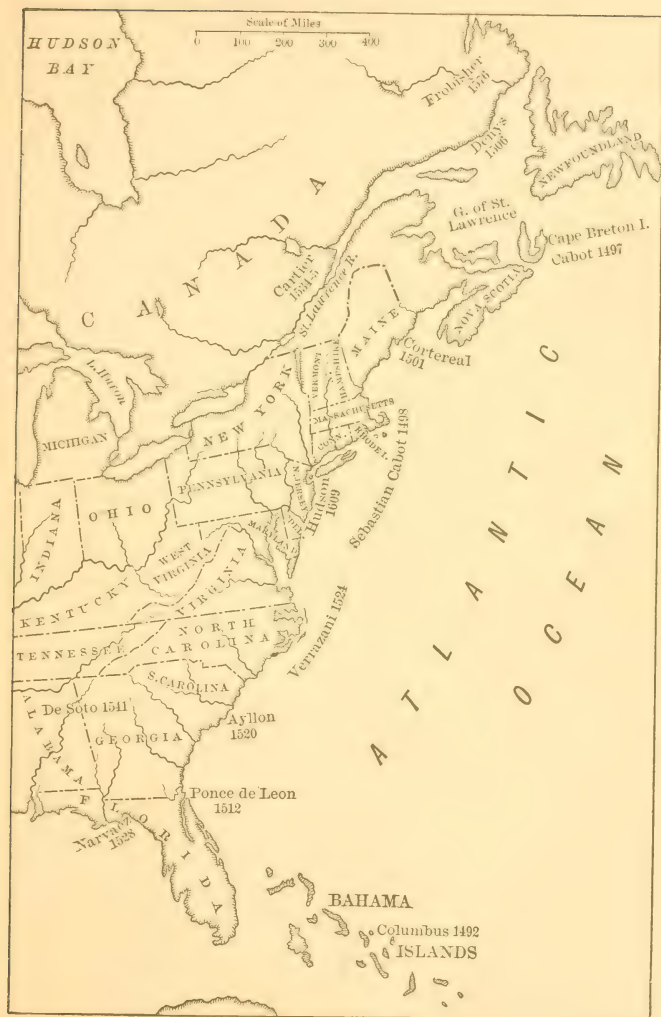
10. Spanish Discoveries soon made known that part of the coast of North America which lies on the Gulf of Mexico and the southern Atlantic. In 1512, Ponce de Leon discovered the coast of what is now eastern Florida, giving it the name of Florida because he discovered it on Easter Sunday, called in Spanish *Pascua Florida*. In 1520, Ayllon explored the coast of what is now South Carolina; and in 1528, Narvaez explored the northwest coast of Florida, along the Gulf of Mexico.

There are some proofs that these parts of the coast were really discovered before 1502 by forgotten Spanish sailors, but the dates given above are the only ones of which we have a record.

11. English Discoveries were the only ones which had much to do with the country which is now the United States. John

9. How many voyages did Columbus make? How was he treated? On which continent did he land? Did he know the extent of his discovery? Why was the new world named America?

10. What is said of Spanish discoveries? Of Ponce de Leon's discovery? Of Ayllon's discovery? Of Narvaez's discovery?



ATLANTIC DISCOVERIES.

Cabot, a merchant of Venice, in Italy, then living in Bristol, England, and his son Sebastian, fitted out a ship, the *Matthew*, which discovered North America at Cape Breton Island (June 24, 1497). They called it *Prima Vista* ("first sight"). In 1498, Sebastian Cabot explored the whole Atlantic coast from Cape Breton to Albemarle Sound, and claimed it for England. No attempt to settle the country was made for many years, except an unsuccessful effort by Martin Frobisher to colonize Labrador; but English sailors continued to follow the path of the Cabots across the northern Atlantic, in order to share in the Newfoundland fisheries.

12. French Discoveries, like those of Spain, had very little to do with the future history of the United States. The Newfoundland fisheries attracted French sailors across the Atlantic, and, in 1506, Denys discovered the Gulf of St. Lawrence. In 1524, Verazzani, a Florentine sailor in the French service, explored the Atlantic coast, north of what is now South Carolina. In 1534, Cartier discovered the great river St. Lawrence, and this drew the French off in that direction, so that whatever discoveries they made were made in Canada (§ 20).

13. Portugal and Spain had made an agreement in 1493, by which Portugal was not to interfere with Spain in America and Spain was not to interfere with Portugal in Africa or the East Indies. Portugal, therefore, took no part in American discovery, except that Cortereal, a Portuguese sailor, explored the Atlantic coast, in 1501, from Maine to Newfoundland.

The maritime nations of western Europe were then Spain, England, France, and Portugal; no other nation was at all likely to attempt settlements in America. Holland was then subject to Spain, and attempted no settlements until she had become independent (§ 28). Italy and Germany were then divided into many weak states; and Sweden was not strong enough to dispute the new continent with the great nations (§ 29).

14. The Interior of North America was not touched by any of the discoveries above mentioned. Some of the Spanish governors

11. What is said of English discoveries? Who were the Cabots? What did they discover on their first voyage? On the second voyage? What was the influence of the Newfoundland fisheries?

12. What is said of the French discoveries? Of the discovery of Denys? Of Verazzani? Of Cartier?

13. What agreement had been made by Portugal and Spain? What was the only Portuguese exploration? Why were no explorations made by Holland, Italy, Germany, and Sweden?

14. Were any discoveries made in the interior?

of Mexico sent expeditions northward into what is now New Mexico and California; but they accomplished little. The only effort to explore the interior, before the English colonies began to grow inward from the coast, was the remarkable expedition of De Soto.

15. De Soto was the Spanish governor of Cuba. In 1539, he landed at Tampa Bay, in Florida, with a force of 900 men,

and marched through the continent for three years, vainly hoping to find and conquer a rich Indian kingdom. He went north nearly to the Tennessee River, then southerly to where Mobile now stands, and thence northwesterly to the Mississippi River, which he crossed in April, 1541, near the present southern boundary of Tennessee. He marched westward for



Scale of Miles
0 100 200 300 400 500

DE SOTO'S EXPEDITION.

several hundred miles across the present State of Arkansas, but found everywhere only savages wandering in a wilderness. All this time, it was De Soto's courage which had kept up the courage of the men, but even De Soto's courage gave out at length, and he began to move southward on the way home. He died, worn out, on the banks of the Mississippi, near the mouth of the Red River, and was buried beneath the waters of the great river which he had discovered. His soldiers then built boats, and sailed down the river to the Gulf of Mexico, and so to Mexico, which the Spaniards had conquered in 1521.

16. The Pacific Coast was explored in 1543 by Cabrillo and Ferelo, two Spaniards, as far north as Oregon. In 1580, Drake, an English navigator, sailed along the coast and called it New Albion. In 1592, Juan de Fuca, a Spanish pilot, explored the coast as far as the strait

15. What is said of De Soto and his expedition? What course did he follow? What became of De Soto? Of his men?

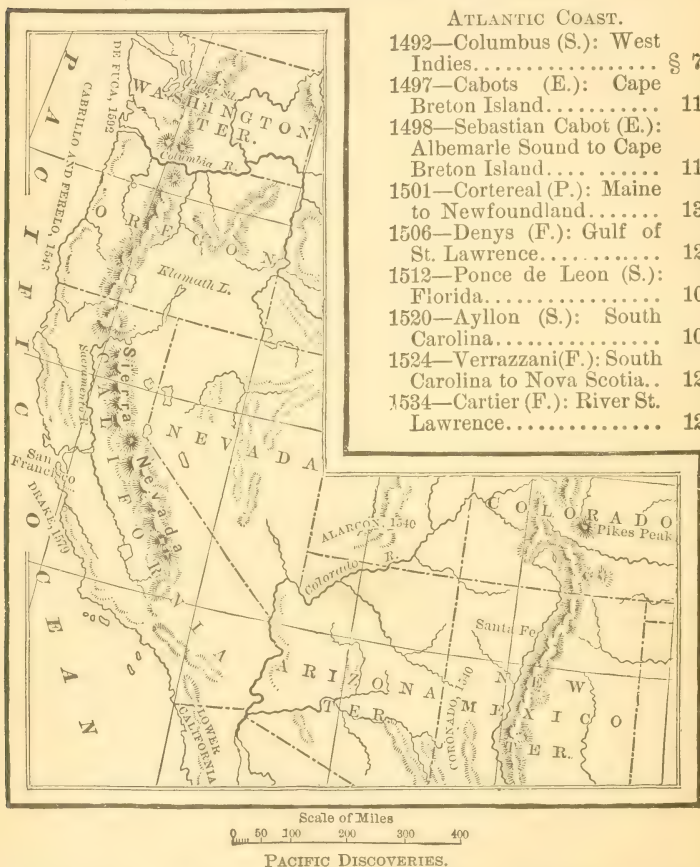
16. What is said of the expeditions of Cabrillo and Ferelo? Of Drake's discoveries? Of Juan de Fuca's exploration? Were any Spanish settlements made on the Pacific coast?

which bears his name. The territory remained under the control of Spain, and a few settlements were made by Spanish missionaries; but little was known about the country until it became a part of the United States in 1848. (§ 574.)

17. The Discoveries of Spain, England, France, and Portugal have been given separately above. They may be collected, as follows: (S., Spanish; E., English; F., French; P., Portuguese.)

ATLANTIC COAST.

1492—Columbus (S.): West Indies.....	§ 7
1497—Cabots (E.): Cape Breton Island.....	11
1498—Sebastian Cabot (E.): Albemarle Sound to Cape Breton Island.....	11
1501—Cortereal (P.): Maine to Newfoundland.....	13
1506—Denys (F.): Gulf of St. Lawrence.....	12
1512—Ponce de Leon (S.): Florida.....	10
1520—Ayllon (S.): South Carolina.....	10
1524—Verrazzani (F.): South Carolina to Nova Scotia..	12
1534—Cartier (F.): River St. Lawrence.....	12



PACIFIC DISCOVERIES.

17. Give the date and place of Columbus's discovery. Of the Cabots' discovery. Of Sebastian Cabot's discovery. Of Cortereal's discovery. Of Denys's discovery. Of De Leon's discovery. Of Ayllon's discovery. Of Verrazzani's exploration. Of Cartier's discovery. Of Narvaez's exploration. Of the exploration of Cabrille. Of Drake. Of De Fuca. Of Coronado. Of Alarçon. Of De Soto.

GULF OF MEXICO.

1528—Narvaez (S.): Northwestern Florida..... § 10

PACIFIC COAST.

1543—Cabrillo (S.): Pacific coast to Oregon..... 16

1579—Drake (E.): Pacific coast..... 16

1592—De Fuca (S.): Pacific coast to British America..... 16

INTERIOR.

1540—Coronado (S.): New Mexico..... 14

1540—Alarçon (S.): Colorado River.... 14

1541—De Soto: Mississippi River and Southern States.... 14

SUPPLEMENTARY QUESTIONS.

Locations.—(School-map locations in *italics*.)—Bound the United States of America, excluding Alaska. Locate *Iceland*. *Greenland*. Newport, R. I. (§ 65). *Palos, Spain*. *The Canary Islands*. *The Orinoco River*. Florida. South Carolina. Cape Breton Island. Albemarle Sound. The Gulf of St. Lawrence. The St. Lawrence River. Maine. Newfoundland. New Mexico. California. Tampa Bay. Tennessee River. Mobile. Mississippi River. Oregon. *Strait of Fuca*.

REVIEW.—About what year did the Northmen discover America? When did Columbus discover America? Who discovered the north Atlantic coast of North America, and when? Who discovered the Carolina coast, and when? Who discovered the Florida coast, and when? Who discovered the Mississippi, and when?

PERIOD II.—SETTLEMENT.

18. The Discoveries which we have been considering had made the Atlantic coast of North America pretty well known before the year 1530, but settlement did not begin until some seventy years later. Spain did not seem inclined to settle this part of the continent; our two oldest towns, at present, St. Augustine, in Florida (founded in 1565), and Santa Fé, in New Mexico (founded in 1582), were originally Spanish settlements, but even these were not in the territory of the United States when our national history began. France and England made a number of unsuccessful attempts to found settlements before England at last succeeded in getting control of the coast. We will first consider the failures.

19. French Failures began in 1540, when Cartier, who had discovered the St. Lawrence River in 1534 (§ 12), made a settle-

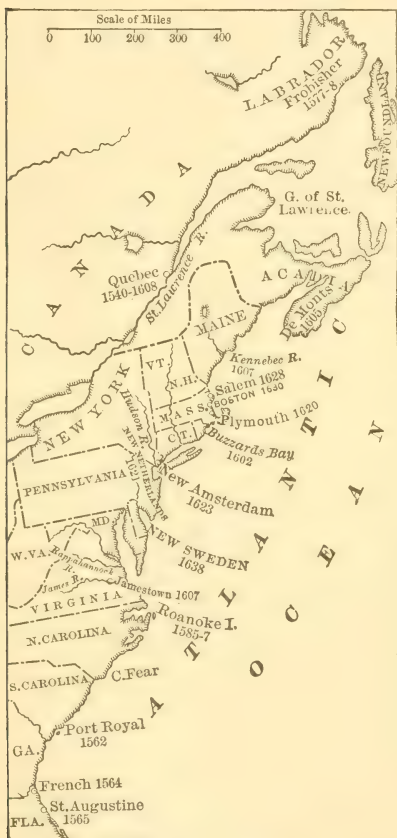
18. Did the American discoveries bring settlements at once? Were any settlements made by Spain? By France and England?

19. What was the first French failure? Did the French then give up the St. Lawrence? What failures were made by the French in Carolina? What is said of the first of these attempts? Of the second? Was there any further French settlement here?

ment at Quebec; it was given up after the second winter. French vessels still sailed up the St. Lawrence from time to time, but for sixty years the people in France made no further attempt to found a settlement here. In 1562 and 1564, French settlements were attempted on the southern Atlantic coast, but they were failures. The

first was at Port Royal, when the colonists became discouraged, left for home, and came near starving on the voyage. The second, near where St. Augustine now stands, was too near the Spanish possessions, and the Spaniards destroyed it. Another French expedition took revenge on the Spaniards, but made no further attempt to continue the settlement.

20. Canada finally became the seat of successful French settlement in North America. In 1605, De Monts, with a commission from the king of France, made a successful settlement in Acadia (the French name for Nova Scotia). In 1608, Champlain made a settlement at Quebec. Other Frenchmen settled along the St. Lawrence, and took possession of what is now the Dominion of Canada. It remained a French possession until 1763 (§ 157), and the descendants of the old settlers are still often called French-Canadians.



ATLANTIC SETTLEMENTS.

20. Where did the French finally settle? What is said of De Monts' settlement? Of Champlain's? Of other French settlements? Of the French possession of Canada?

De Monts also made several efforts to settle in New England, but failed in all of them. The French did not begin permanent settlements within the territory of the United States until about 1673 (§ 140).

21. English Failures began in 1576, with a voyage of Martin Frobisher to Labrador. He expected to find gold there, to discover a northwest passage, and to settle the country; but he failed in all three points. In 1578, Sir Humphrey Gilbert, with a commission from Queen Elizabeth, made an unsuccessful effort to settle in North America. In 1583, he sailed again with five ships, and reached Newfoundland. But his men were ungovernable, and he was compelled to return. On the return voyage his own ship was lost with all on board.

He had refused to desert the men in his ship, which was the smallest in the fleet, saying manfully, "We are as near heaven by sea as by land."

22. The Northwest Passage continued for a long time to be one of the great objects of the early English and Dutch voyages. The Portuguese claimed the sea-road from Europe to the East Indies, around Africa (§ 5). The Spaniards claimed the road around South America, which Magellan had discovered in 1520. It was supposed that North America was not very broad, or that it was a collection of islands, like the West Indies, and the English hoped to find a passage for themselves through it to the Pacific Ocean. In 1609, Hudson (§ 28) sailed up the river which bears his name until he ran aground, hoping every hour to sail out into the Pacific. In 1850, Captain McClure at last found a "northwest passage" through the Arctic Ocean, but the ice makes it useless (§ 864). Long before this, however, the Spaniards and Portuguese had been compelled to give up their asserted right to prevent ships of other nations from using the ocean route around Cape Horn and the Cape of Good Hope.

23. Sir Walter Raleigh, Gilbert's half-brother, next took up the work. In 1584, he sent two small vessels, under Amidas and Barlow, who found a suitable place for a colony at Roanoke Island, on the coast, which now belongs to North Carolina. Raleigh named the whole coast Virginia, in honor of Queen Elizabeth, who was unmarried and was fond of being called the "virgin queen," and the name is still given to a part of it, the present State of Virginia. Raleigh sent two colonies to

21. How did the English failures begin? What is said of Frobisher's expedition? Of Gilbert's first voyage? Of his last voyage?

22. What is said of the Northwest Passage? Why were the English and Dutch anxious to find it? Has it ever been discovered?

23. Who succeeded to Gilbert's work? What was done by Amidas and Barlow? What name was given to the country, and why? What is said of Raleigh's first colony? Of his second colony? Who was Virginia Dare? Did Raleigh send any more colonies?

Roanoke Island. The first, under Grenville, in 1585, was starved out in a year, and the colonists went back to England. The second, under White, in 1587, had disappeared when it was



SIR WALTER RALEIGH.

searched for three years afterward, and no trace of it has ever since been found. Among the hundred or more persons who perished in it was White's little granddaughter, Virginia Dare, the first child of English parents born within the present limits of the United States. Raleigh attempted no more settlements.

Before Raleigh died (in 1618), Virginia was a flourishing colony (§ 82). Raleigh himself never went to North America; but he took a great interest in its settlement and its productions. The

common story is that he introduced the practice of smoking tobacco from America into England; and that one of his servants, seeing him smoking and thinking him on fire, threw a pitcher of beer on him to put out the fire. But it is quite certain that tobacco was used in Europe before Raleigh used it.

24. Bartholomew Gosnold, in 1602, found a new route across the Atlantic, by the Azores Islands, which saved 1500 miles in distance. He made a settlement in what is now called Buzzard's Bay, in Massachusetts; but his men lost courage, and he returned with a ship-load of sassafras. At this time, more than a century after Columbus's discovery, there was not an English settler in all North America; but English trading and fishing vessels were more often seen along the coast, and their accounts of the country kept alive the English desire for American settlements.

25. English Settlement took a new form in 1606, under King James I. Two great companies were formed, one at London, called

24. What was Gosnold's discovery? His attempt to make a settlement? What was the condition of English settlement at this time? What kept alive the desire for settlement?

25. What is said of English settlement in 1606? What two companies were formed? Give the limits of the grant to the London Company. Of the grant to the Plymouth Company. What was done with the territory between the two grants? What was the westward extent of the grants?

the London Company, the other at Plymouth, called the Plymouth Company. To the London Company the king granted the coast of North America from latitude 34° to latitude 38° ; that is, from about Cape Fear to the Rappahannock River. To the Plymouth Company he gave the coast from latitude 41° to 45° ; that is, from about the mouth of the Hudson River to the eastern point of Maine (see map, page 66). The coast between the Rappahannock and the Hudson was granted to both companies; but neither was to fix a colony within 100 miles of any colony already planted by the other. There was no western boundary to the grants, which were supposed to extend across the continent to the Pacific Ocean.

26. Successful Settlement began with the formation of the companies, the first successful colony being made at Jamestown in Virginia, in 1607 (§ 80). The first attempts had failed because of natural difficulties. A few people, placed in a wilderness, with 3000 miles of stormy ocean between them and help of any kind, and without protection of any sort from hostile Indians, soon died from accident or disease, or were forced to return to England. But the new companies were richer, and were able to send out colonies large enough and well enough equipped to protect themselves from the beginning; and when this had been done, many of the difficulties disappeared at once. Every year a greater number of persons came to America, to get land for nothing and to escape poverty or persecution at home; and it was not long before the coast was dotted with little settlements, and a few persons began to press inland.

27. The Colonization of the United States also begins with the formation of the companies. The territory granted to the companies was gradually cut up into separate colonies, and new colonies were formed to the southward. Thus there came to be, in time, thirteen English colonies, Virginia and Massachusetts being the remnants of the first grants to the two companies, after the other colonies had been cut out of them. In making these first grants, the king had been careful to avoid the territories of the Spaniards on the south, and the French on the north; and it thus happened that the English colonies in North America were fixed nearly together, and within the present limits of the United States. The advantages of this were that it placed an enterprising and ambitious people in the best part of the continent, where the climate was neither too hot nor too cold; and that it gave them the opportunity to unite in future and grow into a great nation. The formation of these colonies falls under the next period (§ 36).

28. Holland had rebelled against Spain, about the time of the first English failures (§ 21), and had become a strong naval power.

26. How did successful settlement begin? What were the difficulties of the first colonies? What advantages had the companies? What were the results?

27. How did colonization begin? How were the colonies formed? How many colonies were formed? How did they fall within the present limits of the United States? What were the advantages of this result?

28. What reason had Holland for claiming a part of the coast? How was the Dutch settlement made? How long did it remain Dutch?

In 1609, Hendrik (Henry) Hudson, an Englishman in the service of Holland, discovered the Hudson River, and explored the coast as far as Chesapeake Bay more closely than previous voyagers



HENRY HUDSON.

had done. Dutch traders at once sent vessels to Manhattan Island (now New York City), to trade with the Indians; and in 1621 Holland granted the territory from Delaware Bay to the Connecticut River to the Dutch West India Company. This company established the city of New Amsterdam (now New York) in 1623, and called the whole territory New Netherlands. For the next forty years, this continued to be a Dutch colony, thrust in between English colonies to the north and to the south of it. It was then conquered by the English (§ 113).

The price paid to the Indians by the Dutch for Manhattan Island was 60 guilders (about \$24).

29. Sweden, without any claims by discovery, fixed a colony in what is now the State of Delaware, in 1638. Its leader was Peter Minuit, who had been a Dutch governor of New Netherlands, but had gone over to the service of Sweden. The chief town of this colony was Christina, near the present city of Wilmington. In 1655 a Dutch force from New Amsterdam compelled the Swedes to acknowledge themselves under the government of Holland; and it finally passed under English rule, with the rest of New Netherlands (§ 113). It was then transferred to Penn (§ 125).

30. Summary.—We have thus traced the steps by which England established her colonies on the Atlantic coast of North America. Spain had chosen the territory to the south, and France the territory to the north; while the territory between them fell to Eng-

29. What is said of the Swedish colony? Of the changes in its government?

30. How did England obtain her position on the Atlantic coast? What were the English failures in Canada? The French failure? The French successes? The French failures in the United States? The Spanish successes? The English failures? The English success? Give the date of the Dutch discovery. Of the Dutch settlement. Of the Swedish settlement.

land. At first, she had Holland and Sweden as rivals; but these were not strong enough to resist her; and the whole Atlantic coast, from Florida to Nova Scotia, became English. The dates of the more important steps in the settlement are as follows:

(Sp., Spanish; E., English; F., French; D., Dutch; Sw., Swedish.)

CANADA.

1540—Cartier (F.): Quebec (failure).....	§ 19
1576—Frobisher (E.): Labrador (failure).....	21
1583—Gilbert (E.): Newfoundland (failure).....	22
1605—De Monts (F.): Acadia, or Nova Scotia (success)....	20
1608—Champlain (F.): Quebec (success).....	20
(Here begins the French colonization of Canada, § 139.)	

THE UNITED STATES.

1562—South Carolina (F.): Port Royal (failure).....	19
1564—Florida (F.): Near St. Augustine (failure).....	19
1565—Florida (Sp.): St. Augustine (success).....	18
1582—New Mexico (Sp.): Santa Fé (success).....	18
1585—North Carolina (E.): Roanoke Island (failure).....	23
1587—North Carolina (E.): Roanoke Island (failure).....	23
1602—Massachusetts (E.): Buzzard's Bay (failure).....	24
1607—Virginia (E.): Jamestown (success).....	26, 36
(Here begins the English colonization of the United States.)	
1609—New York (D.): Hudson's discovery.....	28
1623—New York (D.): Dutch settlement (became English in 1664).....	28
1638—Delaware (Sw.): Swedish settlement (became Eng- lish in 1664).....	29

SUPPLEMENTARY QUESTIONS.

Locations.—(School-map locations in *italics*.)—Locate St. Augustine, Fla.; Santa Fé, N. M.; Quebec, Canada; Port Royal, S. C.; Nova Scotia; Labrador; Newfoundland; Roanoke Island, N. C.; *the Azores Islands*; Buzzard's Bay, Mass.; Cape Fear; Rappahannock River; Hudson River; Maine. Which of the thirteen original States (§ 187) were formed from the London Company's grant? Which from the Plymouth Company's grant? Which from the territory between the two?

REVIEW.—Name and give the date of the first successful settlement within the present limits of the United States. Of the second. In what part of the continent were successful Spanish settlements made? Successful French settlements? Successful English settlements? Who was the first great leader in English settlement? The second? Why did he call the country Virginia? Name and give the date of the two great companies under which English settlement began? Where and when was the first successful English settlement made? The Dutch settlement? The Swedish settlement?

EUROPEAN AFFAIRS.

31. European Affairs.—While English settlement in America was beginning, between the years 1600 and 1690, great events were taking place in Europe; and it is necessary to bear them in mind while studying the next period, for they had a great influence on the history of the English colonies in America. In England the powers of government were divided between the king, the House of Lords (or hereditary nobles), and the House of Commons (elected by a part of the people). The two Houses together were called the Parliament; and this body had little by little gained for itself the power of taxing the people. When Queen Elizabeth died (1603), and a new king, James I., came from Scotland, Parliament became bolder in declaring its power. James, and still more his son Charles I., resisted the claim, and even attempted at times to govern and lay taxes without calling the Parliament together. But the people refused to pay such taxes, and after each attempt the king was compelled to call the Parliament together and ask for money.

Then the Parliament refused to lay taxes, unless the king would give up other powers which were considered objectionable.

The king or queen of England has at the present time lost almost all power, and so has the House of Lords. Almost all powers of government now belong to the House of Commons.

32. The Commonwealth.

In 1642, the quarrel broke out into open war. The Parliament was successful, defeated and captured the



CAVALIER AND PURITAN.

king, Charles I., and in 1649 beheaded him as a traitor and tyrant. Oliver Cromwell, the leader of the Parliamentary army, soon after-

31. Why is it necessary to turn to European affairs? How were the powers of government divided in England? What was the Parliament, and what was its chief power? What happened when Queen Elizabeth died? What did the kings attempt to do? What were the results?

32. What happened in 1642? What was the result of the war? What is said of Cromwell? What is this period called?

ward became ruler of England, with the title of Lord Protector, and held power until his death in 1658. This period is usually called the Commonwealth period of English history. The king's friends were often called Cavaliers, and the supporters of the Commonwealth Puritans or Roundheads, since they cut their hair short, while the Cavaliers wore long, curling wigs.

33. The Restoration.—In 1660, the people, tired of the Commonwealth and the rule of the army, called back Charles I.'s son, who had been living in exile, and made him king, with the title of Charles II. In 1685, he was succeeded by his brother, who had been Duke of York, but was now called James II. He endeavored, as Charles I. had done, to rule by his own will. In 1688, his subjects rebelled, drove him and his son away to France, and called in his son-in-law and daughter, William of Orange and Mary, as king and queen. This event is commonly called the English Revolution of 1688.

34. In France, events took an exactly opposite direction. Louis XIII. in 1614 got rid of the body which had made laws, and the French kings ruled by their own will until the opening of the French Revolution in 1789 (§ 306). In 1685, a religious persecution was begun in France, and drove many of the Protestants, commonly called Huguenots, out of that kingdom. Many of these came to America.

35. The Colonies were very much neglected under James I. and Charles I.; they enjoyed great freedom from interference under the Commonwealth; and they were subjected to great annoyances and interferences under Charles II., and still more under James II. (§ 74). But all through the century, the troubles in England were driving great numbers of people across the Atlantic, and increasing the population of the colonies very rapidly. It grew from nothing in 1600 to about 200,000 in 1700.

The following are the leading European events referred to:

1603-1625: Reign of James I.

1625-1649: Reign of Charles I. (son of James I.).

1640: The fifth Parliament of the reign meets.

33. What happened in 1660? Who was the next king? What is said of him? What happened in 1688?

34. What event occurred in France in 1614? In 1685?

35. What was the condition of the colonies under James I. and Charles I.? Under the Commonwealth? Under Charles II. and James II.? What was the general effect of the troubles in England? What is said of the increase of population in the colonies during the century?

- 1642: War breaks out. Battle of Edgehill.
 1645: Battle of Naseby. The king captured.
 1649: The king beheaded.
 1649-1660: The Commonwealth.
 1653: Cromwell is made Lord Protector.
 1658: Death of Cromwell.
 1660: Restoration.
 1660-1685: Reign of Charles II. (son of Charles I.).
 1685-1689: Reign of James II. (son of Charles I.).
 1689-1702: Reign of William and Mary.

PERIOD III.—COLONIZATION: 1607-1750.

THE ENGLISH COLONIES IN GENERAL.

36. The London Company (§ 25) sent out Captain Christopher Newport, with one hundred and five emigrants, to settle at Roanoke Island. A storm drove him out of his course and into Chesapeake Bay; he discovered the James River, which he named in honor of James I.; and about fifty miles from its mouth, on the northern bank of the river, he planted the settlement of Jamestown, May 13, 1607. This was the first successful English settlement in the territory of the United States, and was the beginning of the colony of Virginia (§ 80).

Jamestown has since been destroyed (§ 86).

37. The Southern Colonies were in the end five in number: Virginia, Maryland, North Carolina, South Carolina, and Georgia. These were formed out of the grant to the London Company by the king through the following changes: (1) In 1632, the new colony of Maryland was formed out of the northeastern part of Virginia (§ 89); (2) In 1665, Charles II. took off the southern part of Virginia, the present State of North Carolina, added to it the present territory of South Carolina and Georgia, and called the whole Carolina. Virginia was thus reduced to the limits which she afterward held as a State; (3) In 1729, Carolina was divided into North Carolina and South Carolina (§ 96); (4) In 1732, the new colony of Georgia was formed out of South Carolina (§ 107). The London Company could make no objection to these changes, for in 1624 the king had taken away its charter and put an end

36. Describe the settlement at Jamestown. What was its importance?

37. Name the southern colonies. What was the first change? The second? The third? The fourth? What had become of the London Company?





to the company, which, as he claimed, was not using its charter properly and faithfully.

Florida was not an English colony until 1763 (§ 157); nor a part of the United States until 1819 (§ 418). The names of the first four English colonies on the southern coast were all royal: *Virginia*, from Elizabeth, the virgin queen; *Maryland*, from Henrietta Maria, Charles I.'s queen; *Carolina*, from Charles II. of England; and *Georgia*, from George II. of England.

38. The Plymouth Company (§ 25) attempted to make a settlement in 1607, near the mouth of the Kennebec River, in Maine; but it was a failure, and the company made no more settlements on its own account. In 1620, the company was broken up, and a new one was formed, "The Council of Plymouth for the governing of New England." To this company the king gave the territory between north latitude 40° and 48° ; that is, from about Philadelphia to Nova Scotia. Almost the only work done by this company was to grant lands to the various colonies named below; and in 1635 it also gave back its powers to the king.

The name New England was given to this coast in 1614 by Captain John Smith (§ 81).

39. The New England Colonies, formed from the Plymouth Company's grant, were at first seven: Plymouth, Massachusetts Bay, Connecticut, New Haven, Providence, Rhode Island, and New Hampshire. Plymouth was afterward united with Massachusetts Bay, New Haven with Connecticut, and Providence with Rhode Island. There were thus finally four New England colonies: Massachusetts Bay (§ 49), New Hampshire (§ 59), Connecticut (§ 61), and Rhode Island (§ 66).

Maine was a part of Massachusetts until 1820 (§ 422). Vermont was claimed by New Hampshire and New York (§ 69).

40. The Middle Colonies, New York, New Jersey, Pennsylvania, and Delaware, were really conquered soil, taken from the Dutch (§ 28). Neither of the two great companies attempted to colonize this part of the coast, and it only came into English possession in 1664.

38. Did the Plymouth Company make any settlements? What happened in 1620? What new grant was made? What was the work done by this company? How did it come to an end?

39. What colonies were formed from the Plymouth Company's grant? Which were afterward united? Name the four New England colonies.

40. What is said of the Middle Colonies?

41. The Governments of these colonies were not all alike; each had its own peculiarities. But they may be divided into three classes, the charter governments, the proprietary governments, and the royal governments.

42. The Charter Colonies were Massachusetts, Rhode Island, and Connecticut. These had charters from the king, written documents which gave the colonists the power to elect their own officers and govern themselves.

James II. succeeded in altering the charter of Massachusetts so as to take away from the colonists the election of the principal officers (§ 58). The other two charters were unchanged.

43. The Proprietary Colonies were Maryland and Pennsylvania (including Delaware). These were given by the king to proprietors or owners, who formed governments in them. They also had charters, like the charter colonies, but they were given to the colonists by the proprietors, not by the king. The proprietors appointed the governors.

44. The Royal Colonies were New Hampshire, New York, New Jersey, Virginia, North Carolina, South Carolina, and Georgia. These had no charters, and their governors were appointed by the king. Almost all of them were at first proprietary governments, and fell into the hands of the king when the proprietors gave them up.

This is a convenient division of the colonies, but cannot always be strictly followed. It is not easy, for example, to say whether Massachusetts was really a royal or a charter colony after 1691.

45. The Colonies in General were at first little interfered with by the king, who considered them an annoyance rather than an honor or a benefit. Thus the colonies, even those which had no charters, obtained the power to elect assemblies, which made the laws for the colonies. The governors sent out by the king had the power to forbid the passage of any law which seemed to them wrong or unwise; but the governors were far from England, and

41. Were the governments of the colonies alike? Name the three classes of colonial governments.

42. Name the charter colonies. What was their form of government?

43. Name the proprietary colonies. Who formed their governments? What is said of their charters? Of their governors?

44. Name the royal colonies. What was their form of government? How did they become royal colonies?

45. What is said of the colonies and the king? Who made the laws of the colonies? What was the power of the governors? How were the colonies really governed? In what respects were they alike? What had English colonization done?

usually interfered very little. Thus it came to pass that the colonies really governed themselves from the beginning. But all of them acknowledged the same king, and were parts of the British Empire. Their inhabitants were Englishmen, who moved, when they wished, from one colony to another, without any notion that they were going to a foreign country. English colonization really gave the king of England a new country to govern.

The first assembly was in Virginia in 1619 (§ 80).

46. The New Country was not like the old one, though both had the same king, laws, and language, and many of the same customs. England had a class of nobles, who helped to make the laws simply because they had been born in particular families, and without being elected; there was no such class in the colonies. In England, only a very few men had the power to vote for members of the Parliament which made English laws; in the colonies, almost all men had the power to vote for members of the assemblies which made their laws. In England, there were a very few rich men and very many poor men, a very few educated men and very many ignorant men; in the colonies, nearly all the men of each colony were equally poor, though not generally ignorant.

47. These Differences made it much more difficult for the king to govern both countries well, for the laws which suited one of them were quite unsuited to the other. But none of the kings of England seem to have understood this. England was their own country, and they were familiar with it; America was far away, and they knew little about it. It was therefore difficult for the king, when it was necessary for him to interfere in the government of America, to know what was best for that country; and there were many cases of bad government in all the colonies, because the king was not able to judge their needs wisely. As the colonies grew richer, these interferences became more troublesome for about one hundred and fifty years, until in 1776 the colonies broke away from England altogether (§ 193).

46. Was the new country like the old one? What difference was there in respect to birth? In respect to the power to vote? In respect to wealth and education?

47. How did these differences make it difficult to govern both countries? Did the kings understand this? Why not? What was the consequence? What was the result in the end?

48. Negro Slavery in the colonies was one of the worst of these cases of bad judgment. The first mention of it is in Virginia, in 1619, when a Dutch man-of-war exchanged some negro slaves for provisions. Negroes were soon held as slaves in all the colonies, though they increased most rapidly in the warmer southern colonies. Labor is the most important thing in a state. But, where laborers are generally known as slaves, no free man likes to labor, because there labor is thought to degrade the laborer to the level of a slave. A wise government would therefore have forbidden slavery in the colonies: the king of England not only did not forbid it, but became an active partner in the slave trade, and refused to allow the colonies to forbid it. Thus the southern colonies came to believe that slavery and slave labor were absolutely necessary to them.

SUPPLEMENTARY QUESTIONS.

Locations.—Locate Roanoke Island, N. C.; Chesapeake Bay; the James River; the five southern colonies; the Kennebec River; the four New England colonies; the four middle colonies.

REVIEW.—Give the place and date of the first successful English settlement within the United States. Name the classes of colonial governments. The charter colonies. The proprietary colonies. The royal colonies. What is the first mention of slavery within the United States?

NEW ENGLAND.

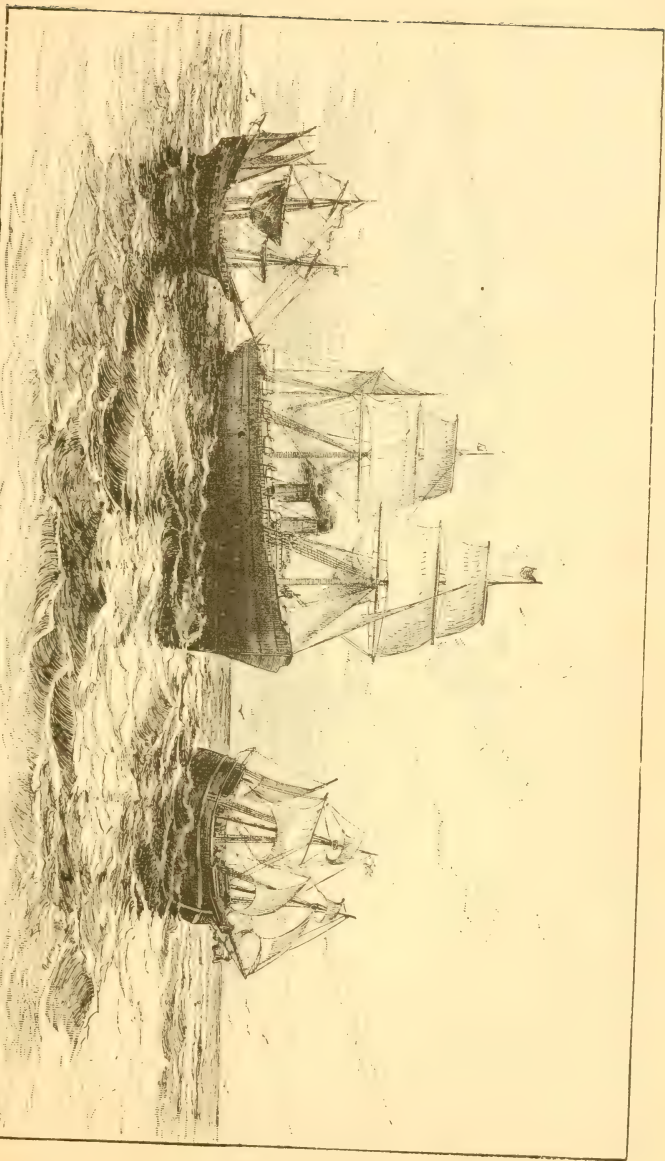
[Colonization began in Virginia, in the London Company's territory; but, when it had once begun, it went on more rapidly, for a time, in the northern colonies. We take, therefore, (1) the New England colonies, the Plymouth Company's grant; (2) the southern colonies, the London Company's grant; and (3) the middle colonies, the conquered territory.]

(1) *Massachusetts Bay Colony.*

49. The Plymouth Colony was the irregular southeastern portion of the present State of Massachusetts. It was settled by a company of "Separatists," as they were called, who separated

48. What is said of negro slavery? When is it first mentioned? How did it spread? What is said of labor? How does slavery hurt labor? What ought the king to have done? What did he do? What was the result in the southern colonies?

49. Where was the Plymouth colony? By whom was it settled? How had they been treated in England? In Holland? For what part of America did they set sail? How were they turned aside to Massachusetts? How many did they number? What name did they give to the spot? What was the date of the landing?



Columbus's Ship.

A Cunarier.

The Mayflower.

SHOWING THEIR CHARACTERISTICS AND RELATIVE SIZES.

themselves from the worship of the church established by law in England. They had been severely persecuted in England under



SEAL OF MASSACHUSETTS.

James I. and Charles I. (§ 35); and many of them fled to Holland, where they found peace. After a time, a number of them returned to Plymouth, in England, and thence set sail for New Amsterdam (New York), in order to settle there in the possessions of the Dutch. Storms drove their ship, the *Mayflower*, from her course, and they landed, one hundred in number, in the present State of Massachusetts, at

Plymouth. The date of the landing was December 21, 1629.

The rock on which they are said to have landed is still seen, and is called Plymouth Rock, or Forefathers' Rock. Captain John Smith (§ 38, note) had already named the spot Plymouth.

50. The Pilgrims, as the colonists called themselves, suffered terribly during the bitter cold of winter, and only half of them lived through it. But they built houses of logs, using oiled paper instead of glass; and in the spring obtained corn from the Indians. Other settlers followed them, and the little colony held its ground. It had no charter, but was governed by an agreement which the Pilgrims had made in the cabin of the *Mayflower* before landing. Its history, until its union with the Massachusetts Bay colony in 1691 (§ 58), was very quiet and peaceful. It was never a large colony; and its importance lay in the fact that it brought to New England a great number of other settlers who were in opposition to the Church of England, and gave New England a character of its own.

51. The Leaders of the Pilgrims were John Robinson, Miles Standish, John Carver, and William Bradford. Robinson was their minister in Amsterdam, but did not accompany them to America. Standish was an old soldier, and was the colony's military leader. He was "a man of a very small stature, yet of a very hot and

50. What is said of the first winter? How did the colony exist? How was it governed? What is said of its history? What was its importance?

51. Who were the leaders of the colony? What is said of Robinson? Of Standish? How is he described? What is said of Carver? Of Bradford? Were there any years in which he was not re-elected?

angry temper," and was much dreaded by the Indians. On one occasion, he stabbed a hostile chief in the midst of his tribe. Carver was the first governor. He died during the first winter. Bradford was elected in his place, and was re-elected yearly for about thirty years, until his death. The only years in which he was not re-elected were those in which, "by importunity, he got off."

52. The Massachusetts Bay Colony comprised the northern part of the present State of Massachusetts, from about Boston



PLYMOUTH ROCK.

northward. It was founded by Puritans, who had not altogether separated from the Church of England, but disliked some of its ceremonies. They sided with the Parliament against the king and the Cavaliers (§32), and were persecuted as the Separatists had been. In 1628, a company of them bought their territory from the Council of Plymouth and sent out a colony which settled at Salem. The next year, Charles I. gave them a charter, and they sent out more colonists, who settled at Salem and Charlestown. In 1630, a highly important step was taken. The company itself moved over to America, with its officers, charter, and all its powers; and thus the Puritans obtained a

52. Where was the Massachusetts Bay colony? Who founded it? How had they been treated in England? What happened in 1628? In 1629? What important step was then taken?

colony of their own in America, without any dependence upon England.

53. The Population of the colony increased at once. The



GOVERNOR JOHN WINTHROP.

great Puritan colony came over in 1630, when Governor John Winthrop and 1500 others emigrated and settled Boston, Cambridge, Lynn, and other towns. For a few years the new settlers suffered severely from cold, hunger, and other hardships, but not so much as the Plymouth settlers had suffered. The Massachusetts Bay settlers were richer, and had brought more supplies. There were more Puritans than Sepa-

ratists in England, and so there were more emigrants to Massachusetts Bay than to the rest of New England. The men brought money and laboring power; the people worked hard; and Massachusetts Bay soon became one of the most prosperous of the colonies.

54. The Leaders of this colony were John Endicott, John Winthrop, Sir Henry Vane, and John Cotton, Thomas Hooker, Samuel Stone, and a great number of other ministers. Endicott, the first governor, was a rigid Puritan, who cut the cross out of the British flags in the colony, and compelled the women to wear veils at church, and the men to cut their hair short. Winthrop was an English lawyer, a highly educated man, and more gentle than Endicott in his religious feeling. Vane was rich, able, and accomplished, and was elected governor when only twenty-four years old. He returned to England, helped to overthrow the king, opposed Cromwell, and was beheaded after the restoration (§ 33). The last three named were able ministers; and the colonists said that God had given them "Cotton for their clothing, Hooker for their fishing, and Stone for their building."

53. What is said of the population? Of the great Puritan colony? Did the settlers suffer as much as those at Plymouth? Why not? Why did the population increase? What was the result?

54. Who were the leaders of the colony? What is said of Endicott? Of Winthrop? Of Vane? Of Cotton, Hooker, and Stone?

55. Religious Feeling marked most of the New England colonists. They had fled from religious persecution in the old world, and in the new world they made the building of churches, the founding of religious schools, and the preaching of the gospel a great part of their work. In Massachusetts Bay, particularly, they were determined to found a religious state. Their ministers were their leading men, and no one could vote unless he was a member of the church. They dealt harshly with men of other religious beliefs who came to the colony and annoyed them by disputing with the Puritan ministers. Roger Williams held objectionable views on religious liberty and on the relation of the colony to the crown. He was ordered back to England; but rather than return, he went into the wilderness and founded the colony of Rhode Island (§ 66). Two years afterward, Mrs. Anne Hutchinson and her followers were banished for teaching new religious doctrines. She also went to Rhode Island, and thence to New Netherlands, where she was killed in a night attack by the Indians.



SITE OF BOSTON IN 1630.

56. The Quakers gave the New England colonists most trouble, for they insisted on freedom of worship, and disobeyed the laws which forbade preaching by any but Puritan ministers. They persisted in entering Puritan meetings and arguing with the ministers, and were punished in various ways. In 1656, a law was passed that any Quaker who returned to the colony after banishment should be put to death. The king stopped the execution of the law after the restoration (§ 33); but it shows the spirit of the times.

55. What is said of religious feeling? Why had the colonists come to the new world? What were they determined to do? How did they treat men of other religious beliefs? How did they treat the Baptists? Mrs. Hutchinson? What became of her?

56. How did the Quakers trouble the colonists? What law was passed in 1656? Was it put into execution?

57. The Salem Witchcraft.—Before this spirit of religious persecution died away, it gave rise to the delusion known as the Salem witchcraft. Most people at the time, and the Puritans as strongly as others, believed that there were witches, who had received power from the devil to hurt or kill men and cattle. Both Massachusetts and Connecticut had made laws against witchcraft, and had hanged a number of persons for being witches. In 1692, the whole town of Salem became crazed with the belief that witches were at work there. Two silly or wicked little girls declared that different persons had taken the form of black cats or black dogs, and had bitten, pinched, and choked them. The people believed them, and the great minister of the colony, Mr.

Cotton Mather, supported them. The supposed witches were punished with religious fury; and wicked people seized the opportunity to charge their enemies with being witches. Before the terror died away, about twenty innocent people, mostly old women and Indians, had been put to death. Finally, the magistrates and people came to their senses; and punishments for witchcraft were stopped.



MASSACHUSETTS BAY COLONY.

to take possession of all the rest of New England to the north of her; and this new territory was left to her for some years after

58. The Colonies United.—

The New England colonists sided with the Parliament against the king; and during the Commonwealth period (§ 32) the Massachusetts Bay Colony was allowed

57. What delusion grew out of this spirit? What belief was common at the time? What had Massachusetts and Connecticut already done? What happened in 1692? How did the delusion begin? How did it spread? What were its effects? How many were put to death? How was the delusion stopped?

58. Which side did the New England colonists take during the civil war in England? What did Massachusetts gain during the Commonwealth? What happened in 1684? What new charter was granted? How did it unite the colonies? What right was taken from the people? How were religious persecutions stopped? How long did the colony remain under this charter?

the restoration (§ 33). In 1684, the king's judges declared the Massachusetts charter at an end; and James II. attempted to make the whole of New England one royal colony (§ 74), when he was driven from the throne in 1689. The new sovereigns, William and Mary, instead of restoring the old charter, granted a new charter in 1691. It united the colonies of Plymouth and Massachusetts Bay, the province of Maine, and the territory of Nova Scotia, into one colony, by the name of Massachusetts Bay; and made New Hampshire a separate colony (§ 60). But the right to elect the governor was taken from the people, and all religions except the Roman Catholic were to be permitted. The colony remained under this charter until the colonies finally rebelled against Great Britain (§ 193).

In the charters the name is variously spelled Massachusetts, Mattachusetts, and Massathussets. It is an Indian word, and is said to mean "blue hills."

SUPPLEMENTARY QUESTIONS.

Locations.—(School-map locations in *italics*.)—Locate *Plymouth, England*; New Amsterdam (New York) (§ 121); Plymouth, Mass.; Salem; Charlestown; Boston; Cambridge; Lynn; the original Plymouth colony; the original Massachusetts Bay colony; the Massachusetts Bay colony during the Commonwealth period; the same colony after 1691.

REVIEW.—Who settled Plymouth colony? At what date? Who were its leaders? Who settled Massachusetts Bay colony? In what year? In what year did the company remove to the colony? Who were its leaders? What was the date of the Salem witchcraft? When were the two colonies united?

(2) *New Hampshire.*

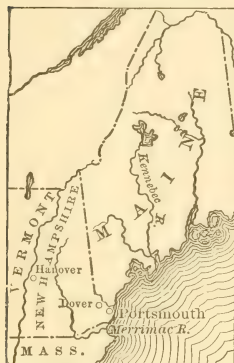
59. New Hampshire was John Mason's share of a tract of land granted to him and Sir Ferdinando Gorges, in 1622, by the Council of Plymouth (§ 38). The grant covered the territory between the Merrimac and Kennebec rivers. Small settlements were made at Portsmouth and Dover, in 1623; and in 1629, the proprietors divided their grant. Mason named his share New Hampshire, from his own county of Hampshire, in England.



SEAL OF NEW HAMPSHIRE.

59. What was New Hampshire? What was the whole grant? When were settlements made, and where? When was the grant divided? Why was New Hampshire so named?

60. The Colony was hardly more than a few fishing villages.



NEW HAMPSHIRE COLONY.

In 1641, it joined Massachusetts; but the king separated them in 1679, and made New Hampshire a royal colony (§ 44). In 1688, the colony again joined Massachusetts; and in 1691, the king again separated them (§ 58). New Hampshire then remained a royal colony until the colonies rebelled against Great Britain (§ 193). It never was a large colony; its interior settlements were farming townships; and its history was uneventful.

See also *Vermont* (§ 69).

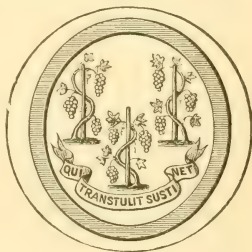
SUPPLEMENTARY QUESTIONS.

Locations.—Locate the Merrimac River; the Kennebec River; Portsmouth; Dover.

REVIEW.—In what year was New Hampshire granted? In what year was its first settlement made? In what year was the grant divided? Who was the first proprietor? When did it finally become a royal colony?

(3) *Connecticut.*

61. The Connecticut Colony consisted of the territory now within the State of Connecticut, with the exception of the few townships on the shore of Long Island Sound, which formed the New Haven colony (§ 64). It is said to have been granted in 1630 to the Earl of Warwick by the Council of Plymouth (§ 38). In 1631, Warwick transferred it to Lord Say, Lord Brooke, and others. In 1635, they made a settlement, which they called Saybrook, at the mouth of the Connecticut River, but made no further attempts to colonize. Their claims were afterward purchased by the Connecticut settlers.



SEAL OF CONNECTICUT.

60. What did the colony consist of? What happened in 1641? In 1679? In 1688? In 1691? What was New Hampshire thereafter? What is said of its condition and history?

61. What did the Connecticut colony consist of? To whom is it said to have been granted in 1630? In 1631? Did they make any settlements? Who purchased their claims?

62. Settlement had already been begun by immigrants from Massachusetts, without permission of the proprietors. Their principal leader was Thomas Hooker (§ 54). They travelled on foot through the Massachusetts wilderness to the Connecticut River, driving their cattle before them, and sometimes living chiefly on milk. They settled the towns of Wethersfield in 1634, Windsor in 1635, and Hartford in 1636. In 1639, they formed the first



CHARTER OAK.

written constitution in America, and took the name of the Connecticut colony. Saybrook joined them; new towns were settled; and they retained their separate government throughout the Commonwealth period.

Connecticut, an Indian word, means "the long river."

63. The Early History of the Connecticut colony was not very eventful. The principal Indian difficulties were with the Pequots, a powerful tribe of eastern Connecticut. In 1637, the settlers made war on the tribe, surrounded the Indians in their fort near Groton, and killed many of them. Another defeat near Fairfield put an end to the tribe: its members joined other tribes, or were sold as slaves. The Dutch in New Netherland claimed the terri-

62. Who had begun settlements? Who was their leader? How did they travel? What were their first settlements? What happened in 1639? How did the colony increase?

63. What is said of its history? Of the Pequots? What happened in 1637? What did the Dutch claim? How was this dispute settled?

tory up to the Connecticut River; but this dispute was settled in 1650 by a treaty at Hartford, fixing the boundary between Connecticut and New Netherland (New York) very nearly as at present.

64. The New Haven Colony was settled in 1638, by a company of English immigrants, under Rev. John Davenport and Theophilus Eaton, who bought lands from the Indians. Other settlers followed them and formed new towns near by, on the shore of Long Island Sound. In 1639, these towns united under the name of the New Haven colony. There were thus two colonies within the present State of Connecticut, neither of them having a charter; and each tried to gain to itself the new towns as they were formed. These, however, generally preferred to go into the Connecticut colony, for New Haven, like Massachusetts Bay, allowed no one but members of the church to vote or hold office (§ 55).

65. The Colonies United.—In 1660, when the Commonwealth came to an end in England, and Charles II. came to the throne



Scale of Miles
0 25 50 100 150

CONNECTICUT COLONY.

(§ 33), the Connecticut colony, the stronger of the two, set about to obtain a charter. The governor, Winthrop, was at once sent to England for that purpose. In 1662, he obtained a charter covering the territory of both colonies. It allowed the people to elect their

governor as well as their assembly, and to govern themselves. It suited them so well that it remained in force after the Revolution, and until 1818. New Haven unwillingly accepted the charter, and in 1665 the two colonies were united under the name of the Colony

64. How was New Haven settled? How were neighboring towns settled? What happened in 1639? What was then the state of affairs in Connecticut?

65. What happened in 1660? Who was sent to England? How did he succeed? What is said of the charter? Did New Haven accept it? When were the colonies united? What happened in 1687? How was the charter saved? When was it brought out again?

of Connecticut. In 1687, Andros (§ 74) appeared at Hartford and demanded the charter. While the argument was going on in the evening, the lights were suddenly blown out; and before they could be re-lit, the charter had been taken out and hidden near by, in a hollow oak-tree. When William and Mary came to the throne in 1689, the charter was brought out again, and the government went on as before until the Revolution (§ 193). The tree in which the charter had been hidden, called the Charter Oak, stood and was well cared for until it was blown down in a storm in 1856. The early division into two colonies was long marked by the fact that Connecticut had two capitals, Hartford and New Haven. Since 1873 Hartford has been the sole capital.

SUPPLEMENTARY QUESTIONS.

Locations.—Locate the Connecticut River; Wethersfield; Windsor; Hartford; Groton; Fairfield; New Haven. Bound the State of Connecticut.

REVIEW.—What were the first settlements in Connecticut? When were they made? When was New Haven settled? Give the date of the Pequot war. In what year were the two governments formed? In what year was the charter granted? In what year were the two colonies united? In what year was the charter hidden?

(4) *Rhode Island.*

66. Roger Williams, after he had been driven from Massachusetts (§ 55), took refuge among the Indians at the head of Narragansett Bay. In 1636, their chief, Canonicus, gave him a large tract of land, and he called the place Providence, in remembrance of the manner in which he felt that God had guided him thither. Others followed him, and settled on the large island in the bay, called Rhode Island. Portsmouth, in the northern part of the island, was settled in 1638, and Newport in 1639. These two colonies, or “plantations,” were separate for several years, having no charter, and governing themselves. In 1643, a third and smaller colony was founded at Warwick, on the western shore of the bay.



SEAL OF RHODE ISLAND.

66. What is said of Roger Williams? How did he obtain lands, and when? Why did he name the place Providence? How was Rhode Island settled? What two towns were first fixed on Rhode Island? What is said of the two colonies? Of the Warwick colony?

The name Rhode Island is from the Dutch name *Roodt Eylandt*, "red island," given by the New Amsterdam sailors who discovered it.

67. A Charter was obtained by Williams in 1644 from the Parliament, and it was confirmed in 1654. In 1663, a new charter was obtained from Charles II. Under these charters, the different colonies were gathered into one, under the name of Rhode Island and Providence Plantations. The people were to elect their own governors, assemblies, and other officers, and govern themselves. The charter suited the people so well that they kept it in force after the Revolution until 1842 (§ 530).

For the attempt of Andros to destroy it, see § 74.

68. The Early History of Rhode Island was uneventful. The laws were gentle, and the people had few difficulties. All religions were permitted, and the colony became a place of refuge for those

who were persecuted elsewhere. There was little trouble with the Indians, and almost the only disputes were with the neighboring colonies. Plymouth, on the east, claimed the territory up to the eastern shore of the bay. Connecticut, on the west, claimed the ter-



ritory up to the western shore of the bay. Massachusetts claimed the northern part of the colony. These claims would have left only the islands in the bay to the little colony. Rhode Island resisted stubbornly, and succeeded, in 1741 and 1752, in fixing her boundaries as at present.

The legal name is still "The State of Rhode Island and Providence Plantations;" and it retains its two capitals, Providence and Newport, the legislature meeting in them alternately.

67. What is said of the first and second charters? Of the third charter? What were its provisions? How long was it retained?

68. What is said of the history of the colony? Of the laws and people? Of religion? What territory was claimed by Plymouth? By Connecticut? By Massachusetts? What would have been left to Rhode Island? How were the boundaries fixed?

SUPPLEMENTARY QUESTIONS.

Locations.—Locate Narragansett Bay; Providence; Rhode Island; Portsmouth; Newport; Warwick. Bound the State of Rhode Island.

REVIEW.—Who was the founder of the colony? In what year was Providence founded? Newport? In what year was the first charter obtained? The last charter? Until what year did it remain in force?

(5) *Vermont.*

69. Vermont was part of the grant to the Duke of York (see Map, p. 66), like western Connecticut and Massachusetts. The grant was given up as to the two latter colonies; and so, about 1750, New Hampshire claimed Vermont and sold it to settlers. For this reason Vermont was long known as the "New Hampshire Grants." New York urged her claim to it, and attempted to make the people pay for their land again. The Green Mountain Boys, as the settlers called themselves, treated the New York officers very roughly, and formed a government of their own. At first they called it New Connecticut, and then Vermont, a French word meaning Green Mountains. They kept up this separate government throughout the Revolution.



SEAL OF VERMONT.

In 1791, Vermont was admitted as a State (§ 300).

(6) *New England in General.*

70. New England Union.—In 1643, Massachusetts Bay and Plymouth united with Connecticut and New Haven in a confederacy for mutual defence. They refused to admit Rhode Island, whose territory they claimed as their own. This New England Union lasted through the Commonwealth period (§ 32), and was silently allowed to disappear soon after the restoration in 1660. It was given up then because it was well known that the king wished each colony to be weak and to depend on him, and that he would not like any dangerously strong union of colonies, for fear they might set up for themselves.

69. What is said of Vermont? Who claimed its soil? What name was first given to Vermont? What is said of New York's claim? How was it resisted? What names were taken for the new government?

70. What union was formed in 1643? Why was not Rhode Island admitted? How long did the union last? Why was it given up?

While the union lasted, each of the four colonies sent two commissioners, who met and decided on affairs of peace and war, and matters in which all were interested. But each colony continued to govern itself in matters relating only to its own people.

71. The Navigation Acts.—At first, the colonists everywhere were busied only in agriculture, hunting, and fishing. As they grew richer, they turned to manufactures, ship-building, and commerce, and their assemblies offered to grant money to persons who would engage in such pursuits. This was not at all pleasant to English merchants, who wished to keep the trade of the colonies in their own hands. In 1651, Parliament passed the first of what were called the Navigation Acts. They forbade the colonies to trade with any other country than England, or to receive foreign ships into their ports. They were particularly aimed at New England, whose people had gone eagerly into commerce; but they were not well enforced for many years (see also § 84). The revenue officers were careless, or took bribes to allow vessels to trade with foreign countries; and thus most of the Massachusetts, Rhode Island, and Connecticut merchants were compelled to be smugglers, and to engage in trade that was forbidden by law. About a hundred years after the passage of these laws, the attempt was at last made to enforce them in earnest; and this, as will be seen, helped greatly to bring about the Revolution (§ 193).

As a part of the same system, various acts of Parliament, after 1699, forbade manufactures, such as wool, iron, paper, hats, and leather, in the colonies. These laws were also evaded.

72. The Indians could very soon see plainly that the white strangers were driving them away from the coast and out of their ancient possessions. One of them, Philip, chief of the Wampanoags, a Rhode Island tribe, was bold enough to strike a blow for his race. He travelled through New England until he had united the Indians from Maine to the Hudson River in a league against the English. The war broke out in June, 1675. The Indians attacked Swanzeey, Massachusetts, and killed a number of persons; and, almost at the same time, similar attacks were made on the vil-

71. What were the first occupations of the colonists? What did they afterward engage in? Who were dissatisfied with this? What did Parliament do in 1651? What did these laws forbid? At whom were they aimed? How were they enforced? What trade was built up? What happened a hundred years afterward?

72. Why did the Indians become alarmed? Who was their leader? What league did he form? When did the war break out? Where was the first attack? What other attacks were made? Where was the war most severe?

lages all along the frontier. The towns of western Massachusetts suffered most severely.

See map, § 68.

73. King Philip's War lasted for nearly two years. About thirteen towns were destroyed; very many others were attacked; about six hundred whites were killed in battle; and an unknown number perished by massacre or starvation. The most severe battle, called "the swamp fight," took place in December, 1675.

It was fought by Massachusetts, Plymouth, and Connecticut troops, who surrounded and captured a Narragansett fort, in a swamp near Kingston, Rhode Island, and slaughtered its defenders. The colonies were too strong for the Indians. Philip was beaten out of one place after another; and in August, 1676, he was finally hunted down to his principal residence at Mount Hope, near Bristol, Rhode Island.

Here he was surrounded by a force under Benjamin Church, a Plymouth Indian-fighter. In attempting to break through and escape, Philip was shot and killed. His men were killed or sold into slavery, and the power of the New England Indians was broken forever.



KING PHILIP.

74. The Andros Government.—It has been said that the colonies were subjected to great annoyances under James II. (§ 35). This was particularly the case with the New England colonies. The king hated to know that they were governing themselves under their charters, and longed to show that he was their master.

73. How long did the war last? What were the losses? Describe the swamp fight? What became of Philip? Who attacked him at Mount Hope? Describe his death? What became of his men?

74. Which colonies suffered most under James II.? Why? What is said of Massachusetts? Of Andros's appointment? What did he do in Massachusetts? In Connecticut and Rhode Island? How did the colonists feel toward him? How did the king feel? How was he sent back to England? Were the charters restored? Did Andros return to America?

The English courts had already decided that the Massachusetts charter was void (§ 58); and Sir Edmond Andros, who had lately been governor of New York, was appointed governor of New England, with orders from the king to demand the charters of the colonies. He landed at Boston in December, 1686, and Massachusetts submitted to him for the time. He then went, in 1687, to Hartford and Newport. The charter of Connecticut disappeared (§ 65), and the charter of Rhode Island could not be found; but he declared both governments at an end. The colonists hated him, for he governed cruelly and tyrannically. But his service pleased the king, who added New York and New Jersey to his government the next year. Early in 1689, when rumors of the English revolution reached New England (§ 33), he was seized at Boston by the people, and sent back to England. Connecticut and Rhode Island were allowed to resume their old charters, but the charter of Massachusetts was not restored (§ 58). The new government sent Andros back again to America as governor of Virginia.

75. Early French Wars.—When James II. and his son were driven from England (§ 33), the king of France received them and gave them help. For this and other reasons, France and England were frequently at war for the next seventy years, and the French and English colonies in America took part in the wars. The first three of these were called, from the names of the English rulers, King William's war (1689–1697), Queen Anne's war (1702–1713), and King George's war (1744–1748). In America they were waged mainly by New England and New York against Canada; and the southern colonies took little part in them. But the treaties which ended all these wars agreed that each party should give back its conquests, except that, at the end of Queen Anne's war, England kept Port Royal and Nova Scotia. This was the only gain to the colonies from any of these wars.

The French and Indian war (§ 146) was the first in which all the colonies took part.

76. The French Strongholds were four: Montreal and Quebec in Canada; Port Royal (now Annapolis), a fine harbor in Nova

75. What was one reason for the early French wars? Name the first three of these. What colonies took part in these wars? What was the only gain from them?

76. Name the French strongholds. Which were the most important to New England? What happened in 1690? In 1710? In 1745? What other expeditions were made?

Scotia (or Acadia); and Louisburgh, a strong fortress on the south-east coast of Cape Breton Island. The New-Englanders were most anxious to capture Port Royal and Louisburgh, which were most dangerous to their fishing-vessels on the Newfoundland banks. In 1690, Massachusetts sent an expedition under Sir William Phips, which captured Port Royal; but it was given up at the end of the war. In 1710, it was captured again, after one failure, and this time it was kept. In 1745, the New



EARLY FRENCH WARS.

England colonies united and captured Louisburgh, with the assistance of a British fleet; but this was given back at the end of the war. Several land expeditions were made against Montreal and Quebec, but they were entirely unsuccessful (§ 154).

77. The Indians to the northwest, in western New York and Canada, took the side of the French, for the French were always more successful than the English in gaining the liking of the Indians. Thus the whole frontier was kept in alarm. The secret and savage fashion in which the Indians attacked the border towns, and killed the people or carried them as captives to Canada, embittered the colonists against the French as well, and united them in the final French and Indian war, which will be described hereafter (§ 146).

The "Five Nations" of Indians, afterward called the "Six Nations" (§ 3), joined the English at first, but usually refused to take part in the wars.

78. Growth of New England.—No one can do anything more than guess at the population of the colonies before the first census of the United States was taken in 1790 (§ 314). We can only know that, after the colonies were fairly settled, the population of most of them doubled about once in thirty years. In 1715, British

77. Which side was taken by the Indians? Why? What was the effect of the Indian warfare?

78. Is anything known certainly of the population of the early colonies? Of their increase? What was the population believed to be in 1715? In 1750?

officials estimated the population of this section at 161,650. In 1750, New England contained probably about 430,000 persons.

The population in 1715 was supposed to be divided as follows: Massachusetts, 96,000; New Hampshire, 9,650; Connecticut, 17,000; Rhode Island, 9,000. In 1750: Massachusetts, 210,000; New Hampshire, 50,000; Rhode Island, 40,000, Connecticut, 135,000. These were mere guesses.

79. The People had been made a thrifty and hardy race by constant struggles against a severe climate. They had not only agriculture, but ships, commerce, and fisheries, and had begun to introduce manufactures. None of them were very rich, and few were very poor. They were accustomed to govern themselves in their towns and by the privileges of their charters. They were therefore always ready to resist any attempt to take away the smallest of their privileges; and the king's officials found no part of America so hard to manage as New England. Education was very general. The first two of the present colleges in America were founded in New England: Harvard, at Cambridge, in Massachusetts, founded in 1638; and Yale, at New Haven, in Connecticut, founded in 1700. Both negroes and Indians were held as slaves in this section. But the climate was not favorable to slavery, and the system showed no signs of increase.

SUPPLEMENTARY QUESTIONS.

Locations.—Locate Swanzev, Mass.; Kingston, R. I.; Bristol, R. I.; Boston, Mass.; Hartford, Conn.; Newport, R. I.; Montreal, Can.; Quebec, Can.; Annapolis, N. S.; Cape Breton Island; Louisburgh, Cape Breton I.; Cambridge, Mass.; New Haven, Conn.

REVIEW.—Give the year of the New England union. The four colonies which composed it. The year of the first Navigation Act. The year of King Philip's war. The year of the Andros government. Name the three early French wars. When was Port Royal finally captured?

THE SOUTHERN COLONIES.

(1) *Virginia.*

80. The First Settlement of Virginia was at Jamestown, in

79. What was the character of the people? What were their occupations? What is said of the rich and poor? Of their self-government? What were the consequences? What is said of education? Of the colleges? Of slavery? Of its prospects?

80. Where and when was the first settlement in Virginia? Did the colony prosper at first? What is said of the colonists? What was the result? When did the colony become firmly established? What is said of its assembly?

1607 (§ 36). For several years, the colony had a hard struggle for life. Most of the colonists were broken-down gentlemen, who neither wished to work nor knew how to work; and the people had quite decided, several times, to return to England, when new supplies of men and food changed their purpose and saved the colony. In about ten years the colony became established firmly enough to take care of itself. It obtained from the king the power to make its own laws in an assembly, or legislature, elected for that purpose; and in 1619, the first assembly ever elected in America met at Jamestown. In the same year we first hear of negro slavery in America (§ 48).



SEAL OF VIRGINIA.

Afterward the other colonies also claimed the privilege of electing assemblies, and thus secured the power of making their own laws.

81. Captain John Smith was the most prominent man in the



CAPTAIN JOHN SMITH.

first two years of the colony's history. He seems to have been a bold and shrewd man, who did the colony good service in controlling the Indians and the colonists, and in exploring the surrounding country. He had a vivid imagination, and was a wonderful story-teller; but many of his stories are very doubtful. Among them is that of his capture by the Indians, their decision to beat out his brains with a war-club, and his rescue by Pocahontas, the daughter of the

chief Powhatan. It is true, however, that there was an Indian girl named Pocahontas, and that she married a white settler, visited

81. Who was at first the most prominent man in the colony? What is said of him? Of his powers of story-telling? What was his story of Pocahontas? What became of her?

England, and died there; and it was during her visit that Smith first told this story.

Smith was not liked by those colonists whom he forced to work. In 1609, he went back to England; he afterward returned to America, and explored and named the coast of New England (§ 38).



POCAHONTAS.

82. The Colony soon became prosperous through the cultivation of tobacco. Tobacco was the money of the colony, and everything was paid for in so many pounds of tobacco. One pound was then worth from two to twelve cents of our money, but could buy five or six times as much as at the present time. The settlers built their own vessels, and carried on commerce with England. The population grew steadily. In 1715, it was believed to be about the same as that of Massachusetts, 95,000; and in 1750, it was estimated at 285,000.

When the Revolution (§ 193)

broke out, Virginia was the richest and most important of the thirteen colonies.

83. The Territory of Virginia at first covered nearly all of the present Southern States, north of South Carolina, but was gradually reduced by the formation of new colonies (§ 37). Thus, when the Revolution broke out, Virginia covered the present States of Virginia, West Virginia, and Kentucky. But she claimed that her northern boundary ran northwest, instead of west, so as to take in the western part of Pennsylvania, and the present great northwestern States of Ohio, Indiana, Illinois, Michigan, and Wisconsin (§ 275).

82. How did the colony become prosperous? What was its money? How did its commerce increase? What was the population in 1715? In 1750? What is said of Virginia in the Revolution?

83. What did the territory of Virginia cover at first? When the Revolution broke out? What further claim did she make?

84. Virginia became a royal colony in 1624 (§ 37). The king did not alter the written constitution which the London Company had given to the colonists, and they generally governed themselves. During the Commonwealth period (§ 32), they sided with the king, until the Parliament threatened to send over a force to conquer them. The Navigation Act (§ 71) was also intended to punish them. They submitted unwillingly, and rejoiced at the restoration of Charles II. (§ 33). But the new king showed them no favor. In 1673, he actually presented the colony to one of his court favorites, but took the gift back again nine years afterward.

At the restoration, Virginia called herself the new king's "ancient dominion," because of her steady loyalty; and the State is still often called "The Old Dominion."

85. Indian Wars were not numerous. In the first, in 1622, about 350 settlers were killed, and there was some danger of the destruction of the colony. In the second, in 1644, about 300 settlers were killed. In both of these wars the Virginia Indians were conquered, and after the second they were no more troublesome. In 1675, the year of King Philip's war (§ 72), the Maryland Indians became troublesome to the Virginia settlers, and this was one of the reasons for the following rebellion.

86. Bacon's Rebellion.—Governor Berkeley and a few of his friends had got all the powers of government into their own hands. They believed that the Maryland Indians had been unjustly treated, and refused to make war on them. In 1676, a young planter, named Nathaniel Bacon, raised troops among the settlers, compelled the governor to conquer the Indians, and finally drove him out of Jamestown. In the struggle, Jamestown was burned, and it was never rebuilt; Williamsburgh became the capital. Bacon died suddenly, and his rebellion fell to pieces. The enraged governor hanged twenty-two of the principal rebels, and for a time governed the colony very harshly. "The old fool," said the king, "has taken away more lives in that naked country than I did for the murder of my father."

84. What happened in 1624? Was there any change in the government? Which side did Virginia take during the Commonwealth period? What did Parliament do? With what result? How did the new king act?

85. What is said of the first Indian war? Of the second? What were their results? What happened in 1675?

86. Who controlled Virginia at the time? What was their feeling as to the Indians? What is said of Bacon? What happened to Jamestown? How did the rebellion come to an end? What was the governor's vengeance? What did the king say of it?

87. The Virginian Colonists generally lived on large plantations, for they had plenty of fertile land at command, and were not afraid of Indians. There were thus very few towns in the colony. The people were not so nearly equal in wealth as in New England: there were more very rich men, and more very poor ones; and the rich men were generally able to get most of the powers of government to themselves. Most of them were members of the Church of England, and their assemblies passed severe laws against the entrance of men of other religious beliefs to the colony. In this respect it was like most of the other colonies (§ 55). It was not until after the Revolution that this spirit of religious persecution altogether died away.

88. Education.—The Virginians were so scattered that schools



were very few, and education was confined to the rich, who could send their sons to England. Governor Berkeley said, "I thank God there are no free schools, nor printing, and I hope we shall not have them these hundred years." In 1692, William and

Mary College, the second college in the United States, was founded at Williamsburgh. It was not very successful for many years, but was the only college in the southern colonies. It is no longer in existence.

SUPPLEMENTARY QUESTIONS.

Locations.—Locate Jamestown; Williamsburgh. Name the States which were a part of Virginia in 1776 (§ 83). Bound the present State of Virginia.

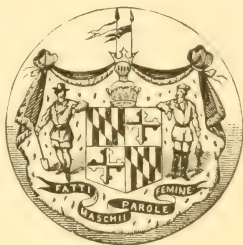
REVIEW.—When and where was the first settlement in Virginia? Give the date of the first legislative assembly. Of the first mention of slavery. When did Virginia become a royal colony? Give the date of Bacon's rebellion.

87. How did the Virginians generally live? Were there many towns? How were they divided as to wealth? As to religion? What laws did the assemblies enact? Was Virginia the only colony that did so?

88. What is said of schools and education? What was Governor Berkeley's feeling? What is said of William and Mary College?

(2) *Maryland.*

89. Roman Catholics were persecuted by the laws of England, as the Puritans and Quakers were persecuted, and the colony of Maryland was founded as their place of refuge. One of the leading English Catholics was Sir George Calvert, Lord Baltimore. He at first tried to found a Catholic colony in Newfoundland, but the unfavorable climate defeated it. He then fixed on that part of Virginia east of the Potomac River. Virginia had already explored it, and was preparing to settle it; but Charles I. granted it to Baltimore without asking Virginia's consent. Baltimore died, but the patent for what is now the State of Maryland was given to his son, Cecil Calvert, in 1632. The name of Maryland was given by the king in honor of the queen, Henrietta Maria (or Mary).



SEAL OF MARYLAND.

Calvert meant to call it *Crescentia*, the "growing" colony.

90. Settlement was begun in 1634, by Leonard Calvert, a brother of the new Lord Baltimore. He settled, with 200 immigrants, at a little Indian village near the mouth of the Potomac, and called the place St. Mary's. The town of Annapolis was founded about 1683, and Baltimore in 1729. In 1635, the proprietor called a legislative assembly; and from that time the people governed themselves, paying the proprietor some small taxes. The proprietor, in 1691, was a supporter of James II. (§ 33); and the new king, William, deprived him of his colony, and appointed the governors himself. In 1716, the proprietor's rights were restored to him. The family of Calvert died out in 1771, and the people of Maryland became proprietors in 1776.

89. How were Roman Catholics then treated in England? What is said of Sir George Calvert? Of his Newfoundland colony? What territory did he then fix on? What had Virginia done? To whom was it granted? To whom was the patent given? Why was the name of Maryland given?

90. What is said of the first settlement? When was it made? What is said of the two principal towns? What is said of the government? What happened in 1691? In 1716? What became of the family of Calvert in 1771?

91. Mason and Dixon's Line.—The territory of Maryland, as it was granted to Lord Baltimore, included also the present State of Delaware and the southern part of Pennsylvania. When Pennsylvania was granted to Penn, in 1681 (§ 125), a long dispute followed between Penn and Lord Baltimore as to the boundary between their grants. It was settled in 1763, and the boundary-line was run as at present. This was called "Mason and Dixon's line," from the names of the surveyors who marked it, and was long considered the boundary between the Northern and the Southern States.

92. Religious Persecution was not allowed in Maryland while the Catholics retained control of it: in this respect the Baptist colony of Rhode Island, the Catholic colony of Maryland, and the Quaker colony of Pennsylvania deserve equal credit above the other colonies. Other settlers soon came into Maryland, and they were not so liberal. Some were from Virginia, and disliked the Maryland government; others were Puritans, and disliked the Roman Catholics. In 1692, Maryland became an Episcopalian colony, like Virginia (§ 87). Laws were passed to support the Church of England by taxes, and religious toleration was checked. The unfortunate Roman Catholics, who had founded the colony and admitted others to it, were now harshly treated, forbidden to vote, and forced to pay taxes for the support of another church. This state of things lasted until the Revolution, and then this religious intolerance came to an end.

There were hardly any serious Indian wars in Maryland.

93. The Maryland Colonists lived very much like those of Virginia (§§ 87, 88). Chesapeake Bay furnished great advantages for ships engaged in foreign commerce, and the Susquehannah River at its head opened up the Indian trade to the merchants of Maryland. Baltimore became one of the busiest towns on the coast, and the population of the colony grew from 200 in 1634 to 30,000 in 1700, 50,000 in 1715, and about 150,000 in 1750.

91. What did Baltimore's grant include? How did a dispute follow the grant of Pennsylvania? How was it settled? What is said of the boundary?

92. What is said of religious persecution? What three colonies did not allow persecution? How was this changed? What happened in 1692? What laws were passed? How were the Roman Catholics treated? How long did this state of things last?

93. What is said of the Maryland colonists? Of Chesapeake Bay and the Susquehannah River? Of Baltimore? Of the colony's population?

SUPPLEMENTARY QUESTIONS.

Locations.—Locate Newfoundland (§ 76); the Potomac River (§ 88); Annapolis; Baltimore; Chesapeake Bay; the Susquehannah River. Bound the State of Maryland.

REVIEW.—Name the founder of Maryland. Give the date of the grant. Of the first settlement. Of the establishment of the Church of England. When did the Calvert family come to an end?

(3) *North Carolina.*

94. Carolina was granted in 1663 and 1665, by Charles II., to eight proprietors. It included the territory now in the States of North Carolina, South Carolina, and Georgia, westward to the Pacific Ocean. The French at Port Royal had called the country Carolina, a hundred years before (§ 19), in honor of their king, Charles IX. (*Carolus*, in Latin); and the English now retained the name, in honor of their king, Charles II. The country had remained uninhabited since the failure of the French colony, except that a few Virginians had pushed down the coast and settled the northern shore of Albemarle Sound.

Among the proprietors were Hyde, Lord Clarendon; Monk, Duke of Albemarle, who had been a leader in restoring Charles II.; Lord Ashley Cooper, afterward Earl of Shaftesbury; Governor Berkeley, of Virginia (§ 86); and his brother and Carteret, afterward of New Jersey (§ 122).

95. The Plan of Government, which the proprietors formed for their new colony, was very remarkable. There were to be nobles, called barons, landgraves, and caziques, each with a certain number of acres of land. The rest of the people were to have no share in the government, and were to be bought and sold with the soil, just as the serfs were, until recently, in Russia. The plan was ridiculous for an American settlement; the settlers would not obey it; and the proprietors gave it up, after trying it about twenty years.

This was the only colony in which there was an attempt to have a nobility (§ 46). John Locke, a very great philosopher, who was at one time Cooper's secretary, drew up the plan.

96. The Province remained united for about seventy years. But it was found from the beginning that North Carolina and

94. What is said of the grant of Carolina? What territory was included within it? How had it received its name? Was it inhabited?

95. What is said of the plan of government? Of the nobility? Of the rest of the people? Why did the plan fail?

96. How long did the province remain united? What was the difficulty in governing it? How were its two parts governed? What happened in 1729? How were the two colonies governed thereafter?

South Carolina covered too much space to be easily governed as one colony. They were therefore considered two counties of the same province, and each had its own assembly and governor. In 1729, the proprietors gave up their rights to the king. Both North Carolina and South Carolina then remained royal colonies until the Revolution (§ 193).

97. In North Carolina the proprietors adopted the Virginian settlement (§ 94) as their own, and called it the Albemarle colony. In 1665, a colony from Barbadoes settled near the Cape Fear River. It was called the Clarendon colony, but was soon removed



SEAL OF NORTH CAROLINA.

into South Carolina. The population of the whole colony grew very slowly for a time. There were a few settlers from New England, and more fled to North Carolina from Virginia after the failure of Bacon's rebellion (§ 86). Newbern was settled by a colony of Swiss in 1711. After 1740, there was an increase of settlement, because of rebellions in Scotland.

Those who had been engaged in them were allowed by the British Government to leave Scotland, and many of them settled in North Carolina. Fayetteville was settled by Scotch immigrants in 1746. The population of the colony was estimated at 11,200 in 1715, and about 90,000 in 1750.

98. The Government was generally very bad. Hardly any colony had such a remarkable succession of bad men sent out as governors; and the early history of North Carolina is mainly one of resistance by the people to the governors' illegal taxation. In 1677, one governor attempted to enforce the Navigation Act (§ 71); and the people imprisoned him and made a new government for themselves. In 1688, another governor was driven away from the colony. In 1771, Governor Tryon collected an army, fought a pitched battle with his people, who called themselves Regulators, and defeated them. The cruel manner in which he punished the leaders

97. What is said of the Albemarle colony? Of the Clarendon colony? Of the growth of population? Whence did the early settlers come? What is said of Newbern? How did the population increase after 1740? What is said of Fayetteville? What was the population in 1715? In 1750? In 1776?

98. How was the colony governed? What is said of its governors? Of its history? What happened in 1677? In 1688? In 1771? How did this lead to the settlement of Tennessee?

drove many of them across the mountains, and thus helped to settle Tennessee (§ 303).

99. Indian Wars were few. The most important was with the Tuscaroras, in 1711. With the help of South Carolina, the colony defeated the Indians, and drove most of them away to New York, where they became one of the Six Nations (§ 3).

100. Scattered Population.—The North Carolina colonists were at first more widely scattered than in any other colony. The great pine woods along the coast had no good roads; and the people were mainly engaged in making tar and turpentine from the trees. As they explored the country farther from the coast, they found it much more open and fertile, and here they engaged in farming and hunting. But they were still very much scattered, and were unable to introduce schools in any great number, or the conveniences of settled life. Nevertheless, the colony became firmly established. It refused to allow religious persecution, defeated the attempt to make the Church of England the colony church, and became a place of refuge for those who were persecuted in neighboring colonies. But the spirit of independence which marked the people was not pleasant to the governors, who often called them “a turbulent people.”



Scale of Miles
0 50 100 200 300
CAROLINA.

SUPPLEMENTARY QUESTIONS.

Locations.—Locate the States of North Carolina, South Carolina, Georgia, Tennessee, Alabama, and Mississippi (§ 10); Port Royal; Albemarle Sound; Cape Fear River; Newbern; Fayetteville.

99. What is said of Indian wars? Of the Tuscarora war? What was its result?

100. What is said of the people? Of the country along the coast? Of the occupation of the people? Of the country in the interior? Of the condition of the people? What course did the colony take in religious matters? What did the governors think of the people?

REVIEW.—Name the present States included in the province of Carolina. When was it granted? When was it divided? What was the first colony located in North Carolina? What was the year of the Tuscarora war?

(4) *South Carolina.*

101. The First English Settlement in South Carolina was made in 1670. A colony, sent out by the proprietors, reached the coast at Port Royal, then sailed north to the Ashley River, and on the first highland above the mouth of the river established a settlement, which was afterward called Old Charlestown. The location was found to be a poor one, and in 1680 the settlement was moved down to the point of land between the Ashley and Cooper rivers, where Charleston now stands. The Clarendon colony from North Carolina soon joined it (§ 97).



SEAL OF SOUTH CAROLINA.

Dutch families, dissatisfied with English rule in New York (§ 115), also came to South Carolina, and so did a number of French Huguenot settlers, driven from home by religious persecution. As in North Carolina, there were many Scotch settlers. The population of the colony was estimated at 16,750 in 1715, and about 80,000 in 1750.

Charleston was the only important town. It was known as Charlestown until after the Revolution.

102. The Colony first became prosperous through the cultivation of rice, which began in 1693. For a time, rice was the money of the colony, as tobacco was in Virginia and Maryland (§ 82). In 1740, it required two hundred and fifty-seven British vessels to carry the colony's produce to Europe. In 1754, indigo was introduced with still more success. These two articles made South Carolina one of the richest of the colonies.

Cotton was not successfully cultivated until after 1793 (§ 317).

103. Two Districts, the uplands and the lowlands, were formed in the colony as population grew. The uplands, toward the

101. When was the first English settlement made? What is said of it? How was it removed? What other colony joined it? What is said of Dutch settlers? Of French settlers? Of Scotch settlers? Of the population of the colony?

102. What is said of the cultivation of rice? Of money? Of foreign commerce? Of indigo? Of the colony's prosperity?

103. What two districts were formed? What is said of the uplands? Of the lowlands? Of its laborers? What negro insurrection took place?

mountains, were settled by foreign immigrants and mountaineers, who cultivated small farms or engaged in hunting. This part of the colony had little money and few negro slaves. The lowlands, where the rice, indigo, and cotton grew, contained the wealthy people and the large plantations. This part of the colony was cultivated by negro slaves, for it was unhealthy for white laborers; and before many years there were more than twice as many negroes as whites. In 1740, there was a small negro insurrection.

104. The People were thus very poor in the uplands, and very much scattered in the lowlands. There were hardly any schools except in Charleston; but the rich planters of the lowlands sent their sons to England to be educated. The people of the lowlands were generally members of the Church of England, and in 1706 they made it the established church of the colony. But there can hardly be said to have been any religious persecution in this colony.

105. Early Wars.—None of the southern colonies took part in the early French wars, with the exception of Queen Anne's war (§ 75). In 1702, South Carolina, then the southernmost colony, sent an expedition to the Spanish territory of Florida. It captured St. Augustine, but was driven away by the arrival of two Spanish war-vessels. In 1706, a French and Spanish expedition from Cuba appeared before Charleston, but the South Carolinians fought so well that it was beaten off with the loss of half its men. Before the next war took place, Georgia had become the southernmost colony, and did most of the fighting (§ 110).

106. Indian Wars.—The Indian allies of France and Spain were always troublesome. In 1715, they formed a confederacy to destroy the white settlers. The colony was aided by Virginia and North Carolina; and the Indians were defeated, and their power was broken. The proprietors refused to pay their share of the expense of these wars; and in 1719, before they had given up their rights, the people overturned their government, and obtained

104. What was the condition of the people? Of education? Of the established church? Of religious persecution?

105. What is said of the early French wars? What happened in 1702? In 1706? What colony did most of the fighting thereafter?

106. What is said of the Indians? What happened in 1715? What was the result of the war? How did it overturn the government of the proprietors?

a governor from the king. South Carolina then remained a royal colony until the Revolution.

SUPPLEMENTARY QUESTIONS.

Locations (§ 100).—Locate Port Royal; Charleston; St. Augustine. Bound the State of South Carolina.

REVIEW.—When was the first French settlement made in South Carolina (§ 19)? The first English settlement? When was it removed to Charleston? When was rice introduced? Indigo? Give the date of the attack on St. Augustine. Of the attack on Charleston. Of the Indian war.

(5) *Georgia.*

107. The English Poor suffered terribly at the beginning of the last century. Those who could not pay their debts were imprisoned in jails, whose condition was filthy beyond description. Their sufferings, and those of the English poor generally, touched the heart of James Oglethorpe, an English officer and a kindly man. In 1732, he obtained from King George II. a grant of that part of South Carolina west of the Savannah River. He named this territory



SEAL OF GEORGIA.

Georgia, in honor of the king. The English Parliament made grants of money to assist those who wished to emigrate.

As the territory of South Carolina had been surrendered to the king in 1729 (§ 96), its people could make no objection to the king's formation of a new colony within their territory. Indeed, they favored it, in order to place a new colony as a barrier between themselves and the Spaniards in Florida (§ 105).

108. The First Settlement was made in 1733, at Savannah, when Oglethorpe himself fixed a colony of one hundred and four teen persons. Colonies of Germans and Scotch followed. Darien and Augusta were founded in 1736. But the colony increased so slowly that in 1750 there were but five thousand inhabitants, living in these three towns, and on a few scattered plantations. Its territory extended to the Mississippi River, covering the present States

107. What is said of the condition of the English poor? Of imprisonment for debt? Who took up their cause? What grant did he obtain? What name did he give to it? How did the Parliament assist the colony?

108. What was the first settlement? What colonies followed? What towns were next founded? How did the colony increase? What was its territory?

of Georgia, Alabama, and Mississippi; but most of it was still in the hands of the Indians.

Oglethorpe treated the Indians justly, and bought from them the land that he needed. The Indians gave the colonists very little trouble.

109. Georgia was the latest and the weakest of the colonies. Slavery was at first forbidden in it, and many of the colonists believed that this was the reason for their lack of prosperity. In 1747, the trustees yielded to the wishes of the colonists, and allowed negro slaves to be brought into the colony. In 1752, the trustees gave up the colony to the king, and Georgia became a royal colony.

110. The Spanish War.—England declared war against Spain in 1739, and the whole burden of the war in America fell on the southernmost colonies. Early in 1740, Oglethorpe attacked Florida with Georgia troops and captured two towns. He went again to Florida some months afterward, with fresh troops from South Carolina, and laid siege to the principal town, St. Augustine. Sickness in his army broke up the siege, and he retired to Georgia. In 1742, a Spanish expedition returned the attack. Oglethorpe met it near the mouth of the Altamaha River, and defeated the Spaniards in one battle. They then retired to Cuba, and warlike operations ceased.

Oglethorpe returned to England in 1743 and remained there. While he lived he continued to be a warm friend to the colonies. He died in 1785, at the age of 97, having seen the independence of the United States acknowledged by Great Britain (§ 264).

SUPPLEMENTARY QUESTIONS.

Locations (§100).—Locate Savannah; Darien; Augusta; St. Augustine; the Altamaha River; the three States which were included in the colony of Georgia (§ 108).

REVIEW.—When was Georgia granted? Who was its founder? When and where was the first settlement made? When did Oglethorpe attack Florida? When did the Spaniards attack Georgia? When was slavery introduced? When did Georgia become a royal colony?

109. What is said of Georgia? Of slavery? What happened in 1747? In 1752?

110. What is said of the Spanish war? Of Oglethorpe's first attack in Florida? Of his second attack? Why did it fail? What happened in 1742? What was done by Oglethorpe? What was the result?

(6) *The Southern Colonies in General.*

111. Their Independent Position.—The southern colonies, in their early history, did not generally act together as the New England colonies did (§ 70). New England was not a large territory. Its people were more closely settled, were nearly all of the same blood, and were thus very likely to act together. The territory covered by the southern colonies was very large, and was crossed by very many large rivers flowing into the Atlantic Ocean. Most of the people were English, but there were many colonies of Scotch, Irish, French, Germans, and Dutch. Each planter lived at a distance from others, on a great plantation. For all these reasons, life in the southern colonies was quiet, and had little to do with neighboring colonies, so that their early history has no such example of united action as the New England union (§ 70).

112. The People of the southern colonies lived generally as in Virginia (§ 87). There were many large plantations, and few large towns or attempts at manufactures. Many of the planters owned their own vessels, and sent them directly to Europe from their plantations. Many of them also kept their accounts very carelessly, and were hopelessly in debt to the agents in Europe who sold their cargoes and bought goods in return for them. There were very few schools; the children of the planters were educated in Europe or at home on the plantation, while poorer children were educated very little or not at all. As a general rule, it may be said that neighboring colonies and neighboring people had most to do with one another in New England, less in the middle colonies, and least of all in the southern colonies.

This separation of life in the Southern States has influenced their history very strongly down to recent times. The people of each State, separated from the rest of the country by long distances and poor communication, were apt to think the State the most important and powerful part of the country (§ 485).

111. What was a difference between the southern colonies and New England? What is said of the territory covered by New England? Of its people? Of the territory covered by the southern colonies? Of their people? Of their planters? What were the consequences?

112. What was the manner of life in the south? What is said of commerce? Of education? Of intercourse with one another?

THE MIDDLE COLONIES.

(1) *New York.*

113. The Dutch Settlement of New Netherlands has already been narrated (§ 28). Four governors, named Peter Minuit, Walter Van Twiller, William Kieft, and Peter Stuyvesant, sent out by the Dutch West India Company, ruled New Netherlands successively from 1626 until 1664. By that time, the English colonies to the north and south had grown so strong that they began to feel it to be troublesome and dangerous to have a foreign colony between them. In 1664, King Charles II., claiming that the territory of New Netherlands belonged to England by discovery, and that the Dutch were only intruders, granted the territory to his brother, the Duke of York. The duke sent out a force, the same year, under Colonel Nichols, who compelled Stuyvesant, the last Dutch governor, to

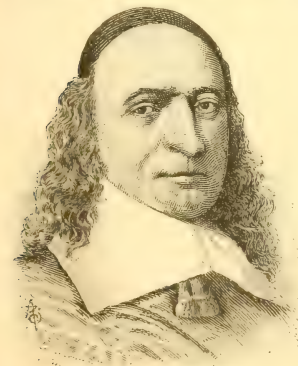


SEAL OF NEW YORK.

give up possession. The territory then became the English colonies of New York and New Jersey (§ 122).

“Knickerbocker’s History of New York,” by Washington Irving, gives such a delightful picture of life in New Netherlands that people have almost come to take his romance as a reality.

114. New York became a royal colony, for its owner, the Duke of York, succeeded to the throne almost immediately. A large part of Long Island was settled by Connecticut people, who claimed it as part of their colony; but the duke’s power



PETER STUYVESANT.

was too great for them to resist, and Long Island became a part of New York. But New York was no such important power as

113. Name the four Dutch governors. What claim and grant were made by Charles II.? What was done by the Duke of York?

114. What was the form of New York’s government? How did Long Island become a part of New York? What is said of New York’s importance?

it has since become. To the north, it covered both banks of the Hudson to Albany. Beyond Albany, there were a few scattered settlements, such as Schenectady, but almost the whole territory belonged to the Indians or to the French, and could hardly be considered a part of New York at all. New York was thus a small colony, a narrow strip of land on the Hudson, with a fine harbor and island at the south, and at the northwest an excellent opportunity for growth. It was in reality one of the small colonies and States until the opening of the Erie Canal in 1825 (§ 430).

115. Holland had good reason to complain of the conquest of New York, and in 1673, while at war with England, she sent a fleet and reconquered it. Many of the people were not sorry for the change; but the colony was given back to the English when peace was made in 1674.

116. The Settlement of the colony, under the Dutch, had been accomplished by granting large tracts of land to "patroons," that is, leaders who brought over a number of settlers for their estates. New York was thus different from New England; instead of little townships, divided into farms owned by the farmers, it had large tracts of land owned by patroons, and the farmers were only tenants. On the other hand, it was also different from the Southern colonies; the people lived rather closer together, and had more to do with one another.

The patroon system was not changed under the English, and traces of it have remained until our own day (§ 531).

117. The English Government of New York was almost always bad. The Duke of York did not allow the people to elect an assembly until 1683, and as soon as he became king, in 1685, he took the privilege away. It was restored by William and Mary in 1691, and was not taken away again. Very many of the governors were men unfit to govern. The people drove one of them away in 1689, and put one of their own number, Jacob Leisler, into his place. Leisler was not altogether respectful to the new governor, Sloughter, sent out by William and Mary in 1691, and the governor arrested him for high treason. When Leisler had been con-

115. What was done by Holland? How was the colony restored?

116. What is said of the patroons? How did New York differ from the other colonies?

117. What was the character of the English government? What is said of the assembly? Of the governors? Of the case of Leisler? Of other governors?

victed, the governor hesitated to sign the death-warrant; but Leisler's enemies made Sloughter drunk, got his signature to the death-warrant, and hanged Leisler before the governor became sober again. Other governors were no better than Sloughter. One was believed to be a partner of the pirates who infested the coast; another swindled the colony and robbed its treasury; and another cheated the people by making them pay illegal fees.

118. Pirates, or buccaneers, were very troublesome to all the colonies in their early history, particularly to New York. They made navigation so dangerous that, in 1697, Captain Robert Kidd, a New York ship-master, was sent against them by the governor. He ran away with the vessel and turned pirate himself. He returned some



NEW YORK CITY IN 1664.

three years afterward, was arrested, tried in England and hanged. Piracy in American waters was finally put down about 1720.

Kidd's name is variously given as William or Robert. He is supposed to have buried his money somewhere on Long Island.

119. Negro Slavery existed in the colony, though there were not so many slaves as in the southern colonies. In 1740, it was believed that the negroes in New York City had made a plot to kill all the whites. Before the excitement ceased, 4 whites and 18 negroes were hanged, 14 negroes were burned at the stake, and 71 negroes were banished. It is almost certain now, however, that there was in reality no such plot.

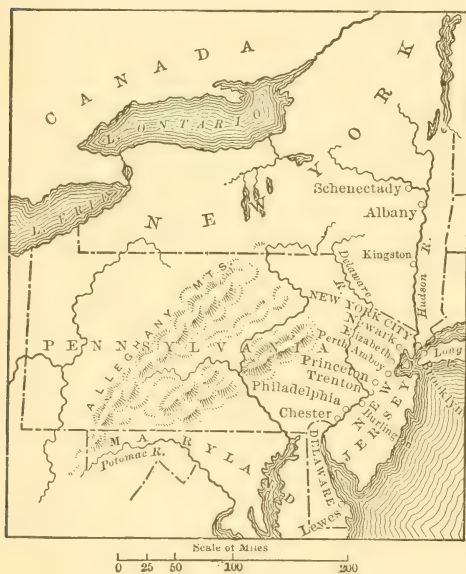
120. New York City had become one of the most important places on the coast before 1750. Its great advantages were its

118. What is said of the pirates? Who was sent against them? What was his career? When was piracy put down?

119. What is said of negro slavery? Of the negro plot in New York City?

120. What is said of New York City? What were its advantages? What was the disadvantage of other towns on the coast? What service did the Hudson River render to New York? What was the population of the city in 1697? Its extent? Its population in 1730? In 1750?

fine harbor, and the noble river which emptied into it. The other towns on the coast were shut off from the far west by the Appalachian or Alleghany Mountains, which follow the Atlantic coast, at a distance of one or two hundred miles from it, from Georgia to Maine. But the Hudson River broke through this barrier, and gave New York easy access to Canada and the profitable Indian trade. In 1697, the city contained about 4,300 inhabitants, about one third being slaves. It extended from the Battery to a palisaded wall, where Wall Street now runs. All above Wall Street was in the country. The population grew to about 8,500 in 1730, and about 12,000 in 1750.



THE MIDDLE COLONIES.

Its population in 1880 was 1,206,299; and Brooklyn, with a population (in 1880) of 566,663, and Jersey City, with a population of 120,722, which were not then in existence, are now really to be considered a part of New York City. (See Appendix. V.)

121. The Growth of the Colony was slow but steady. The population was about 31,000 in 1715, and about 90,000 in 1750. The principal towns were New York City, Albany (called by the Dutch Fort Orange), and Kingston. Brooklyn was only a ferry station

from New York City to Long Island. To the north and west of Albany, Schenectady was founded in 1661. It was but a frontier village, and was captured and plundered by the French and Indians in 1690, and again in 1748.

121. What is said of the colony's growth? What was its population in 1715? In 1750? Its principal towns? What is said of Brooklyn? Of Schenectady?

The population of the State of New York in 1880 was 5,082,871, and seven of its cities had a population of over 50,000 each. The smallest of these, Syracuse, which was but a village in 1825, had about the same population in 1880 as the whole colony had 150 years before.

SUPPLEMENTARY QUESTIONS.

Locations.—Locate New York City; Long Island; the Hudson River; Albany; the Appalachian or Alleghany Mountains; Kingston; Brooklyn; Schenectady. Bound the State of New York.

REVIEW.—When was the Hudson River discovered (§ 28)? When was the colony seized by the English? Who was its first proprietor? What were its larger land-owners called? When was Leisler hanged? What was the date of Kidd's piracy? Of the negro plot?

(2) *New Jersey.*

122. New Jersey was a part of New Netherland under the Dutch (§ 28). In 1664, the Duke of York granted it to Lord John Berkeley and Sir George Carteret. In 1676, it was divided: East Jersey belonged to Carteret, and West Jersey to a company of Quakers, who had bought out Berkeley's interest. In 1702, all the proprietors gave up their rights to the queen, and New Jersey became a royal colony. It had the same governor as New York until 1738; but in that year it became an entirely separate colony.



SEAL OF NEW JERSEY.

The name New Jersey was given in compliment to Carteret, for merly governor of the island of Jersey in the English Channel.

123. The First Settlement was made in 1664 at Elizabethtown (now Elizabeth), by Puritans from Long Island. Newark was settled by Connecticut people in 1666. Burlington, a Quaker town, founded in 1677, was one of the capitals of the colony. Perth Amboy was the other, and it was thought for a long time that it was to be a greater city than New York. The population of the colony was estimated at 22,500 in 1715, and at about 75,000 in 1750.

122. What was New Jersey at first? What happened in 1664? In 1676? In 1702? When did it become a separate colony?

123. What is said of the settlement of Elizabethtown? Of Newark? Of Burlington? Of Perth Amboy? What was the population in 1715? In 1750?

124. The Government was at first very satisfactory. The proprietors, in 1665, granted to the people certain "concessions," which were in fact a charter. The colony was to be governed by an assembly elected by the people, and a governor and council appointed by the proprietors. When New Jersey became a royal colony, the governors often attempted to overrule the assembly, and frequent disputes took place. But the people were very little annoyed by these disputes. Most of them were prosperous farmers, and the mild laws and freedom of the colony attracted many immigrants, particularly Dutch from New York and Long Island. In 1746, the College of New Jersey, the fourth American college, was founded at Elizabethtown; it was removed to Princeton in 1757, and has since remained there.

SUPPLEMENTARY QUESTIONS.

Locations (§ 121).—Locate Elizabeth; Newark; Burlington; Amboy; Princeton. Bound the State of New Jersey.

REVIEW.—When was New Jersey granted? To whom? When was the first settlement made, and where? When did New Jersey become a royal colony? When did it become a separate colony?

(3) *Pennsylvania.*

125. The Quakers were persecuted in England, and they, too, longed for an American place of refuge. It was for this reason that some of them had bought a part of New Jersey (§ 122). In 1681, their most influential leader, William Penn, obtained from Charles II., in payment of a debt which the British Government owed to his father, a grant of the territory which is now the State of Pennsylvania. Although he meant this to be a Quaker colony, he did not shut out persons of other religious beliefs, and he did not allow religious persecution of any kind. In 1682, he bought from the Duke of York what is now the State of Delaware, and added it to his colony (§ 132).



SEAL OF PENNSYLVANIA.

124. What is said of the government? What were the "concessions"? How was the colony to be governed? What disputes took place afterward? What is said of the people? Of the immigrants? Of the College of New Jersey?

125. What is said of the Quakers in England? What grant did Penn obtain? Did he shut out persons of other religious beliefs? What addition of territory did he make to his colony?

The name Pennsylvania means "Penn's woods" or "Penn's forest country." It was given by the king, not by Penn. The southern boundary was only settled after long disputes with Lord Baltimore (§ 91). The charter is still in existence at Harrisburgh.

126. The Quakers differed from the Church of England in many respects, but particularly in their refusal to serve as soldiers, or to encourage war in any way. Further, they made it a point of conscience to take no oaths, and not to take their hats off in the presence of other men. Such ideas and practices were considered highly disrespectful by English magistrates, and the harmless Quakers were sent to jail for them.

127. Settlement had been begun already by the Swedes and Dutch, principally in Delaware. Chester (then called Uplandt) was founded by them in 1648. Penn at once sent out a company of emigrants, and in 1682 came over himself with a still stronger company. He met the Indians under a great elm-tree, by the side of the Delaware River, bought the land from them, and made with them a treaty of peace and good-will which was not broken for seventy years. Early in 1683, he laid out a capital city for the colony, calling it Philadelphia.

The name Philadelphia means "brotherly love."

128. The Government of the new colony was unusually good. The governor was to be appointed by the proprietor; the assembly was to be elected by the people; and the governor and assembly were to make the laws. No one believing "in one Almighty God" was to be annoyed for his religious belief. Christians of every sect could vote or hold office. All this was due to Penn, who made out the plan of government and offered it to the colonists. With some changes, this plan of government remained in force until 1776.



WILLIAM PENN.

126. How did the Quakers differ from the Church of England? What other peculiarities had they? Why were they punished for them?

127. How had settlement been begun? How did Penn increase it? What course did he take with the Indians? What is said of his capital?

128. What is said of the government? What were its provisions? How were religious differences treated? To whom was the form of government due? How long did it last?

129. Penn and his Province.—Penn was deprived of his province in 1692, because he was suspected of siding with James II. (§ 33); but it was given back to him in a short time. In 1699, he made another visit to the colony. He died in 1718, and his sons became proprietors. Part of the land had been reserved for them, and as the colony grew older, the people became more discontented with the payment of rents. There were many disputes and much ill feeling between the people and the proprietors, and during the Revolution the State abolished the rents, paying the proprietors £130,000 (\$650,000) for them.

130. Philadelphia grew rapidly, and was larger than New York City until after the Revolution. In 1740, it had about 12,000 inhabitants, and was as thriving a place as any on the coast. It was noted above other cities for its excellent buildings, its cleanliness, and its care for education. The printing-press was introduced in 1686, and a public high-school in 1689. The present University of Pennsylvania was established in Philadelphia in 1749 as a school. It became a college in 1755, and a university in 1779.

The population of Philadelphia in 1880 was 847,170.

131. The Growth of the Colony was steady. Its population (with Delaware) was estimated at 45,800 in 1715, and about 200,000 in 1750. Most of these were farmers, and Philadelphia was the only important city. The western part of the State, where Pittsburgh now stands, was for many years unsettled (§ 308); and the coal and iron of the eastern part, which now support thriving towns, were quite unknown. No colony had among its settlers such a variety of peoples and languages. As a general rule, the English kept to the southeastern part of the colony, the Dutch and Germans to the east and northeast, and the Scotch and Irish to the central part.

The population of Pennsylvania in 1880 was 4,282,891.

(4) *Delaware.*

132. Delaware, or New Sweden, was settled by the Swedes in 1638, and conquered by the Dutch in 1655 (§ 29). It passed with

129. What was Penn's further connection with the colony? What dispute arose with his sons? How was it ended?

130. What is said of Philadelphia? Of its population? For what was it noted? What happened in 1686? In 1689? What is said of the University of Pennsylvania?

131. What was the population in 1715? In 1750? What was their occupation? What parts of the State were still unsettled? What is said of the peoples and languages among the colonists? How were they generally divided?

132. What was the early history of Delaware? How did it come into Penn's hands? What was its government? When was a State government formed, and under what name? What had Delaware been called previously?

New Netherland to the Duke of York, who sold it to Penn in 1682 (§ 125). Its people were allowed a separate assembly in 1703, but had the same governor as Pennsylvania, and were considered a part of Pennsylvania until the Revolution. They then formed a State government of their own, at first under the name of "the Delaware State," and then under that of the State of Delaware. Their colony had previously been known only as "the Territories," or "the three lower counties on the Delaware."



SEAL OF DELAWARE.

Delaware takes its name from the river which fronts it, and this was named from Lord Delaware, who died off the coast in 1610.

SUPPLEMENTARY QUESTIONS.

Locations (§ 121).—Bound the State of Pennsylvania; the State of Delaware. Locate Chester; Philadelphia.

REVIEW.—When was the grant of Pennsylvania made? To whom? What territory was added by purchase? When was Philadelphia founded? When was Delaware allowed a separate assembly?

THE COLONIES IN GENERAL.

133. The Population of the colonies had grown from nothing in 1606 to about 1,260,000 in 1750. We have only estimates of the population at different times, but these estimates, made by careful men, are probably not far from the truth. In 1688, the colonies had about 200,000 inhabitants; in 1714, about 435,000; in 1727, about 600,000; and in 1750, about 1,260,000. Evidently these were growing colonies, growing far faster than England was growing, or than any other country had ever grown. All these people considered themselves Englishmen, and were quite proud of the name. Most of them had never seen the king, but all were proud of being his subjects. The king of Great Britain had thus a fair chance of becoming more powerful than other kings in Europe, for he had a new and fast-growing kingdom across the Atlantic.

Bancroft divides the population in 1754 as follows: New England, 436,000; middle colonies, 380,000; southern colonies, 609,000 (222,000 being slaves); total, 1,425,000.

133. What is said of the increase of population in the colonies? Give, as nearly as you can, the population at different periods. What is said of the growth of the colonies? Of their people? Of the king's new kingdom?

134. The Industry of the Colonies was remarkable. The people grew tobacco, rice, indigo, and other products, which the people of Great Britain were glad to take and pay for with their own manufactures. A great trade with the colonies had thus grown up, and it made both Great Britain and the colonies richer. The colonies were now so much richer and stronger that they were already able to vote money, ships, and men to help the king in his wars. All this increase of wealth and power had hardly cost England or the king anything. The colony of Georgia, the weakest of all, was the only one which had ever received help in money from the British Government.

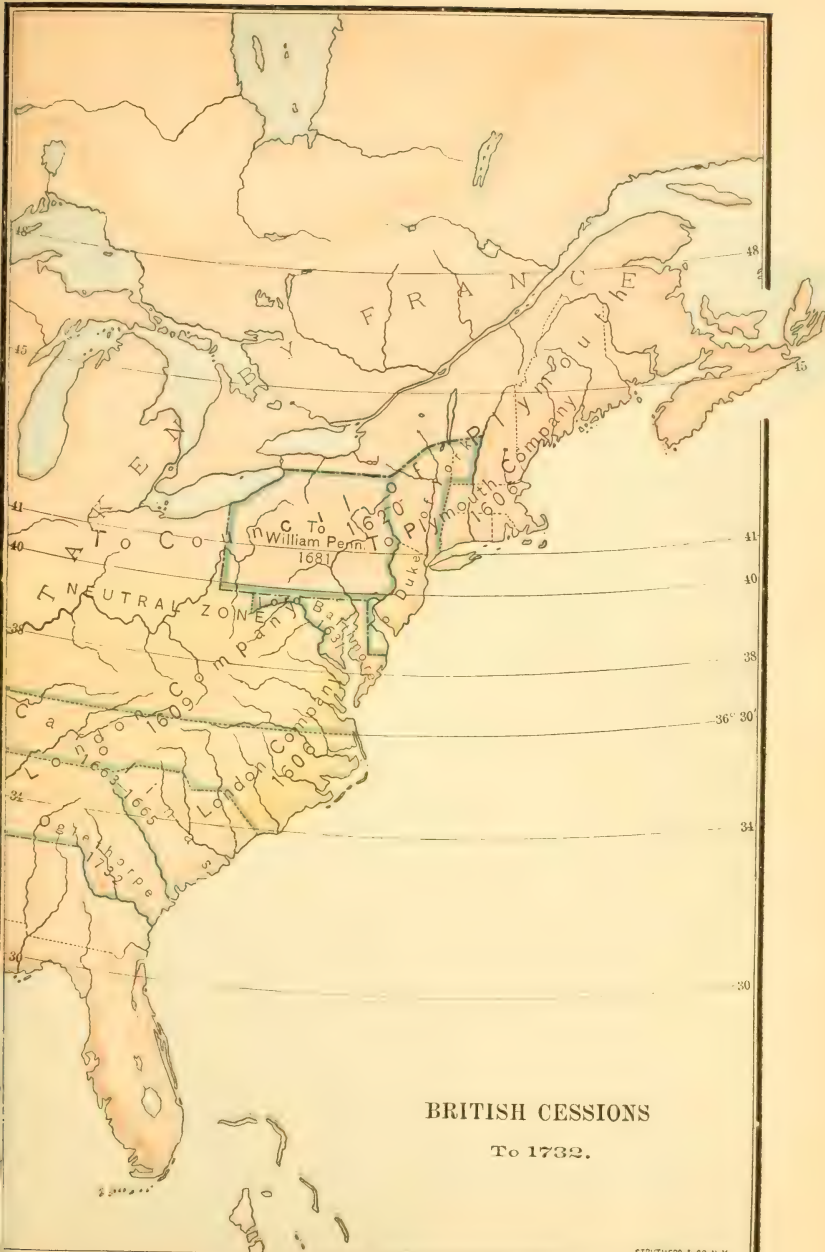
135. Great Britain's Feeling seemed to be more one of alarm than of pleasure at the rapid growth of the colonies, for the king and the government began to fear that the colonies would learn to unite and form a government of their own. In 1696, a department of the British Government had been formed, and called the Board of Trade and Plantations. Its business was to watch the colonies, and to see that they obeyed the Navigation Acts (§ 71). It found its task continually growing harder as the colonies grew richer. And, in the same way, the colonies found the Navigation Acts continually growing more annoying to them. But they still had no thoughts of independence.

136. The Scattered Settlements along the coast were at first widely separated. There was a long stretch of forest between each colony and its nearest neighbor; and it was easier for a man at Boston to get to London than to get to New York or Jamestown. The colonies, except in New England, had very little to do with their neighbors; and it is for this reason that the history of each colony has so far been given separately. In 1750, things had changed very much. The spaces between the original colonies were now pretty well filled with settlements; and men might travel overland along

134. What is said of the occupations of the colonies? Of the growth of trade with Great Britain? Of the power of the colonies? Had all this cost Great Britain very much?

135. How did Great Britain feel as to the growth of her colonies? Why was the Board of Trade and Plantations formed? How did it succeed? How did the colonies feel as to the Navigation Acts?

136. Why was travel from one colony to another difficult at first? Why has the history of each colony been given separately? Was the state of the case the same in 1750? How had travel become easier? What is said of George Whitefield's travels? Was travel as easy as it is now? Why is the history of the colonies now to be given as one?



BRITISH CESSIONS

To 1732.

the whole coast, without running any great danger from Indians, wild beasts, or starvation. In 1740, George Whitefield, the great revivalist preacher, travelled with little difficulty through the whole of the new country, from Georgia to New England. A journey in America was a far more arduous affair than now, for the roads were very bad, there were not enough bridges, and steam was not yet used for travel; but it was far easier than it had been at first. Interchange between the colonies had become more common. It was now easier for them to act together than to act separately; and, as they did act together from this time, their history must henceforth be given as one.

(1) The New England colonies had already often acted together, and even formed a union in 1643 (§ 70). (2) Nearly all the colonies were now to act together in the French and Indian War. (3) All the colonies finally united in resisting the king and Parliament, in beginning the Revolution, and in making a new nation, the United States of America.

137. Summary.—It has seemed best, so far, to give the history of the different colonies in geographical groups. The leading events in their history, in order of time, are as follows:

1606: <i>English colonization</i> begun.....	§ 25
1607: VIRGINIA first settled at Jamestown.....	36
1619: First legislative assembly.....	80
Slavery first mentioned.....	48
1676: Bacon's Rebellion.....	86
1620: MASSACHUSETTS first settled at Plymouth.....	49
1630: Massachusetts Company transferred to America.....	52
1691: The two colonies united.....	58
1692: The Salem witchcraft.....	57
1623: NEW HAMPSHIRE first settled at Dover and Ports mouth.....	59
1641: Became part of Massachusetts.....	60
1691: Became a separate colony.....	60
1623: NEW YORK settled at New Amsterdam by the Dutch.....	28
1664: Conquered by the English.....	28
1691: Leisler's execution.....	117
1740: Negro plot.....	119

137. When did English colonization begin? Give the leading events in the history of Virginia. Of Massachusetts. Of New Hampshire. Of New York. Of Maryland. Of Connecticut. Of Rhode Island. Of Delaware. Give the date of the New England union. Of the first Navigation Act. Give the leading events in the history of North Carolina. Of New Jersey. Give the date of King Philip's War. Give the leading events in the history of South Carolina. Of Pennsylvania. Give the date of the Andros government. Give the leading dates of Queen Anne's War. Of the history of Georgia. Of King George's War.

1634: MARYLAND first settled at St. Mary's.....	§ 90
1692: Toleration ceased.....	92
1763: Mason and Dixon's Line settled.....	91
1634-6: CONNECTICUT first settled at Wethersfield, Windsor, and Hartford.....	62
1638: New Haven settled.....	64
1639: The first constitution was adopted.....	62
1665: The two colonies united.....	65
1636: RHODE ISLAND first settled at Providence.....	66
1644: Its plantations united.....	67
1638: DELAWARE first settled by the Swedes.....	29
1655: Conquered by the Dutch.....	29
1664: Conquered by the English.....	29
1682: Sold to Penn.....	125
1703: Became a separate colony.....	132
1643: The <i>New England Union</i> formed.....	70
1651: The <i>Navigation Acts</i> begun.....	71
1663: NORTH CAROLINA first settled at Albemarle.....	94
1711: The Tuscarora War....	99
1729: The colony transferred to the king.....	96
1664: NEW JERSEY first settled at Elizabethtown.....	123
1702: Becomes a royal colony.....	122
1738: Becomes a separate colony.....	122
1670: SOUTH CAROLINA first settled at old Charleston....	102
1729: Became a royal colony.....	96
1675: <i>King Philip's War</i> begun.....	72
1682: PENNSYLVANIA settled near Philadelphia.....	127
1683: Philadelphia founded.....	127
1701: The new charter given.....	128
1686: The <i>Andros Government</i> begun.....	74
1702: <i>Queen Anne's War</i> begun.....	75
1710: Port Royal (Annapolis) taken.....	76
1713: <i>Queen Anne's War</i> ended.....	75
1733: GEORGIA first settled at Savannah.....	108
1740: The Spanish War.....	110
1752: Georgia became a royal colony.....	109
1744: <i>King George's War</i> begun.....	75
1745: Louisburgh captured.....	76
1748: <i>King George's War</i> ended.....	75

PERIOD IV.—COLONIAL HISTORY: 1750-1763.

(1) FRENCH SETTLEMENT.

138. English Colonization had now seized firmly on the Atlantic coast of North America, between Canada and Florida, and had there formed thirteen colonies. These colonies were most of

138. Where was English colonization firmly fixed? How far westward did the colonies extend? What was their real western boundary? What was claimed by the French?

them supposed to extend westward to the Pacific Ocean; but their actual population did not extend half as far westward as did their boundaries when they became States. From New England to Georgia the Appalachian or Alleghany Mountains were a western boundary for all the colonies, beyond which population had not yet passed. Between the Alleghanies and the Mississippi River, the whole country was now claimed by the French, who had passed into it from Canada, and called it New France, or Louisiana.

The claim really included the whole of western New York also. Properly, the name New France included Canada and all the French possessions in North America. The name Louisiana was given to such French possessions as are now within the United States. After 1763, the name was given to the territory west of the Mississippi (§ 158).

139. Canada fell into the hands of the French after 1605, without any opposition from the English (§ 20). Champlain pushed on westward and explored western Canada and northern New York: Lake Champlain was named after him. Other Frenchmen followed him, the most enterprising being French missionaries to the Indians. In 1673, one of them, named Marquette, with a trader named Joliet, entered what is now the United States, in search of a great river of which the Indians had told them. They found the Mississippi, and sailed down that river to about the place where De Soto had crossed it (§ 15). In much the same way, French explorers made known the surface of what are now the northwestern States. In 1682, La Salle sailed down the Mississippi to its mouth, and named the whole region Louisiana.

In 1684, La Salle attempted to fix a colony, which he brought from France, at the mouth of the Mississippi, but could not find the river, and sailed on to Texas. Here he was murdered, and his colony was broken up by sickness and starvation.



SAMUEL DE CHAMPLAIN.

139. What is said of the French conquest of Canada? Of Champlain's explorations? Of other explorers? Of the discovery of Marquette and Joliet? Of the exploration of the northwestern country? Of La Salle's discovery?

140. The First French Settlement within the northwestern United States was the mission of St. Mary, near Sault Ste. Marie, now in Michigan. It was established in 1668. Other French missions were gradually established at different points in the northwest, but none of them came to be important places.

141. French Colonization within the United States really began in 1699, when D'Iberville was sent through the Gulf of Mexico to find the mouth of the Mississippi. He found it, and fixed a settlement at Biloxi, within the present State of Mississippi. In 1702, he removed it to Mobile, which became his capital. In 1716, a French company, the Mississippi Company, obtained a grant of Louisiana; and in 1718, it sent a colony and founded the city of New Orleans, which soon became the principal place of the Mississippi valley.

142. The French Possessions in North America had thus become very large before 1750. To secure them, the French had erected a chain of some sixty forts, stretching from New Orleans to Montreal, many of which have since become important towns. The present cities of New Orleans, Natchez, Vincennes, Fort Wayne, Toledo, Detroit, Ogdensburgh, and Montreal are near enough to the sites of some of these old forts to mark out the general course of the chain. Back of it, toward the Mississippi and the great lakes, were other forts, as at Mackinaw and Peoria. Not all of these forts have grown into cities: some of them have entirely disappeared. One of these is Kaskaskia, on the river of the same name, which was long the most important place in what is now the State of Illinois.

143. The Weakness of the French Empire in America was in the fewness of its inhabitants. The whole population of New France, including Canada, was only about 100,000 in 1750, while the population of the English colonies was nearly fifteen times as large (§ 133). Within the present territory of the United States,

140. What was the first French settlement in the northwest? What other settlements were made?

141. How did French colonization begin? What is said of Biloxi? Of Mobile? Of the Mississippi Company? Of New Orleans?

142. What is said of the French possessions? Of the chain of French forts? Name some of the cities which have taken their places? What other forts were built? What has become of Kaskaskia?

143. What was the weakness of the French Empire? What was the population of New France? Of the English colonies? Of Louisiana within the United States? What danger was approaching?

east of the Mississippi, there were probably not more than 7,500 Frenchmen, and most of these were fur-traders or adventurers, strong enough to keep the Indians in check, but not to settle the country. There was coming toward them, over the Alleghanies, a wave of English settlement which moved very slowly, but could not be stopped.

The weakness of the French population was chiefly due to the fact that the restless spirit of adventure and willingness to wander abroad was much less common in France than it had become in England. The French colonies received few reinforcements from home, and were apt to mix with the native population.

144. The Ohio Company.—Just as Raleigh's unsuccessful colonies came before the successful settlement of the coast (§ 23), a number of unsuccessful English land companies came before the successful settlement of the great West. Their object was to buy up vast tracts of land at a low price, induce settlers to move thither by giving them part of the land, and thus make the rest of the land so valuable as to richly repay all expenses. One of the earliest of these land companies, the Ohio Company, was organized in 1749 by some London merchants and some leading Virginians. Its lands lay in western Pennsylvania, which was then claimed by Virginia (§ 83). The company at once sent out surveyors and traders, and then began opening roads for emigrants.

145. The French took the alarm as soon as the Ohio Company was formed, and sent men to secure the country between the Alleghanies and their chain of forts. In 1753, they erected a strong fort at Presque Isle, where Erie now stands, and prepared to build a new chain of forts southward, toward the Ohio River. Governor Dinwiddie, of Virginia, determined to send an agent to remonstrate with the French commander. George Washington (§ 296) was then a Virginia land-surveyor, not quite twenty-two years old, but already known for his prudence and clearheadedness, and he was selected as the agent. He made his way through the wintry wilderness up the Potomac River to the Monongahela, down that river to its junction with the Alleghany, and up the Alleghany

144. What is said of English land companies? What was their object? What is said of the Ohio Company? Where were its lands? What were its first steps?

145. What was done by the French? What fort was built in 1753? What did Dinwiddie determine to do? What is said of Washington? What was the course of his journey? What was its result?

until he met the French commander. That officer refused to quit the disputed territory, and Washington returned with what was really a declaration of war.

The "French and Indian War" which followed was at first entirely an American war: it did not extend to Europe until 1756 (§ 150).

SUPPLEMENTARY QUESTIONS.

Locations.—Locate the Appalachian or Alleghany Mountains; the Mississippi River; Lake Champlain; Sault Ste. Marie, Mich.; Biloxi, Miss.; Mobile, Ala.; New Orleans, La.; Natchez, Miss.; Vincennes, Ind.; Fort Wayne, Ind.; Toledo, O.; Detroit, Mich.; Ogdensburgh, N. Y.; Montreal; Mackinaw, Mich.; Peoria, Ill.; Erie, Pa.; the Potomac River; the Monongahela River (§ 156); the Alleghany River.

REVIEW.—How far westward did the English colonies extend? What was the country called thence to the Mississippi River? Who claimed it? When and where was the first French settlement made in it? When did Marquette find the Mississippi? When was D'Iberville sent out? What towns did he found? When was New Orleans founded? When was the Ohio Company formed? When did the French build a fort at Erie? Who was sent to remonstrate with them?

(2) THE FRENCH AND INDIAN WAR.

146. Virginia had raised about 400 troops in the mean time, and Washington had taken such pains to know the country well that he was put in command of them, with the rank of lieutenant-colonel. He turned back with them on the road which he had just travelled, for the purpose of protecting a fort which the Ohio Company was building at the junction of the Alleghany and Monongahela rivers, where Pittsburgh now stands. Both parties knew very well the importance of this place, and were pushing to secure it. The Frenchmen won in the race, and captured and strengthened the fort, which they named Fort Duquesne. They then passed on to attack Washington, who was coming down the Monongahela River.

At first the colonel in command was a man named Frye. But he died on the road, leaving the command to Washington.

147. The First Fight of the war followed their meeting. Washington, with a part of his force, met an advance-party of the

146 What troops had been raised? To whom were they given? What fort was he to secure? What race followed? Who won in it? What did they then do?

147. What followed their meeting? What success was gained by Washington? Why did he then retreat? What is said of his surrender? What position was given him?

French and Indians, and killed or captured nearly all of them. But the French main body was so much superior in numbers that he moved back a few miles up the Monongahela to a fort which he named Fort Necessity. Here he surrendered, July 4, 1754, on condition that he and his men might return to Virginia. He had done so well with the small force at his command, that he became Virginia's principal military officer for the rest of the war.

148. The English Colonies were now all acting together for the first time in their history. There were South Carolina troops with Washington at Fort Necessity; and all the colonies voted money, men, and arms to help Virginia. Heretofore the colonies had been dragged into wars by England; now they were disposed to make war on their own account, for they all knew that this western territory was necessary to their future growth. The British Government was at first disposed to let them fight it out for themselves, and advised them to form a plan of united action. Accordingly, in 1754, Maryland, Pennsylvania, New York, and the New England colonies sent delegates to a meeting at Albany. Here the "Albany plan of union," proposed by Benjamin Franklin, was agreed upon. But it looked so much like an American government, independent of Great Britain, that the British Government rejected it; while it gave the king so much power that the colonies rejected it also. It is interesting, however, as a sign of union.

The Albany plan proposed a congress of not more than seven or less than two delegates from each colony, according to the colony's proportion of taxes paid; and a governor general, appointed by the king, with the power to veto (forbid) any law of Congress which he should consider wrong or unwise.

149. England and France both began to send troops to America, for both knew that war must soon come. The colonies also were everywhere stirring with warlike preparations. In June, 1755, a force of British regulars and provincial (colonial) troops sailed from Boston, and captured the few remaining French forts

148 What is said of the union of the English colonies? What was the difference between this and former wars? What did the British Government advise? What meeting of colonial delegates took place? What plan did it adopt? Why was the plan rejected by both parties? Why is the plan interesting?

149. What was now done by England and France? By the colonies? What is said of the Nova Scotia expedition? What is said of Braddock's march? Of his defeat? Of the Crown Point expedition? Of the events of 1755?

in Acadia (Nova Scotia). In the same month, General Braddock, a brave, obstinate, and self-confident British officer, marched from Virginia through Pennsylvania against Fort Duquesne. He expected to fight the French and Indians in line of battle, and refused to heed the advice of Washington, who was one of his aides, to send scouts in advance. Within a few miles of Fort Duquesne, a few French and Indians completely surprised Braddock's long line, killed him and more than half his men, and chased the rest for miles on the road back to Virginia. The only real resistance was made by Washington and his Virginians, who fought from behind trees in Indian fashion, and checked the pursuit. A month later, a New York expedition against Crown Point, under Sir William Johnson, defeated the French and Indians, under Baron Dieskau, near the southern end of Lake George, but did no more. The year 1755 thus closed badly for the English.

The expedition to Acadia, above referred to, only completed the previous conquest of this section of the country (§ 76). From this time the whole of Acadia (Nova Scotia and New Brunswick) became an English province, as it still remains. The expedition was disgraced by a gross act of cruelty and treachery on the part of the English. The French inhabitants were ordered to assemble at their churches. They were then seized and sent southward along the coast to different English colonies; and their houses and crops were burned to prevent their return to their homes. Longfellow's "Evangeline" tells a touching story of the unhappy exiles.

150. Declaration of War was made by both England and France in the spring of 1756, so that the war was no longer confined to America. The British Government was at first very inefficient, and sent out worthless officers to America, so that little was accomplished during the two years 1756 and 1757. The English and provincial forces marched hither and thither, fighting little, and gradually drawing back before their enemies. The French were now commanded by a great soldier, Montcalm. His forces were not large, but he made the most of them. Each English force acted for itself, while he used all his men together against one point after another. He thus, for two years, held the English out of the disputed territory, captured the few forts which they

150. When was war declared? What was done by the British Government? By the English and provincial troops? Who was the French commander? What did he accomplish? What successes did he gain?

had built along the northern border of New York, and gained all the Indians to his support.

By provincial troops are meant the soldiers furnished by the provinces or colonies. The British troops in America in 1758 numbered about 50,000. Of these, 28,000 were provincials, and 22,000 were regulars.

151. The Year 1758 changed all this. One of the greatest men in English history, William Pitt, was called to the head of the British Government, and everything felt his influence. Inefficient officers were got out of the way, and the whole English force was thrown upon the French at three points. In July, a sea expedition captured Louisburgh, on Cape Breton Island (§ 76). In November, a land expedition captured Fort Duquesne without resistance, and renamed it Fort Pitt (now Pittsburgh). The only failure of the year was that of an expedition against Ticonderoga, where Montcalm commanded in person. It assaulted the French works, and was defeated after losing about 1,600 men. But a part of the English force drove the French out of northwestern New York, and captured Fort Frontenac, on the Canada side of Lake Ontario, where Kingston now stands.



WILLIAM PITT.

152. These Successes were greatly due to the manner in which Pitt brought in the colonies to help the regular troops. Provincial troops took part in all these expeditions, and thus learned to make war and to have confidence in themselves. Many of the American officers who afterward took part in the Revolution received their training in the campaigns of the French and Indian War.

151. When were affairs changed? What is said of Pitt? What did he do in America? What is said of the capture of Louisburgh? Of Fort Du Quesne? What was the only failure of the year? Describe it. What success did it gain?

152. To what were these successes greatly due? What is said of the provincial troops? Of American officers?

153. The Year 1759 was still more successful. It was known



JAMES WOLFE.

that the English intended to attack Quebec this year, and Montcalm was forced to draw off most of his troops to defend that city. Consequently, Ticonderoga, Crown Point, and a strong French fort, Fort Niagara, fell into the hands of the English without much resistance. From Louisburgh the English, under General Wolfe, sailed up the St. Lawrence River to attack Quebec. Their ships gave them command of the river, but above them rose the lofty cliffs on whose top the fortifi-

cations of Quebec had been built. The French could not be tempted to come out of their stronghold; and, after a siege of nearly three months, the English were very much discouraged. Finally Wolfe decided to climb the cliffs and find the enemy.

154. Quebec.—On the appointed night, Wolfe's army floated down the river in boats, and was landed on the little river-beach at the foot of the cliffs. All through the night the men were clambering up the precipice, which the French had not taken the trouble to guard; the sailors dragged up eight or ten small cannon with them; and, in the morning of September 13, the English army was drawn up on the Plains of Abraham, in front of the upper city. There were still walls to be attacked; but Montcalm, startled by the sudden appearance of the English, moved his army out, and fought a battle on the open plain. Both Wolfe and Montcalm were killed, but the French were completely defeated. Five days afterward, the city was surrendered.

153. What is said of the year 1759? What was Montcalm forced to do? What were the consequences? What route was taken by Wolfe's army? What was the great difficulty in attacking Quebec? What is said of the siege? What did Wolfe decide to do?

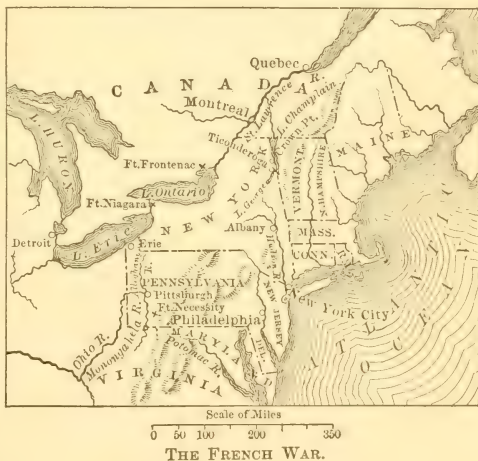
154. Describe the landing. The ascent of the cliffs. The position of Wolfe's army in the morning. What did Montcalm do? What was the result of the battle? When did the city surrender?

Both generals lived long enough to know the result of the battle. Wolfe, when told of it, said, "Then I die happy." Montcalm, when told that he must die, said, "So much the better; I shall not live to see the surrender of Quebec."

155. The Conquest of Canada followed in 1760. Montreal surrendered to the English. Then the other French forts were given up as rapidly as English troops could be sent to take them. The French troops were sent home to France, and the French dominion in North America was over. Many of the Indians disliked to see the British troops holding the forts in their territory. In 1763, Pontiac, an Ottawa chief living near Detroit, formed a league of Indian tribes to destroy the new-comers. But the plan was revealed by a friendly Indian; the attack on Detroit was beaten back; and the Indians, after some hard fighting, begged for peace.

Though the war was over on the continent of North America, it continued elsewhere for about three years. England and France were still fighting on the ocean, and wherever either could reach the other's dominions.

156. Spain entered the war, in 1762, to assist France. In that year, an English expedition, with many provincial troops in it, sailed to the Spanish island of Cuba, and captured the rich city of Havana. The people of the colonies now sent out privateers against Spanish commerce; and the growth of the colonies was shown by the fact that their privateers in this



155. What followed? What became of the French forts? Of the French troops? Of the French dominion? How did the Indians like the change? What was Pontiac's conspiracy? What was its result?

156. What is said of Spain? Of the capture of Havana? Of colonial privateers? What shows something of the growth of the colonies?

war outnumbered, in vessels, guns, and men, the whole English navy of 150 years before, when the colonies were founded.

157. The Peace of Paris closed the war in 1763. Great Britain had completely conquered both France and Spain, and the two conquered nations consented to surrender to her the whole of North America east of the Mississippi. Spain gave up Florida to Great Britain in exchange for Havana (§ 156). France gave up all her possessions in North America, giving her conqueror, Great Britain, all the portion east of the Mississippi River, and her ally, Spain, the portion west of that river, including the city of New Orleans.

158. Louisiana.—Spain kept the name of Louisiana for the territory west of the Mississippi River, which she had received from France. It covered, in general, the great region between the Rocky Mountains and the Mississippi River, from British America to the Gulf of Mexico (§ 332). Almost all this region, however, was then a wilderness, excepting small portions of the present States of Louisiana and Missouri. New Orleans was the only important city. St. Genevieve was the oldest settlement in Missouri. St. Louis was founded in 1764.

One of the founders of St. Louis, Pierre Chouteau, lived in the city until his death in 1849, and witnessed the enormous changes in its condition.

159. The Leading Events of the war are as follows :

1754-7: *French Success.*

1754: Surrender of Fort Necessity.....	§ 147
Albany Plan of Union.....	148
1755: Braddock's Defeat... ..	149
Conquest of Nova Scotia (English success)..	149
Battle of Lake George (English success)....	149
1756: War declared.....	148
1756-7: General French success.....	149

1758-63: *English Success.*

1758: Pitt becomes head of the British Govern- ment.....	151
Capture of Louisburgh.....	151
Capture of Fort Duquesne.....	151
Battle of Ticonderoga (French success)....	151

157. What closed the war? What were its advantages to Great Britain? What was given up by Spain? By France?

158. What is said of Louisiana? What did it cover? What was its condition? What is said of New Orleans? Of St. Genevieve? Of St. Louis?

159. What were the years of French success? What were the leading events of 1754? Of 1755. Of 1756-7? What were the years of English success? What were the leading events of 1758? Of 1759? Of 1760? Of 1762? Of 1763?

1758-63: *English Success.*

1759: Capture of Ticonderoga, Crown Point, and Niagara.....	§ 153
Capture of Quebec.....	154
1760: Conquest of Canada.....	155
1762: Capture of Havana.....	156
1763: Pontiac's Conspiracy.....	155
Peace of Paris	157

SUPPLEMENTARY QUESTIONS.

Locations.—(School-map locations in *italics*).—Locate Pittsburgh, Pa.; the Monongahela River; Albany, N. Y.; Boston, Mass.; Nova Scotia or Acadia (§ 76); Lake George, N. Y.; Cape Breton Island (§ 76); Ticonderoga, N. Y.; Fort Frontenac, Canada; Fort Niagara, N. Y.; Quebec; Montreal; Detroit, Mich.; *Havana*; New Orleans, La.; St. Louis, Mo. Bound the territory then called Louisiana.

REVIEW.—In what year did the French and Indian War begin? What fort did Washington surrender? Give the date of Braddock's defeat. Of the declaration of war. Of the capture of Louisburgh, and battle of Ticonderoga. Of the capture of Quebec. Give the name of the English commander. Of the French commander. Give the date of the conquest of Canada. Of the conspiracy of Pontiac, and the peace of Paris. What did Spain give up to Great Britain? What did France give up to Spain? What was its principal city?

(3) STATE OF THE COLONIES.

160. The Population of the colonies was about 2,000,000 in 1760; and the colonies had grown not only in numbers but in strength and confidence. Their men had fought beside British regulars, and had sometimes held their ground when the regulars had run away. Thirty thousand of them had given up their lives in the war, and many of the colonists were inclined to feel and say that the colonies had done more than their share of the fighting. None of the colonies had yet spread beyond the Alleghanies, but a few adventurous hunters were in the habit of crossing the mountains yearly; and they brought back such favorable reports of the beauty and fertility of the new country that settlements there were begun within a few years.

The first settlement in Tennessee, led by James Robertson, was made in 1768; the first in Kentucky, led by Daniel Boone, in 1769. There was no effort to settle the country north of the Ohio River for nearly twenty years to come.

160. What was the population of the colonies? Had they grown in numbers only? What had their men done in the war? Had population spread beyond the Alleghanies? What effect did the reports of the western hunters have?

161. In Wealth, the colonies were growing still faster, and they began to look like a well-settled country. The people had become comfortable and even prosperous, and some of them were considered wealthy. Agriculture had improved, and a great variety of crops was grown. The Navigation Acts (§ 71) had not destroyed their trade. In 1700, the colonies had sent to England about \$1,300,000 worth of produce, and received about the same amount of English manufactures. In 1760, they sent about four times as much, and received nearly seven times as much. All trade to other countries than England was said to be illegal, but was nevertheless carried on largely. Newspapers and books had become common since the first American printing-press had been set up at Cambridge in 1639. The establishment of King's College (now Columbia) in New York City, in 1754, increased the number of colleges to six.

The six colleges were Harvard, in Massachusetts, founded in 1638; William and Mary, in Virginia, in 1692; Yale, in Connecticut, in 1700; the College of New Jersey (now at Princeton), in 1746; the University of Pennsylvania, in 1749; and King's (now Columbia), in New York, in 1754.

162. The Union of the colonies had grown still more rapidly. During the war, they had at first called themselves provincials, to distinguish themselves from the British. Now, for the first time, some of them began to call themselves Americans, instead of Englishmen, Virginians, or New-Englanders. The colonies were no longer altogether separate peoples. They had come to have common interests and a common spirit, and they were now very certain to unite against any enemy that was dangerous to all of them, just as they had united against the French power of the north and west. There was no longer any need to unite against the French; but it was certain that they would act toward any new enemy, even their mother-country, just as they had acted toward the French. It ought to have been evident in England that her colonies in North America had come to be so strong and so united that it was now needful for the British Government to be very wise and prudent, in order that it might not make itself appear to be their enemy.

161. What is said of the growth in wealth? Of the condition of the people? Of agriculture? Of trade? Of their trade in 1700? In 1760? Of trade to other countries than England? Of newspapers and books? Of colleges?

162. What is said of the union of the colonies? What name had at first been used during the war? What name began to be used now? How had they become united? How was it certain that they would act toward any new enemy? What was needful for the British Government?

163. The British Government was neither wise nor prudent. Most of its power was in the hands of the Parliament, which was not elected by the whole people. By artful contrivance or by accident, the laws of election were such that a few rich men, nobles or landowners, controlled the election of most of the members of the House of Commons (§ 31). In most matters, these richer men were divided into two parties, which opposed one another. In regard to American affairs, they were now united by heavy taxes in a claim which could not help making them the enemy of the colonies.

164. Taxes in Great Britain were now very heavy, and most of them fell on the richer men. Heretofore they had thought little about America, considering it only a wilderness, from which no money could be obtained. Now they saw the colonies voting large sums of money to carry on the war, and they at once began to think of lightening their own taxes by laying taxes on the colonies. The Parliament had forced the kings to yield to it the power to lay taxes in Great Britain: it now began to claim a right to lay taxes on the colonies, even against the will of the colonies themselves.

A nation very often provides for wars or other unexpected expenses by borrowing money. The written promises to pay are called bonds, and the nation pays interest on them yearly, raising the money for the payments by taxes. The English debt had steadily increased from about \$3,300,000 in 1689 to about \$700,000,000 in 1763, and the taxes for payment of annual interest had become very burdensome. Great Britain claimed that much of the debt had arisen in defending the colonies from the French, and that the colonies ought to be willing to be taxed for a part of the interest. The colonies claimed that neither they nor the French colonies had desired war, that they had been dragged into war by France and England, and that the English colonies had fully paid their share of the expense. At any rate, they were determined not to submit to be taxed by another people.

165. The Feeling of the Colonies was that this claim of the Parliament was highly unjust. Each colony was ruled by its own

163. What is said of the British Government? Of the Parliament? Of the laws of election? How were the richer men divided in most matters? How were they united in American affairs?

164. What is said of taxes in Great Britain? Why had America been little thought of heretofore? Why was it now thought of? What new claim was made by Parliament?

165. What was the feeling of the colonies? What bodies made laws and laid taxes for the colonies? Why were the colonists unwilling to be taxed by the Parliament? What then was the reason for quarrel?

assembly, or legislature, elected by nearly the whole people, not by a few rich men. As the representatives of the people, these assemblies alone had always taxed the people; and the king's governors had only named the amount which they desired. The colonists had thus always taxed themselves, through their assemblies, as the people of Great Britain had taxed themselves, through their Parliament. The colonists were not allowed to send representatives to Parliament. No men will submit willingly to be taxed by a body in which they are not represented, and the colonists were already too strong to be forced to submit. On this question, of "Taxation without Representation," the Parliament and the colonies were now to quarrel for twelve years until *force* was used: then came the Revolutionary War (§ 193).

PERIOD V.—COLONIAL RESISTANCE: 1763-1775.

(1) THE STAMP ACT.

166. British Regulation of the Colonies.—Laws to regulate the colonies and their affairs had frequently been passed by Parliament. Some of these, such as the act to establish a post-office system, were useful to the colonies, and were accepted by them willingly. Others, such as the Navigation Acts and the acts to forbid manufactures in the colonies (§ 71), they had not been strong enough to resist openly, but had evaded or disobeyed them as far as possible. Of late years, whenever the British Government had tried to enforce these laws, it had failed. Nevertheless, it now undertook to do a still more difficult thing. In 1764, soon after peace was made, Parliament first declared that it had a *right* to tax the colonies. It went no further at the time, but waited to see how the colonies would receive this claim. But the colonies were, as usual, very busy with their own affairs, and paid little attention to the declaration of Parliament.

166. What laws had frequently been passed by Parliament? Which did the colonies accept willingly? Which did they disobey? Were these laws enforced? What happened in 1764? Was anything further done at the time? Did it excite much attention in the colonies?

167. The Stamp Act was passed by Parliament in the spring of 1765. It had been prepared by the head of the British Government, George Grenville, and was to go into force in the following November. From that time, no newspapers or almanacs could be published in the colonies, no marriage-certificate could be given, and no documents could be used in law-suits, unless stamps, bought from British government agents, were placed on them. Laws were also passed to enforce the Navigation Acts, and to send soldiers to America. The expenses of the soldiers were to be paid out of the money received from the sale of stamps, so that the colonists were really called upon to pay the British soldiers who were to force them to submit to taxation by Parliament.



BRITISH STAMP.

Such stamp-duties are one of the easiest ways of paying taxes. They have been used since in this country, and are still used to a less extent. We submit to such taxes now because they are laid by ourselves through our representatives, and, if the people think the taxes unjust, they can change the taxes by changing their representatives. The colonists resisted the taxes, because they were laid by the representatives of another people. They knew that, if they submitted in this little matter, they would soon be taxed in far heavier ways, and yet would never be able to change the representatives or the taxes.

168. In America, when the news of the Stamp Act reached it, there was no longer any want of attention. All the colonies hummed with the signs of resistance. Able and eloquent men, like James Otis in Massachusetts, and Patrick Henry in Virginia, only spoke for the whole people in declaring that the colonies would never submit. The assemblies, as fast as they met, declared that Parliament had no right to tax the colonies. Associations, called Sons of Liberty, were formed to help the resistance. As soon as the stamps were sent over, mobs seized and burned them; and the stamp-officers were frightened into resigning.

167. What is said of the Stamp Act? Who had prepared it? When was it to go into force? What did it provide? What other laws were passed? How were the expenses of the soldiers to be paid?

168. What was the effect of the news in America? What declarations were made for the people? What declarations were made by the assemblies? What associations were formed? What was done by mobs? What was the result on the day when the act was to have gone into force?

When the day came for the act to go into force, there were no stamps to be bought, and no officers to sell them. The Stamp Act had failed.



PATRICK HENRY.

Patrick Henry, a young lawyer and brilliant orator, was a member of the Virginia assembly. In his speech on the Stamp Act, he named several tyrants who had been killed. "Cæsar," said he, "had his Brutus, Charles I. his Cromwell, and George III.—"; he was interrupted by cries of "Treason!" When the noise died away, he concluded: "George III. may profit by their example. If this be treason, make the most of it." His resolutions, adopted by the assembly, were the boldest declaration of colonial rights that had yet been made.

169. The Stamp-Act Congress, the first sign of united resistance (§ 162), met at New York City, October 7, 1765. It had been proposed by Virginia and Massachusetts about the same time. All but four of the colonies sent delegates to it; and all the colonies supported it. It had no authority to make laws; but it agreed on a declaration of the rights of the colonies, and sent petitions to the king and Parliament to respect those rights. The language of the congress was carefully made as gentle as possible; but its meeting was evidently a sign of danger, if the attempt should be made to punish any one for resisting the Stamp Act.

170. The British Government was taken aback by the stir in America. English manufacturers petitioned for the repeal of the Stamp Act, for the American merchants and people had agreed not to buy any more English goods until the repeal should take place. Pitt and other friends of the colonies in Parliament urged the repeal. Finally, there was a change of government in Great

169. What is said of the Stamp-Act Congress? Who had proposed it? Who sent delegates to it? Who supported it? What were its proceedings? What is said of its language? How was it a sign of danger?

170. What is said of the British Government? Of English manufacturers? Of Pitt? How did the repeal take place? What did Parliament declare? How did the Americans regard this declaration? What did they endeavor to do? What difficulties still remained? What were the colonists anxious to do?

Britain, another political party came into power, and early in 1766 the act was repealed. Parliament still declared its *right* to tax the colonies, if it should wish to do so; but the Americans were convinced that it would never again attempt to do so, and were willing to make the repeal pleasant for Great Britain. And so, for more than a year, they endeavored in every way to show their affection for the mother-country. Some difficulties yet remained. The New York assembly refused to furnish supplies to the British troops, as Parliament had directed; and the assemblies of some of the other colonies engaged in small quarrels with their governors; but the colonists in general were very anxious to show that they were "loyal subjects of the king—God bless him!"

171. The Right of Parliament to regulate the trade of the colonies had not hitherto been denied by the colonists (§ 71). They had not thought very much about the matter, but they knew that Parliament paid for a large navy to protect trade, and they agreed that Parliament had the right to regulate the trade which was thus protected. They had therefore submitted to the Navigation Acts, though they obeyed them as little as possible. But the unfortunate Stamp Act had compelled the colonists to think about the matter, and many of them began to see that a Parliament in which they were not represented had no more right to interfere with their property on the ocean than on the land. At first, they only suggested different means by which members from the colonies might be admitted to Parliament. Many eminent men in Great Britain desired such an arrangement, and it is possible that it might have



GEORGE III.

171. What is said of the right of Parliament to regulate trade? Why had the colonists acknowledged it? What did they submit to? What effect did the Stamp Act have? What remedy was at first suggested? Who supported it in Great Britain? What is said of the king? Of his friends in Parliament?

been successful. But the king, an honest but very obstinate man, had lofty ideas of his own dignity, and was determined to make the colonies submit without debate. His friends in Parliament now began a new scheme, which increased all the previous difficulties a hundredfold.

172. Commercial Taxation.—In 1767, Parliament passed an act to lay taxes on tea and a few other articles exported to America; another to send revenue commissioners to America, to punish any refusal to pay the tax; and another ordering the New York assembly to pass no more laws until it should furnish supplies to the soldiers (§ 170). These acts left the colonists no choice. They had now no time to devise plans for being represented in Parliament. Their first business was to resist what they now began to consider a foreign tyranny.

As Massachusetts was the leading commercial colony, much of the first resistance centred there. Its leaders were James Otis, a most eloquent speaker, who afterward became insane; John Hancock, a Boston merchant; John Adams, a young lawyer, afterward President; Samuel Adams, one of the first advocates of independence; and Benjamin Franklin, the colony's agent and adviser in London. The leading royalists were Governor Thomas Hutchinson, a native of the colony, and his brother-in-law Andrew Oliver, one of his council.

173. Whigs and Tories.—For nearly six years the colonists kept up a peaceable resistance to the taxing acts of Parliament. The resistance took the shape of a general agreement by the people not to buy, sell, or use the articles on which the taxes had been laid, so as to avoid paying the taxes. Those who adopted this plan willingly, and who supported the colonies against the mother-country, took the name of Whigs. Those who refused to resist the mother-country in any way were called Tories. As the Whigs were nearly all the people, and were very much in earnest, the few Tories were compelled by bodily fear to join in the general agreement.

Whig and Tory had for many years been the names of the two great political parties in England (§ 491).

174. The Six Years' Struggle, though it was meant to be peace-

172. What three acts were passed by Parliament in 1767? What was their effect on the colonists? What was the first business of the colonists?

173. What was done for the next six years? How was resistance made? Who were the Whigs? Who were the Tories? Why did the Tories join in the agreement?

174. Was the struggle always peaceable? What is said of the seizure of the *Liberty*? Of the occupation of Boston? What was the feeling between the towns-people and the soldiers? How did this result? What happened in New York? In North Carolina? In Rhode Island? How were all these affairs leading to war?

able, was continually turning toward open violence. In 1768, the revenue commissioners in Boston seized John Hancock's sloop *Liberty*, and a mob chased them to a British frigate in the harbor. Four British regiments, under General Gage, then took possession of Boston. There was constant bad feeling between the Boston people and the soldiers, or "redcoats;" insulting language was used on both sides; and there were a number of street-fights with sticks, fists, or snow-balls. All this resulted in the "Boston Massacre," March 5, 1770, in which the soldiers fired on the people, killed three, and wounded many others. In New York, a little earlier, the people beat the soldiers in a street-fight. In North Carolina, the governor defeated a part of the people in a pitched battle (§ 98). In 1772, a number of the Rhode Island people captured and burned a king's vessel, the *Gaspée*, which had been unpleasantly active in collecting duties from vessels belonging to Providence. Those who took part in such affairs were evidently growing bolder, and any attempt to punish them, if they had been caught, would have met with resistance from the colonies, and that would have been war.



JOHN HANCOCK.

175. Parliament and the Assemblies.—All these affairs occasioned much anger in Parliament, though it was not easy to see what was to be done to prevent or punish them. Angry resolutions were passed, declaring the Massachusetts people rebels, and acts to make the collection of taxes more certain. The assemblies answered by declaring their own rights, and denying the right of Parliament to pass any such laws. The colonists cared very much more for the resolutions of their own assemblies than they did for those of Parliament, and their resistance became so much the bolder. In 1772, Parliament ordered those who had burned the *Gaspée* to be sent to England for trial, if they should be caught.

175. How did Parliament feel as to these affairs? What resolutions and acts were passed? How did the assemblies answer them? How did this increase the resistance of the colonists? What did Parliament do in 1772? How did the assemblies answer it? What had come to be the question?

Again the assemblies denied the right of Parliament to pass such a law; and the colonists were ready to resist the enforcement of the law. The plain question had come to be whether Parliament was or was not to govern the colonies as it saw fit.

176. The Tea Tax.—In 1770, Parliament tried a change of plan. The taxes were taken off all the articles except tea, and the tax on tea was fixed at only threepence, or about six cents, a pound. Arrangements were made with English tea-merchants, in 1773, to send cargoes of tea to America at a price threepence lower than that which had always been paid, so that the price would be no greater than it had always been, even after the tax was paid. It was hoped that in this way, when the tea was distributed through the colonies, not only the Tories, but the women, and all who liked to drink tea, would buy it at the old price, without seeing that they were really paying the taxes and obeying Parliament.

177. This Plan may have been a very cunning way to meet the difficulty, but it was certainly not a brave or honest way, and the Americans now resisted it with a kind of angry contempt. At Charleston they stored the cargoes of tea in damp cellars, where the tea was soon spoiled. At New York, Philadelphia, and other places, they refused to allow the tea ships to land their cargoes, and sent them back to England. At Boston they tried to do the same thing, but the British officers would not allow the ships to leave the harbor. The Boston people therefore took a more violent means, which is commonly called the "Boston Tea Party." A very orderly mob, disguised as Indians, boarded the ships, December 16, 1773, and threw their 340 chests of tea into the harbor. In one way or another, at all the towns on the coast, the colonists were successful in their efforts to prevent the tea from being distributed through the colonies to tempt the people to buy it. Parliament was again defeated.

178. The Four Intolerable Acts.—Parliament now so com-

176. What change of plan was made by Parliament in 1770? What arrangements were made with English tea-merchants in 1773? What was it hoped would be the result?

177. What is said of this plan? What was done at Charleston? At New York, Philadelphia, and other places? Why did this plan fail at Boston? What is said of the Boston Tea Party? How had the plan of Parliament failed?

178. What did Parliament now do? What was the Boston Port Bill? What was its object and effect? What was the Massachusetts Bill? What was its effect? What was the Transportation Bill? What was the Quebec Act? What was its effect? How were these acts to be enforced?

pletely lost its temper that it took the last steps to open conflict. It passed, among others, four acts which the colonies could not help resisting. The first was the Boston Port Bill: it forbade all vessels to leave or enter Boston harbor. Its object was to punish the Boston people by destroying their trade; its effect was to anger all the colonists against Parliament. The second was the Massachusetts Bill: it changed the charter of that colony so as to take away the government from the people, and give it to the king's agents. The effect of this was to unite all the colonies in resistance, for they all felt that they would soon meet the same treatment themselves if they allowed Massachusetts to be so treated. The third was the Transportation Bill: it ordered that Americans who should commit murder in resisting the laws should be sent to England for trial. The fourth was the Quebec Act: it made the country north of the Ohio and east of the Mississippi a part of Canada. Its effect was also to unite the colonies, for they felt that this territory belonged to them; that the king had given it to them (§ 25), and they had helped to conquer it from the French; and that the Parliament had no right to take it away. Parliament expected to enforce these acts by its standing army in the colonies (§ 167).

179. The Excitement in America now rose higher than it had ever done before. The assemblies passed resolutions severely condemning Parliament, and many of them requested the people to keep the day of the shutting up of Boston as a day of fasting and prayer. In most of the royal colonies the assemblies spoke so boldly that the governors dismissed them, and they did not meet again as part of the royal government. The excitement was so great, and the calls for a Continental Congress were so numerous, that its delegates were chosen almost by common consent, and without a summons. Georgia alone took no part in it, though her people sympathized with it.

"Continental" had already come to have very much the same meaning that "American" has now. It meant *general*, belonging to the whole continent, not to one colony or a part of them. Thus the Stamp-Act Congress (§ 169), from only nine of the colonies, was not a "Conti-

179. What is said of the excitement in America? What was done by the assemblies? By the governors? What gave rise to the Continental Congress? What colony took no part in it?

mental" Congress. Georgia was prevented by her governor from appointing delegates.

180. The First Continental Congress met at Philadelphia, September 5, 1774. It agreed upon a new declaration of rights: it asserted the right of the colonies to govern and tax themselves, and named eleven acts of Parliament which were attacks upon these rights. It sent an address to the people of Great Britain and a petition to the king, but did not now petition Parliament. It drew up an agreement, called the Articles of Association, which was signed by the people everywhere, not to buy goods from Great Britain, or to sell to her, until the objectionable acts were repealed by Parliament. It commended the people of Massachusetts for their peaceable resistance, and declared that, if Parliament should use force to make Massachusetts submit, all the other colonies would use force to help her. Finally, it called a new Congress for the following May, and adjourned.

181. Representation had now become a question of a new form. At first, the colonies had demanded that Parliament should not tax the colonies while the colonies were not represented in it; that there should be "*No Taxation without Representation.*" Now they demanded that Parliament should pass no laws whatever about the colonies while the colonies were not represented in it; that there should be "*No Legislation without Representation.*"

182. The People of the colonies were much more warlike in temper than their Congress, whose language had been very mild in spite of its firmness. They were everywhere collecting and making powder and weapons, preparing for war, and forming provincial congresses to govern each colony instead of the assemblies under the king's authority. The feeling was most intense in Massachusetts, where the first conflict was likely to take place. General Gage had been appointed governor, with additional troops; but, while he was in Boston, the rest of the colony governed itself without any attention to him, and had little to do with its capital town.

180. What is said of the first Continental Congress? Of its declaration of rights? Of its address and petition? Of its general agreement? How did it treat the Massachusetts people? What was its last proceeding?

181. What had been the first demand of the colonies? What was their demand now?

182. What is said of the temper of the people? What were they doing? What was the state of affairs in Massachusetts? Who was its governor? Who really governed the colony?

(2) LEXINGTON AND CONCORD.

183. Massachusetts, at the opening of the year 1775, was much like a powder-magazine, which the first spark would explode. The provincial congress, which now governed the colony, had collected powder and arms, and had ordered 20,000 "minute-men" to be enrolled and to be ready to march at a minute's warning. Gage, in Boston, felt so insecure that he began to erect fortifications on the neck of land which joins the town to the mainland, and sent out spies into the surrounding country to find out what the people were doing. Finally, he discovered that military stores had been collected at Concord, a village about twenty miles from Boston. He ordered out 800 men to destroy them, and this was the spark which brought on the Revolutionary War. Secret as the movement was meant to be, signals of it were sent by the Boston people to the mainland; and, all through the night, men were riding through the country, rousing the minute-men.

Longfellow's "Midnight Ride of Paul Revere" gives the best story of the warning to the minute-men.

184. Lexington is a village on the road between Boston and Concord. As the British marched into it, just before sunrise, April 19, 1775, they found about sixty half-armed minute-men



THE MINUTE-MAN.

183. What was the condition of Massachusetts at the beginning of 1775? What had been done by the provincial congress? By Gage? What discovery was made by Gage? What orders did he issue? What was their result? How did it become known on the mainland?

184. What is said of Lexington? Whom did the British find here? What was done by the British? What was the result? What is said of the fight? What was done at Concord? Why was it now time to retreat?

assembled on the village green. There was a hasty order from an officer, Major Pitcairn, a volley from his men, and a few answering shots. Eight of the minute-men were killed, many were wounded, and the rest dispersed. This was the first blood of the Revolution, the "shot heard round the world." The British then marched on to Concord, dispersed the minute-men who had collected there, and destroyed the supplies. They then prepared to return to Boston. It was high time for them to do so: by this time the whole country was up; for miles around the church-bells were ringing wildly; and the minute-men were hurrying toward Concord like bees from an overturned hive.

185. The British Retreat was orderly at first, and they steadily returned the fire which met them from every house, fence, and rock along the roadside. But the numbers of the minute-men were increasing; their fire was deadly; and the retreat became more disorderly. Before the regulars reached Lexington, they were actually running along the road, chased by the minute-men. At Lexington they met 900 fresh troops from Boston, with cannon, who sheltered them for a few minutes, while they lay on the ground and rested, "their tongues hanging out of their mouths, like dogs after a chase." The whole British force then set out for Boston. The minute-men kept up the pursuit as hotly as ever until, toward night, the worn-out regulars found shelter on the water-side, under the guns of the ships of war.

The British loss was 273 in killed, wounded, and missing. The rebels, as the British called the minute-men, lost 88. There were not more than 400 of the minute-men engaged at any one time.

186. Boston was now besieged. Many of the minute-men, who had kept up the pursuit, remained in front of Boston to attack any of the regulars who should venture to come out. As the news of the fight spread abroad, men from the different New England colonies started for Boston, and within a few days the town was closely shut up, except by sea. This state of affairs was nothing else than war. The agents of Parliament had used force; the Massachusetts men had used force in return; and the other colonies were now to

185. How was the retreat made at first? How did it become more disorderly? What was the state of affairs before Lexington was reached? What happened at Lexington? Describe the rest of the retreat.

186. How did the siege of Boston begin? How was it kept up? What was this state of affairs? How had it come about? What had begun?

use force to help Massachusetts, as they had already declared they would do. The American Revolution had begun, and with it the *national* history of the United States of America (§ 193).

(3) STATE OF THE COLONIES.

187. The Population of the Colonies was about 2,600,000 in 1775. If this seems small, compared with the 50,000,000 now dwelling in the United States, we must bear in mind that England and Wales contained only 6,400,000 persons in 1750. And the English population increased very slowly, while that of the colonies was doubling steadily every twenty-five years.

Population has been wonderfully changed since 1775. The population of the "old thirteen" in 1775, and of the first thirteen States in 1880, was as follows:

1775.		1880.	
Virginia.....	560,000	New York.....	5,082,871
Massachusetts.....	360,000	Pennsylvania.....	4,282,891
Pennsylvania.....	300,000	Ohio.....	3,198,062
North Carolina.....	260,000	Illinois.....	3,077,871
Maryland.....	220,000	Missouri.....	2,168,380
Connecticut.....	200,000	Indiana.....	1,978,301
South Carolina.....	180,000	Massachusetts.....	1,783,085
New York.....	180,000	Kentucky.....	1,648,690
New Jersey.....	130,000	Michigan.....	1,636,937
New Hampshire.....	80,000	Iowa.....	1,624,615
Rhode Island.....	50,000	Texas.....	1,591,749
Delaware.....	40,000	Tennessee.....	1,542,359
Georgia.....	30,000	Georgia.....	1,542,180

Only four of the thirteen of 1775 appear in the first thirteen of 1880. The population of the other States in 1880 will be found in Appendix IV.

188. The Difficulty of Governing such a growing population, without allowing it any share in the government, would have been exceedingly great, even if nature had placed it close to Great Britain. It was far more difficult to govern it across a stormy ocean, 3,000 miles wide, over which troops had to be carried in sailing-vessels, often taking months to make the passage, or waiting weeks

187. What was the population of the colonies? Of England and Wales? What is said of the increase of population?

188. Was it easy to govern the colonies without giving them a share in the government? How did the intervening ocean make the difficulty greater? Why did Great Britain disregard the difficulty? What were they anxious to do? What was the result? Was this the work of the people of Great Britain?

for fair weather. But Great Britain was governed at the time by a small number of selfish, greedy, and rather ignorant men (§ 163), who were very anxious to lighten their own expenses, and gratify their self-importance, by forcing the colonies to submit to be governed. They made the attempt, added \$600,000,000 to their national debt, and finally lost the larger part of the British Empire. But the *people* of Great Britain had no voice in the matter.

189. In Wealth, the colonies were still growing. Their trade with Great Britain and other countries had been injured by the troubles of the past twelve years. The British vessels on the coast no longer allowed foreign trade, but seized every vessel that took part in it; and the colonists had ceased to trade with Great Britain in many articles. To make up for this, there was a great increase in their manufactures at home. Enterprising men began to make silk and other goods, which Great Britain had forbidden to be manufactured in the colonies (§ 71, note); and the different colonies encouraged them by voting money to help them. During the Revolution, they even began to make powder and other munitions of war.

190. In Literature, the productions of the colonists were as yet almost entirely political; and in this field their work was certainly admirable. Their addresses and petitions, their declarations of rights, and their declaration of independence (§ 207) cannot well be read without being admired. Poetry, music, and the drama hardly existed; but two fine painters, Copley and West, had appeared. New colleges were appearing: Rhode Island College (now Brown University) was founded at Providence in 1764; Dartmouth College, at Hanover, N. H., in 1769; and Queen's College (now Rutgers College), at New Brunswick, N. J., in 1770.

There were but 14 newspapers in all New England, 4 in New York, 9 in Pennsylvania, 2 each in Maryland, Virginia, and North Carolina, 3 in South Carolina, and 1 in Georgia: 37 in all.

191. Slavery had grown much faster in the South than in the

189. What is said of the wealth of the colonies? Of their trade? How had it been injured? What is said of manufactures? How were they increased? What was done during the Revolution?

190. What is said of the literature of the colonies? Of their political writings? Of the fine arts? What new colleges appeared?

191. What is said of the growth of slavery? Of slavery in New England? In Vermont? What had the First Continental Congress recommended? How was this recommendation followed? What happened after the Revolution?

North. In New England, there were signs that it would not last much longer; and some of the courts began to declare it illegal, and to give the slaves their freedom. Vermont (§ 69) never permitted slavery. The first Continental Congress recommended that the slave-trade should be stopped, and all the colonies agreed. For a time—perhaps all through the Revolution—no slaves were brought into the country. As soon as the Revolution was ended, commerce revived, and the slave-trade with it; but by this time it was confined to the Southern States, for the Northern States had forbidden it for themselves.

In 1715, there were 13,000 negro slaves north of Mason and Dixon's line (§ 91), and 47,000 south: 60,000 in all. In 1775, there were 50,000 north, and 450,000 south: 500,000 in all.

SUPPLEMENTARY QUESTIONS.

Locations.—Locate New York City; Boston; Providence, R. I. (§ 68); Charleston, S. C.; Philadelphia; Concord, Mass. (§ 183); Lexington, Mass.; Hanover, N. H. (§ 60).

REVIEW.—Give the date of the Stamp Act and the Stamp-Act Congress. Of the repeal of the Stamp Act. Of the first commercial taxation by Parliament. Of the Boston Massacre. Of the burning of the Gaspée. Of the Boston Tea Party. Of legislation for punishment. Name the four Acts of Parliament intended to punish the colonies. Give the date of the First Continental Congress. Of the fights at Lexington and Concord.

192. The Leading Events of this twelve years' struggle against Parliament were as follows:

1763-6:	<i>Internal Taxation</i>	§ 166
1764:	Parliament claims the right to tax the colonies	166
1765:	The Stamp Act passed.....	167
	Stamp-Act Congress.....	169
1766:	The Stamp Act repealed.....	170
1767-73:	<i>Commercial Taxation</i>	171
1767:	Parliament lays taxes on commerce.....	172
	The Americans give up trade in the articles taxed.....	173
1768:	Boston occupied by British troops.....	174
1770:	The Boston massacre.....	174
	The taxes removed, except that on tea.....	176

192. What were the years of Internal Taxation? The leading events of 1764? Of 1765? Of 1766? What were the years of Commercial Taxation? The leading events of 1767? Of 1768? Of 1770? Of 1772? Of 1773? What were the years of legislation? The leading events of 1774? Of 1775?

1767-73:	<i>Commercial Taxation</i>	§ 171
1772:	Burning of the Gaspée.....	174
1773:	Tea sent to America.....	177
	The colonies refuse to receive it.....	177
	Boston Tea Party.....	177
1774-5:	<i>Legislation</i>	178
1774:	Boston Port Bill; Massachusetts Bill; Transportation Bill; and Quebec Act passed...	178
	First Continental Congress.....	180
	Articles of Association.....	180
1775:	<i>War</i>	184
1775:	Lexington and Concord fights.....	184
	Siege of Boston.....	186

HISTORY OF THE UNITED STATES

CHAPTER I.

THE REVOLUTION: 1775-81.

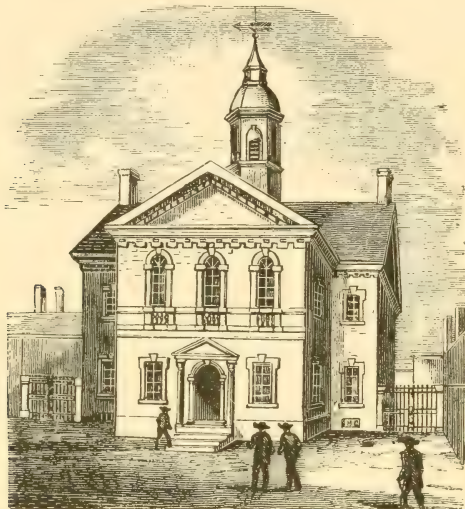
193. Rise of the Republic.—The history of the United States, as a separate country, begins with the fight at Lexington, though the name of the United Colonies was kept up until July 4, 1776 (§ 206). During this period of more than a year, the colonists still claimed to be loyal subjects of the king, fighting only against the attempts of Parliament to govern them by its own will. But, as the king refused to govern the colonies with the aid of their Congress, the Congress did all the governing itself, and the colonies became at once, in reality, a separate country.

194. The Second Continental Congress met at Philadelphia, May 10, 1775. The business of the First Congress (in 1774) had been only to pass resolutions: the Second Congress had to make laws. Men like to feel that they are acting under some lawful authority, and all such authority in the colonies had almost disappeared. Most of the royal governors had run away as soon as open fighting began, and no new governments had been formed. Congress became, by common consent, the general governing body of the country. It adopted the forces around Boston as a continental army, appointed Washington to command it, and raised money to support the war. Toward the end of the year, it began

193. When does the history of the United States begin? What did the colonists still claim to be? What was the real governing body of the country?

194. What is said of the meeting of the Second Congress? What was the difference between it and the First Congress? What is said of lawful authority in the colonies? Of the royal governments? How did Congress become a general governing body? What steps did it take to form an army? A navy? Between whom was the war waged at first? What was done afterward?

to form a navy (§ 241). At first, therefore, the war was between the British Parliament and the American Congress, both acknowledging the same king. When it was found that the king sided altogether with the Parliament, Congress made war on the king



CARPENTER'S HALL, WHERE THE FIRST CONTINENTAL CONGRESS MET.

also, and, in 1776, declared the colonies independent of him as well as of Parliament (§ 206).

This Second Congress was a body of most distinguished and able men. Among them were John Adams, Samuel Adams, and John Hancock, of Massachusetts; Roger Sherman and Oliver Ellsworth, of Connecticut; John Jay, of New York; Benjamin Franklin and Robert Morris, of Pennsylvania; George Washington, Thomas Jefferson, Patrick Henry, Richard Henry Lee, and Peyton Randolph, of Virginia; and Henry Laurens and Christopher Gadsden, of South Carolina.

(1) AT BOSTON.

195. British Reinforcements, under three Generals, Howe,

195. What fresh British troops arrived? How many men did Gage now have? What was their position? What was the position of the Americans? What position was north of Boston? What party was sent to occupy it? What position was finally occupied?

Clinton, and Burgoyne, arrived at Boston soon after the fight at Lexington. Gage had now about 10,000 men. These occupied the town of Boston, which lay on a peninsula covering the middle of the harbor. Around them, on the hills of the mainland, there were about twice their number of undisciplined and poorly-armed Americans, without cannon and almost without food. Just north of Boston, another peninsula ran out into the harbor. On it there were several hills, and the Americans determined to seize and fortify one of them, called Bunker Hill. About a thousand men, under Colonel Prescott, were sent into the peninsula for this on a suitable night. For some reason, they passed beyond Bunker Hill and seized Breed's Hill, much closer to Boston.

Breed's Hill is now usually called Bunker Hill, and the Bunker Hill monument is erected upon it.

196. The American Fortification was continued silently and swiftly through the night. In the morning of June 17, 1775, the British in Boston woke to see a long line of intrenchments running across the hill above them, and an American working-party busily strengthening it. For a time, the British frigates in the harbor kept up a slow and distant fire, to which the working-party paid no attention; but at noon the work was stopped, for the British troops were coming across the harbor in boats. Three thousand well armed, uniformed, and drilled soldiers, who had never known defeat in equal fight, landed near Charlestown, under General Howe. Here they formed at the water-side, and in a long, steady line began to move upward to scatter the 1,500 farmers who were watching them from the top of the hill. From the roofs of the houses in Boston, the rest of the British army and the townspeople



THE REVOLUTION IN NEW ENGLAND.

196. How was the fortification made? What was the state of affairs in the morning? What was done by the British frigates? What stopped the work? What is said of the landing of the British? Of their advance? Who were watching it? What did most of the watchers expect?

were watching, anxious to see "whether the Yankees would fight." Most of the watchers expected to see the untrained soldiers in the fort fire a few hasty shots at a safe distance, and run.

197. Bunker Hill Battle.—The fort held a threatening silence until the attacking column was within 150 feet. Then, at the word, came a sheet of fire from the marksmen within; and, when the



Scale of Miles
0 1 2 3 4
BATTLE OF BUNKER HILL.

smoke lifted, part of the British line was lying dead or wounded, and the rest were retreating hastily down the hill. The British were not cowards: the officers re-formed the line at the bottom of the hill, and, after setting fire to Charlestown, again advanced to the attack. Again there was a steady silence in the fort, a close and deadly fire, and the British line was driven down the hill again. The British then moved up the hill for the third time. The powder in the fort

was now gone, and the garrison fought for a few minutes with gun-stocks and stones against the British bayonets. But such a struggle was hopeless, and the British gained the fort. They were too tired to pursue the garrison, who escaped to the mainland.

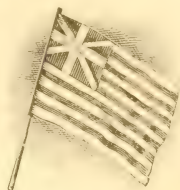
The American loss was 449, out of 1,500 men in the battle. Among the killed was General Joseph Warren, a Boston physician, one of the leading Whigs of Massachusetts. The British loss was 1,054, one third of their number. This tremendous loss had its effect all through the war, for the British regulars would no longer fight except in the open field. On several occasions, American armies were relieved from dangerous positions because the British did not like to attack intrenchments.

198. Washington (§ 194), early in July, took command of the Americans who had gathered around Boston, and began the difficult task of forming them into a real army. Supplies of powder, arms,

197. What is said of the first advance against the fort, and its result? Describe the second advance, and its result. The third advance, and the final struggle. The capture of the fort, and the escape of the garrison.

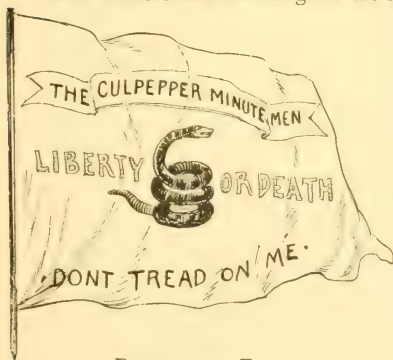
198. What was done by Washington? How were materials of war obtained? What difficulty was found with the men? When was an army formed? What is said of its uniform? Of its flag?

and other materials of war grew more abundant, as the American privateers (§ 241) captured supply-ships from England. But the men were not willing to remain in camp for a long time, and had been so accustomed to independence that they disliked strict military discipline. This difficulty lasted throughout the war, and sometimes drove Washington almost to despair. In the spring of 1776, he had formed something like an army. The color of its uniform, when it could afford one, was blue and yellow (or buff), and these were the "rebel" colors throughout the Revolution. Usually, however, the soldiers wore hunting-shirts, dyed brown, as the best available substitute. The flag was unfurled for the first time on New-Year's Day, 1776, at Cambridge. It had the stripes as at present, and the double cross of the British flag instead of the stars. The stars were added in 1777.



UNION FLAG.

At first there had been flags of all kinds, the commonest having a rattlesnake upon it, with the motto, "Don't tread on me." It is probable that there were no flags in Bunker Hill fort.



RATTLESNAKE FLAG.

who had succeeded Gage, could attack it, the fortifications had been made very strong. The British commander therefore decided not to attack them, but to leave Boston. He embarked his men on the fleet, March 17, and set sail for Halifax. The American army then entered the town. From this time the British made hardly any serious effort to conquer New England; and for a few

199. British Evacuation of Boston. — Washington's new army was now ready to renew the attempt which had been made at Bunker Hill. This time a peninsula on the south side of Boston, called Dorchester Heights, was selected. It was silently seized by night, and before Howe,

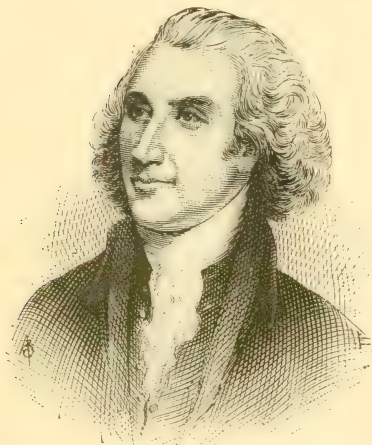
199. What was Washington's army ready to do? What point was selected? How was it fortified? What did the British commander decide to do? Describe the evacuation. What was then the state of affairs?

months, until they attacked the Middle States, there were no longer any British forces within the United States (§ 208).

(2) OPERATIONS IN CANADA.

200. *Canada*, it was hoped, would join the other colonies, and the first thought of the colonists was to drive the British troops out of that province. The easiest road into Canada was through northeastern New York, along Lake Champlain and the St. Lawrence River. On this road the British held the strong fort of Ticonderoga; but this was taken by surprise, three weeks after the fight at Lexington, by Ethan Allen and a few men from Vermont. The captured stores were sent to the army before Boston, where they were very welcome.

201. *The Invasion of Canada* was now begun. During the summer of 1775, American troops, led by Schuyler and Montgomery, two New York officers, pushed into Canada. They captured Montreal in November. Here they were joined by fresh troops, under Benedict Arnold, who had forced their way through the Maine wilderness, up the Kennebec River, and across into Canada. The whole force now numbered about 1,000 men, and these found Quebec too strong for them (§ 153). In an attack upon it, Montgomery was killed, and his



PHILIP SCHUYLER.

troops were beaten back. Arnold held the army before Quebec until the spring of 1776, when the Americans were finally driven

200. What was the reason for invading Canada? What was the easiest road thither? What fort guarded it, and how was it captured?

201. How was the invasion of Canada begun? What city was captured? What fresh troops arrived there? How many men were in the army? What is said of the attack upon Quebec? Of the final retreat? What did Canada continue to be?

out of Canada, back to Ticonderoga. Canada remained a British province.

Montgomery had been a distinguished British officer, but had married and settled in New York. His bones were brought to New York City in 1818, and again buried with appropriate ceremonies.

(3) IN ENGLAND AND ON THE COAST.

202. The People in England had offered many expressions of sympathy for the colonies. A number of officers in the army had resigned their commissions rather than serve in America. Petitions against the war had been offered to the king and Parliament from many towns. The city of London had declared its abhorrence of the measures designed to oppress "our fellow-subjects in the colonies," and had begged the king to change his government. But none of these expressions had any influence upon those who had power in Great Britain; and, as the war grew angrier, English expressions of sympathy for the colonies became fewer.

203. Parliament proposed, early in 1775, that, if any colony would promise to lay taxes sufficient to support a royal government, no Parliamentary taxes should be imposed on that colony. When this offer was refused, and the battle of Bunker Hill was fought, Parliament was as angry as the king. It voted to send 25,000 men to America; to hire and send over 17,000 soldiers from Hesse, in Germany; to forbid all trade with the colonies; and to declare American ships lawful prize, that is, to permit them to be captured by English or foreign ships. Congress answered by opening American harbors to ships of all nations, and declaring British ships lawful prize. All this time, Congress was very honestly declaring that it had no desire for independence; and the different colonies were directing their delegates not to vote for a separation. This state of things could not last long. The king's loyal subjects could not go on shooting the king's soldiers without soon learning to detest the king himself.

The hired soldiers from Hesse, called Hessians, who could speak no English, were particularly hated by the colonists, and were accused of numberless cruelties during the war.

202. Was there any sympathy for the colonies in England? What had been done by officers in the army? By many of the towns? By the city of London? Did these expressions have any influence?

203. What had Parliament proposed? Was the offer accepted? What was voted by Parliament? How did Congress answer? Was there yet a desire for independence? Why could not this state of things last?

204. Along the Coast, where the British frigates commanded the ocean, the exposed towns were harshly treated. Any refusal by the people to supply the ships with provisions was answered by a cannonade. In this manner, in 1775, the towns of Gloucester, Bristol, and Falmouth (now Portland) were bombarded and destroyed; and early in 1776, Norfolk met the same fate. Charleston was attacked, June 28, by a squadron of ten British ships, with 2,500 troops on board, under General Clinton. They were handsomely beaten off by the South Carolina troops under Moultrie, one of the ships being burned. The fleet then sailed for New York, and the Southern States for nearly three years felt little of the war.

The name of Fort Sullivan was changed to Fort Moultrie in honor of the commander. One of the heroes of the defence was Sergeant Jasper, who climbed the parapet during the hottest of the fire, and restored the flag-staff, which had been shot away.

SUPPLEMENTARY QUESTIONS.

Locations.—Locate Boston, Mass.; Cambridge, Mass. (§ 198); Halifax, N. S. (§ 76); Lake Champlain, N. Y.; the St. Lawrence River; Ticonderoga, N. Y. (§ 221); Montreal; the Kennebec River (§ 60); Quebec; Gloucester, Mass. (§ 195); Bristol, R. I. (§ 195); Portland, Me.; Norfolk, Va.; Charleston, S. C.; New York City.

REVIEW.—Give the year of the second Continental Congress. Of the battle of Bunker Hill. Of the invasion of Canada. Of the retreat from Canada. Of the evacuation of Boston. Of the attack on Charleston.

(4) INDEPENDENCE.

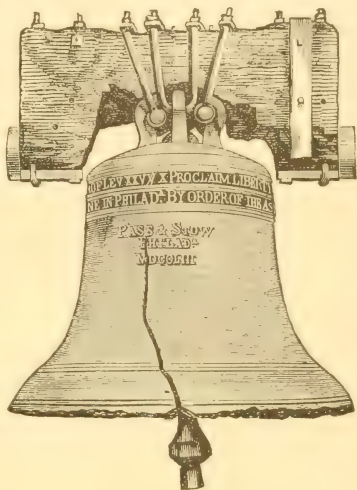
205. The Desire for Independence began to grow in the spring of 1776. The king was wholly on the side of the enemies of the colonists, had declared the colonists to be rebels, and had allowed his ships to burn their towns. The colonists were therefore beginning to forget that they were his loyal subjects. Just at this time, a pamphlet called *Common Sense* was published, written by Thomas Paine: it urged these considerations with great force and effect. The first strong sign of the change of feeling was a recommenda-

204. How were the towns along the coast treated? What towns were bombarded in 1775-6? Describe the attack on Charleston. Its repulse. How long was it before the Southern States again felt the war?

205. When did the desire for independence begin to grow? What had the king done? What influence did these acts have on the colonists? What pamphlet had great influence? What was the first strong sign of a change of feeling?

tion by Congress, in May, 1776, that the different colonies should form governments of their own, in place of those which had been overthrown. This was done, and the colonies now took the name of States.

206. Independence.—Virginia led the way in instructing her delegates in Congress to vote for independence, and the other States gradually followed. June 8, a resolution that the colonies were free and independent States was offered in Congress; and a committee of five was appointed to draw up a fitting declaration. The committee finished its work, June 28. July 2, the resolution was adopted; and the Declaration of Independence was adopted July 4, 1776. The United Colonies were now the United States, claiming to be independent of both king and Parliament.



LIBERTY BELL.

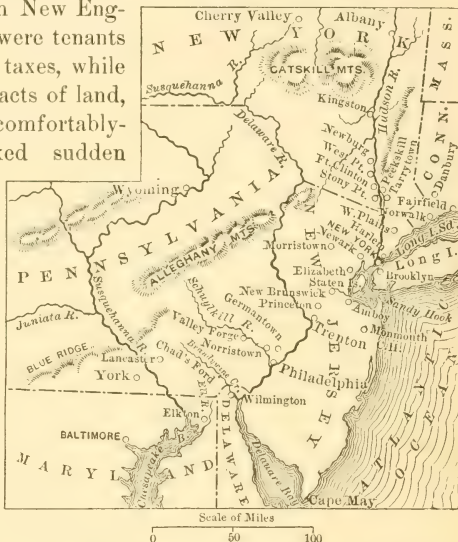
207. The Declaration of Independence is in Appendix I. It was drawn up by Jefferson (§ 328). The other members of the committee, John Adams, Franklin, Sherman, and Livingston, did little of the work; but Adams did most of the speaking in its favor, as Jefferson was not a good public speaker (§ 439). Parliament is not mentioned in the Declaration, except as a body of men whom the king had aided in "acts of pretended legislation" over the colonies. The new idea in the Declaration is that governments are to be made and changed by the people; elsewhere, up to that time, it was held that the people were bound to obey the government, as long as it protected them. The success of the American Revolution brought about the French Revolution in 1789 and the following years. It was based on the same idea, which now controls every government whose people care to assert it.

206. What was done by Virginia? What resolution was offered in Congress? What committee was appointed? When was the resolution adopted? When was the Declaration adopted? What was its effect?

207. Who drew up the Declaration? What is said of the other members of the committee? Of Parliament? Of the new idea in the Declaration? Of its influence on other peoples?

(5) IN THE MIDDLE STATES: 1776-78.

208. The Middle States were now, for nearly three years, to be the theatre of the war. For the time, Great Britain had given up New England, because of its stormy coast in winter, and the stubborn temper of its people. The Southern States were not yet rich enough to be a great prize. The Middle States seemed to be a better point of attack. Their people were of mixed races, not all of one blood as in New England. Many of them were tenants and cared little about taxes, while the owners of great tracts of land, like most rich and comfortably-settled people, disliked sudden changes, and were apt to sympathize with the government. Most of the Tories were in the Middle States, and the British could expect assistance from them. Above all, the British frigates could control the harbor of New York and the Hudson River, thus opening up the road to Canada (§ 200), and at the same time, by forts and garrisons along the river, cutting off New



THE REVOLUTION IN THE MIDDLE STATES.

England from the rest of the Union. Late in June, 1776, a British army from Halifax, under General Howe, landed on Staten Island, near New York City; and the dangerous part of the war began. The fighting in New England at the beginning of the Revolution, and in the South at the end of it, is interesting; but the real decisive struggle was in the Middle States from 1776 until 1778.

208. What was now to be the theatre of war? What is said of New England? Of the South? Of the Middle States? Of their people? Of the Hudson River? When was the attack on New York begun? What is said of the fighting for the next three years?

209. Washington had hurried to New York with his troops immediately after the evacuation of Boston (§ 199), and had begun to erect fortifications. He had succeeded in getting together about 20,000 men. But they were poorly armed, equipped, and drilled, and were to be beaten again and again by the British before they could be trained to win victories in their turn. The great distinction of Washington, in the war, is the patient courage with which he submitted to being beaten until his army was formed and trained.

210. Battle of Long Island.—During the next two months of 1776, Howe's force was increased to about 30,000 well-trained soldiers. With half of these he crossed to Long Island, where about 5,000 Americans were posted near Brooklyn, then only a ferry station. Howe nearly surrounded them, and completely defeated them in the battle of Long Island (August 27, 1776). Only 3,000 of the Americans escaped to Brooklyn, where a fort had been built. For two days the British hesitated about attacking the fort, and then a heavy fog enabled Washington to bring the garrison over to New York. Howe followed slowly to New York. Washington retreated before him, skirmishing at Harlem and White Plains, thus reaching the hills east of the present town of Peekskill, where he halted and faced about. Again Howe refused to attack him, but moved back to enter New Jersey. On his way he captured Fort Washington, now in the upper part of New York City, where Washington had left 3,000 men.

It was during this retreat that the British captured and hanged a young American officer, Captain Nathan Hale. He was a spy, like André (§ 239), but was not treated as was André. He was not given time to write a letter, or prepare for death, and was shown no sympathy.

211. Washington's Retreat.—Washington left General Charles Lee to hold the position near Peekskill, and with 5,000 men crossed the Hudson River, and moved down to a point nearly opposite

209. What is said of Washington's movements? How many men had he? What was their condition? What is the great distinction of Washington?

210. What was Howe's force? Describe his attack on Long Island. The battle of Long Island. How did the Americans escape to Brooklyn? To New York? Describe the retreat to Peekskill. Howe's return to New York. The capture of Fort Washington.

211. Who was left at Peekskill? What movement was made by Washington? By the British? Describe Washington's retreat. How were his forces diminished? What was the feeling of the British?

New York City. Early in December, the British, under Lord Cornwallis, crossed the Hudson River. Washington retreated before them through New Brunswick, Princeton, and Trenton, across New Jersey, and finally put the Delaware River between him and his pursuers. The cold weather, the hasty retreat, and other discouragements, decreased his forces so much that he had but 3,000 men; and the British were confident that they would "catch him and end the war" as soon as the Delaware River should freeze over so that they could cross.

Washington summoned Lee from Peekskill to his help, but Lee was treacherous, moved slowly, and allowed himself to be captured in New Jersey.

212. Congress abandoned Philadelphia and went to Baltimore. Before leaving, it gave Washington almost supreme power, authorizing him to seize property and arrest persons as he should judge best. There was terror everywhere through the Middle States, and many persons hastened to put themselves under British protection and again become loyal subjects of the king. Washington, at least, had not lost courage, and he revived the courage of others by an unexpected blow.

213. Trenton and Princeton.—On Christmas night of 1776, Washington recrossed the Delaware River into New Jersey, with 2,500 picked men, and before daylight, December 26, he had surrounded Trenton. The garrison, 1,000 Hessian soldiers, was surprised and captured with the loss of but four Americans. Washington took his prisoners to Philadelphia and returned to Trenton. As this news spread, the British forces in New Jersey marched for Trenton, where Washington was for the moment hemmed in between his enemies and the Delaware River. Another quick movement saved him. During the night he broke camp, marched around the British forces to Princeton in their rear, and there, January 3, 1777, defeated and scattered three British regiments. Cornwallis instantly turned and pursued him. But Washington was soon safe in the mountains of northern New Jersey, at Morristown, where the British did not venture to attack him.

212. What removal was made by Congress? What powers were given to Washington? What was the feeling in the Middle States? How was it changed?

213. What unexpected movement was made by Washington? What took place at Trenton? What was the danger of Washington's position? By what movement did he save himself? What took place at Princeton? What was done by Cornwallis? Where had Washington placed his army?

214. Winter Quarters.—The American army passed the winter of 1776–7 in a long line stretching from the Hudson River to the Delaware, as the mountains run. The British line at first faced Washington in a corresponding line through the flat country below; but the country people were so hostile that the whole British force gradually drew in around New Brunswick and near Sandy Hook. The winter thus passed without much advantage to either side, except that the British had failed to capture Philadelphia.

215. During the Winter, plundering expeditions were sent out by the British from New York City to the towns in the neighborhood. In December, 1776, Newport, Rhode Island, was captured by the British, and was held for three years. In April, 1777, an expedition landed at Norwalk, Connecticut, marched inland, and burned the supplies at Danbury. A number of officers from the continent of Europe crossed the ocean during the year to enter the American army. The most important of these was the Marquis de La Fayette, a youth of nineteen, who had secretly fitted out a ship and sailed for America against the orders of the French Government. Others were the Baron de Kalb, an experienced German officer; Kosciusko and Pulaski, two Polish patriots; and Conway, a troublesome Irish officer (§ 224). In 1778 came the Baron von Steuben, a veteran German officer, who first instructed the American troops in the tactics used in Europe.



MARQUIS DE LA FAYETTE.

216. Howe tried in vain to bring the Americans out of their stronghold in northern New Jersey. He did not venture to attack Philadelphia by marching his army across New Jersey in front of the Americans, lest they should strike his army in flank on the

214. Where was the line of the American winter quarters? Where was the British line? Why was it changed? What was the result of the winter?

215. What was done by the British during the winter? What was done in Rhode Island? In Connecticut? What is said of La Fayette? Of other foreign officers?

216. What did Howe try to do? Why did he not cross New Jersey? What plan did he finally adopt? Why did Washington wait in New Jersey? What course did Howe take? Why did he avoid the Delaware River?

march. In July, 1777, he embarked 18,000 men on transports at Staten Island, and put out to sea, leaving a sufficient garrison to hold New York City. No one knew where he was going, and Washington was compelled to wait in New Jersey until he heard that the British vessels had been seen in Chesapeake Bay. He then hurried his army to Philadelphia to defend that city. Howe sailed up Chesapeake Bay, and landed near Elkton. He avoided the Delaware River, because the Americans had filled it with obstructions.

217. Brandywine and Germantown.—Between Elkton and Philadelphia, the Brandywine River crosses the road. Here, at Chad's Ford, Washington met Howe, and was defeated with a loss of 1,200 men. But the American army did better fighting than it had yet done; and, though Howe captured Philadelphia, Washington did not hesitate to attack him again at Germantown (now a part of Philadelphia). The Americans were again repulsed after hard fighting.

218. Winter Quarters.—The British troops in Philadelphia enjoyed every comfort which a large city could give them. The Americans went into winter quarters at Valley Forge, a little place on the Schuylkill River, just above Norristown. Here they passed a horrible winter, half starved, poorly clothed, and many of them without shoes to protect their feet against the snow and ice. In spite of the horrors of the winter, Washington held his army at Valley Forge, because it was the best possible position from which to attack the enemy if they should move out of Philadelphia in any direction. Congress had fled to Lancaster and then to York, again leaving Washington in almost supreme command. But things were not quite so dark as during the previous winter; for, while Washington had been fighting around Philadelphia, a whole British army had been captured at Saratoga in northeastern New York (§ 223).

In October, 1777, after a long siege and hard fighting, the British drove the Americans out of Forts Mercer and Mifflin, opposite each other, on the banks of the Delaware, just below Philadelphia.

217. Where is the Brandywine River? What is said of the battle of Brandywine? Of the battle of Germantown?

218. What is said of the British winter quarters? Of the American winter quarters? Of the American distress? Where was Congress? What new encouragement had the Americans received?

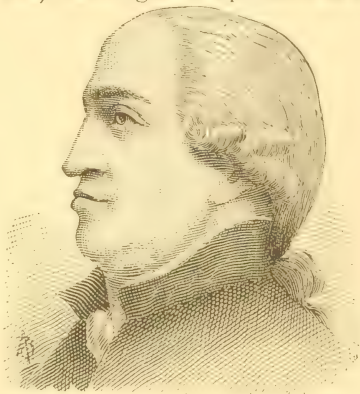
SUPPLEMENTARY QUESTIONS.

Locations.—Locate New York City; the Hudson River; Staten Island, N. Y.; Long Island, N. Y.; Brooklyn, N. Y.; Peekskill, N. Y.; New Brunswick, N. J.; Princeton, N. J.; Trenton, N. J.; the Delaware River; Philadelphia; Baltimore, Md.; Morristown, N. J.; Sandy Hook, N. J.; Chesapeake Bay; Elkton, Md.; Norristown, Pa.; Lancaster, Pa.

REVIEW.—Give the date of the Declaration of Independence. The year of the battle of Long Island. Of the retreat through New Jersey. Of the battle of Trenton. Of the battle of Princeton. Of the battles of Brandywine and Germantown.

(6) BURGOYNE'S EXPEDITION, 1777.

219. The Hudson River (§ 208) was of great importance as a water-way (with Lake Champlain) to Canada, and as a dividing line between New England and the other States. The British had found Washington's position on the Hudson, near Peekskill, so strong that they could not capture it from the south: they were now to try it from the north. During the summer of 1777, while Howe was getting ready to sail for Philadelphia, Gen. John Burgoyne was moving from Canada to Lake Champlain with an army of about 10,000 men. Of these, 7,000 were regular troops which he had brought from England, and the rest Canadians and Indians. In July, he reached Ticonderoga, which he captured without difficulty.



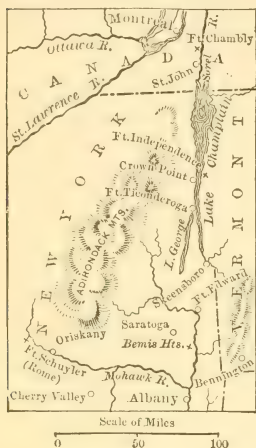
GEN. JOHN BURGOYNE.

220. Schuyler, the American general (§ 201), had but 4,000 men, and could only retreat through Skenesboro toward Albany.

219. What was the importance of the Hudson River? How was the British plan changed? What is said of Burgoyne? Of his army? Of Ticonderoga?

220. What was Schuyler's force? Describe his retreat. The position which he finally took up. Why did the two armies halt?

But he did so slowly, destroying the bridges behind him, felling trees across the roads, and delaying the passage of the British as much as possible. Finally, he took up a position on some islands at the mouth of the Mohawk River, where it empties into



BURGOYNE'S EXPEDITION.

the Hudson. Here both armies halted for a time. Schuyler was waiting for reinforcements. Burgoyne thought Schuyler's position too strong to be attacked, and was also searching for provisions, of which he was now in need.

221. Fort Schuyler and Bennington.—Burgoyne had sent a detachment to the west, to capture Fort Schuyler (now the city of Rome). The detachment routed a militia force at Oriskany; but the garrison of Fort Schuyler held out stoutly until Arnold, with an American detachment, arrived and drove the British back to Canada in great confusion. To the eastward was Vermont, whose people claimed to be a

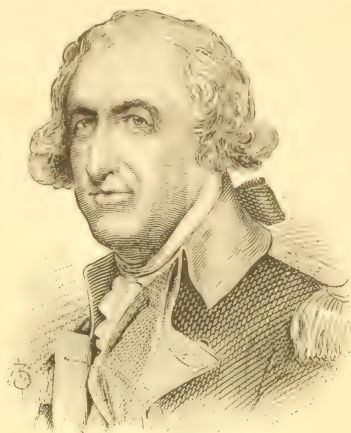
State separate from New Hampshire, though Congress as yet refused to recognize them (§ 69). Partly in the hope of bringing the Vermonters to the British side, Burgoyne sent 800 men to Bennington, under Colonel Baum. They were met by Colonel John Stark and 400 militia, who entirely defeated them. Burgoyne had sent reinforcements, under Colonel Breyman, to support Baum; but, before they could reach the battle-field, the Americans also received reinforcements, under Colonel Seth Warner, and the second detachment was defeated as completely as the first had been.

The British loss was about 800 in both battles; that of the Americans, 54. Stark's speech to his men, before the battle, is said to have been, "There they are, boys; we must beat them to-day, or this night Molly Stark's a widow."

221. What is said of the expedition to Fort Schuyler? Of the condition of Vermont? Of the expedition to Bennington? Of the battle of Bennington? Of the second battle?

222. Burgoyne's Position was by this time very dangerous.

His Indians were leaving him; many of his best men had been killed or captured; and he was getting short of provisions. The army opposed to him was increasing: Congress was hurrying men up the Hudson; and the country militia were coming in rapidly. Burgoyne, therefore, desperately attempted to force his way through the American army. He crossed the Hudson, and moved slowly down its west bank toward the Mohawk. About the same time, Gates, who had been



HORATIO GATES.

sent by Congress to take Schuyler's place, felt strong enough to move up the west bank of the Hudson, away from the Mohawk.

223. Bemis Heights.—The two armies met at Bemis Heights, between Saratoga Lake and the Hudson. The battle which followed was not decisive: the British held the ground; but the Americans had shown that Burgoyne could not break through. He was soon forced to make a last desperate attempt to do so; but was defeated again and gave up hope of escaping southward. He now tried to retreat to Canada; but the triumphant Americans pressed on and surrounded his camp. At Saratoga, he surrendered his remaining army of 6,000 men.

Clinton, in the mean time, was endeavoring to come to Burgoyne's relief with troops from New York City. He captured some of the forts on the Hudson, but retreated on learning of Burgoyne's surrender.

224. The Conway Cabal.—Most of the glory of these victories was due to the careful preparations of Schuyler, and the personal daring of

222. What is said of Burgoyne's position? Of the army opposed to him? What did Burgoyne decide to do? What movement was made by him? What movement was made by Gates?

223. Where did the two armies meet? What is said of the battle of Bemis Heights? Of the battle of Stillwater? What stopped Burgoyne's retreat? What is said of his surrender?

224. To what were these victories due? What did Gates endeavor to do? Why did the plan fail? What name was given to it?

Arnold; but Gates took all the glory to himself. During the winter, an effort was made by him and a number of leading men in Congress and in the army to make him commander-in-chief, instead of Washington. It failed on account of the general indignation when it became known. It is generally known as the "Conway cabal," from the name of one of its leaders (§ 215, note); but there were many others engaged in it, whose share has been more carefully covered over. Almost all the meannesses of the Revolution centred in this "time that tried men's souls." Some public men were afraid that the war would be a failure, and were anxious to make their peace with the British; others were jealous of one another or of the army; others were anxious only to make money. Their meanness made the task of Washington and the great men of the Revolution far more difficult, and their success far more brilliant, than if all had been patriots.

(7) AID FROM FRANCE.

225. France had been waiting patiently since 1763 for the time when Great Britain also should be deprived of her territory in North America by the growing strength of her colonies. The French Government was therefore not at all sorry to see the English colonies rebel, and supplied them with arms and clothing from the beginning. But, in order to avoid war with Great Britain, the supplies were sent secretly, and the American agents were not publicly recognized. Openly, the French Government was all on the side of Great Britain. It declared that, as it still had colonies, outside of North America, it would not encourage them to rebel by helping the United States.

The first American agent in France was Silas Deane, appointed in 1776. Franklin, Deane, and Arthur Lee were made agents later in 1776. In 1778, Benjamin Franklin was made sole minister to France.

226. The Appointment of Franklin as minister to France was a most fortunate selection. He was one of the shrewdest and busiest managers that ever served any country; and yet he took care to seem only a plain and simple colonist. His plain dress, his modest manners, and his homely wit captivated the French, and he was the favorite of Paris. He brought French public opinion over to the side of the colonies; but for a long time he could get no recognition from the government. When other French officers followed La Fayette to America, to enter the army of the United

225. For what had France been waiting? What was done by the French Government? Why was this done secretly? What side did the French Government profess to take?

226. What is said of Franklin's appointment? What were his good qualities as an agent? Why was he liked in France? What success had he? How did the French Government act?

States, the French Government took care that the British ministers should know how angry it was, but it never succeeded in arresting the officers.

Franklin was born at Boston, in 1706, removed to Pennsylvania, and there became a printer and newspaper editor. He was famous in his own country for his wonderful common-sense, and abroad for his discovery, by means of a kite, that the lightning of the clouds was the same thing as electricity. He died at Philadelphia, in 1790, full of years and honors.

227. The French Treaty.

—The Declaration of Independence had convinced the French Government that the Americans intended to separate from Great Britain forever; but it required some further evidence that, if France should help, France would not have to do all the fighting.

This doubt was removed by Burgoyne's surrender, and Franklin was made happy by a treaty of alliance between France and the United States, early in 1778. France was to send to the assistance of the United States a fleet of 16 war-vessels, under D'Estaing, and an army of 4,000 men.

228. Great Britain at once declared war against France, and invited the United States to help her in it. She now offered all that the colonies had asked three years before, freedom from taxation, and representation in Parliament. But the offer came too late. Independence had become the settled purpose of the Americans, and the war was to last nearly five years longer before Great Britain would consent to this.

The ruling families of France and Spain were related, and Spain joined France in the war against Great Britain in 1779. Holland joined them in 1780, for commercial reasons.



BENJAMIN FRANKLIN.

227. What was the effect of the Declaration of Independence? Of the surrender of Burgoyne? What was agreed on in the treaty?

228. What was done by Great Britain? What offer was made? Why was it rejected?

229. The Battle of Monmouth.—We left Howe in Philadelphia, and Washington at Valley Forge, near Norristown. Clinton succeeded Howe during the winter. When the news of the French alliance reached Clinton, he left Philadelphia and started across New Jersey, in order to unite all the British forces at New York City before the French fleet and army should arrive. Washington hurried after him, intending to keep him busy in New Jersey until the French should come. The van of the American army overtook the British rear at Monmouth Court-house (Freehold), in June, 1778, and the battle lasted until nightfall without any decided result. The British drew off during the night, and embarked at Sandy Hook for New York City.

General Charles Lee, who has since been discovered to have been a traitor, was disgraced at Monmouth. Instead of attacking, as he was ordered to do, he allowed his men to retreat. Washington spoke to him hastily and passionately as he sent the men back into the fight, and Lee afterward wrote Washington several very disrespectful letters. For this and other acts of the kind he was dismissed the service. At the beginning of the war, he had been considered the best of the American generals.

230. Washington moved farther toward the north, crossed the Hudson above New York City, and took his former position near Peekskill. From this he could operate with effect if Clinton should make any movement toward New England, toward Canada, or toward Philadelphia. These positions in the Middle States were maintained for the rest of the war, the British occupying New York City, Staten Island, and a part of Long Island, and Washington's line running from Peekskill to Morristown. The British had failed in the Middle States as they had done in New England, and were now about to attack the Southern States.

(8) IN THE NORTH AFTER 1778.

231. The French Fleet and Army arrived in July, 1778, soon after the British retreat from Philadelphia. The heavier ves-

229. In what positions did we leave Howe and Washington? Who was now the British commander? Why did he leave Philadelphia? What was done by Washington? What is said of the battle of Monmouth? What was its result?

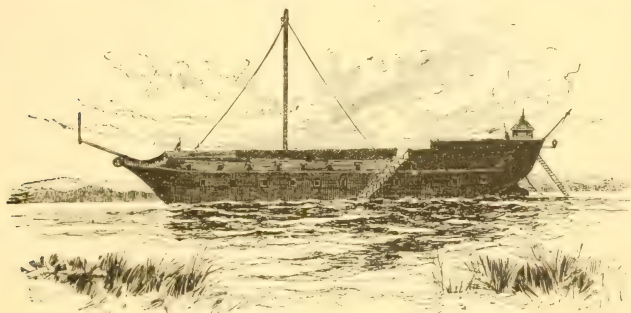
230. What course did Washington take? What was the advantage of his position? What is said of the positions of the two armies? What had been the results of the war thus far?

231. What is said of the French fleet and army? Why was not New York attacked? What arrangements were made to attack Newport? Why did they fail? Whither did the French forces go?

sels were unable to enter New York harbor, so that no attack was made on that city. The French therefore sailed for Newport, which was still in the hands of the British (§ 215). An American army, under Greene, Sullivan, and La Fayette, was sent to assist in the attack. But a storm blew the French fleet off the coast, and the attack was given up. The whole French force then sailed to the West Indies, where France had possessions to defend.

The French forces were never of any great assistance to the United States until the Yorktown campaign (§ 258). Whenever they were most needed, they were certain to be called off to the West Indies, to defend the French colonies there. But France always helped the United States most liberally with money and supplies.

232. The British now held but two cities in the United States. Newport and New York, with Staten Island and part of Long Island.



PRISON-SHIP "JERSEY."

These were all the results of their three years' war against the colonies alone. Now they were struggling on every sea with their old enemy, France, and had still less attention to spare for America. As their chances of success grew less, their manner of fighting grew more savage. Plundering expeditions along the coast of New England and New Jersey burned the houses and alarmed the country, but made no attempt to hold any place.

233. Instances of the new manner of warfare are numerous. Wyoming, a Connecticut settlement in northern Pennsylvania, was captured

232. What were the British possessions in the United States? Why had the British less hopes of success now? How did their warfare change?

233. What is said of the capture of Wyoming? Of the treatment of the inhabitants? Of the capture of Cherry Valley? What was done by Congress? By Sullivan? What was the treatment of prisoners by the British at New York? What is said of the *Jersey*?

in July, 1778, by a force of British and Indians from western New York, commanded by a Tory, Colonel John Butler, and Brant, an Indian chief. The inhabitants were cruelly treated, and most of the men were killed. In November, the village of Cherry Valley, in New York, met a like fate. But the Indians were now to learn for the first time that a new power had risen, and that it could strike, and strike hard. In the following year, 1779, Congress sent an army, under General Sullivan, into western New York, to punish the Indians. Sullivan killed, burned, and destroyed until he had left the Indian country a desert. The British treatment of prisoners at New York was particularly cruel. The prisoners were placed in worn-out war-vessels in the East River, near the Brooklyn shore, and were so scantily supplied with food, water, clothing, and medicine, that they died in great numbers. The most notorious of these "hulks," or prison-ships, was the *Jersey*.

234. Paper Money was one of the severest discouragements under which the Americans labored. It had been issued by Congress to pay the expenses of the war, and had increased largely.



CONTINENTAL MONEY.

When a country has more paper money than it can use for business purposes, two or more dollars are made to do the work of one, and each "dollar" decreases in value. The loss, of course, falls most severely on the poor. By 1778, Congress had issued so much paper money that eight paper dollars would buy only as much as one gold dollar.

This made the difficulty worse, for Congress now had to issue eight times as much paper money as at first, and its value fell faster than ever. The British in New York counterfeited it skilfully, and passed off their counterfeits on the farmers. Before the war ended, the "continental money" was worthless: no one would take it, and a worthless thing was said to be "not worth a continental," meaning a continental dollar.

235. Congress itself was not so much respected as at first, and the States did not submit to its authority as willingly as when they

234 What is said of issues of paper money? What is the result of an over-issue of such money? How did the decrease in value increase the issues? How did the British assist the fall? What was the result?

235 What was the position of Congress? Of the government? Of the army? Of the people generally? On whom did most of the burden fall?

were all in terror of the British. No regular government for the whole people had yet been formed, and Congress could only go on begging the States for soldiers, issuing paper money, and running into debt in France and Holland, without the power to lay taxes or redeem the debt. The pay of the army was small, and toward the end of the war the men were not paid at all; so that it was difficult to obtain recruits, except when a British force entered a State and frightened the people into the army. The people generally were beginning to rely on France, and to think the war really over. Most of the burden of these difficulties fell on Washington, and taxed his patience to the utmost.

After the war, the soldiers were partly paid by giving them western lands. Those who lived until the people and government grew richer were supported in their old age by pensions.

236. The West.—Settlements had already been begun, in 1768–69, in Kentucky and Tennessee (§ 160, note), but they were not large, and were just beginning to feel secure against the Indians. North of the Ohio, there were only the remnants of the French settlements (§ 142), with a few British officers and soldiers. In 1778 and 1779, George Rogers Clarke crossed the Ohio with a Kentucky force, captured Vincennes, and conquered the territory now in the States of Illinois and Indiana. Virginia claimed it (§ 83), and made it the county of Illinois. But no American settlements were undertaken in it for many years.

237. The British Government seems to have become convinced, when France entered the war, that in the end the independence of the United States must be acknowledged. But it wished to save some of its former territory. It had failed in New England and in the Middle States. It now determined to attack the Southern States, since they had fewer white inhabitants than the North, and more negro slaves, who would not count as soldiers. During the next five years, 1779–83, the fighting was mainly in the South, while the armies elsewhere watched one another. Three noteworthy events took place in the North, and these we will give at once.

236. Where were the western settlements? What settlements were there north of the Ohio? What is said of their conquest? Were any new settlements made in the conquered country?

237. What was now the feeling of the British Government? Where had it failed? Why did it determine to attack the South? What is said of events in the North?

238. Stony Point: 1779.—A rocky hill, called Stony Point, ran out into the Hudson, nearly opposite Peekskill, and the British



ANTHONY WAYNE.

had taken possession of it and fortified it. Washington sent General Anthony Wayne, an officer of distinguished courage and skill, to recapture it. Just before midnight in July, 1779, Wayne silently formed his men in two columns on opposite sides of the foot of the hill, giving them orders not to fire, but to trust to the bayonet. The charge was completely successful; the two columns met in the centre of the fort, and captured it and the garrison without firing a shot. The fort was too near New York to be held, and the

Americans, after destroying the works, retired. The object of the movement was mainly to encourage the men, by showing them that they were now so well trained that they could trust to the bayonet as well as the British.

Wayne's daring gave him the popular name of "Mad Anthony;" but he was really as prudent as he was brave (§ 309).

239. Arnold's Treason: 1780.—In September, 1780, the country was shocked by the discovery that Benedict Arnold, one of its bravest generals, and commander of the important fortress of West Point, had agreed to betray his post to the British in return for a large sum of money and a brigadier-general's commission in the British army. He had been reprimanded for misusing the public money, and took this road to revenge. The British agent in making the bargain was Major John André, an amiable young

238. What is said of Stony Point? Who was sent to recapture it? What arrangements did he make for the attack? What was the result? Why was not the fort held? What was the object of the movement?

239. What discovery was made in 1780? What was the reason of Arnold's treachery? Who was the British agent? How was he captured? How did Arnold escape? What was André's fate?

officer, Clinton's aide-de-camp. On his return down the Hudson River from an interview with Arnold, he was made prisoner, near Tarrytown, by three militiamen. He was allowed by an American officer to send warning to Arnold, who escaped to the British lines and received his reward, though the plot had failed. André was hanged as a spy, since he had been caught in disguise within the American lines.



JOHN ANDRÉ. (*Drawn by himself.*)

The fate of André was lamented by the whole American army; but Washington felt that it was necessary as a warning to other British officers not to engage in such affairs. Efforts were made to capture Arnold, in order to hang him also, but they failed. At the end of the war, he went to England, where he lived and died despised by Englishmen as well as by Americans.

240. Revolt of the Troops: 1781.—In January, 1781, the misery of the unpaid and half-starved American soldiers at Morristown became unbearable. The Pennsylvania troops revolted, and set out for Philadelphia to demand pay from Congress, which was in session there. On the march, British agents attempted to bring them over to Clinton's army, but were arrested by the soldiers. A committee of Congress met them at Princeton, and by fair promises induced them to disband peaceably. A few weeks later, the New Jersey troops also revolted, but Washington surrounded their camp and forced them to return to duty.

At the end of the war, there were serious fears of a more extensive mutiny among the officers and soldiers at Newburgh, N. Y., because of failure to pay them; but it was stopped by Washington's influence.

SUPPLEMENTARY QUESTIONS.

Locations.—Locate the Hudson River; Peekskill, N. Y. (§ 208); Lake Champlain, N. Y.; Ticonderoga, N. Y. (§ 221); the Mohawk River;

240. What was the condition of the army? What was done by the Pennsylvania troops? By British agents? How was this revolt settled? What further revolt was attempted? How was it suppressed?

Rome, N. Y.; Bennington, Vt.; Saratoga, N. Y.; Philadelphia; Norristown, Pa.; Monmouth (Freehold), N. J.; Sandy Hook, N. J.; Newport, R. I. (§ 68); New York City; Staten Island, N. Y.; Long Island, N. Y.; Vincennes, Ind.; West Point, N. Y.; Morristown, N. J.

REVIEW.—Give the year of Burgoyne's surrender. Name three battles which preceded it. Give the year of the French treaty of alliance. The name of the American agent who concluded it. The year of the battle of Monmouth. Name the places held by the British in 1778. Give the year of the battle of Stony Point. Of Arnold's treason. Of the revolt of the troops.

(9) ON THE SEA.

241. The American War-Vessels were mainly privateers, that is, vessels owned by private persons, but commissioned by Congress,



JOHN PAUL JONES.

or by one of the States, to capture British vessels. Late in 1775, Congress ordered fourteen vessels to be built as a public navy (§ 194). Most of these were of small size, but they and the privateers captured a great number of merchant-vessels and small war-vessels, and seriously injured the commerce of Great Britain. Two of them, the *Reprisal* and the *Revenge*, cruised around the British Islands in 1777, and almost put a stop to commerce for the time. In 1778, Captain John Paul Jones, in the

Ranger, repeated the exploit, and even landed to attack various places on the coast of England and Scotland. The number of vessels captured from the British is not exactly known, but has been estimated at about 700.

The *Reprisal* is said to have been the first vessel that carried the stars and stripes (§ 198).

241. What is meant by privateers? How did Congress begin to form a navy? What success did the American vessels have? What is said of the cruise of the *Reprisal* and the *Revenge*? Of John Paul Jones's cruise? Of the number of British vessels captured?

242. The American Navy was not successfully formed, owing to the poverty of Congress and the number of British vessels on the coast. A number of vessels were built, but they were captured by heavier British vessels, or burned in the Delaware and Hudson rivers to prevent their falling into the hands of the enemy. The alliance with France, in 1778, gave Franklin an opportunity to purchase vessels which became American cruisers.

243. The Richard and Serapis.—In 1779, Franklin fitted out a fleet of five vessels, under command of Paul Jones. Only one of them, an old and rotten merchant-vessel, was of respectable size, and Jones named it the *Bonhomme Richard*. The crew was disorderly and disobedient, and Jones had the greatest difficulty in controlling it. The captains of the other vessels were fully as troublesome. For a month the fleet kept the eastern coast of Scotland and England in alarm, and made many prizes. September 23, 1779, it fell in with two British frigates, the *Serapis*, of forty guns, and the *Countess of Scarborough*, of twenty-two guns, off Flamborough Head, and one of the most desperate sea-fights in history followed. The *Richard* and the *Serapis* were of equal force, and Jones succeeded in tying them together. After two hours of frightful slaughter, in which both vessels were on fire several times, the *Serapis* surrendered. The *Richard* was so badly injured that she sank next morning. The *Countess of Scarborough* was captured by the rest of the fleet, and this was the only assistance given to the *Richard*.



THE BRITISH ISLES.

Jones was a native of Scotland. He afterward entered the Russian

242. What were the hindrances to the formation of an American navy? What became of the vessels that were built? How were new vessels obtained abroad?

243. What fleet was fitted out in 1779? What is said of the *Richard*? Of its crew? Of the other captains? Where did the fleet cruise? What war-vessels were met? Describe the battle between the *Richard* and the *Serapis*? What assistance was given by the rest of the fleet?

navy, but died in poverty and neglect. The name of his ship ("Goodman Richard") was given in compliment to Franklin, who, while a Pennsylvania printer, had for many years published "Poor Richard's Almanac." See Cooper's novel "The Pilot."

244. The French Fleets on the American coast did little except to protect the French islands in the West Indies, until De Grasse, in 1781, gave great assistance in capturing Cornwallis (§ 259). During the last three years of the war there were but two American frigates in active service, and both were of small size. One large vessel, the *America*, of seventy-four guns, was built, but Congress presented it to the king of France. The New England States did not cease to send out privateers. In 1779, a fleet of nineteen armed vessels and twenty-four transports, from Boston, attacked Castine, then held by the British. During the attack, a British fleet arrived and captured all the vessels. The men escaped by land.

SUPPLEMENTARY QUESTIONS.

Locations.—Locate Flamborough Head, Eng.; Castine, Me. (§ 58).

REVIEW.—Give the year of the cruise of the *Reprisal* and the *Revenge*. Of the cruise of the *Ranger*. Of the battle between the *Richard* and the *Serapis*. Of the affair at Castine.

(10) IN THE SOUTH: 1778–81.

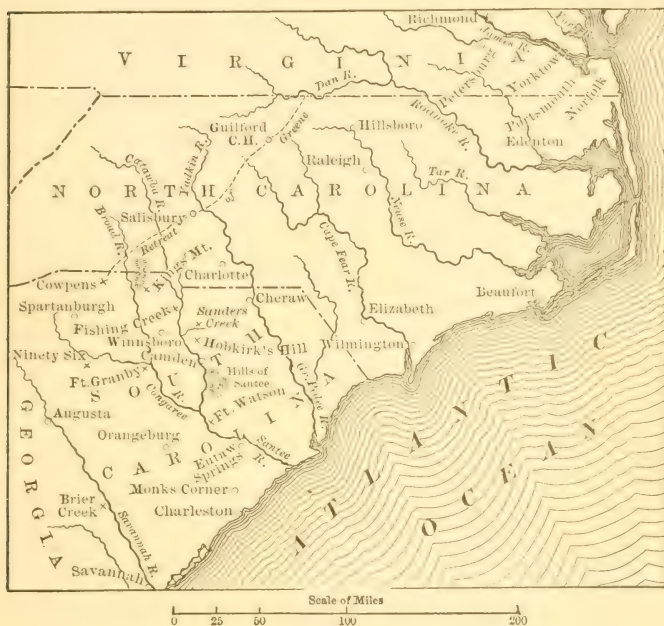
245. Savannah was attacked by a British expedition from New York, late in 1778, and was easily captured. British troops from Florida then joined the expedition. Augusta was captured, and the whole State of Georgia soon fell under British control. General Benjamin Lincoln, the American commander, could do little except to keep the British out of South Carolina, and to keep the South Carolina Tories from escaping to Georgia. In September, 1779, he crossed into Georgia, and, with the help of the French fleet under D'Estaing (§ 227), attacked Savannah. He was repulsed with heavy loss, and D'Estaing sailed away to the West Indies. Among the dead was Pulaski (§ 215). The British then

244. What was done by the French fleets on the American coast? What American war-vessels were on the ocean? Describe the affair at Castine.

245. What is said of the capture of Savannah? What reinforcements were received by the British? What further conquests were made? What was done by Lincoln? What is said of his attack on Savannah? Of its result? How did both parties then return to their former positions?

re-established the king's authority throughout Georgia with very little resistance, and Lincoln retired to South Carolina.

246. Minor Movements.—In February, 1779, a body of 700 Tories from North Carolina, while marching to Georgia, were defeated and scattered in South Carolina by the militia under Colonel Pickens. The next month, a force of 2,000 Americans crossed into Georgia and were



THE REVOLUTION IN THE SOUTHERN STATES.

defeated at Briar Creek. In April, the British in their turn made a movement toward Charleston, but found Lincoln ready for battle, and withdrew to Georgia. Operations in the south then ceased for the summer of 1779. Elsewhere, the British sent plundering expeditions from New York into Connecticut and Virginia, in order to prevent the sending of American reinforcements to the south. In this way the towns of New Haven and Norwalk, in Connecticut, and Portsmouth and Norfolk, in Virginia, were plundered.

246. What is said of the defeat of the North Carolina Tories? Of the American defeat at Briar Creek? Of the British movement on Charleston? Of British movements elsewhere? What towns were destroyed?

247. Géorgia was the first State which the British had completely conquered, and they treated the Whigs (§ 173) most cruelly. The Tories in the State were allowed to injure their Whig neighbors as they pleased. In the neighboring States of South Carolina and North Carolina, the Whigs were quick to inflict similar cruelties on their Tory neighbors. Thus the war in the south immediately became more ferocious on both sides than it had ever been in the north. As each army gained new territory, its enemies among the inhabitants were treated as traitors. Thus nearly all the people were forced to take part in the war, either against the regular armies or against their neighbors. For the next two years there was no peace, no work, and no good feeling in the south. And the hanging or shooting of men by their neighbors, and even of brother by brother, made the results of the war more horrible than open battle.

248. Charleston.—In October, 1779, Clinton ordered Newport to be evacuated, and collected all his available forces at New York. Then, leaving only enough troops in New York to defend it against Washington, he sailed late in December with the rest to Charleston. Here the British from Georgia met him; the fleet forced its way through the harbor to the city; and in May, after a vigorous defence, Lincoln was compelled to surrender Charleston and his army of 6,000 men. Clinton refused to allow the garrison to surrender unless it would go through a public ceremony of laying down its arms (§ 262). He then sent out expeditions to various parts of the State, under his best cavalry officer, Tarleton, and scattered every American force that made its appearance.

Tarleton was for a long time very successful. During the siege of Charleston he surprised a body of Americans at Monk's Corner, thirty miles from Charleston, and routed them. Soon after, he scattered another American force at the Waxhaws, near the North Carolina line.

249. South Carolina was now under British control. Clinton considered his work done, and sailed back to New York with part of his troops, leaving Cornwallis in command of the rest. But

247. What was done by the British in Georgia? By the Tories? By the Whigs in the neighboring States? What was the character of the war in the south? How were the people forced into it? What was the result?

248. How did Clinton collect troops for a new movement? What is said of his expedition to Charleston? Of the capture of that city? What terms did Clinton insist upon? How did he finish the conquest of the State?

249. What was now the condition of South Carolina? What change of commanders was made? What resistance was still made against the British?

the State was never entirely quiet, even when the British seemed to control it. Sumter, Marion, and other South Carolina leaders found places of refuge in the great swamps which are found in parts of the State; and from these they kept up an active warfare with the British. Their desperate battles, night-marches, surprises, and hair-breadth escapes make this the most exciting and interesting period of the Revolution.

For the stories connected with it see Lossing's *Field Book of the Revolution*, vol. 2; Garden's *Anecdotes of the Revolution*; Raymond's *Women of the South*; and W. G. Simms's novels, and *Life of Marion*.

250. Camden.—Congress sent Gates, the victor of Saratoga, to take command of the forces in the south. He passed across North Carolina with nearly three times as many men as the British, and met them at Camden in August, 1780. Most of Gates's men were untrained militia, who at the first fire from the British fled without firing a shot in return. The few Continental troops from Maryland fought obstinately, but finally retreated, losing their commander, De Kalb (§ 215). Gates fled ahead of his army to Hillsboro (near the present city of Raleigh), and South Carolina was left still more completely at the mercy of the British. Gates had been so unsuccessful that Congress removed him, and sent one of the most cautious and successful of the American generals, Nathaniel Greene, of Rhode Island, to take his place.



NATHANIEL GREENE.

251. King's Mountain.—After the battle of Camden, Cornwallis sent Colonel Ferguson, with 1,100 men, to arouse the Tories in North Carolina. He was not successful, and soon found it advisable to fortify himself on King's Mountain, between the Broad and Catawba rivers. Here,

250. What new commander was sent by Congress? What route did he take? Describe the battle of Camden. What was its result? What change of American commanders was made?

251. What is said of Ferguson's expedition? Of his position? Of the battle of King's Mountain? Of the battle of Fishing Creek?

in October, 1780, he was attacked and utterly defeated by a force of about a thousand riflemen hastily gathered from western North Carolina and eastern Tennessee. About the same time, Tarleton surprised Sumter at Fishing Creek, and scattered his men for a time.

252. The Cowpens.—Greene sent Morgan, a Virginia officer of riflemen, into South Carolina with a thousand men, to gather recruits. Tarleton was sent after him with about an equal number, and attacked him in January, 1781, at the Cowpens, a pasture-field near Spartanburgh. For the first time, Tarleton was completely beaten, losing nearly all his men. Cornwallis immediately moved with all his force after Morgan, who had begun to retreat with his prisoners. Morgan and Greene together were too weak to meet Cornwallis, and they managed a skilful and fortunate retreat across North Carolina into Virginia. As they crossed the Catawba, the Yadkin, and the Dan rivers, Cornwallis was just behind them; but in each case a sudden rise of the river prevented him from crossing in time to overtake them. At the Dan, Cornwallis gave up the chase, and turned back to Hillsboro.

253. Benedict Arnold (§ 239) was now a general in the British service. In January, 1781, he was sent from New York, with 1,600 men, to ravage Virginia, and prevent reinforcements from being sent to Greene. The Americans were naturally very anxious to capture him. La Fayette was sent by Washington to oppose him by land, while a few French vessels were to cut off his retreat by sea. A British fleet drove the French vessels back to Newport. Reinforcements under General Phillips were sent to Arnold, who plundered Virginia without mercy, while La Fayette could do little more than watch him.

Arnold soon afterward left the army in Virginia, and went back to New York.

254. Guilford Court-house.—Greene soon obtained recruits enough to enable him to turn back into North Carolina, and the two armies met at Guilford Court-house (now Greensboro), in March, 1781. A part of the American militia again gave way at

252. Who was sent by Greene into South Carolina? Who was sent against him? What is said of the battle of the Cowpens? Of Cornwallis's pursuit? Of Greene's retreat? Where did Cornwallis give up the chase?

253. What is said of Arnold's expedition? Of La Fayette's attempt to capture him? How did it fail? What were the operations of the British in Virginia?

254. What was Greene's next movement? Describe the battle of Guilford Court-house. Did the British pursue? Were there any further battles between these two armies?

the first fire, but the rest of Greene's army held its ground stubbornly, and at last retreated in excellent order. The British loss was so heavy that Cornwallis did not venture to pursue, but retired to Wilmington to obtain supplies from his ships. There were no further battles between these two armies, for during the next two months they passed one another, Greene moving south into South Carolina, and Cornwallis moving north into Virginia.

255. South Carolina.—As soon as Cornwallis retired to Wilmington, Greene moved across North Carolina into South Carolina, where the British were under command of Lord Rawdon. Battles followed, in April and May, 1781, the principal one being fought at Hobkirk's Hill (near Camden). Greene was again forced to retreat, but inflicted heavy loss upon his enemy. He spent the summer at the hills of the Santee, near Camden. In September he again moved down toward the coast, and fought the last battle of the war in this State, at Eutaw Springs, near Charleston. Again the British had the advantage, but their loss was so heavy that they retreated during the night, and took refuge in Charleston. Greene had finished his work. By sheer caution, activity, and perseverance, and without winning a single victory, he had almost cleared the south of the enemy. He now held every part of South Carolina and Georgia, excepting Charleston and Savannah, to which cities he kept the British closely confined for the rest of the war.

In August, 1781, Rawdon hanged Colonel Isaac Hayne, of South Carolina, as a deserter. Hayne had been forced to join the British, had escaped, and was again captured in battle. His execution was considered a gross piece of injustice.

256. Virginia.—Cornwallis at Wilmington knew nothing of Greene's movement until it was too late to intercept him. Then, thinking that Rawdon was strong enough to defeat Greene, he decided to move north into Virginia, join the British troops already there, and endeavor to conquer that State. He met no great opposition on his march, and Tarleton's cavalry plundered the country at will. On reaching Virginia, Cornwallis found that he had about

255. What is said of Greene's march into South Carolina? Of the battle of Hobkirk's Hill? Of the battle of Eutaw Springs? What was its result? What had Greene done? What was now the state of affairs in the south?

256. What is said of Cornwallis? What did he decide to do? What opposition did he meet? What force had he? What was he ordered to do? What place did he select?

8,000 men, twice as many as the force under La Fayette which was opposed to him. Orders were sent from New York by Clinton to seize and fortify some strong place on the coast, which could be reached easily by the British vessels. Yorktown, on the peninsula between the James and York rivers, appeared to Cornwallis to be the best location; and here he fixed the headquarters of his army.

Cornwallis and Clinton had quarrelled, and did not help or agree with one another very well.

SUPPLEMENTARY QUESTIONS.

Locations.—Locate Savannah, Ga.; Augusta, Ga.; Newport, R. I.; Charleston, S. C.; Camden, S. C.; Hillsboro, N. C.; Spartanburgh, S. C.; the Catawba River; the Yadkin River; the Dan River; Guilford Court-house, N. C.; Wilmington, N. C.; Yorktown, Va.

REVIEW.—Give the year of the capture of Savannah. Of Lincoln's repulse at Savannah. Of the capture of Charleston. Of the battle of Camden. Of the battle of the Cowpens. Of the battle of Guilford Court-house. Of the battle of Hobkirk's Hill. Of the battle of Eutaw Springs.

(11) YORKTOWN: 1781.

257. Washington had not yet himself won a victory, unless we are to consider the smaller battles of Trenton, Princeton, and Monmouth as such. He had surmounted the very greatest difficulties; he had gone into battle knowing that defeat was almost certain, and yet he had made each defeat a training-school for his men; he had shown the best qualities of a general in camp and battle-field; he had been worth more than an army in keeping resistance alive; and he had well earned the universal and unfailing confidence of the people. But it certainly seemed fitting that he should also have the crowning glory of a great victory to close the war.

258. Rochambeau, with a French army of 6,000 men, had landed at Newport in the summer of 1780. They were afterward marched to Washington's camp near Peekskill and Morristown. With these soldiers to help him, Washington, early in 1781, began active operations around New York, and kept Clin

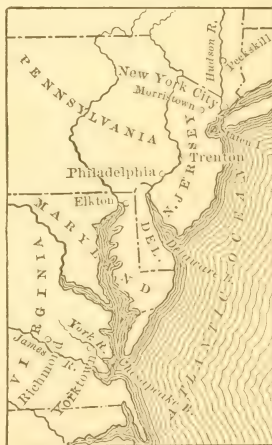
257. Had Washington yet won any great victory? What had he done? What seemed fitting?

258. What French army arrived in 1780? To what places were they brought? How did Washington use their assistance? How was his plan changed? What did he decide to do? Did the change of plan become known?

ton in a state of constant alarm. In August his plan was changed by the arrival of a French frigate with the news that a strong French fleet and army would soon arrive in Chesapeake Bay, and cut off Cornwallis from all assistance. Washington at once decided to leave New York for a time, march rapidly southward, and capture Yorktown and Cornwallis before the British fleets could reach the Chesapeake and drive the French fleet away. The change of plan was kept a profound secret. Clinton was kept in daily expectation of an attack on New York, and did not discover the truth for several days after Washington and Rochambeau had started for Virginia.

The French fleet was sent from the West Indies to Chesapeake Bay, to remain about four months. It was stronger than any single British fleet then on the coast of the United States, and the British admirals did not work together well enough to unite their fleets and beat it off.

259. The March to Yorktown.—The French fleet, under De Grasse, arrived in Chesapeake Bay (August 30). It not only blocked up Cornwallis's escape by sea, but landed soldiers enough to enable La Fayette to prevent his escape by land. On the same day, Washington and Rochambeau, who had been moving slowly down the west bank of the Hudson River, as if to attack Staten Island, suddenly struck off through New Jersey to Philadelphia, and thence to Elkton. Here they took shipping and sailed down Chesapeake Bay to the James River, where they joined La Fayette's army before Yorktown. While the march was taking place, a British fleet had tried to relieve Cornwallis, but had been beaten off by the French fleet.



Scale of Miles
0 50 100 200
THE YORKTOWN CAMPAIGN.

259. What is said of the arrival of the French fleet? What did it accomplish? What movement was made by Washington and Rochambeau the same day? What course did they take toward Yorktown? What had the French fleet done in the mean time?

260. New London.—The march southward was as much of a surprise to the American and French soldiers as to Clinton. When Clinton discovered its purpose, he tried to draw off a part of the American troops by sending the traitor Arnold to attack New London, Conn. Fort Griswold, which defended the town, was captured, September 6, and its commander and most of the garrison were killed after they had surrendered. This useless butchery had no effect on Washington's march to Yorktown.

261. The Siege of Yorktown.—The allied armies of France and the United States formed a half-circle in front of Yorktown, and the siege began, September 30, 1781. The French troops were brilliant with new and bright uniforms, while the dress of the Americans was faded and ragged. But there was no difference in the fighting power of the two armies, and there was a constant rivalry between them for the lead in the attacks. After three weeks of siege and hard fighting, Cornwallis found that it was impossible to resist longer. He made one attempt to take his army across the York River and hurry northward before the allies could follow him; but a sudden storm scattered his boats and defeated his plan. He then decided to surrender.

262. The Surrender took place October 19, 1781, in a large field near Yorktown. The British troops, 8,000 in number, went through the same public ceremony of surrender which had been imposed on the Americans at Charleston; and Lincoln, who had commanded at Charleston, was appointed to receive Cornwallis's sword (§ 248). Cornwallis, however, was worn out by long work and fighting, and sent a subordinate to make the surrender. It had hardly taken place, when an expedition sailed from New York, with 7,000 men, to relieve Cornwallis, but it returned on finding that the surrender had taken place. The allied forces then separated. De Grasse sailed for the West Indies. The French troops remained in Virginia. The Americans marched back to New York, except a detachment which went southward and recaptured Wilmington.

For the centennial celebration of the surrender, see § 911.

260. Was the march southward a surprise? How did Clinton try to check it? What is said of the capture of Fort Griswold? Did it have any effect on Washington's march?

261. How was the siege formed? What was the appearance of the two armies? Their fighting qualities? How long did the siege last? What new plan was attempted by Cornwallis? Why did it fail?

262. What is said of the surrender? Of the ceremony which took place? Who was appointed to conduct it? What is said of Cornwallis? What attempt was made to relieve him? What became of the French fleet? Of the French army? Of the American army?





SUPPLEMENTARY QUESTIONS.

Locations.—Locate Newport, R. I.; Peekskill, N. Y.; Morristown, N. J.; Staten Island, N. Y.; Philadelphia; Elkton, Md.; Chesapeake Bay; James River; Yorktown, Va.; York River; Wilmington, N. C. (§ 245).

REVIEW.—Give the year of the arrival of the French army. The date of the surrender at Yorktown.

(12) PEACE: 1783.

263. The Terms of Peace needed some time to arrange. It was difficult and expensive for the British Government to obtain men to serve in America, and the loss of Cornwallis's army could not be made up. When the news reached London the ministry resigned, and Parliament demanded peace so decidedly that the king gave way. Both parties agreed to cease hostilities and appoint commissioners to agree on terms. The British still held New York, Charleston, and Savannah, and the Americans were encamped near those places; but there were no more battles.

264. The Final Treaty of peace was made in 1783. Great Britain acknowledged the United States to be free and independent, with Canada as a boundary on the north, the Mississippi River on the west, and Florida, extending west to the Mississippi, on the south. Spain owned the territory west of the Mississippi, called Louisiana (§ 158); and Great Britain now transferred to her Florida also. The United States thus had Great Britain as a neighbor on the north, and Spain on the south and west.

The treaty also secured the right of Americans to fish on the Newfoundland Banks.

265. The American Army was now disbanded, having been paid principally in promises. Officers and men retired to their homes very much dissatisfied with their unjust treatment by Congress and the country. Washington then appeared before Congress at Annapolis and resigned his commission. The British evacuated Savannah in July, 1782, Charleston in the following December, and New

263. What is said of Cornwallis's surrender? Why could it not be made up? What was the effect of the news in London? What agreement was made? What were the positions of the British and Americans?

264. When was the treaty of peace made? What did Great Britain acknowledge? What were the boundaries of the United States? What is said of Louisiana and Florida? What were the neighbors of the United States?

265. What is said of the disbanding of the army? Where did Washington resign his commission? What cities were evacuated by the British? What posts did they refuse to evacuate?

York City, their last post on the coast, November 25, 1783. But they refused to evacuate the forts north of the Ohio River, and held them for some twelve years longer (§ 310).

266. The Expenses of the war cannot be exactly stated. Those of the United States have been estimated at \$135,000,000 in specie. The debt of Great Britain was increased during the war about \$610,000,000. The British forces in the whole of North America probably never at any one time exceeded 40,000 men; and the American regular troops were about the same number. Most of the larger American armies were made up of minute-men or militia, who remained in the service but a short time.

267. The Tories.—During the war, most of the States had passed laws to confiscate the estates of persons who had taken the British side. Therefore, at the end of the war, many of the Tories retired from the United States with the British troops; those from the North going to Canada and Nova Scotia, and those from the South to the West Indies. Some of them returned, years afterward, without hindrance, after the angry feelings excited by the war had died away.

268. The Leading Events in the war of the American Revolution were as follows:

1775-6:	Principally in <i>New England</i> and <i>Canada</i>	§ 195
1775:	Lexington; American success (April 19)...	184
	Ticonderoga; American success (May 10)...	200
	Bunker Hill; British success (June 17)....	197
	Quebec; British success (December 31)....	201
1776:	Evacuation of Boston; American success (March 17).....	199
	Fort Moultrie, S. C.; American success (June 28).....	204
	DECLARATION OF INDEPENDENCE, July 4..	206
1776-7:	Principally in the <i>Middle States</i>	210
1776:	Long Island; British success (August 27)...	210
	Evacuation of New York; British success (September 16).....	210
	Washington's New Jersey retreat; British success.....	211
	Trenton; American success (December 26).	213
1777:	Princeton; American success (January 3)..<	213
	British army transferred to Chesapeake Bay	216

266. What is said of the American expenses? Of the British expenses? Of the armies on both sides?

267. What laws had been passed by the States? Whither did the Tories retire? Did any of them return?

268. [Locate the places named.] Give the leading events of 1775. Of 1776. The location of the war in 1776-8. The leading events of 1776 in the Middle States. Of 1777, outside of Burgoyne's invasion. Of Burgoyne's invasion in 1777. Of 1778. The location of the war in 1778-81. The leading event of 1778. The leading events of 1779. Of 1780. Of 1781 in the Carolinas. Of 1781 in Virginia. Of 1782. Of 1783.

1777-8:	Principally in the <i>Middle States</i>	210
1777:	Brandywine; British success (September 11)	217
	Germantown; British success (October 4)..	217
	Burgoyne's invasion	219
	Bennington; American success (August 16)	221
	Bemis Heights; drawn battle (September 19)	223
	Stillwater; American success (October 7)..	223
	Burgoyne's surrender; American success (October 17).....	223
	American winter quarters at Valley Forge.	218
1778:	Treaty with France (February 6).....	227
	British retreat from Philadelphia; American success (June 18).....	229
	Monmouth; drawn battle (June 28)	229
	Wyoming; massacre by the British (July 4).	233
1778-81:	Principally in the <i>Southern States</i>	245
1778:	Capture of Savannah; British success (De- cember 29) ...	245
1779:	Conquest of Georgia; British success.....	247
	Attack on Savannah; British success (Sep- tember).....	245
	Stony Point, N. Y.; American success (July 15).....	238
1780:	Capture of Charleston; British success (May 12).....	248
	Conquest of South Carolina; British success	249
	Arrival of the French army at Newport, R. I. (July 10).....	258
	Camden; British success (August 16).....	250
	Arnold's treason, N. Y. (September).....	239
	King's Mountain; American success (Octo- ber 7).....	251
	Greene takes command in the South	250
1781:	Cowpens; American success (January 17)..	252
	Greene's retreat across North Carolina.....	252
	Guilford Court-house; British success (March 15).....	254
	Hobkirk's Hill; British success (April 25)..	255
	Eutaw Springs; British success (Septem- ber 8).....	255
	End of the war in the South.....	255
	Invasion of Virginia by Arnold and Corn- wallis	256
	Washington's army transferred to Virginia	261
	Capture of Yorktown; American success (October 19).....	262
1782:	Suspension of hostilities.....	263
1783:	Peace (September 3).....	264

CHAPTER II.

THE CONFEDERATION: 1781-89.

269. Alexander Hamilton, of New York, was born in the West



ALEXANDER HAMILTON.

Indies in 1757. He was noted for his mental powers from a very early age. He had hardly left college when he became aide-de-camp and trusted friend of Washington, and one of the most brilliant of political writers. He was but thirty-two years of age when he was recognized as the ablest member of the Federal Convention, and wrote in the *Federalist* those papers on the Constitution which all lawyers have since taken as masterpieces. He was Washington's Secretary of the Treasury, and brought the country out of its money troubles. In 1804, he was shot and killed, at Weehawken, N. J., in a duel which Aaron Burr, then Vice-President, had forced upon him.

(1) THE FAILURE OF THE CONFEDERATION.

270. The Continental Congress had managed the affairs of the Union throughout the war. It had never received any authority to govern the country; as far as it governed at all, it did so because the mass of the people consented to allow it to govern, and because those who disliked its government were not strong enough to resist it. The people had given authority to their State governments, by forming State constitutions, and thus the State

269. What were the leading events in the life of Hamilton?

270. What is said of the Continental Congress? How did it have the power of governing the country? What was the only direct authority which the people had given for governing? What were the evils of such a government? How did the power of Congress grow less? How was it that the States were able to seize power? What was the result?

governments had something to show for their claims to govern their States. Congress had nothing to show; it only existed because the States had sent delegates to it, and it was hoped that they would continue to do so. Now, such a government was really no government; and, as Hamilton once said, "a nation without a national government is an awful spectacle." People obeyed it when they chose to obey it, and disobeyed it when they chose to disobey it, which was more commonly the case; and no one felt safe in thinking of the future. Congress was the only means to unite the States, and for this reason it was obeyed cheerfully as long as the danger from the British was pressing; but, as that danger grew less, the State governments began to seize more and more of the power, until very little was left to Congress. As the State governments appointed the delegates to Congress, and could recall them at any time, the delegates soon came to do nothing more than obey their State governments. Thus the Continental Congress became almost powerless after 1778.

271. A Plan of Government, called the Articles of Confederation, was agreed upon by Congress in 1777. The Articles stated exactly what powers were to be given to Congress, so as to prevent any further interferences by the State governments. They were not to go into force until all the States should agree to them. Twelve of the States agreed within the next two years, but Maryland refused to do so until March 1, 1781. The Articles of Confederation then went into force. The cause of this long delay was in disputes about the western territory.

Franklin had laid a plan of government before Congress in 1775, but it was not adopted.

272. The Boundaries of the States were a constant source of trouble. The king had given western boundaries to six of them, New Hampshire, Rhode Island, New Jersey, Pennsylvania, Delaware, and Maryland; and these could not expect to extend farther westward. New York claimed to have no western boundary; but was willing to be bounded as at present. The remaining six

271. What plan of government was agreed upon by Congress? What was its object? When was it to go into force? What was the delay in the agreement of the States? What was the cause of it?

272. What is said of State boundaries? Which States had fixed western boundaries? What is said of New York? Of the remaining six States? How did the Mississippi River cut off their claims? What did they still claim?

States, Massachusetts, Connecticut, Virginia, North Carolina, South Carolina, and Georgia, were at first supposed to extend westward to the Pacific (§ 25). When Louisiana (§ 158) was transferred to Spain in 1763, the western claims of these colonies were cut off by the Mississippi River. But they still claimed that they extended west as far as the Mississippi.

273. The Claim of Virginia was the most extraordinary of all (§ 83). The other States which claimed to extend to the Mississippi were bounded by parallel lines on the north and south, so that they grew no wider as they extended westward. But Virginia claimed that her northern boundary ran northwest instead of west, so that her territory constantly widened as it left the coast. She thus claimed the whole of the territory now in the States of Kentucky, Ohio, Indiana, Illinois, Michigan, and Wisconsin. The claims of Massachusetts and Connecticut crossed those of Virginia and conflicted with them.

274. These Western Claims seemed unfounded and highly unjust to the States whose western boundaries were fixed already. Those States asserted, first, that the king by forbidding the sale of lands west of the Alleghanies had fixed those mountains as a western boundary for all the colonies not formerly bounded; and, second, that all the States had together won this western territory from Great Britain, and should all own it together. The result was a general confusion, some of the States selling lands in the west, and quarrelling with each other where their sales conflicted, and the rest of the States crying out against the wrongfulness of such sales. Maryland, the State most determined in resistance, refused to agree to the Articles of Confederation until assurances were given that these western claims would be surrendered.

275. Land Cessions.—New York gave up her western claims to the United States in 1780, and Congress earnestly requested the other States to do likewise. In 1784 Virginia gave up her claim north of the Ohio, Massachusetts in 1785, Connecticut in 1786. South Carolina gave up her western claims in 1787, North Carolina in 1790, and Georgia in 1802. These cessions gave the United States a large western territory (§ 294). Connecticut retained and sold a

273. What is said of the claim of Virginia? How did it differ from those of other States? What States did it cover? What other claims crossed it?

274. How did the other States look on these claims? What was their first objection? Their second objection? What was the result? What action was taken by Maryland?

275. How did land cessions begin? What other States made cessions? What is said of these cessions? Of Connecticut's reserve?

large strip of land in northeastern Ohio, along Lake Erie, which has ever since been spoken of as the Western Reserve.

Massachusetts also claimed a part of New York, and New York bought off the claim. Connecticut also claimed the northern part of Pennsylvania, the Wyoming settlement, but this claim was given up.

276. The Articles of Confederation were found to be worthless as soon as they were put into effect. There was to be one governing body, Congress, and it was to have no power to lay taxes, regulate commerce, or punish law-breaking. It could only advise the States to do so, and the States soon came to pay little attention to the advice of Congress, so that Congress could get no money to pay the debts of the country, or even the interest. Strong States passed laws which injured the people of weaker States, and there was no power to hinder them. Great Britain injured and oppressed American commerce, and Congress had no power to take any means to oblige her to stop her offensive measures.

277. Shays' Rebellion.—The people had expected prosperity to come with peace, but they were bitterly disappointed. Little business was done; every one was trying to collect debts, and no one had money to pay; and the people were growing poorer and desperate. In the winter of 1786–7, Massachusetts had great difficulty in suppressing an insurrection of the poorer farmers in the western part of the State, around Worcester and Springfield. They wished to stop the further collection of debts by the courts. The affair is usually called Shays' Rebellion, from the name of the leader, Daniel Shays. Other States were afraid of similar outbreaks, and they knew that Congress had no power to help them.

278. A Change of Government was often proposed, but at first there seemed to be little hope of it. The agreement had been made that the Articles of Confederation were not to be changed in the least unless *all* the States should consent. Whenever a change was proposed, in order to give Congress more power, some State refused to consent, and the plan fell through. Men became dis-

276. What is said of the Articles of Confederation? Of Congress and its lack of power? Of its inability to get money? Of State laws? Of Great Britain and American commerce?

277. How had the people been disappointed? What was their condition after the war? What is said of Shays' Rebellion and its object? What was the feeling in other States?

278. What is said of a change of government? What agreement had been made? How did this hinder any change of government? What was the general feeling?

couraged; many began to regret the Revolution; and some even fell to talking of a monarchy, with Washington as king.

This notion of a monarchy had been proposed to Washington in 1782 by some of the army officers; but he had rejected it with indignation.

(2) FORMATION OF THE CONSTITUTION.

279. The Leading Men of the Country, Washington, Hamilton, Madison, and



STATE-HOUSE AT ANNAPOLIS.

others, were busily writing letters to one another, and comparing views. They all agreed that some new way of forming a government must be tried, and that a convention of State delegates would do the work better than Congress or the State legislatures had done it. The first attempt was made to hold a conven-

tion at Annapolis, in 1786, at the call of Virginia; but only five States sent delegates, and nothing was done. The next year brought better success. Congress approved the call for a convention, and twelve States appointed delegates to it, Rhode Island alone refusing.

280. The Federal Convention met at Philadelphia in May, 1787, and chose Washington, who was a delegate from Virginia, as its presiding officer. Each State seems to have taken care to

279. What were the leading men doing? In what did they agree? What is said of the first attempt to hold a convention? Of the second? What State refused to appoint delegates?

280. When and where did the convention meet? Who presided over it? What is said of its membership? Of its proceedings? Of their results? When was the Constitution to go into force?

send as representatives its ablest men, and the convention must be considered one of the most distinguished bodies of men that ever met. For four months it held meetings, argued, and settled difficulties in secret session, and many times it almost broke up without accomplishing anything. Finally, however (September 17, 1787), it agreed upon the Constitution of the United States, and adjourned. The Constitution was to go into force when approved by the conventions of nine States (§ 287).

Most of the difficulties came from what were then "small States"—New York, New Hampshire, New Jersey, Delaware, and Maryland. They wished to give as little power as possible to the general government, for fear it should oppress and injure them. This difficulty was removed by providing for a Senate, in which each State should have an equal representation, and by making the consent of the Senate necessary for the passage of laws. The States south of Virginia also wished to continue the slave-trade, and this was agreed to for twenty years.

• **281. The Constitution** provided for a general government which should have power to act, and not to simply advise the States. It was to be in three departments: a legislative department, or Congress, to make laws; an executive department, the President and his officers, to carry out and enforce the laws made by Congress; and a judiciary department, the Federal courts, to decide disputed questions under the laws. The Constitution was to be the supreme law of the land, to be obeyed by the general government, State governments, and people. If the laws passed by Congress were disobeyed, the general government was to punish the offence: Congress was to determine the punishment; the President's officers were to arrest the offender; and the Federal courts were to try him. But the punishment was always to be determined by Congress, before the offence was committed.

282. The Legislative Department, or law-making power, was given to Congress, composed of two branches, the Senate and the House of Representatives. Senators were to serve for six years, and each State, large or small, was to choose two. Representatives were to serve for two years, and were to be chosen by the States according to population, large States choosing more, and small States fewer. The two Houses together were to lay taxes, borrow money, regulate commerce, coin money, establish post-offices, declare war, raise and support armies and

281. What did the Constitution provide for? What were its three departments? What was to be the supreme law? How were offences against it to be punished? When was the punishment to be determined?

282. What is said of the legislative department? Of Senators? Of Representatives? What were the two Houses to do? What were the States forbidden to do? What was the effect of the President's veto of a bill?

navies, and employ militia to suppress insurrections; and the States were now forbidden to do any of these things, except to lay their own taxes, borrow for themselves, and employ their own militia. As a general rule, a majority of each House was to be enough to pass a law; but, when the President should veto (object to) a bill within ten days after its passage, a two-thirds vote of each House was necessary to make it a law (§ 478). Treaties made by the President were to be approved by two thirds of the Senate before going into effect.

283. The Executive Department, or power to execute the laws made by Congress, was given to a President, chosen for four years by electors whom the people were to choose (§ 298). He was to be commander-in-chief of the army and navy, and to appoint most of the public officers; but most of the appointments were not to be good until confirmed by the Senate. If he himself should misbehave, he was to be impeached (accused) by the House of Representatives, and tried by the Senate. If he should be convicted and removed, or should die, resign, or be unable to perform his duties, the Vice President was to take his place, and become President. Except in this case, the Vice President was merely to preside over the Senate, without voting, except in case of a tie.

284. The Judiciary Department, or power to interpret the laws made by Congress, was given to one Supreme Court, and such inferior courts as Congress should establish. The judges were to be appointed by the President and Senate, and were to hold office for life, except in case of misconduct. Whenever an offence should be committed against a law of Congress, or whenever the meaning of a law should be in doubt, or whenever it was claimed that the Constitution gave Congress no power to pass the law, the case was first to be tried and decided by the inferior courts. If either party was dissatisfied with the decision, he could appeal to the Supreme Court, whose decision was to be final.

285. Other Features.—Three fifths of the slaves were to be counted in calculating the population for Representatives. Runaway slaves were to be arrested in the States to which they should flee. Congress was to govern the territory of the United States, and admit new States to be formed from it. Three fourths of the States could change the Constitution by Amendments. Each State was to be guaranteed by the United States a republican form of government.

286. Formation of Parties.—When the Constitution came to be discussed by the people, before the election of the conventions to decide upon it, two opposing political parties were at once formed. The people had hitherto known very little of any gov-

283. What is said of the executive department? Of the President's powers? What was to be done if he should misbehave? If he should be removed in any way? What was the Vice-President's usual duty?

284. What is said of the judiciary department? Of the appointment of the judges? Of the duties of the courts? Of the right of appeal?

285. What part of the slaves was to be counted in population? What is said of runaway slaves? Of the territory of the United States? Of Amendments? What was to be guaranteed to each State?

286. How were parties formed? What change of power was made by the Constitution? Who were the Federalists? The Anti-Federalists? How long did the contest last? What is said of the leading men? Of the influence of Washington and Franklin?

ernments except those of their States, and the Constitution certainly cut down the powers of the States very much in giving power to the Federal Government. Those who felt that the new Federal Government was absolutely necessary took the name of Federalists, and supported the new Constitution. Those who liked the old State governments better took the name of Anti-Federalists, and opposed the new Constitution. The contest lasted for nearly a year. Most of the leading men were Federalists at this time, and the Anti-Federalists had but two great leaders, Samuel Adams and Patrick Henry. But the final success of the Federalists was mainly due to the fact that they were supported heartily by Washington and Franklin, in whom the people had great faith.

▲ **287. The Adoption of the Constitution** was assured by the ratification of the ninth State, New Hampshire, in June, 1788. There were still four States left. Two of them, New York and Virginia, ratified soon afterward; the other two, Rhode Island and North Carolina, refused to ratify, and the Constitution went into force without their assent. The last two States had issued paper money, and disliked the Constitution, which forbade any State to do so in future. The opposition in other States came from a fear that the new Federal Government was given too much power. To remove this objection, the first ten Amendments to the Constitution were adopted and ratified in 1791 (§ 300).

° **288. Preparations for Inauguration.**—As soon as the ninth State had ratified the Constitution, the Congress of the Confederation appointed March 4, 1789, as the day on which the new government should go into operation, and New York City as the place. It also named a day on which the people should choose electors, and another day on which the electors should meet in their States and vote for President and Vice-President. When the votes of the electors were opened and counted, it was found that each of them, sixty-nine in number, had cast one of his two votes for Washington, so that Washington became President by a unanimous vote. Thirty-four of the electors had cast their second vote for

287. How was the adoption of the Constitution assured? What was done by the remaining four States? What was the objection in two of them? In most of them? How was this objection removed?

288. Where and when was the new government to go into operation? How were the President and Vice-President chosen? Who was chosen President? Vice-President? What is said of the Congress of the Confederation?

John Adams, and he became Vice-President, as this was the next largest vote to Washington's. From this time, the Congress of the Confederation did little or nothing further. All men were waiting anxiously to see whether the new government was to be good or bad.

The manner of voting for President and Vice-President was slightly changed in 1804 (§ 324).

(3) STATE OF THE COUNTRY.

289. The Country was still very poorly settled, and the whole of it did not contain as many inhabitants as the single State of New York in 1880. There were hardly any important towns except on the coast, and none of these were such as we are accustomed to call cities. The largest American cities of that time, Boston, New York, Philadelphia, and Charleston, had hardly more than 20,000 persons in any of them, and other towns were only small collections of houses. The streets were poorly paved, dirty, and hardly lighted at night. Some of the houses were large and well furnished, but none of them had the conveniences that are so common now. There were no lucifer-matches, no gas, none of the modern oil-lamps, and water was everywhere carried from the town pump or well. The richest people labored under difficulties which are hardly known now, and the life of the poor was very hard.

The life of the poor man was made still harder than now because of the law of imprisonment for debt. He who owed money and was unable to pay could be arrested and kept in prison, while his wife and children were left to care for themselves as well as they could.

290. The People generally lived outside of the cities, on farms, where life was still harder than in the cities. It was not easy to work with wooden ploughs, and without any of the farming tools and machinery which have since been introduced; and the farmer who raised more than he wanted found it difficult to sell. Everything used by the farmer and his family, even their clothing, was made at home; and a New England farmer usually spent very

289. What is said of the population of the country? Of its towns and cities? Of the streets? Of the houses? Of their conveniences? Of life in general?

290. Where did most of the people live? What were some of the difficulties of farming? What did the farm produce? What is said of life in the Middle States and the South? Of life in general in the United States?

little money during the year for things not produced on the farm. In the Middle States and the South life was easier, for crops cost less labor, and were easily sold for ready money; but even here the farm or plantation grew almost everything that was used. Newspapers and books were very scarce; there were hardly any amusements, except hunting and fishing; and life consisted mainly in work and rest.

291. Travelling was slow, difficult, and often dangerous. Along the coast, sailing-vessels were the usual means of travel, and the least difficulty with the wind might delay the traveller for weeks. The voyage from New York to Albany often required two weeks. The stage-coaches were slow and clumsy. They took from two to three days (as many days as the railroad takes hours) to go from New York to Philadelphia, and a week to go from New York to Boston. The roads were exceedingly bad; there were hardly any bridges; and the rivers were crossed by means of clumsy and dangerous flat-boats. There was more danger then in a voyage from New York City to Brooklyn or New Jersey than there is now in a voyage to Europe.

292. Settlement had not yet spread far from the coast. Beyond Schenectady, the whole State of New York was still an Indian hunting-ground. The great coal and iron fields of Pennsylvania were almost unknown. Along the coast to the southward, the country was settled only up to the headwaters of the rivers that flow into the Atlantic. Between the Alleghanies and the Mississippi, the whole country was a wilderness, excepting the few settlements in Kentucky and Tennessee (§ 160). The northwest was almost entirely an Indian territory; and Ohio and the present States northwest of it were less known than our Pacific Territories are now.

293. Land Companies led the way in the settlement of the northwest. Most of them were made up of former soldiers of the Revolution, who wished to settle in Ohio and found it safer to unite for mutual protection against the Indians. One of the first of these, the Ohio Company, was

291. What is said of travelling? Of sailing-vessels? Of stage-coaches? Of roads and bridges? Of ferries?

292. What is said of settlement in general? In New York? In Pennsylvania? To the southward? Between the Alleghanies and the Mississippi? In the northwest?

293. What is said of land companies? Of the Ohio Company? How did Congress give it encouragement?

formed in 1787; and, in order to give it encouragement, the Congress of the Confederation passed the Ordinance of 1787, which was confirmed by Congress under the Constitution. The company began the settlement of Ohio in the following year, at Marietta. Cincinnati, at first called Losantiville, was founded in the same year (1788).

294. The Ordinance of 1787 provided for the government of the Territory northwest of the Ohio River. Slavery was forever forbidden in this Territory. All the inhabitants were to enjoy entire religious freedom, trial by jury, and equal political and civil privileges; and common schools were to be supported and encouraged. The Territory was to be governed by persons appointed by Congress while the population was small; but was to be formed into five States as population should increase. These States were then to govern themselves, and to be equal with the original thirteen States in the government of the United States. This was the ordinance (or law) on which have been gradually formed the five powerful and growing States of Ohio, Indiana, Illinois, Michigan, and Wisconsin. Its provisions have been the rule for other Territories also, except that until 1820 slavery was not forbidden in any other Territory (§ 426). The people of the United States had had such an unpleasant experience as colonists that they seem to have learned to deal wisely and generously with their own colonists. The result has been that they have had no such difficulties with their western colonists as Great Britain had with her American colonies.

SUPPLEMENTARY QUESTIONS.

Locations.—Locate the Mississippi River; the Alleghany Mountains; Worcester, Mass.; Springfield, Mass.; Annapolis, Md.; Philadelphia; New York City; Boston, Mass.; Charleston, S. C.; Albany, N. Y.; Schenectady, N. Y.

REVIEW.—When were the Articles of Confederation agreed upon by Congress? When did they go into force? What State caused the delay? What was the year of Shays' Rebellion? Of the Federal Convention? Of the adoption of the Constitution? Of the inauguration of the new government? Who was chosen President? Vice-President? Name the States since formed out of the Northwest Territory? Under what ordinance?

294. For what did the Ordinance of 1787 provide? What did it provide as to slavery? As to the privileges of the inhabitants? As to the government of the Territory? As to the new States? What States have been formed under this ordinance? How has it been imitated? How did the United States and Great Britain differ in their treatment of colonists?

295. The Leading Events of this period were as follows:

1781-9: The Confederation.....	§ 269
1781: The Articles of Confederation go into force.....	271
1783: Peace with Great Britain.....	264
1784: Land cession by Virginia.....	275
1786: The Annapolis Convention.....	279
Shays' Rebellion.....	277
1787: The Federal Convention forms the Constitution..	280
The Ordinance of 1787 adopted.....	294
1788: Ratification of the Constitution.....	287
Settlement begun in Ohio.....	293
1789: The Constitution goes into force.....	288

295. In what years did the Confederation begin and end? What were the leading events of 1781? Of 1783? Of 1784? Of 1786? Of 1787? Of 1788? Of 1789?

CHAPTER III.

WASHINGTON'S ADMINISTRATIONS: 1789-1797.

GEORGE WASHINGTON, Va., President.

JOHN ADAMS, Mass., Vice-President.

296. George Washington, of Virginia, was born February 22, 1732, and died at Mount Vernon, near Alexandria, Va., December 14, 1799 (§ 326). He was in his youth a land-surveyor, but was soon called into the service of his State (§ 145). From that time his life was a part of our history. He was in succession commander-in-chief of the Revolutionary armies, President of the Federal Convention, and President of the United States. In all these positions it is evident now that the country could not have spared him; and yet he took each of them with the greatest unwillingness, and with the anxious fear that he would prove a failure. His political opponents were always dissatisfied that the people would obstinately accept his decision rather than their arguments. No man ever received a more confiding affection from his people, or better deserved it.

297. Inauguration.—The new government was to have been organized at New York City, March 4, 1789; but travelling was so slow and difficult that the members of Congress from distant States did not arrive for several weeks. When a sufficient number of them had arrived, the votes of the electors were counted, and Washington was notified of his election as President. He journeyed slowly northward from Virginia to New York City, receiving hearty greetings from the towns on the way; and was sworn into office, April 30, 1789, by the chief judge of the State of New York, in the presence of Congress and a great number of other spectators.

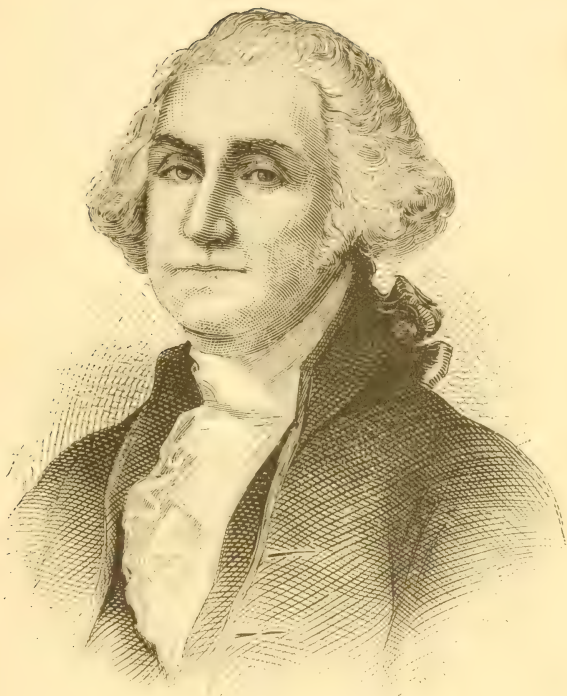
The building ("Federal Hall") in which Washington was sworn into office was on Wall Street, where the Sub-Treasury now stands.

298. The Electoral System.—The President and Vice-President of the United States are not elected by the people. When we read that

296. What were the leading events in Washington's life?

297. Why was the inauguration delayed? When were the electoral votes counted? What is said of Washington's journey? Of his inauguration?

298. Is the President elected by a majority of the popular vote? How are the electors chosen? How do they vote? How was the system changed in 1804? What is its disadvantage? What is its advantage?



GEORGE WASHINGTON.

a candidate has received a majority of several hundred thousand votes for the Presidency, it means nothing; if he receives a majority of the electoral votes, he is elected, even though his opponent should have more popular votes than he. Each State chooses as many electors as it has Senators and Representatives together; and whichever party gains a majority of these electors secures the President and Vice-President. At first, each elector merely named two persons, and the highest two names on the list of those voted for became President and Vice-President. In 1804 (§ 324), this was changed so that each elector votes for one name for President and one for Vice-President. At first, too, the electors voted for whom they chose; but after the first two elections, it would have been considered extremely dishonorable for an elector to vote for any one but the men nominated by his party. The disadvantage of the electoral system is that it is not easy for young people to understand it. Its advantage is that cheating in one State cannot succeed in gaining more than the electoral votes of that State; if the President were elected by popular vote, frauds in a single State might make its majority large enough to change the whole vote of the country.

299. The Cabinet.—The chief officers of the principal departments under the President are the President's advisers, and are usually called his Cabinet, though there is no such word in the Constitution. In Washington's time, there were four of these departments, which he filled as follows: Secretary of State, Thomas Jefferson (§ 328); Secretary of the Treasury, Alexander Hamilton (§ 269); Secretary of War, Henry Knox, of Massachusetts; Attorney-General, Edmund Randolph, of Virginia. The Navy Department was added in 1798 (§ 321); it had previously been a part of the War Department. The Post-office Department was added in 1829; it had previously been a part of the Treasury Department. In 1849, the Department of the Interior was organized (§ 539).

300. Congress then proceeded to pass the laws necessary to put the new form of government into active operation. This was a work of the greatest difficulty, for everything had to be done anew; but it was done so skilfully that it has since been necessary to change it very little, except by enlarging its operation. The operations of the government have grown enormously larger, but its general shape remains very much the same as when it came from the hands of the first two Congresses. While this work was going on, the new Constitution was ratified by North Carolina in 1789, and by Rhode Island in 1790 (§ 287); so that the original thirteen States were now unanimous. Twelve Amendments to the Constitution were proposed by Congress; and ten of them, having been ratified by three fourths of the States, became a part of the

299. What is meant by the Cabinet? Who composed Washington's Cabinet? What is said of the Navy Department? Of the Post-office Department? Of the Department of the Interior?

300. What did Congress proceed to do? What is said of its work? Of its continuance? What States ratified? the Constitution? What Amendments were adopted? What new States were admitted?

Constitution. Three new States were admitted during Washington's administrations: Vermont in 1791, Kentucky in 1792, and Tennessee in 1796.

For the outline history of Vermont, see § 69; of Kentucky, § 302; of Tennessee, § 303. The ten Amendments are in Appendix II.

301. The Laws passed by the first two Congresses were principally for the organization of the government. The four departments, State, Treasury, War, and Justice (§ 299), were organized in 1789, and the duties of their officers were carefully marked out. Taxes were laid on goods brought into the country, in order to provide money for the support of the government. The United States courts, inferior to the Supreme Court, were organized, and their powers and duties were declared



Scale of Miles
0 50 100 200 300 400

KENTUCKY AND TENNESSEE.

(§284). In the next year (1790) a law was passed to pay in full all the debts of the Confederation, and also those of the States. The national capital was fixed for ten years at Philadelphia, and was then to be placed on the Potomac River, where Washington City now stands (§ 325). In the next year (1791), a National Bank was established at Philadelphia, to receive and pay out the money of the government. In 1792, a mint was established at Philadelphia, to coin United States money; and laws were passed to improve the workings of the Post-office Department. By this

301. What was the object of the laws of the first two Congresses? What is said of the departments? Of taxes? Of the courts? Of the debt? Of the national capital? Of the National Bank? Of the mint? Of the post-office? What was the result of all these laws?

time, the wheels of the new government were fairly in motion; and for the first time the people of the United States were really governing themselves.

302. Kentucky was admitted to the Union in 1792.

Kentucky had been part of Virginia. The first account of it was given by Thos. Walker, of Virginia, in 1758. In 1769 (§ 160), Boone led the way in settling it. Others followed, and in 1775 settlements were begun at Boonesborough and Harrodsburgh. The settlements were at first merely forts, or a few log-houses surrounded by a stockade, to keep off the Indians. Kentucky was the hunting-ground of the northwestern Indians; and they fought fiercely against the white settlers, but unsuccessfully. Louisville was founded in 1778, Lexington in 1779, and Maysville in 1784. Population grew rapidly, and in 1792, with the consent of Virginia, the "dark and bloody ground" of Kentucky became a separate State. The Virginia settlers had taken

their slaves with them, and thus Kentucky entered the Union as a slave-State. Its population has increased from 73,677 in 1790 to 1,648,690 in 1880. Its people have always been engaged mainly in agriculture. Its capital is Frankfort, and its most important city is Louisville, one of the great cities of the Union, having a population of 123,758 in 1880.

303. Tennessee was admitted to the Union in 1796.

Tennessee had been part of North Carolina. In 1756, the British built Fort Loudoun, near where Knoxville now stands, and a few settlers gathered around it. Troubles in North Carolina, about 1771 (§ 100), drove more settlers over the mountains into eastern Tennessee. These settled along the Watauga and Holston rivers, and formed a government of their own. A few pressed farther on into middle Tennessee, and Nashville was founded in 1784. In the same year, the Tennessee settlers, under the lead of John Sevier, revolted and formed the separate State of Franklin, or Frankland; but North Carolina succeeded in re-establishing her authority. In 1790, she ceded Tennessee to the United States (§ 275); and it was formed into the Southwest Territory. In 1796, it entered the Union as a slave-State. The population of the State has increased from 35,691 in 1790 to 1,542,359 in 1880. The State is divided into three parts by the Tennessee River and the Cumberland Mountains, which cross it. The leading cities are Nashville (the capital), in middle Tennessee; Memphis, in western Tennessee; and Chattanooga, in eastern Tennessee. The people are mainly engaged in agriculture; but eastern Tennessee has large mineral resources, which are not yet fully known, and have not been properly developed.



SEAL OF KENTUCKY.



SEAL OF TENNESSEE.

304. Political Contest did not occur for some time. The Anti-Federalists (§ 286) had broken up, for the sudden peace and quiet which followed the adoption of the Constitution had silenced all opposition to it. But many of those who had been Federalists began to be alarmed by the strength shown by the new government. They were anxious to keep the State governments strong and vigorous, for they believed that good government was in most cases surer from the States, each of which best knew the needs of its own people; and they began to fear that the new Federal Government would grow so strong as to destroy the States. About 1792, they took the name of the Republican party. Washington himself tried to be of no party, but was really a Federalist. It was not long before his Cabinet (§ 299) was divided by the new feeling: Jefferson and Randolph became the Republican leaders, and Hamilton and Knox the Federalist leaders.

Jefferson and Hamilton were two of the ablest men that our country has yet produced. Hamilton planned most of the laws for organizing the government.

305. The Two Parties were thus the Federal and the Republican parties. Both parties desired good government: the Federalists thought that this could best be obtained through the Federal Government; the Republicans, through the State governments. The Federalists wished the laws to give as much, and the Republicans as little, power as possible to the Federal Government. The Federalists were more numerous in the North, the Republicans in the South. The Federalists were more numerous among the merchants, business men, and commercial classes; the Republicans, among the farmers. Finally, the Federalists inclined somewhat toward English ideas of government; the Republicans, a great deal toward France, and the right of all men to share in the government. When the time came for the second Presidential election, in 1792, the Republicans had not grown sufficiently to contest the election warmly. All the electors again voted for Washington;

304. What is said of political contest? Of the Anti-Federalists? What was the feeling of many of those who had been Federalists? What name did they take? To which party did Washington belong? How was his Cabinet divided?

305. What were the two parties? How did they differ in their desire for good government? For good laws? In their sections? In their membership? In their friendship for foreign countries? What was the state of parties at the Presidential election of 1792? What was the result of the election?

and John Adams, who was a Federalist, received the next largest number, and was re-elected Vice-President.

The name Republican was gradually changed, in the next twenty years, to Democratic, which is still the name of the party. The present Republican party, in 1885, is not the original party of that name, but is more like the Federal party.

306. The French Revolution began in 1789. For more than 150 years, the French kings had ruled by their own will (§ 34). All this time the people of France were dreadfully misgoverned, and were taxed so heavily, for the luxurious support of the king and nobles, that they could hardly find means to live. Affairs finally became so bad that the king was compelled to call a Parliament together again, to consult about raising money. When it met, it gradually began to take all the power to itself; and in the next few years it abolished the former government, drove the nobles out of the country, put the king and queen to death, and engaged in a general war against the neighboring kingdoms of Europe. Great Britain was its principal enemy, and there was very little peace between the two countries until 1815.

307. Genet's Mission.—France, as it was now a republic, expected help in its war against England from the United States. The British navy was far the most powerful in the world, and was able to shut up the French vessels in their own ports; but France hoped to attack her enemy from America. In 1793, the French Government sent a minister, Genet, to the United States, to fit out privateers (§ 241) in American ports against British commerce. It was impossible for the United States to allow this to be done without joining in the war against Great Britain, and Washington firmly prevented it. Genet was troublesome and insolent all through the year, and was then recalled by France, at Washington's request.

308. The Whiskey Insurrection.—One of the laws passed by Congress laid a tax on whiskey. The roads in the United States were at that time so bad that the settlers in the western part of

306. When did the French Revolution begin? How had the kings ruled previously? What was the condition of the people? Why was a Parliament called together? What did it do? What was the state of affairs between France and Great Britain?

307. What did France expect? Why did she need help? What minister was sent by France? Why did he fail? What further is said of him?

308. What is said of the whiskey tax? Of the cultivation of grain? Of the manufacture of whiskey? Of the resistance to the tax? How was it suppressed? What is the disturbance called?

Pennsylvania and Virginia could not carry their grain to market without paying for the carrying more than they could sell it for. They had been in the habit of turning it into whiskey, which took up less room than the grain from which it was made, and was more easily carried. They disliked to pay the new tax, and, in 1794, their resistance became so angry that Washington was compelled to send a small army of militia to Pittsburgh to restore order. The disturbance was known as the Whiskey Insurrection.

309. Indian Wars followed the entrance of settlers into Ohio. In 1790, the Indians began to attack the new settlements. General Harmar was sent against them, and was badly defeated near the place where the city of Fort Wayne now stands. In 1791, General St. Clair was sent against the Indians; and he was also surprised and defeated near the headwaters of the Wabash River. The Indians now demanded, as the price of peace, that no settlements should ever be made on their side of the Ohio River. But, in 1794, General Anthony Wayne (§ 238) was sent against them. The Indians could not surprise him, and in a battle, near the present city of Toledo, he inflicted a total defeat upon them. They then made a treaty by which they gave up forever the present State of Ohio.

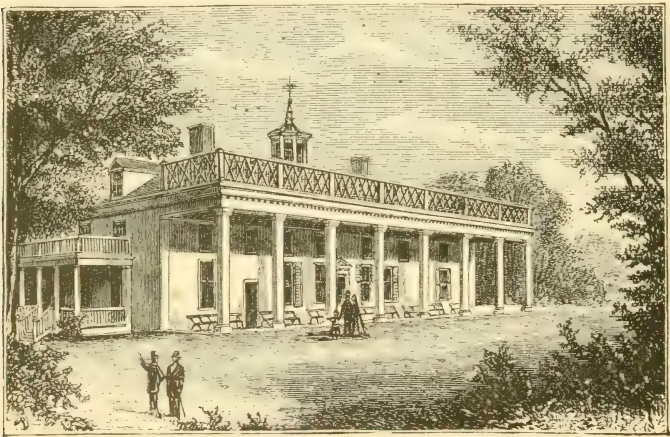
310. Jay's Treaty.—The United States had had many reasons to be dissatisfied with Great Britain. She still held Detroit and other forts in the Northwest, though she had promised to give them up (§ 265); and her officers there were believed to have helped the Indians against the United States. Her vessels on the ocean were in the habit of seizing American vessels which attempted to trade with any country with which she was at war. To prevent war, Chief-Justice Jay was sent as minister to Great Britain, and, in 1795, concluded a treaty with that country. It provided for the surrender of the northwestern forts, and for the payment of American claims for damages; but, as it gave some new advantages to Great Britain, it excited great opposition in the United States.

309. What is said of Indian wars in Ohio? Of Harmar's defeat? Of St. Clair's defeat? What did the Indians now demand? What is said of Wayne's victory? Of the treaty which followed it?

310. What was the state of affairs between the United States and Great Britain? What had Great Britain done in the Northwest? On the ocean? What is said of Jay's mission? Of Jay's treaty? Of its results?

It proved, however, to be sufficient to settle the difficulties between the two countries for about ten years (§ 341).

311. Washington refused to be a candidate for a third term of office as President; and, in 1796, he issued his Farewell Address to the American people. It urged them to make religion, education, and public good faith the foundations of their government, to remain united, and to resist foreign influence. It was not meant only for the American people of that time, and its advice will never cease to be valuable. At the end of his Presidency, Washington retired to his plantation of Mount Vernon, in eastern Virginia,



MOUNT VERNON.

where he passed the remainder of his life as a private citizen (§ 326).

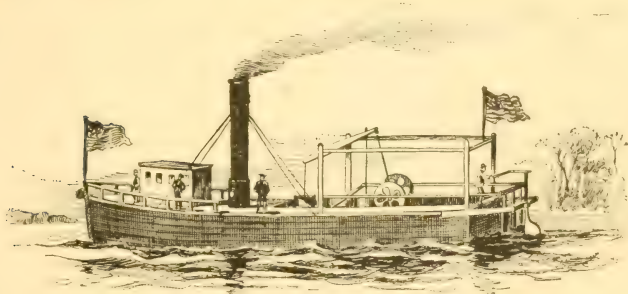
Parts of the Address are given in Appendix VI.

312. The Presidential Election in 1796 was warmly contested by the two parties. The Federalists voted for Adams, and the Republicans for Jefferson (§ 328). Adams was elected President; most of his electoral votes came from Northern States, while Jefferson's came from Southern States. Jefferson stood next to Adams in the vote, and thus became Vice-President.

311. Did Washington accept a third term? What is said of his Farewell Address? Of his retirement?

312. What is said of the Presidential election in 1796? Who were the candidates? Who was elected President? Vice-President?

313. The Prosperity of the United States had increased during these eight years, with order and better government. Commerce had increased, because the wars in Europe left trade mainly to American vessels. The American flag began to be known in distant seas; and in 1790, the Boston ship *Columbia*, Captain Gray, made the first American voyage around the world. Manufactures had also revived, and patents began to be issued. In 1793, the mint sent out its first coins, about 11,000 copper cents; and in 1795, gold coins were issued. To take the place of the old and poor roads, turnpike-roads began to be built out from a few of the principal cities; they were carefully laid out, and their expense was paid by tolls collected from travellers. Two small canals were dug in New England; and the first attempts were made, by John



FITCH'S STEAMBOAT.

Fitch and others, to move boats by steam. They were not successful, but they led the way to Fulton's success (§ 335).

Colleges were rising rapidly, and from this time they are too numerous for special mention. Most of them were at first small and poor, but grew strong as population and wealth increased.

314. The Weakness of the United States.—The country, however, was not yet by any means great or strong. It was not rich; its government was heavily in debt; and it was very difficult to

313. What is said of the country's prosperity? Of commerce? Of the first American voyage around the world? Of manufactures and patents? Of the mint? Of the roads? Of canals? Of steamboats?

314. What is said of the weakness of the country? What was its population in 1790? How does this compare with that of New York or Pennsylvania in 1880? With that of Ohio or Illinois?

put aside money enough to equip an army or build war-vessels, so that foreign nations did not care much for its friendship. Its population, by the first census (in 1790), was ascertained to be 3,929,214. This was not nearly as many as there were in 1880 in the State of New York alone, or in Pennsylvania (Appendix IV). The States of Ohio and Illinois, which had hardly any white population in 1790, had each nearly as large a population in 1880 as the whole United States had in 1790. Any one of these four States would now be a more dangerous enemy to a foreign nation of the power of Great Britain in 1790 than the whole United States was then.

315. Ohio had fairly begun to grow. The western roads were still very poor, and the settlers, before reaching their new homes,



CINCINNATI IN 1787 (Fort Washington).

were obliged to journey through a wilderness in Pennsylvania, and down a river infested with Indians. These difficulties could not check immigration. The towns of Cincinnati, Marietta, Chillicothe, and Cleveland had been founded; and from this time the growth of the Northwest in population and wealth is one of the most wonderful things the world has yet seen (§ 334).

In 1793, the first newspaper in the Northwest was issued at Cincinnati, while it was yet a town of about a hundred log-cabins. In 1794, two large passenger-boats ran regularly between Pittsburgh and Cincinnati. They were moved by oars, had bullet-proof sides, and were armed with cannon to protect them from the Indians.

315. What is said of Ohio? What were some of the difficulties of the journey to it? What towns had been founded? What is said of the growth of the Northwest?

316. The Mississippi Treaty.—The people of Tennessee and Kentucky had been very much troubled by the Spaniards, who claimed to own the Mississippi River, as well as the country beyond it. In 1795, a treaty with Spain was made by the United States: it allowed both nations to use the Mississippi River. Thus the American settlers on the Ohio River, and in Kentucky and Tennessee, were able to send their crops to market in the Spanish city of New Orleans.

Western rivers were only half useful to settlers until steam was introduced, for boats could not easily be rowed against the current. When cargoes were sent in flat-boats down the Mississippi to New Orleans, the boats were usually broken up and sold as lumber, and the sailors walked or rode back up the river-bank.



COTTON-GIN.

317. The South was even more prosperous than the rest of the country. It had produced, up to this time, mainly indigo, rice, tar, and tobacco. Cotton had been tried, but was not profitable, for its seeds stuck to it so closely that a slave could clean but five

316. What had been the difficulties of the people of Kentucky and Tennessee with the Spaniards? What treaty removed them? What market did this furnish for western crops?

317. What was the condition of the South? What had been its productions? What is said of cotton? Of Whitney's saw-gin? What were its effects on the cultivation of cotton? On negro slavery?

or six pounds in a day. In 1793, Eli Whitney, a Connecticut teacher living in Georgia, invented the saw-gin, in which revolving teeth dragged the cotton between parallel wires, leaving the seeds behind. With this machine, a slave could clean a thousand pounds of cotton in a day. The cultivation of cotton at once became very profitable, and increased enormously. But, unfortunately, negro slavery also became far more important to the South, and there was now little likelihood of its dying out there, as it was rapidly dying out in the North (§ 191).

318. The Leading Events of Washington's administrations were as follows:

1789-93: Washington's First Term.....	§ 296
1789: Inauguration of the new government ..	297
Ratification by North Carolina.....	300
1790: Ratification by Rhode Island.....	300
Indian war in Ohio.....	309
1791: Harmar's defeat by the Indians.....	309
St. Clair's defeat by the Indians.....	309
National Bank established.....	300
Vermont admitted.....	306
1792: Kentucky admitted.....	302
Parties formed.....	304
1793: The cotton-gin invented.....	317
Genet's mission from France.....	307
1793-7: Washington's Second Term.....	305
1794: Whiskey Insurrection.....	308
Wayne's defeat of the Ohio Indians. ..	309
1795: Jay's Treaty.....	310
Treaty with Spain.....	316
1796: Tennessee admitted.....	303
Washington's Farewell Address.....	311

SUPPLEMENTARY QUESTIONS.

Locations.—Locate Vermont; Kentucky; Louisville, Ky.; Tennessee; Nashville, Tenn.; Memphis, Tenn.; Chattanooga, Tenn.; Pittsburgh, Pa.; Fort Wayne, Ind.; Toledo, O.; Detroit, Mich.; Cincinnati, O.; New Orleans, La.

REVIEW.—Give the years in which Washington's administrations began and ended. Name the Vice-President. Give the year of the admission of Vermont. Of Kentucky. Of Tennessee. Of the invention of the cotton-gin. Of Genet's mission. Of the Whiskey Insurrection. Of Wayne's victory. Of the Farewell Address.

318. What were the leading events of 1789? Of 1790? Of 1791? Of 1792? Of 1793? Of 1794? Of 1795? Of 1796?

CHAPTER IV.

JOHN ADAMS'S ADMINISTRATION: 1797-1801.

JOHN ADAMS, Mass., President.

THOMAS JEFFERSON, Va., Vice-President.

319. John Adams, of Massachusetts, was born in 1735. He became a lawyer, a leader in the Revolution, and a member of the Continental Congress. He was the first American minister to Great Britain and the Netherlands, returning to become Vice-President. He was a Federalist, and was elected President by his party when Washington retired. He was not re-elected, and retired to his home in Quincy, Mass., where he died in 1826 (§ 439). As a man, he was exceedingly honest, very hard to be convinced that he was wrong, and almost always with some quarrel on his hands.



JOHN ADAMS.

320. Difficulties with France filled almost all Adams's administration. The French Government was controlled by a few unusually selfish

men, who were at war with most of the world, and were determined that the United States should pay them money for the privilege of remaining at peace. They turned the American minister out of the country; they passed laws which made American commerce difficult and dangerous; and they encouraged their naval officers to capture and sell American vessels and cargoes. When special ministers were sent by President Adams to remonstrate, they were told plainly that these proceedings would not be stopped until the men who controlled the French Government were

319. What were the leading events in the life of John Adams?

320. What is said of difficulties with France? How did they arise? What answer was given to the American remonstrances? What was the American feeling?

paid a large sum of money as a bribe for peace. They were, however, very much mistaken in thinking that, because the Americans were anxious for peace, they were cowardly enough to be willing to offer money for it. The American ministers answered that they would spend "millions for defence, not one cent for tribute;" and the American people backed them heartily and prepared for war.

321. War with France, though it was not declared, really took up the last half of the year 1798. Congress met, abolished the treaties with France, formed an army with Washington at its head, increased the navy (§ 299), and ordered it to capture French vessels. Several naval fights followed, in which a number of French privateers were captured. The most important battles took place near the island of St. Kitt's, in the West Indies, where the *Constellation*, Commodore Truxton, fought and captured the French frigate *L'Insurgente*.

The national song, "Hail Columbia," was published and became popular during this war excitement.

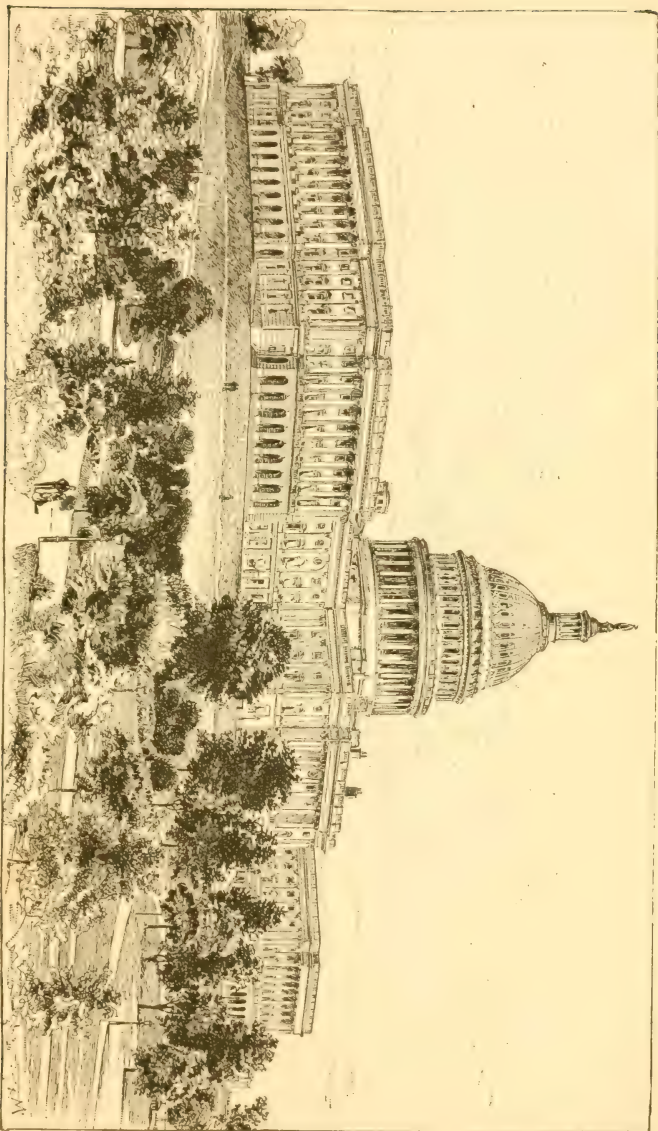
322. Peace was made in 1799. Napoleon Bonaparte overturned the former French government, and put himself in its place. He then offered fair terms of peace to the United States, and they were accepted. In a few years he made himself emperor of the French, and extended his empire over most of western Europe. He could not reach the British Islands, which were guarded by the strongest navy in the world; but the war between him and Great Britain lasted almost constantly until his downfall in 1815 (§ 399).

323. Alien and Sedition Laws.—During the war excitement against France, the Federalists in Congress had done some unwise things. They had passed laws allowing the President to arrest any alien (foreigner) in the United States who should seem to be dangerous. These were known as the Alien laws. They had also passed a law to punish any one who should speak evil of the government: this was known as the Sedition law. Both laws aimed

321. What is said of the war with France? What were the proceedings of Congress? What followed? What was the most important battle?

322. When was peace made? Who was now at the head of the French Government? How did he make peace? What rank did he take in a few years? What was the state of affairs between him and Great Britain?

323. What is said of the Federalists in Congress? What is meant by the Alien laws? By the Sedition law? What was the objection of the Republicans? What was the feeling of the people? What was the result at the following election?



THE CAPITOL AT WASHINGTON.

to give the government power over the citizen, which the Federalists considered to be necessary to good government. Both were disliked by the Republicans, but especially the Sedition law. They considered it a wrongful interference with every man's right to criticise any acts of the government which he disapproved. A majority of the people agreed with them in this belief, and at the following election the Federal party was so completely defeated that it never again came into control of the government.

324. The Presidential Election in 1800 was one of great excitement. The Federalists voted for President Adams and C. C. Pinckney, of South Carolina; the Republicans, for Jefferson and Aaron Burr, of New York. Jefferson and Burr received the highest number of electoral votes (73), but were equal in number. In case of such a tie vote, the Constitution directed that the House of Representatives should choose one of the two for President. After some delay, and a good deal of angry discussion, the House chose Jefferson President and Burr Vice-President.

In consequence of the difficulties of this election, the twelfth Amendment to the Constitution was adopted in 1804 (§ 298). It changed the manner of the election of President and Vice-President, and made it as it still remains. The electors were now to vote separately for President and Vice-President, so that there could be no such tie vote as the one between Jefferson and Burr, where both were of the same party.

325. The Population of the United States was shown by the census of 1800 to be 5,308,483, a considerable growth since 1790 (§ 314). In the West, Mississippi and Indiana were formed into Territories, showing that their population was increasing. The Territory of Ohio was growing rapidly, and was soon to be a State. In the older parts of the country there was little change except the steady growth of population. In 1800, the national capital, and the books and papers of the government, were removed from Philadelphia (§ 301) to the new city of Washington, then a straggling half-built village in the woods, with a few public buildings and very little else. The Capitol and the other fine buildings now in the city have been built as the country has grown richer.

324. What is said of the Presidential election in 1800? Who were the Federalist candidates? The Republican candidates? What was the result of the election? How was it to be decided? How was it decided?

325. What was the population in 1800? What new Territories were formed? What is said of Ohio? Of the other parts of the country? What is said of the removal of the national capital?

326. Washington died suddenly in 1799. His death was followed by mourning throughout the United States. Even in countries beyond the sea, the event was announced as a general loss to mankind.

327. The Leading Events of Adams's administration were as follows:

1797-1801: John Adams's term.....	§ 319
1798: War with France.....	321
Alien and Sedition laws.....	323
1799: Peace with France.....	322
Death of Washington.....	326
1800: Removal of the capital to Washington City...	325
1800: Defeat of the Federalists.....	324

SUPPLEMENTARY QUESTIONS.

Locations.—(School map locations in *italics*.)—Locate *St. Kitt's*, *W. I.*; Mississippi; Indiana; Ohio; Philadelphia; Washington, D. C.

REVIEW.—Give the years in which Adams's administration began and ended. Name the Vice-President. Give the year of the war with France. Of the Alien and Sedition laws. Of the removal of the capital to Washington.

326. What is said of Washington's death? Of the mourning in the United States? In foreign countries?

327. What were the leading events of 1798? Of 1799? Of 1800?

CHAPTER V.

JEFFERSON'S ADMINISTRATIONS: 1801-09.

THOMAS JEFFERSON, Va., President. { AARON BURR, N. Y., Vice-President, 1801-05.
GEO. CLINTON, N. Y., Vice-President, 1805-09.

328. Thomas Jefferson, of Virginia, was born in 1743. He became a lawyer, a member of the Continental Congress, governor of his State, and minister to France. He returned to take the place of Secretary of State under Washington (§ 299). Here he organized the Democratic, or Republican, party, which was opposed to the strong government of the Federalists, and was elected by that party Vice-President in 1796, and President in 1800. At the end of his second term he retired to his home at Monticello, where he died in 1826 (§ 439). He seldom made public speeches, but was one of our most excellent political writers. His most noted writing was the Declaration of Independence (§ 207).

329. Jefferson's Inauguration

marks a great change in the people and in their feelings. Before the

Revolution, and for some time after it, the people had been rather slow in their ways of thinking, speaking, and acting. They were accustomed to leave such things to a few men, to the king, to his governors, or to rich or influential men in their own colonies. Generally, those who owned no property were not allowed to vote, and those who owned property and voted were much inclined to keep the rest in order by strong government. But the change to a republic had changed the feelings of the people. They had become more like the Americans of the present time, active, pushing, and impatient of too much dignity in their neighbors.

328. What were the leading events in the life of Jefferson?

329. What is said of Jefferson's inauguration? Of the people before the Revolution? Of the importance of a few men? Of the importance of property? How had the feeling of the people changed?







330. The Republicans represented the new men and the new feeling. They ceased to wear the wigs or cues of former times; wore their own hair, cut short; laughed at the stiff old manners, dignity, and dress of the Federalists; and insisted that every man should have a vote, property or no property. From this time, their ideas controlled the country, outside of New England; and in Congress they made the laws to suit themselves. But they made very little change in the forms of government which the Federalists had left them; and our government is still managed very much after the plans introduced by the Federal party.

(1) DOMESTIC AFFAIRS.

331 Domestic Affairs under Jefferson were at first marked by a wonderful prosperity. American commerce increased enormously, for nearly all Europe was now at war, it was not safe to send goods in European vessels, which were liable to capture by their enemies, and American vessels obtained far more than their share of the trade of the world. Money came in rapidly to the government of the United States, and its debt was soon nearly paid. Above all, the territory of the United States was more than doubled by the purchase of Louisiana.

In 1808, the foreign slave-trade was forbidden by law (§ 280, note).

332. Louisiana, the great territory between the Mississippi River and the Rocky Mountains (§ 158), no longer belonged to Spain. Napoleon had bought it in 1800, and intended to make it a strong French colony. But in 1803, having good reason to believe that his enemy Great Britain intended to attack it, he sold it to the United States for \$15,000,000. Before 1803, the United States covered 827,844 square miles; the purchase of Louisiana more than doubled this, adding 1,171,931 square miles of new territory (§ 831). Steamboats and railroads, by carrying immigration into the new territory, have since made it very valuable. There have been formed from it the States of Louisiana, Arkansas, Missouri, Iowa, Kansas, and Nebraska, the Territories of Dakota,

330. What did the Republicans represent? What were their peculiarities? How did they control the country? Did they change the forms of government?

331. What is said of domestic affairs? Of commerce? Why did it increase? What is said of the debts? Of the great increase of territory?

332. To what country had Louisiana belonged? Who bought it in 1800? Why did he sell it, and to what country? Which was the larger, Louisiana or the United States, before 1803? How has Louisiana become valuable? Name from the map the States and Territories formed from it.

Montana, and Indian Territory, and a great part of the States of Minnesota and Colorado and the Territory of Wyoming.

It was thought at the time that Louisiana included Texas also, but in 1819 the United States gave up this claim to Spain in return for Florida (§ 418).

333. The Oregon Country, covering the present State of Oregon and the Territories of Washington and Idaho, was then entirely unknown. In 1804, President Jefferson sent a land expedition under Lewis and Clarke, which explored the upper Missouri River, and the country around the Columbia River to the Pacific Ocean. This gave the United States a claim to this territory also, though it was not completed for nearly forty years (§ 520).

334. Ohio was admitted to the Union in 1802.



SEAL OF OHIO.

Ohio was a part of the Northwest Territory, and the first State admitted under the Ordinance of 1787 (§ 294). Its first American settlement was at Marietta, in 1788; and Cincinnati (at first called Losantiville) was founded in the same year (§ 315). At first, almost the whole State was covered with forests, and in the power of the Indians; but Wayne's victory compelled the Indians to give up the soil (§ 309), and the energy of the settlers has cleared away the forests, and built up a wonderfully prosperous State. Its population was too small to be counted in 1790; in 1880 it was 3,198,062, the third

in rank of the States. It contains four of the great cities of the Union: Cincinnati (population 255,139), Cleveland (population 160,146), Columbus, the capital (population 51,647), and Toledo (population 50,137), in addition to a number of cities, such as Dayton, Sandusky, Zanesville, Springfield, and others, which would be leading cities in a smaller State. The industry of the State is not confined to agriculture: it is the leading manufacturing State of the West; it produces nearly half the coal mined in the West, and more iron than any other State except Pennsylvania; and it is rich in petroleum. Its churches, schools, colleges, and newspapers rank high among the States. The real value of the State's property is probably about \$3,000,000,000, the result of only 90 years' work.



Scale of Miles
0 50 100 200

MAP OF OHIO.

333. Name from the map the State and Territories formed from the Oregon Country? What is said of Lewis and Clarke's expedition? Of what use was it?

334. What State was admitted in 1802?

335. The Steamboat.—The year 1807 is marked by one of the most important events in American history—Robert Fulton's invention of the steamboat. The steam-engine of Watt had been known and used for forty years, and many attempts had been made to use it in turning the paddle-wheels of vessels. Fulton succeeded; and his first clumsy vessel, the *Clermont*, made the trip from New York to Albany, 150 miles, in 32 hours. The appearance of his boat was not materially different from that of a small side-wheel steamer of the present day. This was the most excellent thing that had yet happened for the West, and it was used. The first western steamboat was built at Pittsburgh in 1811, and within a few years every western river had its steamboats. Nothing had yet helped emigration so much, or given the settlers so many new ways of making money. The great rivers of the United States could now be used against the current, as well as with it, and steamboats carried passengers and freight where row-boats had not been able to carry them.



ROBERT FULTON.

The first sea going steam-vessel, the *Savannah*, crossed the Atlantic in 1819, but ocean navigation by steam was not really begun until nearly twenty years afterward (§ 454).

336. The Wealth of the Country was steadily increasing, and the people were busily seeking new means of industry. The system of patents, which gave an inventor the exclusive right to his invention all over the United States, was steadily increasing the number of useful American inventions. Attempts were made to produce a mowing and reaping machine, but they were not yet

335. What great invention was made in 1807? Had it been attempted before? What was the first success? How did its use spread in the West? What was its importance to the West?

336. What was the condition of the country in general? What was the effect of the patent system on inventions? What is said of the mowing and reaping machine? Of anthracite coal?

successful (§ 455). In 1806, the first boat-load of anthracite coal was shipped to Philadelphia, but no one knew how to use it.

At first, Americans knew only open stoves, burning wood or soft coal. The anthracite, or "stone-coal," fields of Pennsylvania were discovered in 1791, but the coal was not generally used until about 1830 (§ 453). Since the manner of making hard coal burn has been known, it has made Pennsylvania one of the richest and greatest States of the Union.

337. The Presidential Election in 1804 resulted in the success of the Republicans. Jefferson was re-elected President, and George Clinton was elected Vice-President. Burr, who had been elected Vice-President in 1800, had fallen out of favor with his party, and was not re-elected. He retired to private life in 1805.

The Federalist candidates were C. C. Pinckney, of South Carolina, and Rufus King, of New York. They received only 14 electoral votes out of 176 (§ 298).

338. Burr was arrested and tried for treason in 1807. He had collected armed men in Kentucky and Tennessee, and along the Ohio River, and sailed with them in boats down the Mississippi. It was suspected that he intended to set up a separate government of his own in the Mississippi valley, or to attack the Spanish province of Mexico. He was stopped by the United States authorities at Natchez, and sent back to Richmond for trial. He was acquitted, since he had not actually borne arms against the United States, and then disappeared from public life.

(2) FOREIGN AFFAIRS.

339. The Barbary States, Morocco, Algiers, Tunis, and Tripoli, were Mohammedan countries on the Mediterranean coast of Africa. They considered Christian nations to be heathens, and, unless they were paid to remain at peace, captured Christian vessels and made slaves of the sailors. The greatest nations of Europe, as well as the United States, had always submitted to this demand, and had paid these impudent pirates liberally for peace.

340. The Tripolitan War began in 1801. Tripoli demanded more money from the United States, and, when it was refused, be-

337. What was the result of the Presidential election in 1804? Who were elected President and Vice-President? Why was not Burr re-elected?

338. What happened to Burr in 1807? What had he done? What was suspected to be his intent? How was his expedition stopped? What was the result of the trial?

339. What were the Barbary States? What was their rule of warfare? How did other nations maintain peace with them?

340. What war began in 1801? Why was it begun? What happened to the *Philadelphia*? How was Tripoli attacked? How was peace made? What were the results?

gan to capture American vessels. The little American navy was sent to the Mediterranean. One frigate, the *Philadelphia*, ran aground in the harbor of Tripoli, in 1803, and was captured; but Lieutenant Decatur, with twenty picked sailors, sailed into the harbor and burned her. A land expedition attacked Tripoli from the eastward, and the navy bombarded the town from the harbor; and in 1805, Tripoli yielded and made peace. Other peoples followed the American example, and in a few years the Barbary pirates were forced to remain at peace without being paid for it (§ 412).

341. The Wars in Europe, between Great Britain and France, had by this time become a world-wide nuisance. Great Britain had the most powerful navy in the world, and France the most powerful army; and each country tried to make other nations side with it. In 1806, Great Britain declared a blockade of all that part of Europe which had taken sides with France, and forbade vessels to enter its harbors; and Napoleon answered with the *Berlin Decree*, forbidding all vessels to enter British harbors. In 1807, by Orders in Council, Great Britain forbade American vessels to enter any harbors in Europe except those of Great Britain and of Sweden, a country friendly to Great Britain; and Napoleon answered with the *Milan Decree*, ordering the capture and sale of any American vessel which should enter a British harbor.

The Berlin and Milan decrees were so called from the names of the cities from which they were issued, Berlin in Prussia, and Milan in northern Italy.

342. American Commerce suffered severely from these measures. If an American vessel attempted to trade with Europe, without entering a British harbor and there paying taxes on her cargo, she was liable to capture by the first British cruiser she should meet. If she first touched at a British port, and then entered a harbor on the continent of Europe, she was liable to be seized and sold by Napoleon's orders. Further, Great Britain claimed the right of search and impressment; that is, the right to stop a vessel belonging to any other nation, and take away any

341. What is said of the war in Europe? How were Great Britain and France powerful? What was done by Great Britain in 1806? How did Napoleon answer it? What was done by Great Britain in 1807? How did Napoleon answer it?

342. What was the effect of these measures on American commerce? What were the dangers to American vessels? What is said of the right of search and impressment?

sailors who seemed to have been born in Great Britain or Ireland. In this way very many Americans were forced to serve on British war-vessels.

In 1807, the British frigate *Leopard*, off Chesapeake Bay, stopped the United States frigate *Chesapeake*, which was in no condition for fighting, and compelled her to give up four sailors. This outrage nearly brought on war between the two countries.

343. The American Policy.—The United States would now declare war at once, if American commerce should be so mistreated. But then the country, though growing, was weak and poor. The Republicans, who controlled it, were most anxious to pay off the debt, and did not wish to be burdened with the expense of a navy. Besides, they were chiefly farmers, and had very little confidence in the ability of the navy to fight British war-vessels, which were then considered irresistible. They decided, therefore, to put a stop to American commerce for a time, in order, if possible, to make Great Britain reasonable by injuring her trade.

344. The Embargo Act was passed by Congress in 1807: it forbade the departure of any vessel from the United States for a foreign port. It was found to be a complete failure. Great Britain liked it because it left almost all trade to British vessels. In New England, whose people were then largely supported by commerce, all business was broken up, the people became poorer and desperate, and a few of them began to talk of separating from the Union. In other parts of the Union, also, it was found that crops were of little value when they could no longer be carried to foreign countries and sold. Nothing had been gained by violent interference with the natural order of things.

345. The Non-Intercourse Act in 1809 took the place of the Embargo. It still forbade trade with Great Britain or France while their offensive measures were continued, but allowed trade with other countries. Jefferson's administrations thus closed unhappily. The people were hopeless of fair treatment from Great Britain and France, and were almost angry enough for war against the principal offender of the two, Great Britain.

343. Why did not the United States declare war? What were the reasons why a navy was not formed? What did the Republicans decide to do?

344. What act was passed in 1807? What was its effect on Great Britain? In New England? In the rest of the country?

345. What act was passed in 1809? What were its provisions? How did Jefferson's administrations close? What was the feeling of the people?

346. The Presidential Election in 1808 again resulted in Republican success. James Madison (§ 348) was chosen President, and George Clinton was chosen Vice-President.

The Federalist candidates were Pinckney and King (§ 337, note). They received 47 of the 176 electoral votes.

347. The Leading Events of Jefferson's administrations were as follows:

1801-05: Jefferson's First Term.....	§ 328
1801: War with Tripoli.....	340
1802: Admission of Ohio	334
1803: Burning of the <i>Philadelphia</i>	340
Purchase of Louisiana.....	332 ✓
1804: Lewis and Clarke's expedition.....	333
1805: Peace with Tripoli	340
1805-09: Jefferson's Second Term.....	337
1806: European blockade by Great Britain.....	341
Berlin Decree by Napoleon.....	341
1807: Orders in Council by Great Britain.....	341
Milan Decree by Napoleon.....	341
Affair of the <i>Leopard</i> and <i>Chesapeake</i>	342
The Embargo.....	344
Burr's expedition	338
Fulton's invention of the steamboat.....	335
1808: Foreign slave-trade forbidden.....	331
1809: The Non-Intercourse Act.....	345

SUPPLEMENTARY QUESTIONS.

Locations.—(School-map locations in *italics*)—Name from the general map the States and Territories formed from the Louisiana purchase. The State and Territories formed from the Oregon Country. Locate the Missouri River; the Columbia River; Ohio; Indiana; Illinois; Michigan; St. Louis, Mo.; Albany, N. Y.; Pittsburgh, Pa.; Philadelphia; Natchez, Miss.; Richmond, Va.; *the Barbary States; Tripoli*.

REVIEW.—Give the years in which Jefferson's administrations began and ended. Name the President; the Vice-Presidents. Give the year of the admission of Ohio. Of the purchase of Louisiana. Of the European blockade by Great Britain. Of the Berlin Decree. Of the Orders in Council. Of the Milan Decree. Of the Embargo. Of Burr's expedition. Of Fulton's invention. Of the prohibition of the foreign slave-trade. Of the Non Intercourse Act.

346. How did the Presidential election result in 1808? Who was elected President? Vice-President?

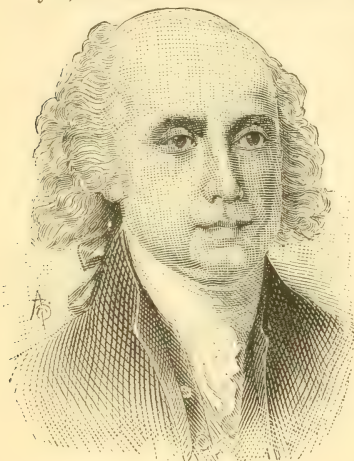
347. What were the years of Jefferson's first term? The leading event of 1801? Of 1802? Of 1803? Of 1804? Of 1805? What were the years of Jefferson's second term? The leading events of 1806? Of 1807? Of 1808? Of 1809?

CHAPTER VI.

MADISON'S ADMINISTRATIONS: 1809-17.

JAMES MADISON, Va., President. { GEORGE CLINTON, N. Y., Vice-President, 1809-12.
ELBRIDGE GERRY, Mass., Vice-President, 1813-17.

348. James Madison, of Virginia, was born in 1751. He became a lawyer, a member of the Continental Congress, of the Federal Convention, and of the first four Congresses under the Constitution. He was Secretary of State under Jefferson, and succeeded him as President. At the end of his second term he retired to private life. He died in 1836. In politics he was a Democrat, but his writings show that he was in reality strongly inclined to agree with the Federalists on many subjects.



JAMES MADISON.

(1) DECLARATION OF WAR:
1812.

349. The Non-Intercourse Law (§ 345) came to an end in 1810, without having produced any effect. Congress then declared that, if either Great Britain or France would revoke her

offensive decrees, the Non-Intercourse Law would be revived against the other nation. Napoleon at once announced that he revoked his decrees. This was a falsehood, for his decrees were enforced as severely as ever ; but the falsehood served Napoleon's purpose by arraying the United States and Great Britain against

348. What were the leading events in the life of Madison?

349. What is said of the Non-Intercourse Law? What did Congress then declare? What was done by Napoleon? What is said of his action? What was the state of affairs between the United States and Great Britain? What was the action of British war-vessels?

one another. The United States revived the Non-Intercourse Law against Great Britain, and Great Britain became more overbearing than ever. Her war-vessels watched the whole eastern coast of the United States, and captured American merchantmen, often without giving any reason.

In 1811, the United States frigate *President* hailed the British war-vessel *Little Belt*, off Cape Charles, and was answered by a cannon-shot. In the fight that followed, the British vessel was badly beaten.

350. The Indians of the Northwest, led by Tecumseh, became hostile, and were assisted by British agents. In 1811, Governor W. H. Harrison (§ 513) completely defeated them in a battle at Tippecanoe, near the present town of Lafayette. Soon afterward, Tecumseh and his warriors entered the British army (§ 362).

351. War with Great Britain was unavoidable, for the American people had lost all patience. When new Congressmen came to be chosen, the "submission men," who wished to avoid war, were defeated, and "war men" were elected. After making considerable preparation for conflict, Congress declared war, June 18, 1812.

(2) STATE OF THE COUNTRY.

352. The Preparations for War against Great Britain cannot be said to have been very valuable. The British navy numbered about 1,000 vessels, many of them the most powerful vessels afloat. The American navy numbered 12, none of them of large size, with a number of cheap, small, and provokingly useless vessels called "gun-boats." Some efforts had been made to increase the American army; but the men were undisciplined, and the officers were generally politicians, who knew nothing about war. The consequence was that the Americans were beaten in almost every land-battle, until the fighting generals got rid of the political officers and disciplined the men properly (§§ 365, 392). In the navy there were no political officers, and few failures; and most of the glory of the war was gained, to the great surprise of the people of both countries, by brilliant and successful sea-fights.

350. What is said of the Indians of the Northwest? Of Harrison's battle of Tippecanoe? What became of Tecumseh afterward?

351. Why was war unavoidable? How did Congressional elections result? When was war declared?

352. What is said of the preparations for war? Of the British navy? Of the American navy? Of the American army? What was the consequence in land-battles? In sea-battles?

353. The Population of the United States in 1810 was 7,239,881 (§ 325); that of Great Britain and Ireland was nearly 19,000,000. The larger population of Great Britain was gathered into a space about as large as New York, Vermont, Pennsylvania, and New Jersey together, so that it could act promptly and effectively; that of the United States was scattered over a vast territory, extending from the Atlantic Ocean to the Rocky Mountains, nearly six times as long and ten times as wide as Great Britain. In what is now the State of Indiana there were but 25,000 persons, in Illinois 12,000, and in Michigan 5,000.

354. The Principal Theatre of War on the boundary between Canada and the United States was then a wilderness, less settled than the Territories of Idaho and Arizona in 1880. There was not a town of respectable size in the whole western half of the State of New York, or on the lake shore; and the maps of the time do not show such places as Buffalo, Rochester, or Syracuse, even as villages. There were hardly any passable roads here or north and west of the Ohio River; and food for the troops was carried to them with great difficulty and at a cost sometimes of five or six times its value. The present States of Alabama and Mississippi were still more destitute of inhabitants; and the traveller or army passing from the settled country around Nashville to New Orleans or Mobile went nearly all the way through a hostile Indian country.

355. The Dislike to the War was very general in New England, where the people believed that it was needless and wrong. Money was scarce in the United States, and, scarce as it was, most of it was in New England. The government attempted to carry on the war by raising loans. But those who supported the war had very little money, and those who had money to spare refused to lend it to support the war. The consequence was that the government was almost constantly in want of money, and toward the end of the war could hardly get enough money to arm, clothe, and feed its soldiers, or build war-vessels.

356. The Presidential Election in 1812 resulted in the success

353. What was the population of the United States? Of Great Britain and Ireland? How was the British population distributed? The American population? What is said of the population of the Northwest?

354. What is said of the theatre of war? Of the western part of New York? Of the roads? Of Alabama and Mississippi?

355. What was the feeling in New England? What is said of money? Of government loans? Why did they fail? What was the consequence?

of the Republicans, who now controlled the country so completely that the Federalists hardly opposed them. In this election the Federalists nominated no candidate of their own, but supported De Witt Clinton, of New York, a Republican. The vote of Pennsylvania turned the scale in favor of President Madison, who was re-elected President. Elbridge Gerry, of Massachusetts, was elected Vice-President with him.

Madison had 128 electoral votes, Clinton 89. Jared Ingersoll, of Pennsylvania, was the Federalist candidate for Vice-President (§ 298).

SUPPLEMENTARY QUESTIONS.

Locations.—Locate Lafayette, Ind.; the States of Vermont, New York, Pennsylvania, and New Jersey; Buffalo, N. Y.; Rochester, N. Y.; Syracuse, N. Y.; the Ohio River; the States of Alabama and Mississippi; Nashville, Tenn.; New Orleans, La.; Mobile, Ala.

REVIEW.—Give the year of the battle of Tippecanoe. The date of the declaration of war. Who was President during the war? Who were the Vice-Presidents?

(3) FAILURES IN THE NORTH: 1812-14.

357. Hull's Surrender began the list of failures in the North. The most important frontier town of the Northwest was Detroit, in which William Hull, governor of Michigan Territory, resided. Immediately after the declaration of war he was ordered to cross the river and invade Canada. He did so, but retreated to Detroit as the British troops under General Brock advanced toward him. Brock followed, besieged Detroit, and threatened to give his Indians liberty to kill unless the place was given up. After a siege of less than a week, Hull surrendered Detroit, and with it the whole country northwest of Ohio.

Hull was court-martialled and sentenced to be shot for cowardice, but was pardoned for the sake of his services in the Revolutionary war.

358. Invasions of Canada.—In the autumn of 1812, an attempt was made to invade Canada from Lewiston, by crossing the Niagara River. While the braver part of the men crossed and assaulted the British, who were posted on Queenstown Heights,

356. How did the Presidential election in 1812 result? Whom did the Federalists support? Who was elected President? Vice-President?

357. How did the failures in the North begin? Where was Hull posted? What orders were sent to him? What were his movements? What were Brock's movements? What was the result?

358. What was the first attempt to invade Canada from New York? How was it managed? What was its result? What other attempt was talked of? What was its result? What new attempt was made by Dearborn? What was its result?

the rest could not be persuaded to leave Lewiston. The men who had crossed, 1,000 in number, were killed or captured. Another attempt was talked of, but the men were untrained and disobedient; the officers quarrelled with one another; and this attempt was given up. The commander-in-chief, General Dearborn, then collected the army at Plattsburgh, to attack Montreal. The principal event of this campaign was a sharp fight between two parts of the army, which mistook one another for the enemy, and nothing was done.

359. In the West, Harrison (§ 513) was made commander-in-chief, and he exerted himself to the utmost to drive the British



SEAT OF WAR IN THE NORTH.

out of Detroit. His troops were Kentucky and Ohio volunteers, and they succeeded excellently in scattered fighting against the Indian villages; but they had not yet learned military obedience, and so when they were formed into an army failed to accomplish anything during the year 1812.

360. The River Raisin.—As soon as the swamps and lakes of the Northwest were frozen over, in the early winter of 1813, Harrison renewed his efforts to drive the British out of Detroit. His

359. What is said of Harrison? What were his troops? In what respect were they successful? In what did they fail?

360. When did Harrison renew operations? Where was his advanced force attacked? What was the result?

advanced force, under General Winchester, reached the Raisin River, in southern Michigan, and was there attacked by the British General Proctor. Winchester surrendered as Hull had done; and Proctor cruelly allowed his Indians to butcher all the wounded prisoners.

Most of the men massacred at the Raisin were Kentuckians, and from that time the Kentucky troops went into battle calling to one another, "Remember the river Raisin."

361. Forts Meigs and Stephenson.—Harrison was now forced back, and took refuge in Fort Meigs, near the present town of Defiance. Here he was besieged by Proctor, in the spring of 1813. Twelve hundred Kentuckians relieved Harrison, though many of them were killed or captured in the effort; and Proctor retreated. Later in the year he again attacked Fort Meigs without success, and then turned to Fort Stephenson, near the present town of Sandusky. It was defended by a young officer named Croghan. He had but one cannon and a few men; but he used both so vigorously that Proctor was beaten off.

362. Battle of the Thames.—In September, 1813, Perry's capture of the British squadron (§ 382) gave the Americans command of Lake Erie. Harrison at once put his forces on Perry's vessels, and crossed directly from Ohio into Canada. He overtook the retreating British army, under Proctor, at the Thames River, and forced them into battle. After a sharp conflict, the British were completely defeated, and most of them were captured. The great Indian leader, Tecumseh, was killed. This battle ended the war in the Northwest. Detroit and Michigan again fell into the hands of the Americans, and detachments were sent out which recaptured and held Peoria and other outlying forts.

363. In New York, early in 1813, Dearborn crossed the lake from Sackett's Harbor to Toronto (then called York), captured it, and burned the British supplies. He then returned to the American side, near Lewiston, and there crossed again into Canada. His operations were badly managed; his troops were beaten in two small battles; and he returned to New York and resigned.

361. Where did Harrison take refuge? How was he besieged? How was he relieved? What further attack was made on Fort Meigs? On Fort Stephenson? How was it defended?

362. What event aided Harrison? How did he invade Canada? How did he force a battle? What was its result? What were its consequences?

363. What was the first movement in New York in 1813? The second? How did it result?

During this invasion of Canada, the British attacked Sackett's Harbor, but were beaten off by General Jacob Brown, one of the new generals who were to achieve success the next year.

364. Chrysler's Farm.—Late in 1813, General Wilkinson, Dearborn's successor, took the American forces at Plattsburgh and Sackett's Harbor, and moved down the St. Lawrence River toward Montreal. One battle was fought, at Chrysler's Farm, on the Canada side, nearly opposite Ogdensburgh; but neither side could claim a victory. The expedition was then given up. The men were not to blame for these failures: the officers were as inefficient as ever, and quarrelled continually.

During this invasion of Canada, the American forces near Lewiston were attacked. They retreated disgracefully, again by the fault of the commanding officer, and left the whole of that part of the frontier open to the British, who burned and destroyed everywhere, in revenge for the attacks upon Canada.

365. Reorganization.—At the close of the year 1813, the American Government had learned something from the disasters on the northern frontier. As fast as possible, the political officers were weeded out, and the officers who had shown fighting qualities were promoted to their places. The chief command was given to General Jacob Brown, an officer who, without military education, had shown remarkable military abilities. Next to him were Scott, a young man of 27 (§ 562), and Ripley. The winter of 1813-14 was passed in training the men; but, even to do this much, it was necessary that Scott should translate a text-book of tactics from the French, for the American army had not yet had even a system of drill. The effects of the reorganization were evident in the following year. The men had confidence in themselves, in their training, and in their leaders; disasters ceased; and successes took their place (§ 392).

SUPPLEMENTARY QUESTIONS.

Locations.—Locate Detroit, Mich.; Lewiston, N. Y.; the Niagara River; Buffalo, N. Y.; Plattsburgh, N. Y.; Montreal; the Raisin River; Defiance, O.; Sandusky, O.; the Thames River, Can.; Peoria, Ill. (general map); Sackett's Harbor, N. Y.; Toronto, Can.; Ogdensburgh, N. Y.

REVIEW.—Give the year of Hull's surrender. Of the battle of the Thames. Of the battle of Chrysler's Farm.

364. What is said of Wilkinson's invasion of Canada? Of the battle of Chrysler's Farm? Of the result of the expedition? Who was to blame?

365. Why was reorganization begun? How was it accomplished? Who took the chief command? Who were next to him? How was the winter passed? What was necessary first? What were the results of the reorganization?

(4) SUCCESSES ON THE OCEAN.

366. The American Navy had not been expected to do much in the war, and it had even been proposed to forbid its leaving port, for fear it should be captured at once by the terrible British vessels. But the British officers and men had become so accustomed to victory over all other nations that they were now quite careless in training and discipline; while the little American navy was in a state of perfect training, and eager to show what it could do. The consequence was a succession of brilliant victories of American over British vessels, which threw the American people into a fever of rejoicing, and startled the rest of the world. It thoroughly alarmed Great Britain. Hitherto her naval officers had been dismissed from her service if they ran away from a vessel only a little superior in force. Now they received strict orders not to fight an American vessel unless on entirely equal terms.

367. The First Cruise took place immediately after the declaration of war. The larger part of the navy left New York and sailed through the northern Atlantic Ocean. Nothing was accomplished, except that one of the vessels, the *Essex*, Captain Porter, captured the British sloop-of-war *Alert*, after a short fight. Another vessel, the *Constitution*, Captain Hull, while sailing to New York to join in the cruise, fell in with a British fleet, and was hotly chased. She escaped into Boston after a chase of three days, in which Hull showed admirable skill and seamanship.

The *Constitution* ("Old Ironsides") was considered a lucky ship by sailors of the time. She was lucky, however, chiefly in having excellent officers, who chose good crews and handled her well.

368. Constitution and Guerriere.—In August, the *Constitution* put to sea from Boston. While cruising in the Gulf of St. Lawrence, she fell in with the *Guerriere*, one of the vessels which had lately chased her. The two frigates were supposed to be about

366. What is said of the American feeling toward the navy before the war? What was the real difference between the British and American navies? What was the consequence? What was the effect in Great Britain? How were the orders to British naval officers changed?

367. What was the first cruise of the American navy? What did it accomplish? What is said of the chase of the *Constitution*?

368. What was the next cruise of the *Constitution*? Where did she meet the *Guerriere*? How did the battle result?

equally matched; but in half an hour the *Guerriere* was a helpless, mastless wreck, with 80 of her crew killed and wounded. The *Constitution* lost but 14 men, and was in perfect condition when the *Guerriere* surrendered. The British ship was so badly damaged that she was burned at once.

369. Remaining Events of 1812.—In October, the sloop-of-war *Wasp*, Captain Jacob Jones, captured the British brig *Frolic*, off Cape Hatteras. The two vessels were exactly equal in force, and the fighting on both sides was of the most desperate kind. When the *Wasp's* crew finally boarded the *Frolic*, they found on deck only the man at the wheel, and three wounded officers. The two vessels were so badly damaged that they were both captured by a far stronger British vessel, the *Poictiers*, which overtook them the same day. In the same month, the *United States*, Captain Decatur (§ 340), met the British frigate *Macedonian*, off the island of Madeira, on the African coast, and captured her after a battle of an hour and a half. The *Macedonian* was terribly shattered, but Decatur succeeded in bringing her into New London. Late in December, the *Constitution*, now commanded by Captain William Bainbridge, captured the *Java*, a British frigate of nearly equal force, off the eastern coast of Brazil. Again the British vessel was so badly damaged that it was necessary to destroy her.

370. The Naval Victories of 1812 aroused an intense excitement in the United States. For twenty years Great Britain had been at war with almost every nation of Europe, and out of hundreds of battles between single ships of equal force she had lost but five vessels. It had come to be a common saying that, when France launched a vessel, she was only adding one to the British navy. In six months, the little American navy had captured five vessels, and had not lost a battle. Votes of thanks, swords, gold medals, and silver plate were given to the successful officers; privateers (§ 241) put to sea from every important harbor; and Congress hurried to vote more money for the navy. There was not much money in the treasury, however, and the ships were not built until after the war.

369. What is said of the capture of the *Frolic*? Of the battle? What became of the two vessels? What is said of the capture of the *Macedonian*? Of the capture of the *Java*?

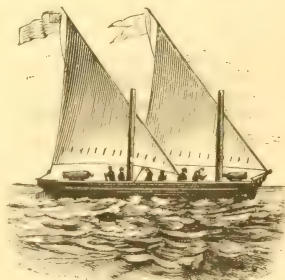
370. What was the feeling in the United States? What is said of British success in former wars? Of American success in this war? What were its results?

In most of these battles there was a slight superiority on the side of the American vessel. But the difference was not such as British officers had been used to care about; and the remarkable loss of life on the British vessels showed that the accuracy of the American gunnery was the main reason for the victories (§ 792).

371. Victories of 1813.—The year 1813 opened with another victory. In February, the *Hornet*, Captain Lawrence, captured the British brig *Peacock*, off the coast of British Guiana, in South America. The *Peacock* was so badly cut up that she sank immediately after the surrender, carrying down some of the men of both vessels. In September, the American brig *Enterprise*, Lieutenant Burrows, captured the British brig *Boxer*, off Portland, Maine. Both commanders were killed.

372. The Blockade.—Great Britain had become so anxious about the naval war that a large part of her fleets was transferred to the American coast, with strict orders that two or three ships should always sail in company, and that no single battle should be risked unless the force on both sides should be exactly equal. Whenever an American war-vessel entered a harbor, a number of British ships at once sailed thither and watched the entrance closely. It was not possible for the larger American vessels to get to sea except by accident, and most of the fighting, during the rest of the war, was done by the smaller vessels.

All along the coast, there were almost daily battles between the little American "gunboats" (§ 352), and the boats of the British frigates, in which the most desperate courage was shown on both sides.



AMERICAN GUNBOAT.

373. Defeats of 1813.—The first American defeat came in June. Captain Lawrence, of the *Hornet*, had been promoted to the command of a larger ship, the *Chesapeake*. In this ship he sailed out from Boston harbor and engaged the British frigate *Shannon*, Captain Broke. The vessels were of equal force.

371. What is said of the capture of the *Peacock*? Of the capture of the *Boxer*?

372. What is said of the blockade? How were the American vessels shut up in harbor? How did this affect the naval warfare?

373. Describe the capture of the *Chesapeake*. What was the feeling in England as to the victory? Describe the capture of the *Argus*.

But this time the advantage of discipline was on the side of the British; Broke had carefully trained his men on the Ameri-



JAMES LAWRENCE.

can system, while Lawrence had not had time to do so. Other things being equal, discipline decided the battle, and the *Chesapeake* surrendered. Lawrence was mortally wounded, and died during the battle; his last words were, "Don't give up the ship." The victory excited as extravagant rejoicings in England as those of the previous year had done in the United States. In August, they were increased by the capture of the American brig *Argus*, Captain Allen. She had been cruising

around Great Britain, capturing many merchantmen, and severely injuring British trade. The British brig *Pelican* was sent to search for her, and the two vessels met in the British Channel. The *Pelican* was slightly superior in force, but still more superior in discipline, and, after a battle of an hour, the *Argus* surrendered.

It was believed at the time that most of the crew of the *Argus* were drunk, having captured a merchantman laden with wine shortly before the battle.

374. Cruise of the *Essex*.—In the spring of 1813, Captain Porter, in the *Essex*, rounded Cape Horn, and sailed into the Pacific Ocean, where no American frigate had ever been. Here he gave protection to American vessels, captured British whalers, and broke up the British whaling trade in the Pacific. He armed several of his prizes, so that he had at one time quite a fleet, and even paid his men out of the money which he captured. As all the countries around him were friendly to Great Britain, he seized the Marquesas Islands when he wished to refit his fleet, and then continued his cruise. Early the next year, the *Essex* entered the neutral harbor of Valparaiso; and here she was blockaded by two British

374. What cruise was undertaken by the *Essex*? What was her success? How was she captured?

vessels, the *Phœbe* and the *Cherub*, which had been sent to search for her. In March, while she was in a crippled condition from an accident, the two British vessels attacked her. They pelted her with shot from a distance, while she was unable to close with them; and, after losing more than half her men, the *Essex* surrendered. This was the most savage and desperate struggle of the war.

In this case, the *Phœbe* alone was a heavier vessel than the *Essex*.

375. Events of 1814.—In addition to the capture of the *Essex*, there were three hard-fought battles in 1814, in all of which the American vessels were successful. In April, the *Peacock*, the name given to a new American war-vessel, took the *Epervier*, off the east coast of Florida. During the summer, the *Wasp*, Captain Blakely, took the British brigs *Reindeer* and *Avon* in the British Channel. The *Wasp* was probably lost soon afterward in a storm, for she was never heard of after the following month. For some time after her loss, there was not an American war-vessel on the ocean.

376. Events of 1815.—In January, 1815, the United States frigate *President*, one of the larger American vessels, was captured by a British fleet off Long Island, while trying to get to sea from New York. In February, the *Constitution* (§ 368), Captain Stewart, after a very skilfully fought battle by moonlight, captured two British vessels, the *Cyane* and the *Levant*, off Lisbon. In March, the *Hornet* captured the British brig *Penguin*, of equal force, near the Cape of Good Hope; and, soon afterward, the *Peacock* (§ 375) captured the weaker British brig *Nautilus*, near the island of Sumatra, in the Indian Ocean. This was the last capture of the war. Peace had already been made (§ 403), and the *Nautilus* was restored to the British.

There had been fifteen ship-duels during the war, of which the Americans lost but three, those of the *Chesapeake* (§ 373), the *Argus* (§ 373), and the *Essex* (§ 374). Such success gave the little American navy a world-wide reputation; and other nations began, for the first time, to respect the United States as a naval power.

377. Privateers were very active throughout the war. Many of them were as large and powerful as sloops-of-war, and more

375. What three naval battles were fought in 1814? What is said of the *Wasp*?

376. Describe the capture of the *President*. Of the *Cyane* and the *Levant*. Of the *Penguin*. Of the *Nautilus*. What became of the *Nautilus*?

377. What is said of the privateers? Of their force? Of their fighting qualities? Of the cruise of the *Chasseur*? Of her captures? Of her captain's proclamation? Of Captain Reid's night-battle? Of the exploits of the privateers?

troublesome to the enemy, for they were built for speed. Sometimes they sailed in fleets of five or more; and, even when alone, they did not hesitate to fight British war-vessels of equal force, and were usually successful. One of the most famous was the *Chasseur*, Captain Boyle, which for a long time in 1813 kept the British Channel clear of merchantmen, while she was too fast and too well managed to be caught by heavy war-vessels. She captured 80 vessels, 50 of which were of equal or superior force to her own; and her captain issued a burlesque proclamation, announcing that he had blockaded the British Islands, and forbidding all other nations to trade with them. In the following year, 1814, the *General Armstrong*, Captain Reid, while lying in a neutral harbor of the Azores Islands, was attacked by a fleet of boats from three British frigates, and fought them for a whole night before the ship was abandoned. A most interesting volume has been written on the exploits of the American privateers, many of which read like a sea-novel.

See Coggeshall's *History of American Privateers*, and Roosevelt's *Naval War of 1812*.

378. Naval Losses.—During the three years of the war, each nation lost about the same number of vessels, 1700, including merchantmen, privateers, and war-vessels; but in value the British losses were somewhat heavier. No other nation had succeeded in inflicting equal losses on Great Britain. For example, France, the principal enemy of Great Britain, had received about fifty times as much naval loss from the British as she had been able to inflict upon them.

SUPPLEMENTARY QUESTIONS.

Locations.—(School-map locations in *italics*.)—Locate the Gulf of St. Lawrence; Cape Hatteras; *Madeira Island*; *Brazil*; *British Guiana*; *Cape Horn*; *the Marquesas Islands*; *the British Channel*; Portland, Me.; *Valparaiso*, *Chili*; Florida; Long Island; *Lisbon, Portugal*; *Cape of Good Hope*; *Sumatra, E. I.*; *the Azores Islands*.

REVIEW.—Give the names of the five British war-vessels captured in 1812. The names of the two American war-vessels captured in 1813. The year of the capture of the *Essex*. The last naval battle of the war.

(5) SUCCESSES ON THE LAKES: 1813–14.

379. The Northern Lakes, Champlain, Ontario, and Erie, were of importance in the war. Lake Champlain was a part of the main

378. What is said of the naval losses on both sides? Of their value? How did they compare with the losses inflicted on Great Britain by other nations?

379. Which were the important lakes? Why? What is said of the northwestern lakes?

road to Quebec and Montreal (§ 200); and Lakes Ontario and Erie were of great importance to the armies on their shores. The country around the lakes to the northwest of Lake Erie was unsettled, and of comparatively little importance.

380. The Lake Navies were at first very small. The Americans had but one small vessel on Lake Ontario. The British had half a dozen vessels on each of the two larger lakes, but none of them were of any great force. Both sides at once began purchasing and arming merchant-vessels; but these were soon found to be almost useless for fighting purposes. The real contest was in building new war-vessels, and in this the Americans were successful, in spite of their disadvantages. Their side of the lakes was far more thinly settled than the Canadian side; and they had to bring nails, ropes, guns, men, and provisions—everything except timber—from the Atlantic coast, over terribly bad roads. Nevertheless they won complete victories on Lakes Erie and Champlain, and held their own on Lake Ontario.

381. Lake Ontario.—The operations on Lake Ontario, though very interesting to sailors, are of little interest in a history of the war. Commodore Chauncey commanded the American fleet, and Sir James Yeo the British; and neither was willing to risk a general battle if the other had the least superiority. They took turns in controlling the lake. If either was superior in force, the other remained in port until he had built a new and stronger vessel. Then he took possession of the lake, and the other retired to a safe harbor and began building. Most of the credit was gained by the ship-builders on both sides, particularly by Henry Eckford, the American builder. When the war began, 16-gun vessels were the strongest on either side; when it ended, both sides were busily building 112-gun ships, for crews of 1,000 men each.

The Ontario navies were used for transporting armies from one part of the lake shore to another. There were also many minor boat-fights; and on one occasion a general battle nearly took place.

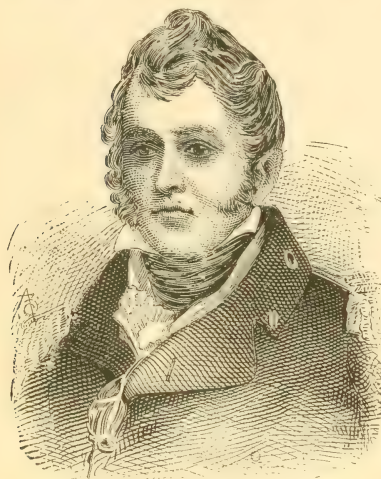
382. Lake Erie.—In the winter of 1812–13, while Proctor was

380. What is said of the lake navies? How were they increased at first? What was the real contest? What were the American disadvantages? What was the American success?

381. What is said of operations on Lake Ontario? Of the commanders? Describe their operations. Who gained most credit? How did the force of the vessels increase?

382. When did Perry go to Lake Erie? What did he do? What was the size of his vessels? When was the battle fought? What part did the *Lawrence* take in it? What part did the *Niagara* take? What were the results of the battle?

superior to the Americans on land (§ 361), Captain Oliver H. Perry was sent to Lake Erie to form a navy. He worked with the greatest energy, and soon had five new vessels built at Erie. Two of his fleet, the *Lawrence* and the *Niagara*, were fairly large vessels; all the rest were small. Perry found the British fleet, under



OLIVER H. PERRY.

Captain Barclay, off Sandusky, and gave battle, September 10, 1813. His own ship, the *Lawrence*, at first bore the whole fire of the British fleet, and was completely disabled. Her sides were beaten in, and only fourteen of her whole crew were fit for duty. Perry then leaped into a row-boat, rowed to the *Niagara*, and in her attacked the exhausted British fleet. The conflict was short: the *Niagara* burst through the British line, firing right and left as she went, and in fifteen minutes the whole British fleet surrendered. The Americans then controlled the

lake; the fleet carried the army over to Canada; and the battle of the Thames followed, and ended the war in the West (§ 362).

Perry's fleet, two large and seven small vessels, carried 54 guns and 416 men, and lost 123 men. Barclay's fleet, two large and four small vessels, carried 63 guns and 440 men, and lost 135 men. Perry's official dispatch, announcing the victory, read: "We have met the enemy and they are ours; two ships, two brigs, one schooner, and one sloop."

383. Lake Champlain.—During the summer of 1814, while there was peace for the time in Europe, Great Britain sent fresh troops to Canada, for the purpose of invading northern New York, as Burgoyne had done (§ 219). Lake Champlain was a part of their route; and on the lake there was an American fleet under Commodore Macdonough. The British fleet was commanded by

383. Why were fresh British troops sent to Canada? What was the state of affairs on Lake Champlain? When and where did the battle take place? What was its result? How did it affect the British expedition?

Commodore Downie. The naval battle, which was to decide the fate of the expedition, took place (September 11, 1814) in the harbor of Plattsburgh. The British fleet attacked at day-break; and, after a desperate battle of over two hours, their four larger vessels surrendered and the others fled. The British army at once retreated, and the expedition was given up.

Macdonough's fleet of four war-vessels and ten gunboats carried 86 guns and 882 men, and lost about 200 men. Downie's fleet of four war-vessels and twelve gunboats carried 92 guns and 937 men, and lost about 300 men. Macdonough's dispatch, announcing the victory, read:

"The Almighty has been pleased to grant us a signal victory on Lake Champlain, in the capture of one frigate, one brig, and two sloops-of-war of the enemy."



THOMAS MACDONOUGH.

SUPPLEMENTARY QUESTIONS.

Locations.—Locate Lake Champlain; Lake Ontario; Lake Erie; Quebec; Montreal; Erie, Pa.; Sandusky, O.; Plattsburgh N. Y.

REVIEW.—Give the date of Perry's victory. Of Macdonough's victory.

(6) DISASTERS ON THE ATLANTIC COAST.

384. The Blockade of the Atlantic coast was enforced by British vessels from the beginning of the year 1813. At first they were inclined to spare the coast of New England, which they supposed to be friendly to Great Britain, but this policy was soon abandoned, and the whole coast was treated alike. Groups of war-vessels were stationed before each of the principal seaports, and others were continually in motion along the coast, from Halifax on the north to the West Indies. Early in 1813, they took possession of the mouth of Chesapeake Bay as a naval station, and

384. What is said of the blockade? Of the New England coast? How was the blockade managed? What was done at Chesapeake Bay?

the American Government ordered all the lights to be put out in the neighboring light-houses.

385. The Atlantic Coast was thus kept in a state of almost constant alarm, for the British vessels were continually landing men at exposed points to burn, plunder, and destroy. Private property was seized in great quantities everywhere, and the war seemed to be mainly one of general robbery by the British navy. In 1813, the defenceless towns of Lewes, Havre de Grace, and Hampton (near Fortress Monroe) were bombarded, and Stonington, Conn., in 1814; and a number of smaller towns were burned or plundered. Attacks on New York and other larger cities were prevented only by fear of torpedoes, by means of which the Americans had nearly blown up one or two British ships which ventured too near New York.

Fulton (§ 335) had also built at New York a steam floating battery, the first of its kind, and the reports in regard to it helped to keep the British at a safe distance.

386. Maine, as far as the Penobscot River, was seized by the British in 1814, and was held until the end of the war. This seizure excited great alarm in the rest of New England, for it was believed that the enemy intended to advance along the coast in the following year.

387. Washington.—In August, 1814, a new British fleet brought over an army of 5,000 men to the Chesapeake. They landed in Maryland, where the Patuxent River empties into the bay, and set out on a march of forty miles northwest to Washington. The American Government had utterly neglected to prepare for the defence of the capital, and it was now too late to do so. A feeble attempt to resist was made at Bladensburgh, a village near the capital, but it was overpowered at once. The British then entered Washington and disgraced themselves by burning the Capitol and the other public buildings.

This act of the British has been excused by the burning of a public building in York, Canada, after its capture by the Americans (§ 363). But that act was not perpetrated by government order, as was the destruction of Washington.

385. What was the effect of the blockade on the Atlantic coast? How was private property treated? How were defenceless towns treated? Why were not the larger places attacked?

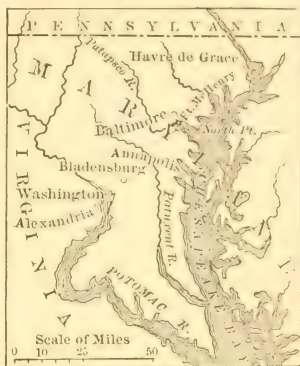
386. What was the state of affairs in Maine? What was the effect on the rest of New England?

387. What new army arrived in 1814? How did it attack Washington? What resistance was made? What was done by the British at Washington?

388. Baltimore.—After destroying Washington, the British made a hasty retreat across the country, and embarked again on their fleet. They then sailed up the bay to attack Baltimore. But that city made a stout and successful resistance. The ships were repulsed in an attack on Fort Mellenry, and the army withdrew, after an unsuccessful battle at North Point, below the city, without accomplishing anything. Its commander, General Ross, was killed.

During the night-attack on Fort McHenry, the national song, the "Star-Spangled Banner," was written by Francis S. Key, who had visited the British fleet, to obtain the release of some prisoners, and had been detained there.

389. Admiral Cockburn, the British naval commander, then changed his headquarters to Cumberland Island, on the Georgia coast. From this point, until peace was made, he carried on a warfare of robbery, and then he retired from American soil with his plunder. Before this took place, a large part of his land force took part in the expedition to New Orleans and shared in its complete defeat (§ 402).



WASHINGTON AND VICINITY.

SUPPLEMENTARY QUESTION.

Locations.—Locate Halifax, N. S.; the Bahama Islands; Chesapeake Bay; Lewes, Del. (§ 121); Havre de Grace, Md. (§ 88); Fortress Monroe, Va.; New York City; the Penobscot River. Me. (§ 58); Washington, D. C.; Baltimore, Md.; Cumberland Island, Ga. (§ 100).

REVIEW.—Give the year of the attacks on Washington and Baltimore.

(7) DISSATISFACTION AT HOME.

390. The New England States had never been satisfied with the war (§ 355); and their dissatisfaction was increased by its

388. In what direction did the British move next? What was the result of the attack on Baltimore? Who was killed?

389. What change was made in the British headquarters? How was the war carried on? How was a part of the force employed?

390. What was the feeling in New England? What is said of the management of the war? How did this affect the New England States? What step did they finally take?

early failures. The American Government's management had not been very successful. At first, its commanders were not wisely selected. Its treasury was badly managed, so that it had little money and could with difficulty borrow, even at high interest. It seemed to be unable to check the British attacks on the coast; and the New England States came to believe that it did not care to afford them any protection. Finally, late in 1814, they sent delegates to meet at Hartford, in Connecticut, and consider the state of affairs.

391. The Hartford Convention alarmed the government and the country generally. Its meetings were held in secret, and it was supposed at the time to be plotting the breaking up of the Union, and the formation of a separate New England government. It made a public report, recommending, among other things, that the New England States should be allowed to defend themselves against the British without waiting for the Federal Government. Peace was made so soon afterward that no further steps were taken.

The Hartford Convention was composed of Federalists, and the general anger against the Convention helped very much to put an end to the Federal party soon after the close of the war (§ 413).

(8) SUCCESSES IN THE NORTH: 1814.

392. The Reorganization of the American army in western New York was successfully managed during the winter of 1813-14 (§ 365). The excellent effects of the work were seen in July, 1814, when the country was surprised and delighted by several victories won by the same army which had before been so unsuccessful. These victories came too late to have much effect on the war; but they showed that the former defeats were due to the generals, not to the men. They were as follows:

393. Chippewa.—Early in July, the army, under command of Brown, Scott, and Ripley, crossed the Niagara River from Buffalo, and captured Fort Erie. Turning to the north, toward Lake Ontario, it met the enemy (July 5), strongly intrenched behind a little

391. What was the general feeling in regard to the Hartford Convention? Why did it excite alarm? What did it recommend? Was its recommendation effective?

392. What is said of reorganization in New York? What were its effects? How were these victories useful?

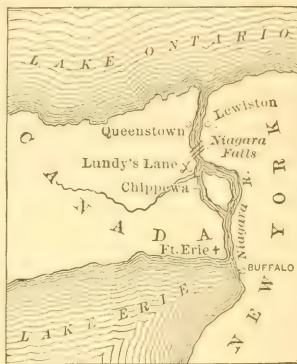
393. How did the army enter Canada? How did it meet the enemy? What was the result of the battle?

stream called the Chippewa. The American troops were now well trained and well handled, and drove the British out of their intrenchments and up to the shore of Lake Ontario.

394. Lundy's Lane.—The British now received reinforcements, and turned back to meet the pursuing Americans. The two armies met (July 25) at a place called Lundy's Lane, or Bridgewater, near Niagara Falls. The battle, which began at sunset and lasted until midnight, was one of the most stubbornly contested of the war. The British lost their commander, who was wounded and captured, and were finally driven some distance from the field. But the Americans had also lost heavily; Brown and Scott were wounded; and Ripley the next morning ordered his army to retreat to Fort Erie.

During the battle, Colonel James Miller was asked if he could capture the enemy's artillery. He modestly answered, "I'll try, sir;" and then headed his regiment in one of the most brilliant and successful charges of the war.

395. Fort Erie was besieged in September by a superior force of the enemy; but Brown, who had recovered, reassumed command of the army, and drove his besiegers back again beyond the Chippewa. Before the winter set in, the Americans retired to their own side of the Niagara River, and the treaty of peace soon put a stop to further hostilities.



Scale of Miles
0 5 10 15 20 25
NIAGARA FRONTIER.

SUPPLEMENTARY QUESTIONS.

Locations—Locate the Niagara River; Buffalo, N. Y.; Fort Erie, Can.; Lake Ontario; Niagara Falls.

REVIEW.—Give the year of the battles of Chippewa and Lundy's Lane.

394. How did the two armies meet the second time? What is said of the battle? Of the British loss? Of the American loss?

395. How was Fort Erie besieged? How was the siege raised? What further operations took place?

(9) SUCCESSES IN THE SOUTHWEST: 1813-15.

396. The Southwest Territory, now the States of Alabama and Mississippi, was then almost entirely an Indian country. Its only important white settlements were Natchez and Mobile. Mobile



SEAT OF WAR IN THE SOUTHWEST.

was claimed by Spain as a part of her territory of Florida; but the Americans had lately taken possession of it by force. North of this Territory was the State of Tennessee, and southwest of it was New Orleans, the principal city of Louisiana. The Creeks were the principal Indian tribe of the Southwest, and from the outbreak of the war they took sides against the United States..

397. Fort Mims.—Early in 1813, the Tennessee militia were called out to keep the Indians quiet; and, in order to watch the Indian country from the west side, they marched to Natchez under General Andrew Jackson (§ 448). But the government believed that the Indians intended to remain at peace, and the Tennessee troops were dismissed, to the great surprise and anger of Jackson. In August, 1813, a shocking event showed that the Creeks did not intend to remain at peace. About 500 men, women, and children had taken refuge in Fort Mims, near Mobile; and the Creeks surprised the fort, captured it, and massacred nearly all who were in it.

398. The Creek War.—The Tennessee troops were again called out, under command of Jackson. He marched into the Indian country, drove the Creeks from one stronghold to another, and finally broke their power in a great battle at Tohopeka, or Horse-shoe Bend, on the Tallapoosa River, in eastern Alabama. Eight hundred of the Creeks were killed, and the tribe gave up most of

396. What is said of the Southwest Territory? Of its white settlements? Of Mobile? What settlements bordered the Territory? What is said of the Creeks?

397. What is said of the expedition to Natchez? Of its result? Of the massacre of Fort Mims?

398. Who took command of the Tennessee troops? How did he manage the war? What was the effect on the Indians? On Jackson?

its territory. This series of victories made Jackson the leading general of the Southwest.

399. Peace in Europe had been attained by Great Britain in 1814. All the other leading nations of Europe united with her in compelling Napoleon to leave France and live on the island of Elba in the Mediterranean. She was thus left at liberty to direct all her energies toward the United States. A part of her spare troops went to Canada (§ 383); another part was sent to attack Washington (§ 387); but the main body was sent on a great expedition against New Orleans, with the design of retaining that city and Louisiana when peace should be made.

400. The Defence of the Southwest was entrusted to Jackson, who worked with extraordinary energy to make it secure. He raised volunteers in Tennessee, seized the Spanish town of Pensacola, which had given assistance to the British, and then hurried to fortify New Orleans before the arrival of the British. A few miles below the city, where there was only a narrow passage between an impassable swamp and the Mississippi River, he put up a line of intrenchments, and held his ground while the riflemen of Kentucky and Tennessee hurried down the river to his assistance.

401. The British Expedition, under Sir Edward Pakenham, entered Lake Borgne in December, captured the American gunboats, and landed below Jackson's works. The British numbered 12,000, and Jackson's army 6,000; but the British were trained and veteran troops, while the Americans were as undisciplined as at Bunker Hill. For a few weeks there were night-attacks and skirmishes, in which neither party had the advantage.

402. The Battle of New Orleans.—January 8, 1815, the whole British line moved forward, in a dense fog, to attack Jackson's works. Again, as at Bunker Hill (§ 197), there was a steady silence in the fortifications until the British were so near that the fire of the riflemen was murderous. Whole platoons of the attacking troops fell in their tracks, as if levelled by one discharge. Within twenty-five minutes the whole British line was in full

399. What events took place in Europe in 1814? What was Great Britain then at liberty to do? How did she divide her spare troops?

400. To whom was the defence of the Southwest entrusted? What did he do? How did he fortify New Orleans?

401. What is said of the landing of the British? Of the forces on both sides? What were the opening operations?

402. How was the British attack made? How was it received? What was the result? What was the loss on both sides? What was the end of the expedition?

retreat, having lost its commander and 2,500 men. The American loss was 8 killed and 13 wounded. A few days afterward, the British retired to their ships, and set sail for the West Indies. Peace had already been made, though neither army knew it (§ 403).

Few victories in history have been so complete; and this one enabled the United States to forget many of the early failures.

SUPPLEMENTARY QUESTIONS.

Locations.—Locate the States of Alabama and Mississippi; Natchez, Miss.; Mobile, Ala.; the State of Tennessee; New Orleans, La.; Tohopeka; Pensacola, Fla.; Lake Borgne.

REVIEW.—Give the date of the battle of New Orleans.

(10) PEACE.

403. Peace Negotiations had been going on almost all through the war. In 1813, Russia had offered to mediate between Great Britain and the United States; that is, to assist, as a friend of both parties, in arranging terms of peace. President Madison appointed five commissioners to arrange a treaty. They met the British commissioners at Ghent, a city of Belgium, and, after long negotiations, agreed upon a treaty of peace late in 1814 (December 24). This was ratified by the United States and put a stop to the war. Peace had thus been agreed upon before the battle of New Orleans was fought, but there was then no ocean telegraph to bring the news in time to avoid the battle.

404. The Treaty of Peace settled nothing as to the Orders in Council or the impressment of seamen, which had caused the war (§ 342). These matters were now of very little importance. Napoleon had been conquered; and the general peace in the world, and the damage done by the American navy during the war, made it very unlikely that any such difficulties would occur again. After the war, the growing power of the United States made these old questions of still less importance; and Great Britain never again attempted to enforce her Orders in Council, or her asserted rights of search and impressment.

In 1861, Great Britain nearly went to war with the United States because an American naval officer exercised the old right of search (§ 687). In this case, the United States Government maintained the

403. What is said of peace negotiations? Of the offer of Russia? What appointments were made by the President? How was the treaty agreed upon? What was its result?

404. Were the questions settled which had caused the war? Why not? Were they ever renewed by Great Britain?

principle of the war of 1812, and refused to support the action of the naval officer, or the right of search.

405. The News travelled slowly in 1815. Jackson's victory of January 8 was not known at Washington until February 4, when it made the people wild with joy. The news of the treaty of peace reached New York a week later, and was received with equal pleasure. It was welcome to every one, for the affairs of the country were in very bad condition. There was little commerce, or business of any kind; and poverty and distress were general. Farmers had not been able to sell their crops; the price of all things had risen; and there was little money in the country with which to buy. All classes hoped and believed that prosperity would return with peace.

(11) INTERNAL AFFAIRS.

406. Louisiana was admitted as a State in 1812 (see general map).



SEAL OF LOUISIANA.

carved out of it (§ 423).

It was a part of the great territory known as Louisiana, transferred by France to Spain in 1763 (§ 158), by Spain to France in 1800, and by France to the United States in 1803 (§ 332). The principal city of the new State was New Orleans. Sugar-planting became the chief source of wealth in the new State, whose population has grown from 76,556 in 1810 to 939,946 in 1880. New Orleans has come to be one of the leading American cities, with a population of 216,090 in 1880. When the State of Louisiana was admitted, the rest of the Louisiana purchase was made a separate Territory, and other States were gradually

407. Indiana was admitted as a State in 1816.

This was the second of the five States formed out of the old Northwest Territory (§ 294). Agriculture has always been the leading industry of the State, and its population has increased from 24,520 in 1810 to 1,978,301 in 1880. Its principal city and capital is now Indianapolis, one of the great cities of the Union, with a population of 75,056 in 1880.



SEAL OF INDIANA.

408. Settlements were now increasing throughout the West. The defeat of the Creeks (§ 398) had opened up the Southwest to settlement, and the future States

405. What is said of news in 1815? Of the news of Jackson's victory? Of the news of peace? Why was peace welcome? What was the condition of the country? What was expected from the peace?

406. What State was admitted in 1812? **407.** What State was admitted in 1816?

408. What is said of settlements? In the Southwest? In the Northwest? What was the influence of the invention of the steamboat? Of the war of 1812?

of Alabama and Mississippi were already marked out. In the Northwest, two States, Ohio and Indiana, had been formed, and the two future States of Illinois and Michigan were marked out in the form of Territories. The settlement of the whole West was being greatly hastened by the invention of the steamboat, which had now begun to be common on Western rivers. The war itself had increased the settlement of western New York, and Buffalo and Rochester soon became important places.

When the war broke out, steamboats were running on the Hudson, Raritan, Delaware, Ohio, and St. Lawrence rivers, and on Lake Champlain; and a steam ferryboat had begun to take the place of the clumsy old scows which ran between New York and Brooklyn. In 1816, a steamboat ascended the Mississippi and Ohio to Louisville.

409. Commerce and Business revived as soon as the war ended. Farmers found a market for their crops; money became plenty; every interest prospered except manufactures. Foreign manufactured goods had been shut out of the country during the war; and many Americans had spent much money in building factories. When peace was made, English factories sent their goods to the United States, and sold them cheaper than the American factories could afford to. The American owners were thus compelled either to close their factories, or to sell their goods at a loss. Their difficulties had a great influence on public affairs for many years to come, for the American manufacturers were urgent that the tariff of duties on imports should be made high enough to shut out the foreign goods (§ 432).

410. The National Debt of the United States was now about \$127,000,000, of which about \$80,000,000 was the cost of the war. But the government was no longer pressed for money. From 1814 to 1815, exports rose from \$7,000,000 to \$53,000,000; imports, from \$13,000,000 to \$113,000,000; and duties paid to the government, from \$4,000,000 to \$38,000,000.

411. The National Bank, which had been chartered in 1791 (§ 301), came to an end in 1811. In 1816, Congress chartered a new National Bank, on the same plan, for twenty years. The public money was to be deposited in it, or in its branches, unless the

409. What is said of commerce and business? Of the prosperity of the country? How had American manufactures increased? What happened when peace was made? What is said of the difficulties of American manufacturers?

410. What was the national debt? The cost of the war? How did exports increase? Imports? Duties paid to the government?

411. What is said of the old National Bank? Of the new one? How was the public money to be deposited?

Secretary of the Treasury should at any time order it to be deposited elsewhere (§ 477).

412. The Barbary States (§ 339), during the war, had not only allowed the British to capture American vessels in their harbors, but had even made some captures themselves. In 1815, Decatur, with a fleet, was sent to demand satisfaction from Algiers. Its frightened ruler came on board Decatur's ship and signed a treaty by which he promised to pay for the American ships illegally captured, to make no more captures, and to ask no more money for keeping the peace. Decatur's fleet then set sail for Tripoli and Tunis, and forced them to agree to the same terms. There has been no further trouble with the Barbary pirates.

413. The Federal Party really came to an end during this period. It had opposed the war so strongly, particularly in New England, that young men disliked it and refused to vote with it. There was but one party left, the Republican party, or, as it was now often called, the Democratic party (§ 305).

414. The Presidential Election in 1816 resulted in the success of the Republicans with very little opposition. Monroe (§ 416) was elected President, and Daniel D. Tompkins, the Democratic war-governor of New York, Vice-President.

The Federalist candidates were Rufus King, of New York, for President, and various others for Vice-President. They received 34 out of 221 electoral votes.

SUPPLEMENTARY QUESTIONS.

Locations.—(School-map locations in *italics*)—Locate *Ghent, Belgium*. Bound Louisiana. Locate New Orleans. Bound Indiana. Locate Indianapolis, Ind.; Buffalo, N. Y.; Rochester, N. Y.; *the Barbary States*.

REVIEW.—Give the date of the treaty of peace. The year of the admission of Louisiana. Of Indiana. Of the charter of the second National Bank.

415. The Leading Events of Madison's administrations were as follows:

1809-13: Madison's First Term... § 348

1810: End of the Non-Intercourse Law... 349

412. What had the Barbary States done? Who was sent to Algiers? What was done by its ruler? By Tripoli and Tunis? What was the result?

413. What is said of the Federal party? How was it destroyed? What party was left?

414. How did the Presidential election in 1816 result? Who were elected?

415. Give the years of Madison's first term. The leading events of 1810. Of 1811. Of 1812 on land. Of 1812 on the ocean. The early events of 1813. The years of Madison's second term. The events of 1813 on land. The events of 1813 on the water. The events of 1814 on land. The events of 1814 on the water. The date of the treaty of peace. The leading events of 1815. Of 1816.

1811:	The <i>President</i> and <i>Little Belt</i>	§ 349
	Battle of Tippecanoe (November 7).....	350
1812:	Admission of Louisiana.....	406
	War declared against Great Britain (June 18)...	351
	The <i>Essex</i> takes the <i>Alert</i> (August 13).....	367
	Hull's surrender (August 16).....	357
	The <i>Constitution</i> takes the <i>Guerriere</i> (Aug. 19)..	368
	Battle of Queenstown Heights (October 13)....	358
	The <i>Wasp</i> takes the <i>Frolic</i> (October 18).....	369
	The <i>United States</i> takes the <i>Macedonian</i> (Oct. 25).	369
	The <i>Constitution</i> takes the <i>Java</i> (December 29)..	369
1813:	Massacre at the Raisin River (January 22).....	360
	The <i>Hornet</i> takes the <i>Peacock</i> (February 24)....	371
	Cruise of the <i>Essex</i> in the Pacific.....	374
1813-17:	Madison's Second Term.....	356
1813:	Capture of York (April 27).....	363
	Siege of Fort Meigs (May 1).....	361
	The <i>Chesapeake</i> taken by the <i>Shannon</i> (June 1)..	373
	Siege of Fort Stephenson (August 2).....	361
	The <i>Argus</i> taken by the <i>Pelican</i> (August 14). ..	373
	Massacre at Fort Mims (August 30).....	397
	The <i>Enterprise</i> takes the <i>Boxer</i> (September 5). ..	371
	Perry's victory on Lake Erie (September 10)....	382
	Battle of the Thames (October 5).....	362
1814:	Battle of Tohopeka, Ala. (March 27).....	398
	The <i>Essex</i> taken by the <i>Phæbe</i> and the <i>Cherub</i> (March 28).....	374
	The <i>Peacock</i> takes the <i>Epervier</i> (April 29).....	375
	The <i>Wasp</i> takes the <i>Reindeer</i> (June 28).....	375
	Capture of Fort Erie (July 3).....	393
	Battle of Chippewa (July 5).....	393
	Battle of Lundy's Lane (July 25).....	394
	Burning of Washington City (August 24).....	387
	The <i>Wasp</i> takes the <i>Avon</i> (September 1).....	375
	Macdonough's victory on Lake Champlain (September 11).....	383
	Attack on Fort McHenry (September 13).....	388
	Battle of Fort Erie (September 17).....	395
	Jackson takes Pensacola (November 7).....	400
	Hartford Convention (December 15).....	391
	Treaty of peace signed (December 24).....	403
1815:	Battle of New Orleans (January 8).....	402
	The <i>President</i> taken by a British fleet (Jan. 15)..	376
	The <i>Constitution</i> takes the <i>Cyane</i> and the <i>Levant</i> (February 20).....	376
	The <i>Hornet</i> takes the <i>Penguin</i> (March 23).....	376
	Decatur brings Algiers to terms (June 28).....	412
	The <i>Peacock</i> takes the <i>Nautilus</i> (June 30).....	376
1816:	National Bank chartered.....	411
	Admission of Indiana.....	407

NOTE.—The months and days are inserted for reference only, not for recitation. In naval battles the American ship is named first.

CHAPTER VII.

MONROE'S ADMINISTRATIONS: 1817-25.

JAMES MONROE, Va., President.

DANIEL D. TOMPKINS, N. Y., Vice-President.

416. James Monroe, of Virginia, was born in 1758. He served in the Revolutionary army as a captain, and was a member of the Continental Congress, and of the Senate under the Constitution. He was abroad most of the time from 1794 until 1808, as minister to France, England, and Spain. Returning, he was governor of his State in 1811, and Secretary of State under Madison. He was then elected and re-elected President. He died at New York City in 1831.



JAMES MONROE.

417. Era of Good Feeling.

—During Monroe's first term, the Federal party entirely disappeared from politics. Its members either ceased voting or called themselves Republicans. This period is therefore often

called "the era of good feeling." At the end of Monroe's first term, the Republicans were successful in the Presidential election of 1820 without any opposition, and Monroe and Tompkins were re-elected President and Vice-President. But the vote was not quite unanimous. One electoral vote was cast against Monroe, and fourteen against Tompkins, so that they should not have the unanimous vote which has been given to no candidate except Washington.

418. Florida was added to the territory of the United States

416. What are the leading events in the life of Monroe?

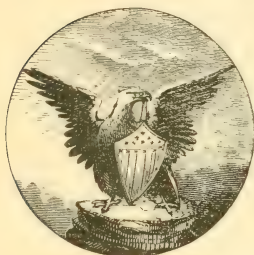
417. What was meant by "the era of good feeling"? What was the result of the election of 1820? Was it unanimous?

418. What new territory was added to the United States? Who had owned it hitherto? What is said of the Seminole Indians? What movement was made by Jackson? What did he do in Florida? Did Spain consent? Why did Spain sell Florida? When was the treaty made and ratified?

during this administration. It had been a Spanish possession, and its governors had given the United States much trouble during the war (§ 400). After the close of the war, the Seminole Indians of Florida, aided by the Spaniards, kept up a war against the whites of Georgia and Alabama. Jackson, who still commanded there, soon lost all patience, and marched his army into Florida. He seized Pensacola, and hanged two British subjects, Arbuthnot and Ambrister, whom he accused of leading the Seminoles. Spain protested, and Pensacola was given back to her. But Florida was so evidently at the mercy of the United States that Spain agreed to sell it for \$5,000,000. The treaty was made in 1819, but was not ratified until 1821.

It is not at all certain that Arbuthnot and Ambrister were guilty.

419. Mississippi was admitted as a State in 1817.

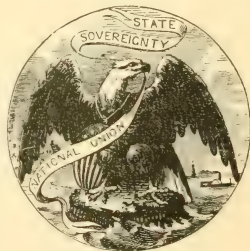


SEAL OF MISSISSIPPI.

Its territory had at first been claimed by Georgia (§ 272), but had been given up to the United States in 1802 (§ 275). Its population has always been chiefly engaged in agriculture, and has grown from 40,352 in 1810 to 1,131,597 in 1880.

420. Illinois was admitted as a State in 1818.

This was the third of the five States finally formed out of the old Northwest Territory (§ 407). Its population in 1810 was 12,282; and its only important town was the old French fort of Peoria (§ 142). Its people have gained wealth mainly by agriculture; but there are extensive lead-mines in the northwestern part of the State, near Galena, and bituminous, or "soft," coal is found under all the central part of the State. Illinois was one of the first States to encourage railroads, and the opening of the Illinois Central Railroad did much to develop the State after 1850. Illinois has grown to be one of the four great States of the Union, having a population of 3,077,871 in 1880. Chicago has had the most wonderful growth of any American city. During the war of 1812, and for nearly twenty years afterward, it was a little frontier post. Fort Dearborn (§ 456); in 1880 it was the fourth city of the United States, with a population of 503,185.



SEAL OF ILLINOIS.

419. What State was admitted in 1817?

420. What State was admitted in 1818?

421. Alabama was admitted as a State in 1819.

This was also a part of the territory claimed by Georgia (§ 419). At its admission, the old French town of Mobile (§ 141) was its most important place, as it still is. The only other important city, Montgomery, became the capital in 1846. The people of the State have always been engaged chiefly in the culture of cotton. They have increased from 127,901 in 1820 to 1,262,505 in 1880.

422. Maine was admitted as a State in 1820.

It had been a part of Massachusetts for nearly 200 years (§ 58). It had now increased



SEAL OF ALABAMA.

so much in population, and had come to differ so much from the parent-State, that it was made a separate State, with the full consent of Massachusetts. Manufactures, timber, and ship building are the principal industries. The population has grown from 298,269 in 1820 to 648,936 in 1880.

423. Missouri was admitted as a State in 1821.

After the admission of the State of Louisiana in 1812 (§ 406), the rest of the Louisiana purchase was called the Territory of Missouri, and the new State of Missouri



SEAL OF MAINE.

was a part of this. There were peculiar difficulties in its admission, which are detailed below (§§ 424-6). When the State was admitted, the only important place was the old French town of St. Louis (§ 158); this has become the most important city of the Mississippi valley, its population in 1880 being 350,518. The population of the State has grown from 66,557 in 1820 to 2,168,380 in 1880. The chief wealth of the State is at present in agriculture; but it is also one of the most remarkable and valuable mineral regions of the globe. It has whole mountains of iron-ore, valuable lead-mines, and beds of coal sometimes 700 feet in thickness; and valuable deposits of petroleum have very recently been discovered.

424. Negro Slavery had in 1820 almost entirely disappeared from the old

SEAL OF MISSOURI.

421. What State was admitted in 1819?

422. What State was admitted in 1820?

423. What State was admitted in 1821?

424. What is said of negro slavery in the old Northern States? In the new Northern States? In the Southern States? How did Kentucky, Tennessee, Alabama, and Mississippi become slave-States? How did Louisiana become a slave-State? What is said of slavery in Missouri?

States north of Virginia (§ 191); and it had been forbidden from the beginning in the new States north of the Ohio (§ 294). In the Southern States it showed no signs of disappearance, for the cotton-gin had made it profitable (§ 317). The first settlers in Kentucky, Tennessee, Alabama, and Mississippi naturally took their slaves with them; and when these States were admitted, they came as slave States. Slavery existed in the Territory of Louisiana when it was bought from France; Congress did nothing to stop it; and thus Louisiana became a slave-State. The number of slaves in the rest of the Territory grew steadily; and when Missouri applied for admission, it was as a slave-State.

425. Two Sections had thus been formed in the United States, the North forbidding slavery, the South encouraging it. This one difference not only changed the inside life of the two sections, but made them opponents of one another (§ 651). Each section had come to have its own needs; each wanted a particular kind of laws passed by Congress; and each wanted to secure the new State of Missouri, so as to have more votes in Congress. The North argued that it had never been intended, when the Constitution was formed, that slavery should spread beyond the Mississippi, or new slave-States be admitted; and that Congress ought now to refuse to admit Missouri except as a free State. The South argued that the Constitution had left the control of slavery to the States; that Missouri had chosen to be a slave-State; and that Congress had no right to interfere in the matter. The North had learned to like slavery less, and the South more, than when the government was formed; and each felt that the other was wrong and unreasonable.

426. The Missouri Compromise.—The dispute in Congress grew warmer for two years, until it was ended, in 1820, by the Missouri Compromise, arranged mainly by Clay (§ 481). The South gained a part of its claim by the admission of Missouri as a slave State. The North gained a part of its claim by the prohibition of slavery in the rest of the Louisiana purchase north of parallel $36^{\circ} 30'$, the main southern boundary of Missouri. Under this

425. What two sections had thus been formed? How did they differ? What was the effect of this difference? Why were they opposed to one another? What was the argument of the North? Of the South? What was the real difference between them?

426. What is said of the dispute? How was it ended? What did the South gain? What did the North gain? What were the results?

compromise, Missouri was admitted in 1821, and the question of slavery in new States was put to rest for about twenty-five years (§ 585).

Nothing was said of the territory south of parallel 36° 30', and, as slavery already existed there, this was also a gain for the South. But it was not a large gain, for this part of the territory made but one slave-State, Arkansas (§ 461).

427. The Monroe Doctrine.—The former Spanish colonies in Mexico and South America had rebelled and become independent. Spain was too weak to make them submit, but there were strong suspicions that some of the other governments of Europe meant to help Spain. President Monroe therefore declared in a Message to Congress, in 1823, that the United States had no intention of interfering with any war in Europe, or with any recognized European colonies in America; but that no more European colonies should be planted in America; and that the United States would not view with indifference “an attempt by any nation of Europe to reduce an independent nation of North or South America to the condition of a colony.” This very important principle is called the Monroe Doctrine, and has always since been the settled policy of the United States in foreign affairs (§ 829).

The Secretary of State, John Quincy Adams, was the real writer of the Message.

428. La Fayette (§ 215) was invited to pay a visit to the United States in 1824. He came, an old man of 68, to a country that had changed wonderfully since he had seen it in his youth. He had left it a weak, thinly-settled fringe of settlements along the Atlantic coast, too poor to pay its troops. He found it a nation with a population of 9,633,822 in 1820 (§ 353), with States beyond the Mississippi, with a powerful and successful navy, and a still more wonderful future. In his youth he might have visited all the States without leaving salt water; now he had to travel more than a thousand miles away from the Atlantic to reach some of them. In France, he had just been treated very disrespectfully and unkindly by his own government; and Congress and the country now made it a point to show how grateful the American people were to him.

427. What is said of the former Spanish colonies? Of Spain? What did President Monroe declare? What is said of this declaration?

428. Who visited the country in 1824? Had the country changed? How had he left it? How did he find it? How had the settled States changed? Why had he been invited? How was he treated? What was done at his departure?

As he passed up New York Bay, Fort La Fayette saluted him; processions, parades, and greetings of every sort met him wherever he went; and the whole country seemed to stop its work for the moment to give him a welcome such as he had never expected. After a visit of more than a year as the guest of the nation, he was sent back to France in a United States frigate which had just been launched and named in honor of him, and with a present from the United States of two hundred thousand dollars in money, and a township of public lands.

429. The Condition of the Country was not greatly changed, though it was just on the edge of great changes. One important invention had been introduced from England: lighting by gas was begun in 1822, and soon became common. The use of steamboats had made river-navigation as easy as at present, but travelling by land was as difficult as ever. Little could be done to improve it until steam-railroads were introduced (§ 450); but Congress and the States voted money freely for the improvement of roads and the construction of canals. New York State led the way in this work.

430. The Erie Canal, from Buffalo to Albany, was begun in 1817 and finished in 1825. It was constructed under great opposition from those who considered it a certain failure and therefore a waste of public money. It was successful only through the perseverance of De Witt Clinton, and was at first often called "Clinton's Big Ditch" by his opponents. Its construction made it possible to carry merchandise easily and cheaply from the great West, through the lakes, the Erie Canal, and the Hudson River, to New York City and the Atlantic. The immediate success of this enterprise set other States at work in canal construction.

The Erie Canal has carried more than \$6,000,000,000 worth of merchandise, and is now operated by the State without charges to those using it.

431. A National Road, for the use of Western emigrants, was undertaken by Congress. It was carefully constructed, with hard

429. What was the condition of the country? What invention had been introduced? What was the condition of travel? How was it attempted to improve it? What State led the way?

430. What is said of the Erie Canal? Of the opposition to it? Of Clinton's services? What were its results? Its effect on other States?

431. What road was begun by Congress? Where did it begin and end? Why was it stopped? What is said of other roads?

surface, easy grades, and good bridges. It began at Cumberland, in northwestern Maryland, and ran westward. It was gradually extended to Indiana, when the introduction of the railroad made it needless to build it any farther. Many other roads were built or improved by the United States during this period.

432. Free Trade and Protection.—American manufactures continued to be unprofitable (§ 409). In 1824, the distress of the manufacturers had become so great that Congress passed an act to increase the duties on imports. Its intention was to increase the prices of foreign goods so as to give the American manufacturers a chance to sell their goods at a profit. Such a tariff, or list of duties, is called a *Protective Tariff*, since it is designed to protect home manufactures. A list of duties which pays no attention to protection is called a *Revenue Tariff*, since it is designed only to obtain revenue for the government. The act of 1824 opened the struggle between Free Trade and Protection.

The general argument for Protection is that it will increase the number of manufactories; and that those employed in them will buy the productions of the farmers of the country. The general argument for Free Trade is that a country will produce naturally that which it can make most money out of; that, if we use taxation to bring about productions which would not come naturally, we are putting part of the people into unprofitable employments; and that, if Protection is profitable, it is only for the few manufacturers who are interested, not for the workmen or the country.

433. The Presidential Election in 1824 resulted in complete confusion for all the candidates, and all the voters, claimed to be Republicans. For Vice-President, Calhoun (§ 481) was generally supported and was elected. There were four candidates for President, John Quincy Adams (§ 435), Jackson (§ 448), William H. Crawford, of Georgia, and Clay (§ 481). When the votes of the electors were counted, it was found that none of the four had a majority of the whole number. The House of Representatives was then to choose a President from the three highest names on the list of votes, Jackson, Adams, and Crawford. In the House election, the friends of Clay voted for Adams, and he was elected President.

432. What is said of American manufactures? What was done in 1824? What was its intention? What is meant by a protective tariff? By a revenue tariff?

433. How did the Presidential election result in 1824, and why? Who was elected Vice-President? Who were the candidates for President? What was the result of the electoral vote? How was the President then to be chosen? Who was elected?

There were 99 electoral votes for Jackson, 84 for Adams, 41 for Crawford, and 37 for Clay (§ 481). This election is often called the "scrub-race for the Presidency." Before the next election, parties had again been formed, and there were but two sets of candidates.

434. The Leading Events of Monroe's administrations were as follows:

1817-21: Monroe's First Term.....	§ 416
1817: Admission of Mississippi	419
1818: Admission of Illinois.....	420
Jackson seizes Pensacola.....	418
1819: Admission of Alabama.....	421
Treaty for the annexation of Florida.....	418
1820: Admission of Maine.....	422
Missouri Compromise.....	426
1821: Admission of Missouri.....	423
1821-5: Monroe's Second Term.....	417
1822: Congress begins the construction of roads.	431
1823: The Monroe Doctrine.....	427
1824: La Fayette's visit to the United States.....	428
A protective tariff adopted.....	432
Disputed Presidential election.....	433

SUPPLEMENTARY QUESTIONS.

Locations.—Locate Florida; Pensacola, Fla. Bound the State of Mississippi; the State of Illinois. Locate Chicago, Ill. Bound the State of Alabama. Locate Mobile, Ala. Bound the State of Missouri. Locate St. Louis, Mo.; Buffalo, N. Y.; Albany, N. Y.; the Hudson River; New York City.

REVIEW.—Give the years in which Monroe's administrations began and ended. The name of the Vice-President. The year of the admission of Mississippi. Of the admission of Illinois. Of the admission of Alabama. Of the annexation of Florida. Of the admission of Maine. Of the admission of Missouri. Of the announcement of the Monroe Doctrine. Of La Fayette's visit.

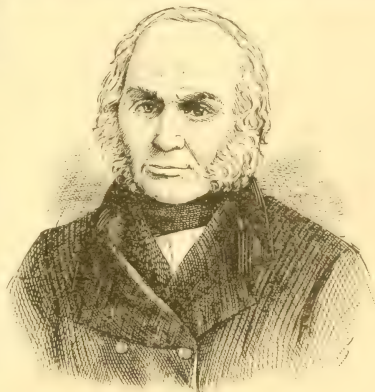
434. What were the years of Monroe's first term? What was the leading event of 1817? The leading events of 1818? Of 1819? Of 1820? Of 1821? What were the years of Monroe's second term? The leading event of 1822? Of 1823? The leading events of 1824?

CHAPTER VIII.

JOHN QUINCY ADAMS'S ADMINISTRATION: 1825-9.

JOHN QUINCY ADAMS, Mass., President. JOHN C. CALHOUN, S. C., Vice-President.

435. John Quincy Adams, of Massachusetts, was born in 1767, the son of John Adams (§ 319). He was abroad, as minister to the Netherlands and to Prussia, from 1794 until 1801. He was United States Senator, 1803-08, and then became a Democrat instead of a Federalist. He was minister to Russia, 1809-17, then Secretary of State under Monroe, and then President. Defeated for re-election, he did not remain long in private life; he was sent to Congress in 1831, as a member of the House of Representatives, and was regularly re-elected until his death. This part of his career was the most remarkable of all. He belonged to no party, though he might be called an anti-slavery Whig; but his wonderful ability, and his merciless treatment of opponents, made him admired and feared by all parties. He died in the Capitol at Washington in 1848.



JOHN QUINCY ADAMS.

436. The Railroad.—In internal affairs, this administration was marked by an uncommon prosperity; money became more plentiful, both with the government and with private persons, and the public debt began to decrease. The country seemed to be gathering strength for the enormous changes which it was to expe-

435. What were the leading events in the life of John Quincy Adams?

436. What was the state of internal affairs? What great invention was made in England? Had rails been used before? What is said of Trevithick's locomotive? Of the first English steam-railroad? Of George Stephenson's locomotive? Where was the railroad soon tried? What horse-railroads were tried in 1827?

rience during the next few years. For it was during this administration that England saw the invention of the railroad locomotive, one of the greatest events of modern times, which was to show its most wonderful effects in the United States. The use of wooden or iron rails for cars drawn by horses had been known in England for nearly 200 years; and many Englishmen and Americans had tried to use steam instead of horses. In England, early in the century, Trevithick had made a locomotive, but it could only move slowly. A short railroad, with clumsy locomotives, was opened in England in 1825. In 1829, George Stephenson, an Englishman, exhibited his locomotive, "The Rocket," which moved at the rate of 30 miles an hour, and the modern railroad system began. In the United States, where men had for years been trying to improve the useless old roads, the first idea of the railroad was soon tried. In 1827, two short lines of rails were laid at Quincy, near Boston, and at Albany; and the Baltimore and Ohio Railroad was chartered in Maryland, though it was then intended to use horses upon all these.

In 1828, the first trip with an English locomotive was made on a Pennsylvania railroad, near Mauch Chunk; and a new railroad, expressly for steam, was chartered in South Carolina, to run westward from Charleston. In the following administration, the new system of Stephenson was fully introduced into the United States (§ 450).

437. Settlement had now seized firmly upon most of the country east of the Mississippi. Treaties had been made by the government with each Indian tribe, by which the Indians sold their lands to the government for settlement, and removed beyond the Mississippi. To this there were two exceptions. In the Northwest, the territory covered by the present State of Wisconsin was not yet needed by settlers; and in the Southwest, some of the Georgia and Alabama Indians refused to sell their lands for settlement.

438. The Cherokees were now the most powerful tribe of Indians in Georgia and Alabama, since the Creeks had been overthrown by Jackson (§ 398). They were intelligent and educated; they had churches, schools, and newspapers of their own; and they re-

437. How far had settlements spread? How were the Indians removed? What is said of Wisconsin? Of the southwest Indians?

438. What is said of the Cherokees? Of their progress? Of their refusal to move? What did Georgia decide to do? What was the result of the President's interference? Which party was successful?

fused to remove across the Mississippi. Finally, the State of Georgia became impatient, and decided to force the Indians to go. President Adams, in 1827, interfered to protect the Indians, but Georgia declared its intention to resist the Federal Government, if necessary, by force. The State was at last successful in compelling the Cherokees to remove.

This was not accomplished until 1835, when the Federal Government induced the Indians to make a treaty and sell their lands (§ 471).

439. Jefferson and John Adams died almost together, July 4, 1826, each believing that the other was left alive. The day of their death was a coincidence so remarkable as to attract the attention of the whole country. It was the fiftieth anniversary of the adoption of the Declaration of Independence, of which Jefferson was the author and Adams the principal supporter (§ 207).

The two had quarrelled in 1801, when Jefferson succeeded Adams as President, but they became close friends again afterward.

440. Political Contest was renewed during this administration. The era of good feeling (§ 417) came to an end, and political excitement rose higher than it had done for thirty years before. Most of it came from the policy of high tariffs and internal improvements, which had been begun under Monroe (§§ 429, 432).

441. The American System.—Clay (§ 481) had become Adams' Secretary of State, and the two supported warmly the system already begun in Congress. In 1828, a new tariff of still higher duties was adopted; and the revenue which came from it was spent in improving roads, constructing canals, and deepening rivers and harbors. This union of a protective tariff and internal improvements was known as the "American System;" and it soon afterward became the foundation of the new Whig party, of which Clay was the leader (§ 491).

442. The Two Sections, North and South (§ 425), had grown to be very different in many respects, and it was by this time as difficult for one Congress to make laws to suit them both as for the

439. What is said of the death of Jefferson and John Adams? Of the coincidence of their deaths? Why was the day remarkable?

440. What was the condition of politics? What was the chief cause of the excitement?

441. Who were the two leading supporters of the new system? What new tariff was adopted? How was the revenue spent? What was this system called? What did it afterward become?

442. What was the effect of the difference between North and South? What did the American System undertake to do? What profit did this bring to the North?

British Parliament to make laws to suit both Great Britain and the colonies. Now this was especially the case in regard to the American System, which undertook to encourage manufactures by increasing the duties on foreign goods. Whatever profit was derived from it by factories went to the North, where all the factories were located. Labor in the South was performed by negro slaves; and men who only worked because they were forced to do so were of no use in manufacturing (§ 643).

443. The Complaint of the South was, therefore, that its people were made to pay higher prices for goods imported from abroad, in order to give profits to Northern manufactories. The supporters of the American System answered that the Southern cotton-planters received their share of the profits by having a nearer market and better prices for their cotton. But the South refused to be convinced, and considered its people very unfairly treated. When the tariff of duties was increased in 1828, the legislatures of several Southern States protested against the act as unfair and unconstitutional; and in the Presidential election of the same year the whole electoral vote of the South was thrown against Adams.

444. Two Parties were thus formed out of the old party whose members had called themselves either Republicans or Democrats since about 1812. The portion led by Adams and Clay, which supported the American System, now began to call itself National Republican; and its opponents, who disliked the American System, began to call themselves Democrats. Toward the end of this administration, the division had extended so far that the two parts of the Republican party were really two parties.

During the following administration, the National Republicans took the name of the Whig party (§ 491).

445. The Presidential Election in 1828 was contested by the two new parties, and was one of great excitement. The National Republicans supported Adams and Richard Rush, of Pennsylvania,

443. What was the complaint of the South? The answer of the supporters of the American System? Was the South convinced? What was done by the South in regard to the tariff of 1828? In the Presidential election?

444. How had the old political party been divided? What names were taken? How far did the division extend?

445. How was the Presidential election contested in 1828? Who were the National Republican candidates? The Democratic candidates? What section voted for Jackson? What other circumstances were in his favor? What was the result of the election?

for President and Vice-President; while the Democrats, or "Jackson men" as they were often called, supported Jackson and Calhoun. There were many circumstances in Jackson's favor, in addition to the vote of the whole South for him (§ 443). He was very much liked by the people everywhere; his military services, particularly at New Orleans, helped him very much; and many thought that he ought fairly to have been chosen President in 1824 by the House of Representatives, since he then had a larger electoral vote than Adams (§ 433, note). For all these and other reasons, the Democrats were successful, and Jackson and Calhoun were elected.

They received 178 electoral votes, to 83 for their opponents (§ 298).

446. John Quincy Adams, like his father, was thus defeated after a single term of office; and these two, father and son, are the only one-term Presidents in the first half-century after 1789. The tariff was not the chief reason for the son's defeat. In the case of both father and son, the defeat came very largely from the rise of new ideas. In 1800, the old colonial ideas of "strong government" were overthrown (§ 323). In 1828, the change of government was made mainly because the people had no liking for Adams's administration, even though they had no great reason to dislike it: the government was changed because the people had changed.

447. The Leading Events of John Quincy Adams's administration were as follows:

1825-29: John Quincy Adams's Term.....	§ 435
1826: Death of Jefferson and John Adams.....	439
1827: Cherokee troubles in Georgia.....	438
Horse-railroads introduced.....	436
1828: Introduction of an English locomotive.....	436
A new protective tariff adopted.....	441
Formation of new parties.....	444

SUPPLEMENTARY QUESTIONS.

Locations.—Locate Boston, Mass.; Albany, N. Y.; Baltimore, Md.; Charleston, S. C.; Wisconsin; Georgia.

REVIEW.—Give the years in which John Quincy Adams's administration began and ended. Name the Vice-President. Give the year of the death of Jefferson and John Adams. Of the Cherokee troubles in Georgia. Of the introduction of the horse-railroad. Of the introduction of the locomotive.

446. In what respect were John Quincy Adams and his father alike? How was their defeat occasioned? What was done in 1800? In 1828?

447. What were the years of John Quincy Adams's term? The leading events of 1826? Of 1827? Of 1828?

CHAPTER IX.

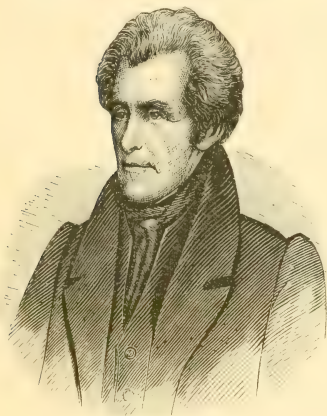
JACKSON'S ADMINISTRATIONS: 1829-37.

ANDREW JACKSON, Tenn., Pres.

{ JOHN C. CALHOUN, S. C., Vice-Pres., 1829-33.
{ MARTIN VAN BUREN, N. Y., Vice-Pres., 1833-37.

(1) INTERNAL AFFAIRS.

448. Andrew Jackson was born in North Carolina in 1767, studied law, and removed to Tennessee. He was a born leader of men, and very soon became prominent. He was sent to the House of Representatives in 1796, to the United States Senate in 1797, and was a judge of the State Supreme Court from 1798 until 1804. It is said that he personally collared and arrested a notorious ruffian, whom the sheriff was afraid to arrest. For the next nine years he was a planter, until the war with England brought him to the front (§ 398). After one defeat (in 1824), he was elected and re-elected President. He then retired to his plantation, the Hermitage, near Nashville, where he died, June 8, 1845. He had all the faults and virtues of a soldier. He was intensely honest; he had no friends except those whom he believed to be honest, and he supported them



ANDREW JACKSON.

unflinchingly; but he was absolutely determined to have his own way, or what his friends persuaded him was his own way. "Old Hickory" was the name commonly given him by his party.

449. A Wonderful Prosperity marked the whole of Jackson's Presidency. Very much of it was due to the introduction of the locomotive, a machine which changed the whole life of the people at a single step (§ 436). Poor roads had hitherto compelled

448. What were the leading events in the life of Jackson?

449. What was the effect of the introduction of the locomotive? Of what service was it to Americans? How did it change their mode of life? What is said of these eight years?

Americans to move slowly, while they were eager to move quickly, and the enormous extent of their country had been more troublesome than valuable to them; they now found the very instrument they needed. They began to move, act, think, and speak in an entirely new fashion. These eight years are the first that are altogether like our own times, though on a much smaller scale; they are the beginning of the modern history of the United States.

450. The Locomotive Engine of Stephenson was brought from England to the United States in 1831. But the Americans at once set to work to make their own engines, and succeeded, though their first attempts were naturally very clumsy and unserviceable. The first successful American locomotive was built in 1833. It differed



EARLY RAILROAD TRAIN.

from the English locomotives in many respects, and suited our roads and climate better; and since then we have built our own.

This first successful American locomotive, the "Arabian," was still running in 1883. It was exhibited at the Chicago railway exposition, and was burned by accident at Pittsburgh in the same year.

451. The Railway System grew rapidly. Before 1835 there were nineteen railroads built or building, their united length being twice the length of the island of Great Britain. Before the end of Jackson's second term, there were 1,500 miles of railroad in operation, and a great number of miles were building. Within the next four years, nearly all the chief cities of the Eastern States were connected by railroad, and the system had begun to spread through the Western States. From this time, it is useless to attempt to state the advance of the railroad system; the figures are so large that they carry no ideas with them. It will be enough to say that

450. What is said of the first locomotives? Of the first successful American locomotive?

451. What is said of American railroads in 1835? Before the end of Jackson's second term? Within the next four years?

there are, in 1885, in this one country, nearly as many miles of railroad as there are in all the other countries of the world together (§ 937).

452. The Advantages of the Railroad System were beyond calculation. Wherever it went, it changed the life of the people, opened up new country to settlers, and made settlements possible by carrying crops and goods easily. It gave the United States the advantages of a small country with the wealth of one of the largest countries of the world. Before 1830, men thought that it would require two or three hundred years for settlements to reach the Rocky Mountains: the railroad has done the work already.

453. Anthracite Coal (§ 336) was first used successfully on steamboats and railroads in 1836 and 1837. It contained so much fuel in so small a space that its use aided both steamboats and railroads very much. They had both generally used wood for fuel up to this time.

454. The Screw Propeller, to take the place of side wheels in ocean steamers, was introduced by John Ericsson in 1836. This required less fuel in a heavy sea, and thus promoted ocean navigation between the United States and Europe. The screw propeller, which was under water and out of the reach of an enemy's shot, brought steam war-vessels into use, and put an end to the sailing-vessels which had before composed the navies of the world.

Ocean navigation, which had been attempted in 1819 (§ 335), was successfully begun in 1838, when the *Sirius* and *Great Western* crossed the Atlantic from England to the United States.

455. Other Inventions marked this period. In 1834, McCormick took out a patent for a reaping-machine. Such machines had previously been tried in England and the United States without success (§ 336); but in the next dozen years they were perfected. They made farming far easier than before, and western lands more profitable. Colt patented his revolving pistol in 1835, and with it came a great change in the forms of fire-arms. About 1836, the manufacture of friction-matches began to do away with the former clumsy ways of obtaining fire. Hardly anything increased the comfort of daily life so much as this one little invention.

452. What were the effects of the railroad system? Its advantages to the United States? How has it increased the rapidity of settlement?

453. What is said of anthracite coal? Of its advantages?

454. What is said of the screw propeller? What effect had it on ocean navigation? On war-vessels?

455. What is said of McCormick's reaping-machine? Of its advantages? Of Colt's revolver? Of friction-matches?

456. The Western States had now fairly begun their wonderful growth. Steamboats were carrying settlers and trade along the Ohio, the Mississippi, the smaller rivers, and the great lakes. Almost all the present western cities, east of the Mississippi, had now appeared, though they were still small. During this period the western steamboats increased fourfold, and they built up towns as if by magic. When the first steamboat appeared at Fort Dearborn in 1833, there was no town there; six years afterward,



CHICAGO IN 1830.—FORT DEARBORN.

it had become the flourishing town of Chicago, and a line of eight splendid steamers was running to it from Buffalo and Detroit.

457. The Eastern States were growing almost as rapidly as the West, and their cities no longer looked like overgrown villages. A "great fire" in New York City, in 1835, destroyed \$20,000,000 worth of property, more than the whole yearly receipts of the Federal Government had been before the war of 1812; but the loss did not permanently injure the city. In the same year, New York City began the construction of the Croton Aqueduct, which was finished seven years afterward, and supplies it with water from a distance of forty miles. Because of the increase of manufactures, new cities, like Lowell and Paterson, were appearing; and the older cities felt the same influence.

456. What is said of the Western States? How were settlements and trade increased? What is said of the great western cities? Of the western steamboats? Of the change of Fort Dearborn into Chicago?

457. What is said of the growth of the Eastern States? Of the great fire in New York City? Of the Croton Aqueduct? Of new cities?

458. The Map of the United States in 1835 was very much the same as at present, east of Pittsburgh, though the cities have since grown far larger, and the railroads more numerous. West of Pittsburgh such cities as Chicago, Milwaukee, Minneapolis, St. Paul, Atlanta, and Montgomery were not yet on the general maps: they were then either small villages or frontier forts. North and west of Missouri, the country was still a wilderness. Beyond the Rocky Mountains, on the Pacific coast, the country belonged to Mexico or to no one, and was still almost unknown (§ 552).

459. The Population of the United States in 1830 was 12,866,020, an increase of 3,000,000 in ten years (§ 428), and nearly four times as many as in 1790 (§ 314). In 1790, there had been only 75 post-offices in the United States: in 1830, there were 8,450, more than a hundred times as many. Immigration from Europe had begun, and the steamboats and railroads made it easy for the immigrants to reach the fertile West. The receipts of the Federal Government from the sales of its western lands rose rapidly from \$1,000,000 to \$25,000,000 a year.

460. The National Debt was all paid off in 1835; and, for the first time in its experience, the Federal Government found that it was receiving more money than it could use. The amount not needed was divided among the States. But the States were as prosperous as the Federal Government. They borrowed and spent money freely for the construction of railroads and canals; and,



SEAL OF ARKANSAS.

though many of their plans were not wise, they aided immigration and settlement. Private prosperity was also general. The crops were abundant; manufactures were increasing; the banks doubled their number and capital; and every one seemed to expect to become rich in a day.

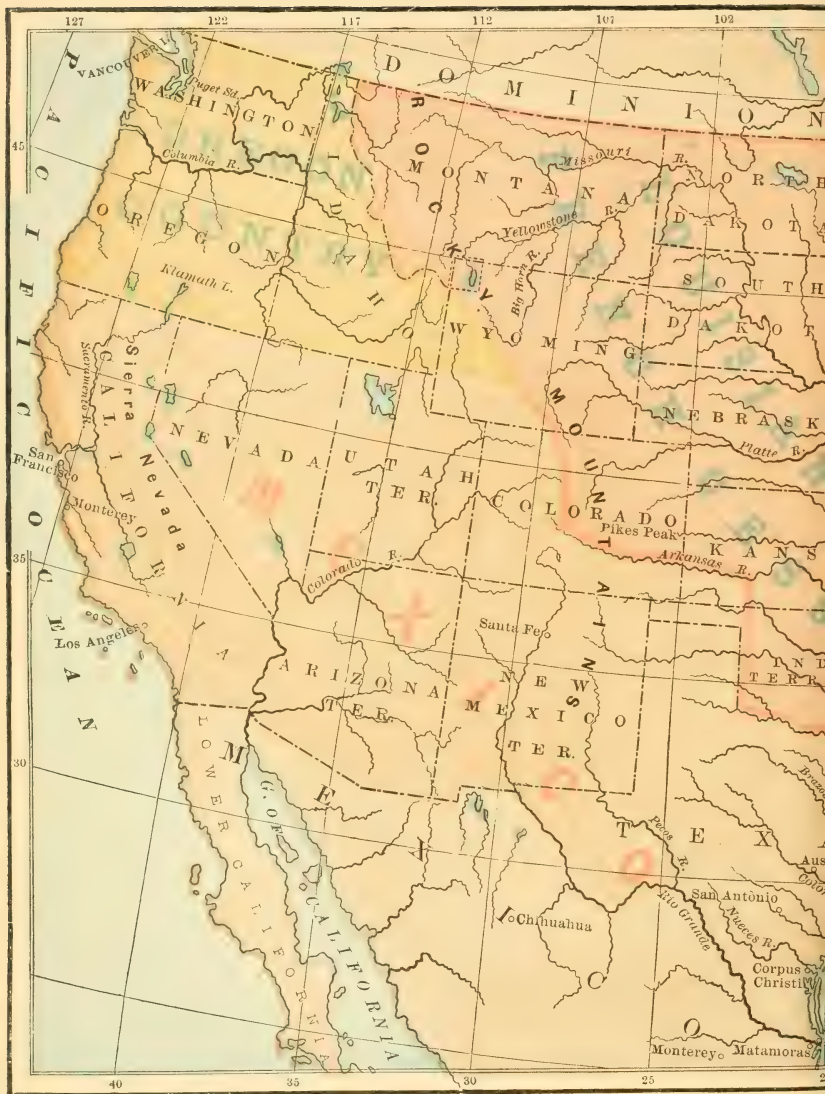
461. Arkansas was admitted to the Union in 1836.

458. What is said of the map of the United States in 1835, east of Pittsburgh? West of Pittsburgh? North and west of Missouri? Beyond the Rocky Mountains?

459. How had the population increased? The post-offices? What is said of immigration? Of sales of government lands?

460. What is said of the national debt? What was done with the receipts that were not needed? What was done by the States? What is said of private prosperity?

461. What State was admitted in 1836?





Arkansas was a part of the Louisiana purchase (§ 332). Its first settlement was by the French, in 1685, at Arkansas Post, on the Arkansas River. When Louisiana was admitted as a State, Arkansas became a part of Missouri Territory; When Missouri formed a State government, in 1819, Arkansas was made a separate Territory. Now it was admitted as a slave State. Its population has increased from 14,255 in 1820 to 802,525 in 1880. As yet, its people are mainly engaged in agriculture, though the State has great mineral resources, which will be valuable in the future.

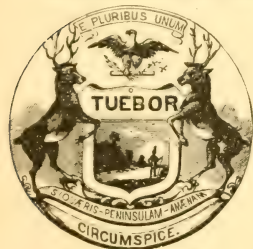


Scale of Miles
0 50 100 150 200 250

ARKANSAS.

462. Michigan was admitted to the Union in 1837. The number of States had now doubled, and was 26.

Michigan was the fourth State formed from the Northwest Territory, and slavery was forbidden in it by the Ordinance of 1787 (§ 294). It had been a separate Territory since 1805, and would have been admitted as a State several years before 1837 but for a difficulty in settling the boundary between Michigan and Ohio. Its first settlement was by the French, in 1701, at Detroit, which was for a long time almost the only settlement in the Territory (§ 357). Agriculture is a great industry of the people, but not the only one. In the southern peninsula there are great forests which yearly yield millions of feet of lumber. In the northern peninsula are the great copper-mines of the United States, and iron-mines which are second only to those of Pennsylvania. Manufactures are also numerous. The population has increased from 4,762 in 1810 to 1,636,937 in 1880. Its most important city is Detroit (see general map).



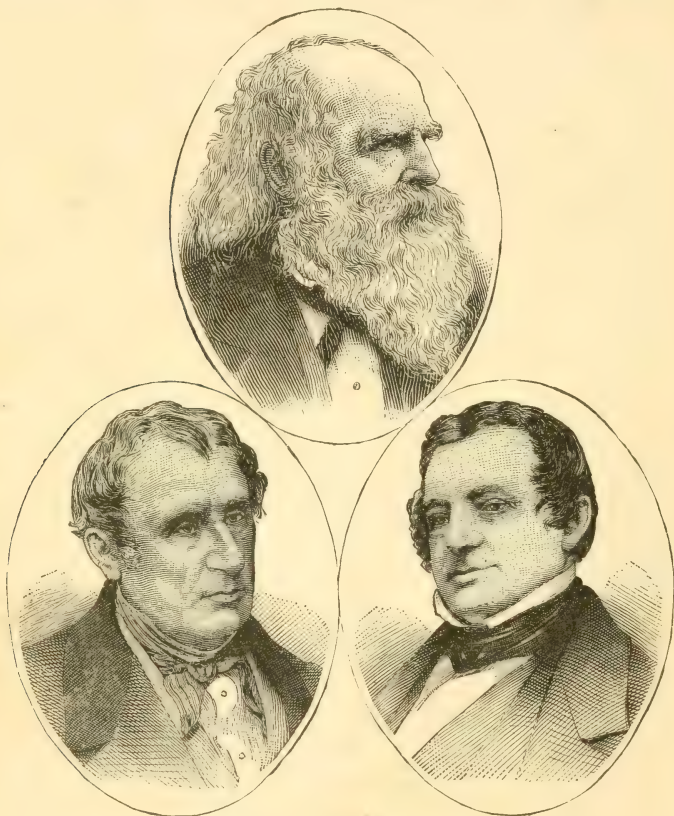
SEAL OF MICHIGAN.

463. Education.—Public schools had now been established in almost all the States, and the public-school system had come to be recognized as a necessary part of American life. It was realized that where every man votes, the State must, in self-defence, see

462 What State was admitted in 1837? How many States were then in the Union?

463 What is said of public schools? Of normal schools? Of colleges? Of geological surveys?

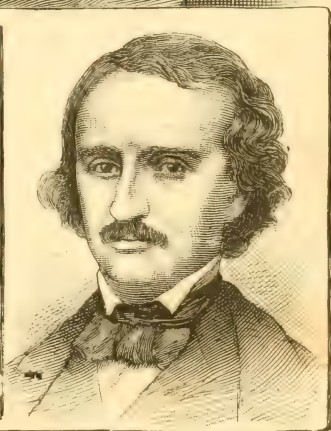
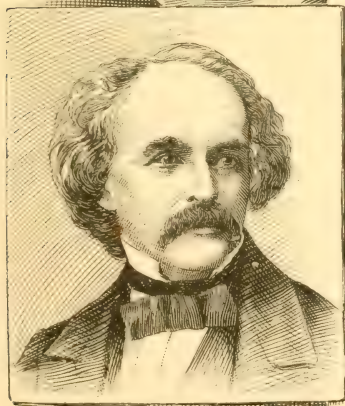
that, so far as possible, every man is taught enough to enable him to vote wisely. Massachusetts now made the system still better by beginning the normal-school system, for training public-school teachers. There were at this time 64 colleges in the United States.



WILLIAM CULLEN BRYANT.
J. FENIMORE COOPER. WASHINGTON IRVING.

During this period most of the States began geological surveys. They have been followed up by the Coast Survey, and other government surveys, until the whole surface of the country has been thoroughly mapped out.

464. Newspapers began to change their form about this time. In 1833 appeared the first issue of the New York *Sun*, the first of the newspapers of small price and large circulation. It was followed, two years afterward, by the New York *Herald*, which in-



HENRY WADSWORTH LONGFELLOW.
NATHANIEL HAWTHORNE. EDGAR ALLAN POE.

troduced the activity and enterprise in collecting news which mark modern newspapers.

464. What is said of newspapers? Of the New York *Sun*? Of the New York *Herald*?

465. American Literature before 1830.—An English writer had asked, with some contempt, “Who reads an American book?” The question was hardly a fair one, for before 1830 there were American books well worth reading. Bryant, Dana, Halleck, and Drake, the advance-guard of the American poets, had made their appearance; Washington Irving had been recognized as a master of prose writing. Fenimore Cooper had published *The Last of the Mohicans*; and Noah Webster had issued the first edition of his English dictionary. And yet it must be confessed that American literature before 1830 was still weak.

466. American Literature after 1830.—These eight years of Jackson’s administrations were the beginning of a real American branch of English literature. Three poets made their appearance, Whittier (1831), Longfellow (1833), and Oliver Wendell Holmes (1837). Poe was still a Southern magazine editor, but was soon to be recognized as both a poet and prose-writer of genius. Hawthorne published his first important work, *Twice-Told Tales* (1837). Bancroft published the first volume of his *History of the United States* (1834). Prescott published his *Ferdinand and Isabella* (1837). For music, sculpture, and the drama the country still depended upon foreigners.

467. Political Writing had lost something of the force for which Americans had formerly been remarkable (§ 190). But oratory had improved: Webster was probably the greatest of all the orators that have used the English language; Clay was not much inferior to Webster; and Calhoun, though not a great orator, could hardly be surpassed as a master of pure argument (§ 481). In law, Marshall, Story, and Kent were the best-known names; but the number of able lawyers was very great.

468. The Washingtonian Movement, the parent of the present temperance societies, gained its greatest strength during this period. Drunkenness had been an enormous vice, though no greater in the United States than in other countries. It had been considered quite proper for a gentleman to get drunk after dinner, and not very improper for a clergyman to own a distillery. New England rum and other strong liquors were expected to be offered to visitors, callers, or workmen; and drunkenness was too common to be good reason for

465. What question had been asked by an English writer? What poets had already appeared? What prose writer? What novelist? What dictionary had appeared?

466. What is said of these eight years? What poets appeared? What is said of Poe? Of Hawthorne? Of Bancroft? Of Prescott? Of music, sculpture, and the drama?

467. What is said of political writing and oratory? Of Webster? Of Clay? Of Calhoun? Who were the leading lawyers?

468. What is said of the Washingtonian movement? Of its pledge? Of its idea?

surprise. As a remedy, the Washingtonian societies did not usually demand a pledge of *total* abstinence, as is now the case. But their pledge had the same idea as those of the present temperance societies—the solemn promise of the drunkard to reform, and of others, not drunkards, to set him a good example.

469. **The Prisons**, in most of the States, had hitherto been conducted on the brutal system which was then common in other countries. One State had used an old copper-mine as a State prison; and most of the States used whipping and torture, under which criminals grew worse. About this time, the penitentiary system was introduced: under it, labor took the place of whipping, and some real effort was made to reform the criminals. The foolish and cruel system of imprisonment for debt also began to be abolished.

470. The Abolitionists.—Negro slavery came in for its first serious attack. In 1831, William Lloyd Garrison, a Boston newspaper editor, called for the immediate abolition of slavery; and those who agreed with him formed an Anti-Slavery Society. They were usually called Abolitionists. Other societies of the kind were formed; and the South was very much alarmed by these societies, and, in 1831, by an unsuccessful but bloody negro insurrection in Virginia. From this time, the ill feeling between the two sections (§ 425) grew steadily more angry, until in 1861 it came to open war (§ 652).

471. Indian Difficulties were numerous during this period. The Georgia Cherokees were at last moved across the Mississippi (§ 438). The Indians in Illinois, Wisconsin, and Iowa, led by Black Hawk, revolted, and were only put down after hard fighting. As a result, they gave up most of their



469. What had been the condition of the prisons? What new system was introduced? What other system was abolished?

470. What was the first serious attack on slavery? What name was given to the anti slavery men? What was the effect on the South? On the two sections?

471. What is said of Indian difficulties? Of the Georgia Cherokees? Of the Black Hawk war? What was the main cause of the Seminole war? How did it begin? What were its difficulties? How did it result?

lands. The most serious war was with the Seminole Indians, in Florida, who were led by Osceola. Many negro slaves had fled to them from neighboring States, and the Indians refused to give them up as the price of peace. The war began in 1835, with the massacre of Major Dade and about 100 men, near the Withlacoochee River, and lasted for about seven years. The Indians took refuge in the swamps and Everglades, where it was very difficult for the soldiers to find them. Nevertheless, they were beaten in many small battles, and in one great battle, by Taylor, near Lake Okechobee; and finally they, too, were removed beyond the Mississippi.

Osceola was taken prisoner treacherously, in the second year of the war, while he was carrying a flag of truce. He was then imprisoned in a fort until his death.

472. In Foreign Affairs, the Federal Government was able to take a firmer tone than it had ever done before. For thirty years it had been endeavoring to obtain payment from France for injuries done to American commerce (§ 320). France was slow in paying; and President Jackson recommended to Congress, without any appearance of anger, that enough French vessels should be captured to make up the amount due. France was exceedingly angry, and threatened war unless the President would apologize, which he positively refused to do. Peaceful feeling was restored by the mediation (§ 403) of Great Britain; and France then paid the amount due. Similar claims were then promptly paid by Portugal and other nations; and it has never since been difficult for the government of the United States to obtain respect and attention to its claims against other nations. The United States has since been able to accomplish the settlement of such claims by arbitration; that is, by umpires (§ 855).

473. This Period of eight years was, as will have been seen, one of the most important in the history of the United States. It was like the opening of spring, when everything leaps into growth. From that time, the people of the United States have been growing in wealth, but not in wealth alone. They have grown in education,

472. What is said of foreign affairs? What were the claims against France? What course was recommended by the President? What was the effect? How was peaceful feeling restored? What was the effect on other nations?

473. What is said of this period? Of the subsequent growth of the people? What may be said of them?

in morals, and in all those things that make a people more kindly and useful to the world. Their public-school system, their prison arrangements, and many of their other experiments have been imitated by other nations. They have failed in some things, but in all things it may be said with truth that they have done what they could.

SUPPLEMENTARY QUESTIONS.

Locations.—Locate the Ohio River; the Mississippi River; Lake Erie; Lake Michigan; Lowell, Mass.; Paterson, N. J.; Pittsburgh, Pa.; Chicago, Ill.; Milwaukee, Wis.; Minneapolis, Minn.; St. Paul, Minn.; Atlanta, Ga.; Montgomery, Ala.; Detroit, Mich.; the Withlacoochee River, Fla.; the Everglades, Fla.; Lake Okechobee, Fla.

REVIEW.—What inventions can you name which came into use in this period? What States were admitted to the Union? What poets appeared? What historians? Who were the great orators of the country? The great lawyers? What great Indian war marked this period?

(2) POLITICAL AFFAIRS.

474. President Jackson was a man of great natural powers of mind. He was uneducated and had violent passions; but he was absolutely honest and sincere, and did not know what fear or hesitation meant. When he believed that anything was doing harm to the people, he struck at it as if it were an enemy of his own, regardless of the feelings of his opponents, who were just as confident that they were right in their views. He was far more anxious to crush opposition than to convince and convert his opponents. It thus came about that the political history of these eight years was one of almost continuous excitement; and Jackson's friends and enemies accused one another of almost every crime imaginable. The four principal enemies attacked by Jackson were the former office-holders, the United States Bank, the "American System," and the Southern nullificationists.

These were only the four *principal* struggles. The smaller political contests of these eight years were so many and so angry that it would need a volume to tell of them.

475. Office-Holders under the United States—postmasters, clerks, marshals, and others—had not hitherto been expected to take

474. What is said of Jackson's powers of mind? Of his education and character? How did political contest come to be especially bitter during this period? Name the four principal enemies attacked by Jackson.

475. What is said of the duties of office-holders hitherto? What was done by Jackson? What is said of the effects?

part in political contests. They did their work for the United States, and were paid for it. Jackson began by removing all the office-holders who were not his supporters, no matter how faithful they had been as public servants. Since then, every new administration has done the same thing. It has come to be generally seen that the effects on the public service are exceedingly bad, and hopeful efforts are now making to stop it (§ 910).

476. The Bank of the United States (§ 411) was, in Jackson's opinion, a most objectionable institution. He believed that the government's revenues, which were deposited in the Bank, were used for the enrichment of its managers, to the injury of the people; and that the Bank tried to punish or reward public men in and out of Congress for opposing or helping it. He therefore declared war on the Bank, and stated his opinion of it very plainly in his Messages to Congress. His supporters sided with him, and the country was soon divided by the question of "Bank or no Bank."

477. A New Charter for the Bank was passed by Congress in 1832. Jackson vetoed it, and the friends of the Bank in Congress were not numerous enough to pass the charter over the veto (§ 478). The next year, he ordered the Secretary of the Treasury to cease depositing the public revenues in the Bank; and now the friends of the Bank in Congress were not numerous enough to forbid this "removal of the deposits." Little by little, Jackson gained a majority in Congress; and when the twenty years of the Bank's first charter came to an end (in 1836), it ceased to exist as a government institution. This was the longest and severest struggle of Jackson's Presidency, and he came out of it in triumph. The public revenues were now deposited in various State banks, selected by the Secretary of the Treasury (§ 499).

478. The Veto Power of the President is his power to object to bills before they become laws (§ 282). When the President vetoes a bill, a vote of two thirds in its favor in each House is needed to make it a law; and this is generally not easy to obtain. Former Presidents had not used the veto power often: Jackson used it freely, and his use of it seemed to his opponents most unfair and tyrannical.

476. What is said of the Bank of the United States? What did Jackson believe? What did he do? How did this divide the country?

477. What is said of the new charter? Of the veto? Of the removal of the deposits? Of Jackson's final victory? What was done thereafter with the public revenues?

478. What is the veto power? What vote does it make necessary? Had the veto power been used as freely by former Presidents?

479. The American System of high tariffs and internal improvements (§ 441) also seemed to Jackson highly objectionable. He believed that it gave Congress too much money to spend; that it made Congress extravagant and wasteful in its expenditures; and that it took money uselessly out of the pockets of the people for the benefit of a single class, the manufacturers. But, instead of attacking the tariff, he used the veto power against a number of bills appropriating money for internal improvements, and they generally failed to become laws. In this contest, also, the President was finally successful in obtaining the support of a majority of the people and of Congress.

480. The President's Opponents were mainly the former National Republicans (§ 445), now led by Clay and Webster. They supported the Bank and the American System, because they believed them to be of the highest advantage to the country. They supported the Bank mainly because it had branches in every State, and its notes were good all over the country. Without the Bank, there was then, except gold and silver, no money which could be used in every part of the United States. They supported the American System as profitable to the country (§ 432). They felt that they were as honest in their beliefs as Jackson was in his, and that he had no right to speak of them and their plans in the terms which he was in the habit of using. It is very probable that Jackson had warmer friends and bitterer enemies than almost any other President.

481. Henry Clay was born in Virginia in 1777. He studied law, and removed to Kentucky, where he soon rose to distinction. He was sent to the United States Senate for a year in 1806 and 1810. He was a member of the House of Representatives, 1811-14, 1815-20, and 1823-5, during most of which time he was Speaker. He was Secretary of State under John Quincy Adams, and United States Senator, 1831-42 and 1849-52. He was a candidate for the Presidency three times, in 1824, 1832, and 1844; but was each time defeated. He held a high rank as an orator, but was still more successful in gaining the hearts of his followers. "Harry of the West" was almost worshipped by his party (§ 491).

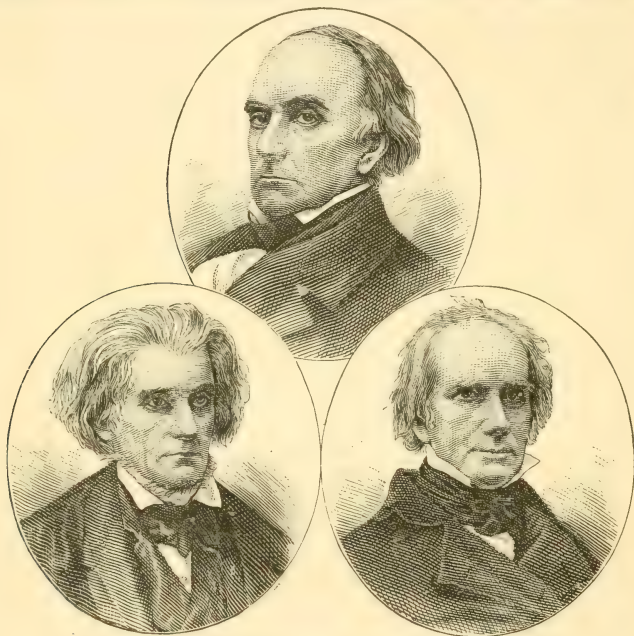
Daniel Webster was born in New Hampshire in 1782. He became a lawyer, and was a member of the House of Representatives, 1813-17.

479. What is said of the American System? What did Jackson believe? What did he do? What was the result?

480. Who were Jackson's principal opponents? Why did they support the Bank? Why did they support the American System? How did they feel toward Jackson?

481. What were the leading events in the life of Clay? Of Webster? Of Calhoun?

He then removed to Boston, and was a member of the House of Representatives from Massachusetts, 1823-7, and United States Senator, 1827-41 and 1845-50. He was Secretary of State under Tyler, 1841-3, and Fillmore, 1850-2. He died at Marshfield, Mass., in 1852. He was the greatest of our orators; some think, the greatest orator that has yet lived. His speech in the Senate in 1830, in reply to Hayne, the advocate of Nullification, made "Black Dan," a name brought upon him by the darkness of his complexion, the great man of the North until the troublous times of 1850; then he was suspected of bidding for the Southern vote for the Presidency, and fell back from his place of leader.



DANIEL WEBSTER.

JOHN C. CALHOUN

HENRY CLAY.

John C. Calhoun, of South Carolina, was born in 1782, studied law, and was a member of the House of Representatives (Democrat), 1811-17. He was Secretary of War under Monroe, 1817-25, Vice-President, 1825-32, and United States Senator, 1833-50, except the year 1844-45, when he was Secretary of State under Tyler. He died at Washington in 1850. His chief energies were devoted to the advocacy of State sovereignty (§ 485). Though he was not a great orator, he was famous for his skill in arranging his arguments, so that he was an exceedingly dangerous opponent. In this respect, he stands above others who were greater orators than he.

482. An Anti-Masonic Party had grown up in New York and the neighboring States. It believed that, in 1826, the society of Freemasons had carried away and murdered a citizen of New York, named William Morgan, who had revealed its secrets; and it opposed the election of any Freemason to office. Both Jackson and Clay were Freemasons, and the new party opposed them both. It disappeared after the election of 1832.

483. The Presidential Election in 1832 took place in the midst of the excitement which followed Jackson's veto of the new charter of the Bank (§ 477). The National Republicans, who supported the Bank, nominated Clay for President, and John Sergeant, of Pennsylvania, for Vice-President. The Democrats, who opposed the Bank, nominated Jackson for President, and Martin Van Buren (§ 495) for Vice-President. They had lost confidence in Calhoun, the late Vice-President, who had become a leader of Nullification (§ 487), and took Van Buren instead of him. After an angry contest, the Democrats were successful, and Jackson and Van Buren were elected.

Out of 288 electoral votes, the Democratic candidates received 219, the National Republicans 49, and the Anti-Masonic candidates 7. South Carolina's 11 votes were cast for candidates of her own.

484. The South had not ceased its opposition to a high tariff (§ 443). When a new protective tariff was adopted (in 1832), this feeling grew stronger than ever. It was strongest in South Carolina, where Calhoun was an honored and trusted leader. He argued that the Constitution gave Congress no power to enact a protective tariff; that such a tariff was contrary to State rights; and that each State ought to protect its citizens from it.

485. State Sovereignty.—It has been finally settled that the Union rests on the support of the whole nation, divided into States out of necessity; that it is right, just, and most wise to respect the equal rights of the States, as most excellent instruments of good government; but that the national government has the right to compel all persons to obey the laws, in spite of State laws, and to prevent any State from leaving the Union. But it was the general

482. What is said of the Anti-Masonic party? Why was it formed? What became of it?

483. What is said of the Presidential election in 1832? Who were nominated by the National Republicans? By the Democrats? Why was not Calhoun nominated by the Democrats? How did the election result?

484. What was the feeling in the South in regard to the tariff? How was the feeling increased? Where was it strongest?

485. What do we believe as to the Union? As to the States? As to the national government? What was the doctrine of State sovereignty?

belief in the South that the Union rested entirely on the support of the States; that each State was altogether its own master; and that each State stayed in the Union only because it chose to do so. This was the doctrine of State Sovereignty. (§ 928).

It was often called State Rights, but very improperly.

486. Secession.—Of course, it followed from the doctrine of State sovereignty that, if any State believed its people to be unbearably wronged by the Union, it had the right to secede, or withdraw, from the Union. This was the doctrine of Secession. It was upheld by most men in the South, even by those who had not the slightest desire to put it in force. They would argue, work, and vote against secession; but, if their State should vote to secede, they would have admitted the right to do so, and would have felt bound to “follow their State” (§ 662).

487. Nullification.—Calhoun, like most other Southerners, believed in State sovereignty and the right of secession, but loved the Union, and did not wish to have any secession. To prevent it, he proposed that his State, still remaining in the Union, should declare that it had never given the Federal Government the power to pass any protective-tariff law, should declare the law null (without force) in South Carolina, and should forbid her citizens to obey it or pay the duties. This was called Nullification. It was adopted by South Carolina, but the other Southern States took no part in it.

488. Action of South Carolina.—Late in 1832, South Carolina called a convention which declared the tariff law null and void, forbade the collection of the duties at Charleston or any other port in the State, and threatened to secede if the law was enforced. It also took steps to prepare an army for resistance.

489. The President disliked the tariff law as much as Calhoun did, and he was then trying to have it repealed. But he had sworn to enforce it, while it was a law; and he had no notion of yielding to the nullificationists. He sent a naval force to occupy Charleston harbor, and collect the duties from any vessels entering it. He

486. What was the doctrine of secession? What was the feeling in the South in regard to it?

487. What was Calhoun's feeling? What course did he propose? What name was given to it? What State adopted it?

488. What was done by the South Carolina convention?

489. How did the President feel in regard to the tariff? Why did he enforce it? How did he collect the duties? What proclamation did he issue? What was its effect?

issued a proclamation, warning the people of South Carolina that he intended to enforce the law at all hazards, and that blood would flow if they should resist it. All men knew that Jackson meant exactly what he said, and the warning was taken. It was agreed in South Carolina to "suspend" nullification until after the adjournment of Congress.

490. Congress had no desire to push South Carolina to extremes, and many of its members who disliked protection made the nullification difficulty an excuse to vote against the tariff. A new tariff act, the "Compromise Tariff," was passed (in 1833), under which the duties were to be diminished every year until 1842. South Carolina claimed this as a victory, and repealed her ordinance of nullification. This was the last time that nullification was attempted by any State; the next effort was a secession by a number of States in 1861 (§656).

491. The Whig Party of England had been distinguished, among other things, for its opposition to the king. About 1833 the name of Whigs was adopted by Jackson's opponents, because they considered him a tyrant, who used the favor of the people to make himself in fact a king, without any regard to Congress or the laws. The name was taken by the supporters of the Bank and the American System, and by the Southern nullifiers, who felt Jackson's proceedings as an attack on themselves.

492. The Presidential Election in 1836 resulted in an easy victory for the Democrats. They nominated Van Buren (§495) for President, and Richard M. Johnson, of Kentucky, for Vice-President. The Whigs were in great confusion, and made no nominations. Clay was their real leader; but many of them thought Harrison (§513) a better candidate; others preferred Webster; and Southern Whigs preferred Hugh L. White, of Tennessee, or other candidates.

Out of the 294 electoral votes, Van Buren received 170, Harrison 73, White 26, Webster 14, and W. P. Mangum 11 (§298). No one received a majority of votes for Vice-President, and Johnson was chosen by the Senate.

490. What was the feeling in Congress? What act was passed? What was its effect?

491. What is said of the Whig party of England? Why was it adopted in the United States? By whom was it adopted?

492. How did the Presidential election result in 1836? Who were the Democratic candidates? What was the condition of the Whigs? Who were their leaders? Who were elected?

493. The Successes of the President were thus complete. He had won all his political battles. He had kept his oath that, "by the Eternal," he would put down nullification and maintain the Union. He had driven Calhoun and his friends out of the Democratic party. He had driven the Bank of the United States almost out of existence. He had succeeded in making Van Buren, who had supported him in all his struggles, President. He had succeeded in making Taney, who had supported him in his struggle with the Bank, Chief Justice. At the end of his second term, having beaten all his enemies, and rewarded all his friends, Jackson retired from public life to his home in Tennessee.

SUPPLEMENTARY QUESTIONS.

Locations.—Locate the State of South Carolina; Charleston, S. C.

REVIEW.—Give the years in which Jackson's terms began and ended. The names of the Vice-Presidents. What new charter was passed by Congress in 1832? How did Jackson defeat it? Give the year of the removal of the deposits. Who proposed Nullification? In what year? In what year was the Compromise Tariff Act passed? Name the two parties that were in existence at the end of Jackson's second term.

494. The Leading Events of Jackson's administrations were as follows:

1829-1833: Jackson's First Term.....	§ 448
1830: General removal of office-holders.....	475
1831: Abolition of slavery proposed.....	470
1832: Black Hawk War.....	471
Bank charter vetoed.....	477
New protective-tariff act passed.....	484
Nullification.....	488
1833: Compromise Tariff.....	490
1833-1837: Jackson's Second Term.....	483
1833: Removal of the deposits.....	477
First American locomotive.....	450
1834: McCormick's reaping-machine.....	455
1835: Great fire in New York City.....	457
Seminole War begins.....	471
1836: Anthracite coal used in steamboats.....	453
Screw propeller invented.....	454
Arkansas admitted.....	461
1837: Michigan admitted.....	462

493. What is said of the successes of the President? How had he beaten nullification? Calhoun? The Bank? How had he rewarded Van Buren? Taney? How did he retire?

494. What were the years in which Jackson's first term began and ended? The leading event of 1830? Of 1831? The leading events of 1832? Of 1833? What were the years in which Jackson's second term began and ended? The leading events of 1834? Of 1835? Of 1836? Of 1837?

CHAPTER X.

VAN BUREN'S ADMINISTRATION: 1837-41.

MARTIN VAN BUREN, N. Y., President.

R. M. JOHNSON, Ky., Vice-President.

495. Martin Van Buren, of New York, was born in 1782, studied law, and was elected to various State offices by the Democratic party. He was United States Senator, 1821-8, governor for three months, 1828-9, and Secretary of State under Jackson, 1829-31. His opponents in the Senate rejected his nomination as minister to England in 1832, whereupon he was elected Vice-President, and presided over the Senate until 1837. He was elected President in 1836, but was defeated in 1840. He was not nominated by the Democrats in 1844, and was the Free-soil candidate for President in 1848, but was defeated (§ 579). He died in 1862.



MARTIN VAN BUREN.

496. Wilcat Banks.—During Jackson's struggle with the Bank of the United States, many new banks had been formed in various States, generally with little or no capital to pay the notes which they issued. They bought large quantities of cheaply printed bills. As these bills had cost them very little, they could afford to offer a higher price in paper money for lands in distant States and Territories than others could afford to offer in gold and silver. Having bought the lands for this worthless money, the wilcat bankers sold them for good money, hoping that their own bills would not soon find their way back for payment. If they were disappointed in this hope, the bank

495. What were the leading events in the life of Van Buren?

496. What new banks had been formed? How did they pass off their notes? How did this affect the government?

“failed,” and the managers started a new one. Very many of these wildcat bank-notes were paid to government agents in the West for the public lands which the government wished to sell at a low price to settlers.

Such “wildcat” banks were a deliberate fraud upon the people, on whom all the losses fell. They cannot exist at present, while the national banking law is in force (§725). A national bank cannot issue notes until it has deposited bonds at Washington with which to pay them, if necessary; and all other banks that issue bills are taxed out of existence.

497. The Specie Circular was issued by the government in 1836. It ordered government agents to take only gold and silver in payment for lands. Wildcat bank-notes were now of no use in the West, and began to be sent back for payment. The banks had not the money with which to pay them. When the more honest of the bankers began to try to raise money by offering what property they had at lower prices, they threw business into confusion. Prices (in paper money) had been high. As prices fell, every one became frightened and anxious to sell before prices should fall quite to the bottom. Thus every one wanted to sell, and nobody cared to buy. Business men everywhere became continually more frightened as they found themselves unable to pay their debts to others, or to get payment of what others owed them. Such a state of affairs is called a panic, and is a terrible experience for a country in which it occurs.

498. The Panic of 1837 began just after Van Buren’s inauguration, and lasted for more than a year. The banks suspended specie payments; that is, they declared that they had not the gold to pay their notes. Men who had been rich were made poor in a day; and a pile of bank-notes became as worthless as so much waste paper. There was hardly any work to be had; and men who had not before been rich suffered distress, and sometimes starvation. During the first two months of the panic, the business failures in New York City alone amounted to more than \$100,000,000.

499. The Federal Government, which had lately had so much

497. What is meant by the Specie Circular? How did it affect the new bank-notes? What was the effect on banks and business? What is meant by a panic?

498. How long did the panic of 1837 last? What was done by the banks? What was the effect on rich men? On others? What is said of failures in New York City?

money that it was compelled to divide a part of it among the States (§ 460), could now get no money at all. All its revenues had been deposited in the State banks (§477); and these banks were unable to pay them over. President Van Buren called a special session of Congress. It passed a law allowing the Treasury to issue its own notes to the amount of \$10,000,000, and this gave the government some relief. The Whigs urged the establishment of a new United States Bank, as the best means of avoiding any such difficulties for the future; but Van Buren and his party resisted the demand steadily, and proposed an entirely new plan, called the Sub-Treasury System.

500. The Sub-Treasury System provided that the public revenues were not to be deposited in any bank. They were to be kept by the collecting officers, who were to pay over the money in their possession when ordered by the Treasury Department at Washington. They were to give bonds; that is, legal promises by responsible men to make good any loss of money by the collecting officers. For about three years, it was not possible to get a majority of both Houses of Congress to make this a law. In 1840, it became a law, and the government was cut loose from banks.

The Sub Treasury law was repealed by the Whigs in 1841 (§ 515), re-established by the Democrats in 1846 (§ 540), and is still in force.

501. Repudiation.—Many of the States had borrowed money for internal improvements (§ 460); and they now found it difficult to pay their debts. Some of them refused to pay altogether; and, as States cannot be sued by private persons, this “repudiation” of their debts was successful. Some of the repudiating States afterwards paid their debts, when they became more prosperous.

502. The Population of the country in 1840 was 17,069,453, an increase of more than 4,000,000 in ten years (§459). In spite of the panic, there were very many evidences of real growth and prosperity among the people. After the first effects of the panic passed over, business settled down to firmer foundations. Railroad

499. What was the difficulty of the Federal Government? Why? What was done by the President? By Congress? What did the Whigs propose? What did Van Buren and his party propose?

500. What did the Sub-Treasury system provide? How did it become law?

501. What were the difficulties of some of the States? What is meant by “repudiation”? Were the debts ever paid?

502. What is said of the increase of population? Of the growth and prosperity of the country? Of the railroad system?

building had gone on steadily, and in 1841 there were nearly 4,000 miles in operation.

503. Inventions.—Goodyear, in 1839, patented his plan of “vulcanizing” India-rubber, by which it was made hard enough to resist wear and tear, and to be moulded into the innumerable articles for which it is now used. In the same year, W. F. Harnden began carrying parcels between Boston and New York. Out of this little enterprise have since grown all the great express companies which now do such excellent service.

504. The Abolitionists (§ 470) were preaching against negro slavery more zealously than ever. They were not allowed to enter the slave States, but their books and newspapers went there and excited the most intense anger. Southern governors and legislatures tried to get possession of leading Abolitionists, in order to punish them; and Southern speakers and newspapers began to declare plainly that their section would not remain long in a Union in which men were allowed to stir up the negroes to rebellion (§ 649). In the North, people as yet cared very little about slavery, considering it a matter for which the Southern States alone were responsible. But they felt angry that these few Abolitionists should make strife between North and South, and disliked the Abolitionists as much as the Southerners disliked them.

505. Slavery Riots were common for a time in the North, whenever an Abolitionist meeting was announced. The Abolitionist speakers were mobbed, pelted with stones and eggs, and chased away. In one of these riots, at Alton, in Illinois, one of the leading Abolitionists, named Lovejoy, was killed. In another, in Philadelphia, a large hall, called Pennsylvania Hall, built by the Abolitionists, was destroyed. But, toward the end of this period, the Abolitionists became more numerous, and the riots became less common. Besides, Congress had done a very foolish thing, which roused more Northern sympathy for the Abolitionists.

506. The Right of Petition is looked upon as a very sacred thing. Congress is not bound to obey any petition that may be offered to it; but every man feels that Congress is bound to receive any respectful petition that is offered to it, from any per-

503. What is said of Goodyear's patent? Of Harnden's express?

504. What is said of the Abolitionists? How did they reach the South? What was the effect in the South? In the North?

505. What is said of slavery riots? At Alton? At Philadelphia? Why did they become less common?

506. How is the right of petition regarded? Why did Congress refuse to receive Abolitionist petitions? What was the effect in the North? How was the matter settled?

son, or on any subject. The Abolitionist petitions were very disagreeable to Southern members, and Congress decided not to receive any more of them. This decision was disliked by the people of the North, even by those who did not favor the Abolitionists. Great numbers of petitions to change the decision poured in upon Congress; and, after a struggle of four years, Congress decided to receive any petitions that were sent to it.

507. The Mormons began to be a source of trouble about this time. They were followers of a man named Joseph Smith, who had given them what he called a new Bible. They regarded him as a prophet, and Christians as heathens. At first, they gathered into a settlement near Independence, in western Missouri, where they made themselves unpleasant to their neighbors, and were driven away by mobs. They then settled at Nauvoo, in Illinois, near Burlington, Iowa. Here they became still more annoying to their neighbors, and began to teach that a man may have any number of wives at the same time. In 1844, Smith was shot by a mob, and the Mormons moved away from Nauvoo to Utah (§ 628).

508. Canada was the scene of a rebellion against the British Government in 1837. Many persons in the State of New York were inclined to help the Canadian Patriots, as they were called, and endeavored to cross into Canada, near Niagara Falls, for that purpose. President Van Buren took care that all such attempts should be stopped; and nothing was done by the United States of which Great Britain could rightfully complain.

509. The Boundary of Maine, in its eastern and northern portions, had never been exactly settled. There was a strip of land which was claimed by Maine and by New Brunswick; and about this time the two parties became so angry that affairs looked warlike. Forts were built, and troops sent to the disputed territory. General Scott (§ 562) was sent to the spot by the President; and he managed to keep the peace until the matter was settled by treaty in 1842 (§ 519).

510. Political Affairs in 1840 took an unusual turn. The

507. What were the beliefs of the Mormons? Where was their first settlement? Their second settlement? What new doctrine did they teach? What happened in 1844?

508. What happened in Canada in 1837? What attempts were made in New York? What was done by President Van Buren?

509. What is said of the disputed boundary of Maine? How far did the dispute go? How was it settled?

510. What business troubles influenced the election of 1840? What effect did they have? What did the Whigs promise?

panic of 1837 had passed by, but many of its effects remained; and a smaller panic took place just before the election of 1840. In such times of business trouble, many persons are likely to vote against the party in power; and the Whigs promised general prosperity if their candidates were elected.

511. The Presidential Election in 1840 was a singular contest. The Democrats renominated Van Buren and Johnson. The Whigs nominated Harrison and Tyler (§ 513). Americans are apt to like a candidate who has been poor and has worked his way to prominence by honesty and trustworthiness; and the Whigs managed to excite a great popular enthusiasm for Harrison. They built large log-cabins, such as he had lived in, and gathered in them to make speeches, drink hard cider like Western settlers, and sing songs about Tippecanoe (§ 350). Their public meetings were measured by the acre, and their processions by the mile. The Democrats could excite no such feeling about Van Buren, and Harrison and Tyler were elected. The Abolitionists, or Liberty party, also nominated candidates, but only a very few persons voted for them.

Out of 294 electoral votes, Harrison and Tyler received 234, and the Democratic candidates 60 (§ 298).

512. The Leading Events of Van Buren's administration were as follows:

1837-41: Van Buren's Term.....	§ 495
1837: The panic begins.....	498
The Alton riot.....	505
The Patriot rebellion in Canada.....	508
1838: Repudiation of State debts.....	501
The Philadelphia riot.....	505
Abolition petitions refused by Congress.....	506
1839: Mormons settle at Nauvoo.....	507
Boundary dispute in Maine.....	509
1840: Sub-Treasury law passed.....	500

SUPPLEMENTARY QUESTIONS.

Locations.—Locate Alton, Ill.; Philadelphia, Pa.; Burlington, Iowa; Niagara Falls; the State of Maine; the Province of New Brunswick.

REVIEW.—Give the years in which Van Buren's term began and ended. The name of the Vice-President. The year of the panic. Of the Patriot war in Canada. Of the passage of the Sub-Treasury law.

511. Who were the Democratic candidates in 1840? The Whig candidates? Describe the way in which the Whigs managed their campaign. What was the result? What is said of the Liberty party?

512. What were the years in which Van Buren's term began and ended? The leading events of 1837? Of 1838? Of 1839? Of 1840?

CHAPTER XI.

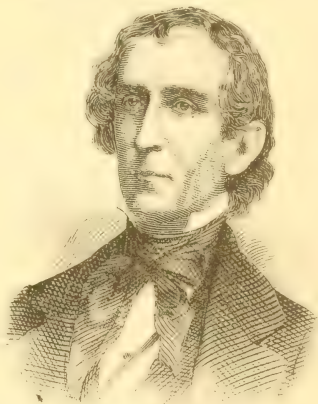
HARRISON'S AND TYLER'S ADMINISTRATIONS: 1841-5.

WM. H. HARRISON, O., President. JOHN TYLER, Va., Vice-President and President.

513. **William H. Harrison** was born in Virginia in 1773. He became a captain in the United States army, and settled in the Northwest Territory in 1797. He was governor of Indiana Territory, 1801-13, and major-general in the army, and took a leading part in the war of 1812 (§ 350). He was a representative in Congress, 1816-19, United States



WILLIAM HENRY HARRISON.



JOHN TYLER.

Senator, 1825-8, and minister to Colombia, 1828-9. In 1840, he was elected President, but died soon after his inauguration, in 1841.

John Tyler, of Virginia, was born in 1790, studied law, and was elected representative in Congress (1816-21), governor (1825-7), and United States Senator (1827-36). All this time he had been an ardent State-sovereignty Democrat, and only called himself a Whig because he supported the nullificationists of South Carolina against Jackson. The Whigs nominated him for Vice-President in 1840, in order to get Southern votes; and, at Harrison's death, they found that they had really made a Democrat President. Tyler became a member of the Confederate Congress in 1861, and died in 1862.

513. What were the leading events in the life of Harrison? Of Tyler?

514. President Harrison called a special session of Congress to consider the financial needs of the country. Before it could meet, Harrison died suddenly, April 6, 1841, only a little more than a month after his inauguration. Vice-President Tyler thus became President. He had only been a Whig because of his opposition to Jackson (§ 480); and he was known to be opposed to most of the measures which the Whigs desired. They had nominated him to get votes in the South, and now found themselves opposed by the troublesome veto power of the new President (§ 478).

515. Congress met in May, 1841. The Whigs had in each House a majority to pass laws, but not large enough to defeat the veto. They began by repealing the Sub-Treasury law (§ 500), and Tyler allowed the repeal to become law. They then passed two acts to establish a National Bank, but Tyler vetoed them both. No more was done at this session in this matter, and no serious attempt has ever since been made to establish a single great National Bank, though a national banking system has been established (§ 496, note).

516. The Whigs were exceedingly indignant at the conduct of the President, but could do nothing. The members of the Cabinet resigned, except Webster, who was negotiating a treaty with Great Britain (§ 518). For the first two years of this administration, the Whig majority in Congress did little more than quarrel with Tyler. Then the Democrats obtained a majority in the House of Representatives, and Congress and the President agreed better.

517. A New Tariff was adopted in 1842, to take the place of the compromise tariff of 1833, which had now come to an end (§ 490). It was so arranged as to protect American manufactures, and therefore the South was opposed to it; but there was no attempt to resist or nullify it.

518. Extradition of criminals between the United States and Great Britain was secured by a treaty which was made in 1842.

514. What was done by Harrison? What is said of his death? Of his successor? What was now the position of the Whigs?

515. What is said of the Whig majority in Congress? What was their first action? Their next action? What became of the plan of a National Bank?

516. What was the feeling of the Whigs? What was done by the Cabinet? By the Whig majority in Congress? What change then took place?

517. What new tariff was adopted? Was there any resistance in the South?

518. What was secured by treaty in 1842? What is meant by extradition? What has been done since? What have been the effects of ocean telegraphs?

Each country agreed to arrest and send back criminals who should escape to it from the other country. It was thus no longer possible for a criminal to find safety by simply crossing the Atlantic. Similar treaties have since been made with most other countries, so that there is now hardly a corner of the civilized world in which a criminal can find safe refuge. This is still more the case since ocean telegraphs have come into use: the runaway generally finds the officers waiting for him when his steamer arrives.

519. The Northern Boundary, between the United States and Canada, from Maine to the Rocky Mountains, was settled by the same treaty. This put an end to the Maine difficulty (§ 509). West of the Rocky Mountains, in what was then called the Oregon Country, the boundary could not be agreed upon, and both countries had long before arranged to occupy the country together until it should be necessary to decide the matter. This treaty continued this arrangement for a time. American emigration to Oregon had already begun; and Frémont, of the regular army, was now beginning explorations to find passes through the Rocky Mountains (§ 553).

520. The Oregon Country covered what are now the Territories of Idaho and Washington and the State of Oregon. It was claimed by the United States, partly on the ground that it was a part of the Louisiana purchase (§ 332), though this was exceedingly doubtful; and partly because it had been first explored by Lewis and Clarke (§ 333). Great Britain denied both of these reasons, but could not give any very good reasons for her own claim to the country. The truth seems to have been that the United States had very little claim to Oregon, and Great Britain none at all. After all, the very best reason why the United States should have the country was that the American settlements there were increasing rapidly, while there were hardly any English settlements, and no prospect of any. The question was not settled until 1846 (§ 544).

521. Texas was then southwest of the United States, of which

519. How was the northern boundary settled? What difficulty was thus ended? What was the arrangement as to the Oregon Country? What is said of emigration thither?

520. What was meant by the Oregon Country? Why did the United States claim it? What was the claim of Great Britain? What seems to have been the real state of the case? What was the best claim of the United States?

521. What was the location of Texas? How did it become a part of Mexico? How was slavery introduced into it?

it was not yet a part. The United States had at first claimed it as a part of the Louisiana purchase (§ 332), note; but the claim had been given up, in 1819, in exchange for Florida (§ 418), and Texas remained a part of Mexico. Soon American settlers began to enter Texas; and, as most of these were from southern States, they brought their negro slaves with them. The new settlers had little liking for Mexico, and did not obey when the Mexican Government forbade slavery within its limits.

522. Mexico had rebelled against Spain, and become independent. But it had a most disorderly government, in which generals of the army were in the habit of seizing supreme power and forcing the people to obey them; while the American settlers were not in the habit of obeying any one whom they had not helped to elect. In 1835, they openly rebelled, and drove the Mexican troops out of Texas. The next year, Santa Anna, the Mexican ruler, invaded Texas in a most cruel manner, murdering prisoners, sick, and wounded; but the Texans, under General Sam Houston, met him with far fewer men at San Jacinto, near Houston, and beat his army thoroughly. Mexico made no further attempt to conquer Texas, which remained an independent republic.

523. The Annexation of Texas was very much desired, especially by the South; and all these four years were spent in forming plans to bring Texas into the Union. They were not successful at first, for the annexation was not desired by the Whigs in the South, or by either party in the North, and only Southern Democrats were in favor of it. Tyler made a treaty of annexation with Texas in 1844, but it failed because the Senate refused to ratify it (§ 282). The annexation was not completed until after the Presidential election at the close of Tyler's term of office (§ 533).

524. Slave State Representation was the reason for the desire of the Southern Democrats to annex Texas, in order to have an equal share in the Senate. Laws are made by the Senate and House of Representatives together. The South was always the weaker party in the House of

522. Why did the American settlers in Texas dislike the Mexican Government? What is said of their rebellion? Of Santa Anna's invasion? Of the battle of San Jacinto? What was its result?

523. What is said of the annexation of Texas? Why was it not successful at first? What was done in 1844? When was annexation accomplished?

524. Why was the annexation of Texas desired by the South? What was the position of the South in the Senate and House of Representatives? What were the prospects of the two sections for new States? Why was this state of affairs dangerous to slavery? What was hoped from Texas?

Representatives, for its population was smaller than that of the North. But each State is equally represented in the Senate; and, so far, a new slave State had always been admitted to balance a new free State. In 1845, when Florida was admitted (§ 525), there were 27 States in the Union, 13 free States and 14 slave States. All the Southern territory was then used up, and no more slave-States could be formed; while the North had still a vast amount of Western territory, from which new free States could be formed. It was thus certain that the South would soon be in a minority in both Houses of Congress, so that laws might be passed which would injure the system of slavery. Texas was so vast a territory that it was hoped that it might be cut up into four or five slave-States. All the reasons above stated apply also to secession in 1861 (§ 644).

525. Florida was admitted to the Union in 1845.

Florida was bought from Spain in 1819 (§ 418). Its first settlement, St. Augustine, is now the oldest town in the United States (§ 18). The State has not yet developed any large cities. Its population has increased from 34,730 in 1830 to 269,493 in 1880. The people are engaged chiefly in the cultivation of oranges and other agricultural products. The great impediment to the advancement of the State has always been its enormous swamps, which were the scene of the Seminole war (§ 471). Promising efforts are now making to drain these swamps, and give the State a vast addition of fertile territory.

526. The Screw Propeller (§ 454) had now been introduced into the United States navy, and the sailing-vessels of the past were no longer built. The first of these steam war vessels, the *Princeton*, was the scene of a terrible accident during a pleasure-trip on the Potomac in 1844. One of the large guns burst when it was fired a third time, and killed two members of the Cabinet, a commodore in the navy, and a number of other persons. Many others had narrow escapes.



SEAL OF FLORIDA.

527. The Electro-Magnetic Telegraph came into practical use in 1844. There had been "telegraphs" for many years before; but these were only long lines of signal-posts, at some distance from one another, which sent messages altogether by sight, one letter at a time. In 1837, Samuel F. B. Morse took out his first patent for applying electricity as a force for telegraphing through wires. Six years afterward, Congress appropriated

525. What State was admitted in 1845?

526. What is said of the excursion on the *Princeton*? Of the accident which took place?

527. What great invention came into practical use in 1844? What was the nature of the telegraphs hitherto in use? What force was put to use in telegraphing by Morse? How was it tried? What were the results?

money to try the invention. In the following year, 1844, the first line was constructed from Baltimore to Washington, and it proved to be a success. Telegraph companies were at once formed, and new lines were constructed.



SAMUEL F. B. MORSE.

There are in 1885 about 150,000 miles of telegraph in the United States.

528. The Mineral Resources of the United States were not yet developed. Salt was produced near Syracuse, in New York. Pennsylvania and northern New Jersey had long produced iron, and the Pennsylvania beds of anthracite coal were now coming into knowledge and use (§ 453). There were lead-mines in northern Illinois and eastern Iowa; and a

few small copper-mines had been worked without much success in Connecticut and New Jersey. Gold was found in Virginia, North Carolina, and Georgia; but the total amount produced by these mines in all the years up to 1846 was not equal to a half-year's product afterward from the California mines. The wonderful mineral resources of Missouri (§ 423) and Tennessee were hardly known. No one knew that there was a wealth of petroleum under the surface of Pennsylvania and other States. California, New Mexico, and Nevada still belonged to Mexico; and there was no knowledge of the mineral resources of this region, or of those of the eastern slope of the Rocky Mountains, which undoubtedly belonged to the United States.

529. Copper became one of the great mineral productions of the United States in 1844. In that year the Indians at last gave up the country along Lake Superior, in northern Michigan (§ 462); and exploration soon found it to be rich in copper. Companies were formed at once, and copper-mining became a productive industry.

It was found, also, that some of these mines had been worked centuries before, probably by the "mound-builders" (§ 2).

530. The Dorr Rebellion.—The power to vote had now been

528. What is said of the mineral resources of the United States? Of iron? Of anthracite coal? Of lead? Of copper? Of gold? Of the mineral resources of Missouri and Tennessee? Of petroleum? Of the Pacific coast?

529. What is said of copper? Describe its discovery.

530. How did Rhode Island differ from other States in regard to the right of voting? What attempt was made to change this? What was it called, and why? What were its results?

given, in almost all the States, to all men over 21 years of age. Rhode Island, however, still confined the right of voting to those who owned a certain amount of property. This, and some other features of the government, were very unsatisfactory to many of the people; and in 1842 an attempt was made to change these features of the government by force. The attempt was called the *Dorr Rebellion*, from the name of its leader. It was put down by the State government, and its leader was imprisoned for a time; but most of its objects were accomplished peaceably within a few years.

531. The Anti-Renters.—The descendants of the old Dutch “patroons” (§ 116) still held their lands along the Hudson River, and refused to sell them. The rents were low; but the tenants wished to buy and own their lands, the leases of which had come down to them from their fathers. About 1844, many of the tenants refused to pay rent any longer; and there were so many disturbances that the governor of New York was obliged to call out the militia to restore order. Most of the “patroon lands” were then gradually sold to the tenants, and the great estates exist no longer.

532. The Presidential Election in 1844 turned on the proposed annexation of Texas (§ 523). For President and Vice-President, the Whigs nominated Clay (§ 481), and Theodore Frelinghuysen, then of New York, both of whom were opposed to the annexation. It was expected that the Democrats would again nominate Van Buren (§ 495); but he was also opposed to the annexation, and the Southern Democrats succeeded in preventing his nomination. The Democrats then nominated James K. Polk (§ 535), and George M. Dallas, of Pennsylvania, who were in favor of annexation. Clay’s opposition to annexation was not quite hearty enough to suit the Abolitionists, who hated it; and they nominated candidates of their own. Clay did not lose many votes by this, but he lost enough to lose the great State of New York and the election. Polk and Dallas were elected.

531. What was the reason of the Anti-Rent troubles? How did they begin? How did they result?

532. What is said of the Presidential election of 1844? Who were the Whig candidates? Why was not Van Buren nominated? Who were the Democratic candidates? How did Clay lose the election? Who were elected?

There were 275 electoral votes, of which Polk and Dallas received 170, and Clay and Frelinghuysen 105. If New York's 36 votes had gone to Clay and Frelinghuysen, they would have been elected by 141 votes to 134 (§ 298).

533. The Result of the Election was the annexation of Texas. When Congress met in December after the election, it took the success of the Democrats as a verdict by the people in favor of annexation, and in the following spring it passed a resolution consenting to the annexation. Tyler at once sent it to Texas, whose government agreed to it, and in the following December the State of Texas was admitted to the Union (§ 541). Texas was the last slave-State admitted to the Union; but from the time of her admission there was hardly any peace on the subject of slavery until slavery was abolished in 1865.

534. The Leading Events of Harrison's and Tyler's administrations were as follows:

1841-45: Harrison's and Tyler's terms.....	§ 513
1841: Death of Harrison, and succession of Tyler....	514
Tyler and the Whigs quarrel	516
1842: New tariff act passed.....	517
Treaty with Great Britain.....	518
The Dorr Rebellion.....	530
1844: The <i>Princeton</i> explosion.....	526
The first electric telegraph.....	527
Copper discovered in Michigan.....	529
Anti-Rent troubles in New York.....	531
1845: Florida admitted to the Union.....	525
Texas annexed to the United States.....	533

SUPPLEMENTARY QUESTIONS.

Locations.—Locate the Rocky Mountains; the Territory of Idaho; the Territory of Washington; the State of Oregon; the State of Texas; Houston, Texas; the State of Florida; the Potomac River; Baltimore, Md.; Washington, D. C.; Lake Superior; the State of Rhode Island; the Hudson River.

REVIEW.—Give the years in which Harrison's and Tyler's terms began and ended. The year of Harrison's death. The year of the extradition and boundary treaty with Great Britain. The year of the first electric-telegraph line. The year of the annexation of Texas to the United States.

533. What was the result of the election? How did the annexation of Texas take place? What is said of slavery after the admission of Texas?

534. What were the years in which Harrison's and Tyler's terms began and ended? The leading events of 1841? Of 1842? Of 1844? Of 1845?

CHAPTER XII.

POLK'S ADMINISTRATION: 1845-9.

JAMES K. POLK, Tenn., President.

GEORGE M. DALLAS, Penn., Vice-President.

535. James K. Polk was born in North Carolina in 1795, and removed to Tennessee in 1806. Here he studied law, became a Democratic Representative in Congress, 1825-39, and governor, 1839-43. He was elected President in 1844 by the Democrats, and served one term. He died in 1849, a little more than three months after leaving office.

(1) INTERNAL AFFAIRS.

536. Discoveries and Inventions were numerous during this period. One of the most important was the sewing-machine, for which a patent was taken out by Elias Howe, of Massachusetts (1846). It has since been improved, and has made household life and work far easier than when all sewing was done by hand. Another great step was the use of ether to produce unconsciousness during surgical operations, by Dr. Morton, of Boston, in 1846.



JAMES K. POLK.

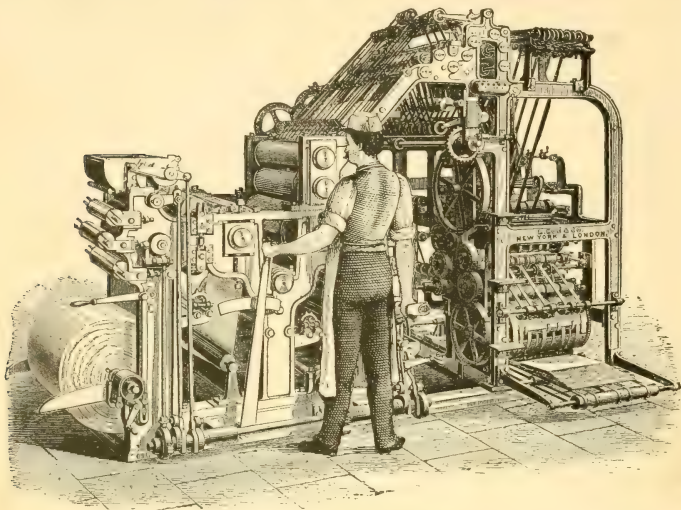
537. Newspapers.—R. M. Hoe, of New York, patented his cylinder printing-press (1847): it, with its improvements, has made

535. What were the leading events in the life of Polk?

536. What is said of discoveries and inventions? Of the sewing-machine? Of the use of ether?

537. What is said of the cylinder printing-press? Of press associations?

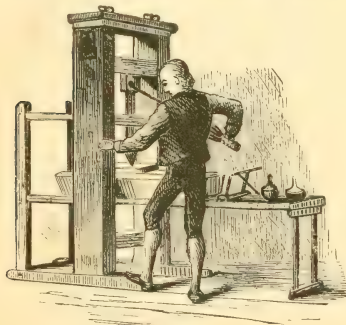
it possible to print the enormous number of copies issued by the newspapers of the present day. It will now print a 4-page news-



THE HOE PRINTING-MACHINE.

paper at the rate of seventy thousand per hour, including cutting them apart and folding them. A press association was also

formed in New York City (1849): its business was to gather news for all the newspapers belonging to it. There are now a number of such associations in the country.



ANCIENT HAND PRINTING-PRESS.

at Washington (1846), by a legacy left to the United States by

538. Education.—A naval school was formed at Annapolis (1845); before that time, the officers of the navy had received their training on board ship. The Smithsonian Institution was founded

James Smithson, an Englishman. Its purpose is to aid in increasing knowledge; and it has done so by forming valuable museums, and by printing and issuing to the people many valuable books and papers on subjects which are of special importance, but would involve great expense and no profit for publishers.

The plan of the Smithsonian Institution was the work of John Quincy Adams.

539. The Department of the Interior was organized as one of the departments of the government (§ 301). The country had increased very much in wealth; and the government business relating to the country itself had become so large that the departments of State and the Treasury were no longer well fitted to attend to it. It was therefore determined to form this new department for that purpose.

540. In Political Affairs, the Democrats had obtained entire control of the government by the election of 1844. In 1846, they re-established the Sub-Treasury system (§ 515), and it has remained in force ever since. In the same year, the last remnant of the "American System" (§ 441) was swept away. A new tariff act was passed, which paid no attention to the protection of manufactures, and aimed only to raise revenue for the government. This system remained in force until 1861, when protection was again begun (§ 754).

541. Texas was admitted to the Union in 1845.

Texas had been a part of Mexico (§§ 521, 522); and it had been annexed to the United States, after its successful rebellion from Mexico (§ 533). It was now admitted as a State. It is larger than any foreign country, excepting Russia; larger than the whole of Austria, of Germany, of France, or of Sweden. It about equals in size the combined States of New Jersey, Pennsylvania, Delaware, Maryland, Virginia, West Virginia, North Carolina, South Carolina, and Georgia. The so-called Staked Plain, in the northwest, is poorly watered, but the rest of the State is excellent for grazing and agricultural industries. It is also rich in copper and other minerals. Its population has increased from 212,592 in 1850 to 1,591,749 in 1880. The



SEAL OF TEXAS.

539. What new department was organized? Why had it become necessary?

540. What party now controlled the government? What is said of the Sub-Treasury system? Of the tariff of 1846?

541. What State was admitted in 1845?

State and its cities are lately growing very rapidly. The population of the State nearly doubled in the ten years 1870-80.

542. Iowa was admitted to the Union in 1846.

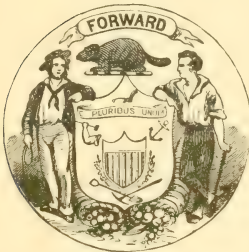
Iowa was a part of the Louisiana purchase (§ 332), and was the fourth State formed from it. There are some lead-mines in the eastern part of the State, and here a French Canadian named Dubuque formed a little settlement in 1788. It soon disappeared, and settlement did not begin again until after the Black Hawk war in 1832 (§ 471). In 1833, the former settlement at Dubuque was renewed by settlers from Illinois, and a new settlement was formed at Burlington. Population then increased with wonderful rapidity: it has increased from 43,112 in 1840 to 1,624,615 in 1880. Iowa has few forests or minerals: her wealth is in her wonderfully fertile soil, and in the high intelligence of her people. In forty years these have built up one of the most prosperous States of the Union.



SEAL OF IOWA.

543. Wisconsin was admitted to the Union in 1848.

Wisconsin was the fifth and last State formed from the old Northwest Territory (§ 294). Some French settlements had been made within its territory about 200 years before (§ 140); but they were not important. The first real settlement began after the Black Hawk war in 1832 (§ 471). Population has since increased from 30,945 in 1840 to 1,315,497 in 1880. Milwaukee is one of the great cities of the Union, containing 115,587 persons in 1880. The people of the State are mainly engaged in agriculture and lumbering; but the State is also rich in copper and lead, and has many important manufactures.



SEAL OF WISCONSIN.

544. The Oregon Country was secured to the United States in 1846, by a treaty with Great Britain, which fixed the boundary between British America and the United States, west of the Rocky Mountains, as at present. The United States had claimed some territory north of this line as far as Alaska, latitude $54^{\circ} 40'$; and Great Britain had claimed the territory south of this line to the Columbia River. A large party in the United States preferred war with Great Britain to giving up the American claim: they demanded "Fifty-four Forty or Fight." But by this

542. What State was admitted in 1846?

543. What State was admitted in 1848?

544. How was the Oregon Country secured to the United States?

treaty both Great Britain and the United States now gave up part of their claims, and took a middle line as the boundary.

There was some further dispute as to the course of the northern boundary-line after it reached the Pacific inlets; but this was settled by another treaty in 1871 (§ 857).

(2) ORIGIN OF THE MEXICAN WAR.

545. Texas was still claimed by Mexico as a part of her territory; and she was naturally displeased when, without her consent, Texas was annexed to the United States. Nevertheless, she showed no signs of intention to make war, and some signs of a disposition to settle the matter by treaty. Before this could be done, steps were taken which made war unavoidable.

546. The Western Boundary of Texas was unsettled. Mexico asserted that it was the Nueces River; Texas, that it was the Rio Grande. Between the Nueces and the Rio Grande was a strip of territory which was claimed by both parties; and in this was the origin of the Mexican war. Early in 1846, General Taylor, who commanded in Texas, was ordered by President Polk to take possession of the disputed territory. Taylor crossed the Nueces at Corpus Christi, marched his army to the Rio Grande, and took post at Brownsville (then called Fort Brown).

547. The First Bloodshed.—Taylor found that Mexican troops were crossing the Rio Grande; and he sent a scouting party of dragoons, under Captain Thornton, up the river from Brownsville. Thornton's party was surprised and captured by a superior force of Mexicans. Several men were killed and wounded, so that this was the first bloodshed of the war.

548. Palo Alto.—So many Mexicans had now crossed the river that Taylor moved back toward the Nueces River, with about 2,000 men, to secure a part of his supplies. Having made everything secure, he set out on his return to Brownsville. On his road he met the Mexican army, three times his own number, at Palo Alto, near Brownsville, and beat them after a whole afternoon's battle.

545. What was the feeling in Mexico in regard to the annexation of Texas? Why was not the difficulty settled by treaty?

546. What boundary of Texas was unsettled? What was the dispute in regard to it? What orders were given to Taylor? What did he do?

547. Why was a scouting party sent out? What was its result?

548. What was Taylor's next movement? Describe the battle of Palo Alto.

549. Resaca de la Palma.—The next morning, Taylor again set out for Brownsville, and found the Mexicans strongly posted behind a ravine called Resaca de la Palma. He attacked them again, beat them, and this time drove them across the Rio Grande into Mexico. He followed leisurely across the river, took possession of Matamoras, and there waited for reinforcements (§557).



OPERATIONS IN
NORTHEASTERN MEXICO.

It is only fair to notice that the Mexicans were under great disadvantages throughout the war, though they were themselves to blame for them. Their men were untrained; their arms and equipments were bad; their government was inefficient, and had little money; and their generals were usually ignorant and worthless. But, even with this admission, the manner in which the armies of

the United States constantly defeated superior numbers throughout the war must be considered remarkable.

550. War Declared.—As soon as the news of the capture of Thornton's scouting party (§547) reached Washington, the President sent it to Congress for consideration. Congress declared that war "existed by the act of the Republic of Mexico," May 13, 1846. Money was appropriated in abundance, and the President was authorized to accept 50,000 volunteers. The war excitement rose high in the country, and over 200,000 volunteers offered their services.

The date usually given for the declaration, May 11, is wrong.

551. The Whigs opposed the declaration of war, for they believed that the war existed by the act of President Polk, not of the Republic of Mexico. But they voted for the appropriations, because they considered that the American troops had been sent into danger by the President, and must be rescued. In New England, there were hardly any volunteers, and the war was looked on with great dislike.

SUPPLEMENTARY QUESTIONS.

Locations.—Locate the State of Texas; the State of Iowa; the State of Wisconsin; the Nueces River, Tex.; Corpus Christi, Tex.; the Rio Grande; Brownsville, Tex.; Matamoras, Mexico.

549. Describe the battle of Resaca de la Palma. What is said of Taylor's pursuit?

550. Why was war declared? How was war declared? What steps were taken to carry it on?

551. Why did the Whigs oppose the war? Why did they vote for appropriations? What was the feeling in New England?

REVIEW.—Give the year of the admission of Texas. Of Iowa. Of Wisconsin. Between what rivers was the disputed territory which brought on the war with Mexico? Who was the first American commander? What was his first battle? His second battle? In what year were these battles fought, and war declared?

(3) OPERATIONS ON THE PACIFIC.

552. The Mexican Territory, at the opening of the war, included what are now the States of California and Nevada, the Territories of Utah, Arizona, and New Mexico, and parts of Colorado and Wyoming. Mexico had hardly done anything to settle this territory, which was little more than a wilderness. No one suspected that it contained a wealth of gold, silver, and other minerals; but it was known to be fertile, and it contained the finest harbor on the coast, San Francisco Bay. When war became probable, preparations were made to conquer it, by sending a fleet to the Pacific coast.

553. California was conquered in the summer of 1846 by the fleet under Commodores Sloat and Stockton, aided by Frémont, who had moved into California from his explorations in Oregon (§ 519). The towns of San Francisco, Monterey, and Los Angeles were captured with little resistance; and before the end of the year all California was under American control. The Mexicans rose once in revolt, but were finally overthrown, early in 1847, in the battle of San Gabriel, near Los Angeles.

554. New Mexico was conquered, during the same summer, by an overland expedition from Fort Leavenworth (now the city of Leavenworth), under General S. W. Kearney. Kearney, with a little army of about 1,800 men, crossed the plains, captured Santa Fé, and conquered New Mexico without a battle. He then left the army, and set off for California, leaving Colonel Doniphan in command.

555. Doniphan's March.—Doniphan left a force at Santa Fé to hold New Mexico, and moved south with the rest of his force

552. What part of the present United States then belonged to Mexico? What was the condition of the territory? Why was it desired by the United States?

553. How was California conquered? What were its principal towns? What was the final battle.

554. How was New Mexico conquered? Give an account of Kearney's march. Of his subsequent movements.

555. Give an account of Doniphan's march into Mexico. Of the discharge of his troops.

into Mexico. Two sharp and successful battles against superior numbers gave him possession of the city of Chihuahua and the country around it. But the time for which his men were enlisted was over, and he could advance no farther. He therefore turned aside into Texas, and thence to New Orleans, where he discharged his troops.

556. Acquisition of Territory.—The result of these movements was that all the territory named above (§ 552) was in possession of the United States. It was believed in the United States that Americans could make a far better use of all this territory than the Mexicans had ever done; and that it would be an excellent thing for the territory and for the United States if the conquest should be retained. It was therefore decided to keep it at the end of the war, if possible, but to pay Mexico for it (§ 572). All the following battles of the war were fought in Mexico, for the purpose of keeping the Mexicans away from the conquered territory, and forcing them to make a peace.

SUPPLEMENTARY QUESTIONS.

Locations.—Locate the State of California; the State of Nevada; the Territory of Utah; the Territory of Arizona; the Territory of New Mexico; San Francisco, Cal.; Monterey, Cal.; Los Angeles, Cal.; Leavenworth, Kan.; Santa Fé, N. M.; Chihuahua, Mex.; New Orleans, La.

REVIEW.—Give the year in which the Pacific territory of Mexico was conquered. Name the States which have since been formed out of it. The Territories.

(4) OPERATIONS IN NORTHERN MEXICO.

557. Monterey.—In the autumn of 1846, Taylor, with about 6,000 men, moved forward into Mexico from Matamoras (§ 549). The main Mexican force, nearly twice as large as Taylor's, took refuge in Monterey, a city which was very difficult to attack and strongly fortified. The Americans were obliged to storm the walls, and then to carry on a desperate struggle within the town. Many of the streets had to be cleared of the enemy by fighting from house to house, or by breaking down the walls between the houses,

556. What was the result of these movements? Why was it desired to retain it? What was decided? What is said of the remaining battles of the war?

557. What was Taylor's next movement? Where did the Mexican army take refuge? What is said of Monterey? Of the battle which took place? What was its result? What reinforcement did Taylor receive?

for the streets were barricaded or commanded by artillery. The work was done in four days, and the Mexican army surrendered. At Monterey, Taylor was joined by General Wool, with 3,000 men. They had set out from San Antonio, in Texas, to attack Chihuahua; but the expedition had been given up.

558. Taylor's Position became very unsafe before the end of the year. He had pressed on beyond Monterey as far as Saltillo, when many of his best men and officers were taken from him to strengthen General Scott in central Mexico (§ 561). He then had less than 5,000 men, most of them new recruits and poorly disciplined, and was forced to give up any farther advance. Santa Anna (§ 522) was now again at the head of the Mexican Government; and he seized this opportunity to march against Taylor with over 20,000 men. In spite of the tremendous odds against him, Taylor marched toward his enemy until he found a battleground that suited him at Buena Vista, and there waited. The Mexican army reached him, February 22, 1847, and battle was joined next day.

559. Buena Vista.—Taylor had placed his army at the upper end of a long and narrow pass in the mountains, with high cliffs on one side and deep ravines on the other, so that the Mexicans could not pass him, but must attack him in front. All day long the Mexicans charged up the pass; but their charges were beaten steadily back, and at nightfall they hastily retreated.

560. Northeastern Mexico was thus left in the hands of the Americans, and there was no further serious fighting in that quarter. Taylor soon afterward returned to the United States, where he was honored as the hero of the war, and was elected President the next year (§ 579).

SUPPLEMENTARY QUESTIONS.

Locations.—Locate Matamoras, Mex. (§ 549); Monterey; Saltillo; Buena Vista.

REVIEW.—What was the year of the battle of Monterey? Of the battle of Buena Vista? Who was the American commander in both?

558. How far did Taylor advance? Why was his advance stopped? What was done by Santa Anna? How did Taylor prepare to receive him? When did the armies meet?

559. What position had Taylor taken? Describe the battle.

560. What was the result of the battle? What is said of Taylor?

(5) OPERATIONS IN CENTRAL MEXICO.

561. A Change of Plan had been decided upon by the authorities at Washington. General Scott was to be sent with a selected force, in more than 150 vessels, to attack Vera Cruz, from which there was the shortest road from the coast to the city of Mexico. If he could capture the capital, he was to hold it until the Mexicans were willing to make peace. All the other American armies were merely to hold what they had already gained. All the fighting by Scott's army, which ended the war, took place in 1847.

562. Winfield Scott was born in Virginia in 1786. He obtained a



WINFIELD SCOTT.

commission as captain in the army in 1809, and in the war of 1812 fought his way rapidly up to the rank of major-general. He acted as peace-maker during the nullification troubles at Charleston (§ 489), and again during the quarrel between Maine and the British provinces (§ 509). His services in the Mexican war are given in the following sections. The Whigs nominated him for the Presidency in 1852, but he was defeated. In 1859, he was made lieutenant-general, and he commanded the armies of

the United States until October, 1861 (§ 682). He died at West Point in 1866.

563. Vera Cruz was attacked early in March, 1847. Scott landed before the city, with 12,000 men; and, after a bombardment of nine days, the city and its great fort of San Juan de Ulloa, the strongest in Mexico, surrendered. The army prepared for an immediate march toward Mexico, for the coast of Vera Cruz was so hot and sickly that it would have been dangerous for an army to remain there during the summer months. The navy took pos-

561. What change of plan had been made? What was to be done with the capital? What were the other American armies to do?

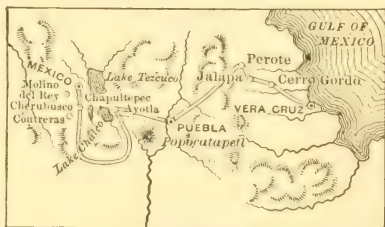
562. What were the leading events in the life of Scott?

563. Describe the capture of Vera Cruz. What was then done by the army? By the navy?

session of the Mexican ports on the coast, and the duties were collected for the benefit of the United States.

564. Cerro Gordo.—Soon after leaving Vera Cruz, the road to Mexico begins to rise, and abounds in mountains and narrow passes, which are natural fortifications. At one of these passes, called Cerro Gordo, near Jalapa, Santa Anna had collected an army of about 12,000 men. Early in April, Scott's army, now numbering but 9,000 men, reached Cerro Gordo, and attacked it. The battle was a complete victory for the Americans: five Mexican generals and 3,000 prisoners were captured, and the rest of the Mexicans were pushed into headlong retreat. Santa Anna narrowly escaped, losing his cork leg in the chase.

565. The March to Mexico met with little further resistance until August. Scott passed on through Jalapa to Puebla. As this was high, cool, and more healthy ground, he kept his army here during the summer, waiting for reinforcements. Santa Anna, also, was busily collecting troops for the final struggle.



SCOTT'S MARCH TO MEXICO.

566. The Valley of Mexico.—In August, with 11,000 men, Scott again set out, and reached the edge of the valley of Mexico without a battle. Before him lay the valley, like a great bowl sunk into the mountains. In the middle of it was Mexico, a city of 200,000 inhabitants, surrounded by strong walls and extensive lakes; and before reaching it, the little American army was to capture many strongholds, and disperse a Mexican army of three times its own number. So many forts had been built on the regular roads that the Americans cut a new road around them for themselves, and came into the valley at an undefended point.

564. What is the nature of the road from Vera Cruz to Mexico? Where had Santa Anna collected an army? Describe the battle of Cerro Gordo. What became of Santa Anna?

565. What is said of the march to Puebla? Of the halt there? Of Santa Anna's preparations?

566. What is said of the march to Mexico? Of the valley of Mexico? What difficulties were in the way of the Americans? How did they avoid a part of them?

567. A Day of Victories.—Scott's army moved down the mountain-side to a point about ten miles from the city. Here the fighting began, and in a single day (August 20) five victories were won. (1) Before sunrise the main American force stormed the fortified camp of Contreras, taking but 17 minutes to do the work. (2) A little later in the day, another division stormed the fortified village of San Antonio. (3) About the same time, one division stormed one of the fortified heights of Cherubusco, and (4) another division stormed the other. (5) While these assaults were being made, Santa Anna moved out of the city to assist his garrisons. The American reserve force attacked him, beat him, and chased him up to the walls of the city. Before night, almost the whole Mexican force was inside of the city of Mexico.

568. Negotiations for peace were now proposed by Santa Anna, and Scott agreed. They went on for three weeks, until Scott found that Santa Anna was only using the time to strengthen the defences of the city. He then broke off negotiations, and renewed the war.

569. Chapultepec, a strong castle perched on the top of a very steep hill, was now the principal Mexican stronghold outside of the city. Below it was a smaller fortification called Molino del Rey, which was first captured. Nearly a week afterward, the grand assault was made on Chapultepec. The Americans had to climb the cliff, and then use scaling-ladders to get into the windows of the castle. The Mexicans resisted bravely, and even attempted to blow up the castle with every one in it; but the men who were to light the trains were shot down as the Americans swarmed in, and Chapultepec was captured. Immediately afterward, the whole American army moved around to a side of the city where no attack had been expected; and before night it had won two of the gates, and was inside of the city.

570. Capture of Mexico.—During the night, Santa Anna fled from the city with the remainder of his army; and in the morning of September 14, 1847, Scott's army, now reduced to 6,000

567. When did the fighting begin? What is said of the first victory, at Contreras? Of the second, at San Antonio? Of the third and fourth, at Cherubusco? Of the fifth, over Santa Anna?

568. What is said of Santa Anna's peace negotiations?

569. What is said of Chapultepec? Of Molino del Rey, below it? Describe the capture of Chapultepec. The attack on the city.

570. What is said of the capture of Mexico?

men, marched through the main street, and raised the flag of the United States over the national palace.

571. The End of the War was reached by the fall of Mexico. There was some fighting by irregular Mexican troops, called guerrillas; and the American sick and wounded at Puebla beat off a Mexican force which tried to besiege them. But the real fighting of the war was over, and the only difficulty was to arrange the terms of peace.

SUPPLEMENTARY QUESTIONS.

Locations.—Locate Vera Cruz, Mex.; Jalapa; Puebla; Mexico.

REVIEW.—Who commanded the American army in central Mexico? In what year did the operations take place? What was the first city captured? What was the first battle fought on the road? What were the two principal cities captured on the road? What battle led to the capture of Mexico?

(6) PEACE.

572. Conditions of Peace were not easy to arrange. The United States insisted that Mexico should give up her northern territory (§ 552), as a punishment for having provoked the war. Mexico was very unwilling to agree, and it was not until February, 1848, that a new Mexican government consented to make peace on these terms.

573. The Treaty of Peace was called the treaty of Guadalupe Hidalgo, from the little town in which it was agreed upon. Mexico was to receive \$15,000,000 in return for the ceded territory, and her debts of \$3,000,000, due to American citizens, were to be paid for her. The Senate of the United States ratified the treaty; peace was restored; and the American armies evacuated Mexico.

574. Territorial Additions.—The annexation of Texas, the cession by Mexico, and the Gadsden purchase, south of the Gila River, in 1853, added 967,451 square miles to the United States. This was more than the area of the United States in 1783, and almost as much as the Louisiana purchase (§ 332). The additions gave the United States the form and boundaries which are still retained, with the exception of the purchase of Alaska in 1867 (§ 831). The territorial growth of the United States may be divided into four great divisions: (1) the United States,

571. What further fighting took place? What was the only difficulty?

572. What conditions of peace were offered by the United States? When did Mexico accept them?

573. Why was the treaty of Guadalupe Hidalgo so named? What was Mexico to receive? How was peace restored?

574. What were the three territorial additions at this time? How did they compare with other additions? What are the four great divisions of territorial growth? How do they compare in size?

as left by the Revolution, altogether east of the Mississippi, with Florida added in 1819; (2) Louisiana, west of the Mississippi, with Oregon added in 1846; (3) Texas and the Mexican cessions; and (4) Alaska. Of these, the second was the largest, the third next, the first next, and the fourth smallest.

575. Slavery.—The Mexican cession has evidently been an excellent thing for the ceded territory; but at first it gave the United States so much trouble that it was seriously proposed by many persons to beg Mexico to take it back again. It brought up again the question of slavery in the Territories, which had been settled with so much difficulty in 1820 (§ 426). The question was now to be settled over again as to this new territory; and the two sections were now so much stronger, and so much more in earnest, that a settlement was much more difficult than in 1820.

576. The Two Sections.—The South demanded that slavery should be permitted in the new territory, since Southern immigrants would not be able to settle there unless they were allowed to take their slaves with them. The North demanded that slavery should be forbidden, since the territory was already free by Mexican law (§ 521), and any introduction of slavery would keep free-State immigrants from going thither. There was no middle ground: free labor and slave-labor could not use the same territory. It was proposed by some to divide the territory by the Missouri Compromise line, the parallel of $36^{\circ} 30'$, which would reach the Pacific at about the middle of California; and to forbid slavery north of the line, and allow slavery south of it. Neither party was willing to agree to this sacrifice.

577. The Wilmot Proviso.—In 1846, when it was first suggested to make Mexico give up territory, David Wilmot, a member of Congress from Pennsylvania, introduced that which was called from him the Wilmot Proviso. It appropriated money to buy the territory, *provided* that slavery should not be allowed in it. The South proved to be opposed to it; it never became law; and the new territory was acquired without it. Thus, when this administration ended, the United States owned a vast amount of new

575. What was proposed, and why? What difficulty was brought up by the ceded territory? Why was it harder to settle it than in 1820?

576. What did the South demand? What did the North demand? Was there any middle ground? What unsuccessful proposal was made?

577. What was the origin of the Wilmot Proviso? What was its nature? What became of it? In what position did this result leave the United States?

territory, without being able to decide whether slavery was to be allowed or forbidden in it.

578. The Free-Soil Party came into existence in 1848. It was composed of former Democrats and Whigs who supported the Wilmot Proviso, together with the Abolitionists, or Liberty party (§ 511). The old parties, the Democrats and the Whigs, had Southern members whom they were afraid of losing, and they both refused to support the Wilmot Proviso. Thus the "Free-soilers" were compelled to form a new party of their own.

579. The Presidential Election in 1848 was decided by the new party. The Democratic candidates were Lewis Cass, of Michigan, for President, and William O. Butler, of Kentucky, for Vice-President. The Whig candidates were General Zachary Taylor and Millard Fillmore (§ 583). Neither of these parties said anything about slavery in the new territory. The Free-soilers proposed to forbid slavery in the new territory, and nominated ex-President Van Buren (§ 495), and Charles Francis Adams, of Massachusetts. The vote for the Free-soil candidates was not very large, but it decided the Presidential election, as in 1844 (§ 532). It took so many votes from the Democrats in New York as to give the vote of that great State to the Whigs; and Taylor and Fillmore were elected.

The electoral votes were 163 for Taylor and Fillmore to 127 for Cass and Butler (§ 298). If New York's 36 votes had been given to Cass and Butler, they would have been elected by 163 votes to 127.

580. California, lately conquered from Mexico, proved to be a treasure-house. Gold was discovered on the Sacramento River, early in 1848, just before the treaty with Mexico was agreed upon (§ 572). While a saw-mill and mill-dam were being constructed, some shining particles were found in the sand. They proved to be gold, and it was soon found that the soil was rich in the metal. No such gold-mines had been seen in the world before. Other mines had produced a little gold with a great deal of labor: these

578. What new party came into existence in 1848? Who composed it? Why did they form a new party?

579. How was the Presidential election in 1848 decided? Who were the Democratic candidates? The Whig candidates? In what respect were these two parties alike? What did the Free-soilers propose? Who were their candidates? How did they influence the election? Who were elected?

580. What is said of the discovery of gold in California? How was it discovered? What was the nature of the mines? What excitement did they cause in California?

gave a great deal of gold with little labor. The few Americans in California crowded to the "diggings;" and lucky finders worked for a few weeks or months, and then went home rich, or spent their fortunes in San Francisco or New York.

581. The Gold-Fever.—The news of the discovery was hardly believed at first in the older settled parts of the country; but early in 1849, when California gold was brought to the mint at Philadelphia, and was pronounced genuine, a great excitement broke out. Men from all parts of the country flocked to California: they went by steamer to the Isthmus of Panama, crossed it, and sailed up the coast to Francisco; they bought sailing-vessels, and went around Cape Horn; they travelled overland across the plains. The fever was not confined to the United States, but spread to Europe. Within two years there were 100,000 persons in California, and San Francisco was a rapidly growing city of 20,000 inhabitants.

SUPPLEMENTARY QUESTIONS.

Locations.—(School-map locations in *italics*.)—Locate the Sacramento River, Cal.; the *Isthmus of Panama*; *Cape Horn*; San Francisco, Cal.

REVIEW.—Give the years in which Polk's administration began and ended. The name of the Vice-President. The year of the treaty of peace. What present States and Territories were ceded by Mexico (§ 552). What question was brought up for settlement by the cession? Give the year of the first introduction of the Wilmot Proviso. The year of the discovery of gold in California.

582. The Leading Events of Polk's administration were as follows:

1845-9: Polk's Term of Office	§ 535
1845: Texas admitted to the Union	541
1846: Iowa admitted to the Union	542
Sewing-machine invented	536
Smithsonian Institution founded	538
Sub-Treasury system re-established	540
New tariff act passed	540
Treaty with Great Britain	544
War declared against Mexico (May 13)	550
Battle of Palo Alto (May 8)	548
Battle of Resaca de la Palma (May 9)	549
Conquest of California (summer)	553

581. How was the news received elsewhere? What excitement followed? What was the effect on the population of California?

582. What were the years in which Polk's term began and ended? What was the leading event of 1845? The leading civil events of 1846? The leading events of the war in 1846? The leading events of the war in 1847? The leading events of 1848? Of 1849?

1846:	Conquest of New Mexico (summer).....	§ 554
	Battle of Monterey (September 24).....	557
1847:	Battle of Buena Vista (February 23).....	559
	Capture of Vera Cruz (March 27).....	563
	Battle of Cerro Gordo (April 18).....	564
	Battle of Contreras (August 20).....	567
	Battle of Chapultepec (September 13).....	569
	Capture of Mexico (September 14).....	570
1848:	Gold discovered in California (January 19)....	580
	Treaty of peace signed with Mexico (Feb. 2)..	572
	Wisconsin admitted to the Union.....	543
1849:	The "gold-fever".....	581

CHAPTER XIII.

TAYLOR'S AND FILLMORE'S ADMINISTRATIONS: 1849-53.

ZACHARY TAYLOR, La., Pres.

MILLARD FILLMORE, N. Y., Vice-Pres. and Pres.

583. Zachary Taylor was born in Virginia in 1784. He was appointed a lieutenant in the army in 1808, and rose to the rank of major in the war of 1812. He distinguished himself in the Black Hawk and Semi-



ZACHARY TAYLOR.



MILLARD FILLMORE.

nole wars (§ 471), and was made major-general. In 1841, he fixed his home at Baton Rouge, La. His services in the Mexican war have already been stated (§§ 548, 559). It was thought in the United States that Taylor had not been fairly treated by the government; and, when the Whigs nominated him for the Presidency, he was elected. He died in 1850.

Millard Fillmore, of New York, was born in 1800. He became a lawyer, and was a Whig Representative in Congress, 1833-5 and 1837-43. In 1847, he was elected Comptroller of New York State. He was elected Vice-President in 1848, and succeeded to the Presidency when

583. What were the leading events in the life of Taylor? Of Fillmore?

Taylor died, in 1850. In 1856, he was nominated for the Presidency by the American party, but was defeated. He died at Buffalo, N. Y., in 1874.

584. Slavery in the Territories had now become a question which could no longer be put off; and almost all the political interest of this administration centres in the manner in which this question was settled for the time.

585. The Condition of California had become alarming. Congress had not been able to establish any government for it, because it could not be decided whether slavery was to be allowed or forbidden in it (§ 577). Among the immigrants there were thieves and cut-throats from every part of the world, and they made California unbearably lawless. In the summer of 1849, the people took the matter into their own hands, formed a State government of their own, and applied to Congress for admission. Their constitution forbade slavery, and for this reason many Southern members were determined to resist the admission of the new State.



SEAL OF CALIFORNIA.

586. Other Difficulties.—Texas claimed a part of New Mexico, and was preparing to send armed men to enforce her claim. The North complained that the selling of slaves in the national capital was a national disgrace. The South complained that the laws for returning runaway slaves (§ 285) were disobeyed or resisted in the North. Most of the national difficulties were mixed up, in one way or other, with the matter of slavery.

587. Probable Danger.—Congress held its usual session in the winter of 1849–50, with a great deal of difficult work to do. For months the session went on; there was a torrent of talk; and nothing was done. Both sections were becoming angrier with the delay. There were new suggestions at the South of secession (§ 486), if slavery should be forbidden in California or in any of

584. What was the great political difficulty of this administration?

585. Why was there no government at first in California? What was the state of affairs there? What was done by the people? Why was the admission of the State resisted?

586. What was the claim of Texas? The complaint of the North? The complaint of the South? With what were most of these difficulties mixed up?

587. What was done by Congress? What was the feeling in the South? In the North? What was the danger?

the Territories. California began to be provoked by the delay in admitting her; and the North sympathized with her. It seemed possible that Congress would go on talking until some unexpected occurrence should plunge the country into worse difficulties.

588. The Omnibus Bill.—Clay (§ 481) was a great settler of difficulties of the kind. He had contrived the Missouri Compromise in 1820 (§ 426), and the compromise tariff in 1833 (§ 490). He was in the Senate at this time, and he contrived a third compromise, or settlement of difficulties. In May, 1850, all the matters above stated were referred to a committee of which he was chairman. This committee proposed a general plan of settlement, covering so many different measures that it was commonly called the Omnibus Bill. All its parts were passed and became laws in September; and they are called, together, the Compromise of 1850.

589. The Compromise of 1850 included five parts. (1) California was admitted without slavery (§ 590). (2) Texas was to receive \$10,000,000 for giving up her claims to New Mexico. (3) The rest of the Mexican cession, outside of California, was to be divided into two Territories, Utah (including Nevada) and New Mexico (including Arizona); and slavery was neither forbidden nor permitted in them (§ 613). (4) Slavery was still to be permitted in the District of Columbia, but there was to be no buying or selling of negroes. (5) A new fugitive-slave law was passed (§ 591).

590. California was thus admitted as a State in 1850.

California was conquered in 1846 (§ 553), and the first rush of population came from the discovery of gold in 1848 (§ 580). For a long time, California produced more gold every six months than all the rest of the United States had produced up to 1846; and, since 1848, has probably produced nearly as much gold as the world had in circulation in 1846. Since 1860, the agricultural resources of the State have been more attended to; and the gold production has not been so large as at first. The soil produces grain, vegetables, and fruits in large quantities and of fine quality and size; and the people are yearly turning more to their cultivation, which is more steadily profitable than gold-mining. The completion of the first Pacific Railroad (§ 864) joined the State firmly to the Eastern States, and has increased the State's wealth and growth. The population has increased from 92,597 in 1850 to 864,694 in 1880. San

588. What had Clay done already? What did he do now? How was the Omnibus Bill prepared? What was it called when it was passed?

589. What was the first point in the Compromise of 1850, as to California? The second, as to Texas? The third, as to the Territories? The fourth, as to the District of Columbia? The fifth, as to fugitive slaves?

590. What State was admitted in 1850?

Francisco is one of the great cities of the United States, having a population of 233,959 in 1880.

591. The Fugitive-Slave Law provided for the arrest of runaway slaves in the Northern States by United States officers. If a person was arrested as a runaway, his testimony was not to be taken; and for this reason there were cases of great cruelty, arrests and convictions of persons who probably never had been slaves. As soon as the law began to be enforced, it excited the only strong opposition that met any part of the Compromise of 1850. The Abolitionists had always considered slavery "a sin against God and a crime against man." Others, who had thought little about the matter, were brought to the same opinion by the cases of cruelty in the chase after runaway slaves in the North. Nothing had yet done so much to increase the number of anti-slavery men in the North as this new fugitive-slave law.

592. President Taylor died July 9, 1850, and Vice-President Fillmore became President instead of him.

593. A Change of Leaders marks this administration. During its four years, Clay, Webster, Calhoun, Polk, and Taylor died; and a number of less prominent leaders either died or left public life. There appeared in Congress a number of able anti-slavery leaders, the most prominent being Charles Sumner, of Massachusetts, William H. Seward, of New York, and Salmon P. Chase, of Ohio. There had been anti-slavery men in Congress before; but none of them, excepting John Quincy Adams and John P. Hale, of New Hampshire, were as able as these new men. There were new Southern leaders also, who were very warm in their support of slavery, Davis (§ 661) being the most prominent.

594. A Change of Parties also marks this administration. Many of the Northern Whigs were inclined to oppose slavery; and therefore many of the Southern Whigs began to leave their party, and vote and act with the Democrats. Stephens (§ 661) was the most prominent of these. The result was that the Whig party

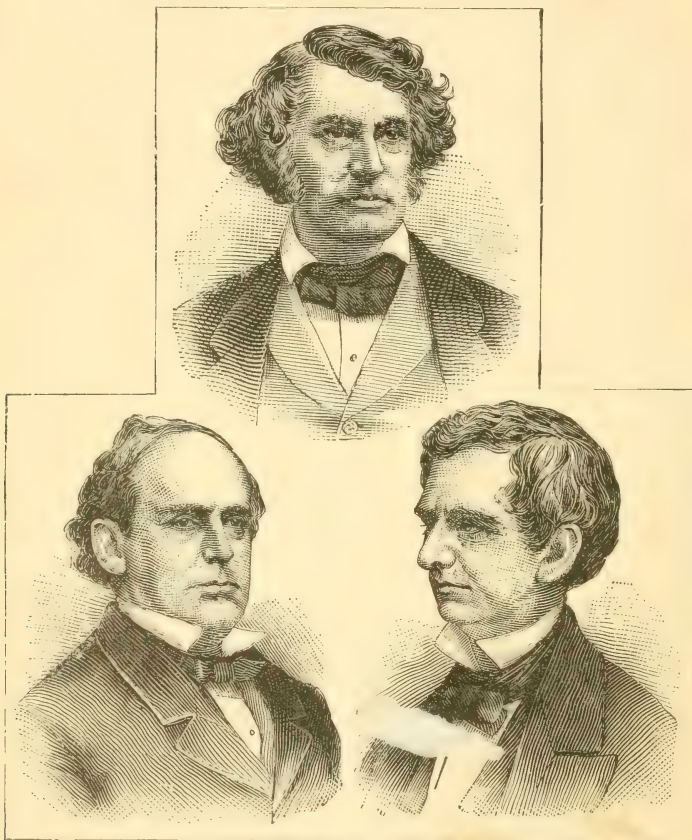
591. What were the provisions of the Fugitive-Slave Law? What was its worst provision? What change of opinion did it bring about? What was its general effect?

592. What is said of Taylor's death?

593. What change of leaders took place? What anti-slavery leaders appeared? What is said of anti-slavery leaders hitherto? Of Southern leaders?

594. How did the Northern and Southern Whigs separate? What was the result?

went all to pieces after the Presidential election of 1852 (§ 598); and for about two years there was really but one great party, the Democratic party.



SALMON P. CHASE.

CHARLES SUMNER.

WILLIAM H. SEWARD.

595. The Population of the United States in 1850 was 23,191,876, an increase of 6,000,000 since 1840 (§ 502). Railroads,

595. What increase of population took place? What is said of the prosperity of the country in other directions?

telegraphs, steamers, banks, and commerce were increasing as rapidly as the population. Prosperity was universal; but the only new direction it had taken was the gold production of California.

596. A Pacific Railroad, to connect California to the Eastern States, was evidently needed; but there were many difficulties in the way of it. Between Missouri and California the whole country was a wilderness, where railroad-building would be extremely expensive. Private persons could not build it without help from Congress; and Congress, in 1853, ordered surveys to be made, in order to find passes for the road through the Rocky Mountains. The work was not begun until nearly ten years later (§ 864).

597. The Maine Law, so called, was adopted by the State of Maine in 1851. It forbade the making or selling of intoxicating drinks within the State, except for medical purposes. It is still in force in Maine, and has been tried at various times, by other States, as a method of checking or abolishing the unbearable evils of drunkenness.

598. The Presidential Election in 1852 put an end to the Whig party. The Democratic candidates for President and Vice-President were Franklin Pierce (§ 600), and William R. King, of Alabama. The Whig candidates were General Winfield Scott (§ 562), and William A. Graham, of North Carolina. The Free-soil candidates were John P. Hale, of New Hampshire, and George W. Julian, of Indiana. The vote for the Free-soil candidates was less than in 1848. Many of the Northern Whigs disliked the Fugitive-Slave Law, and refused to vote because their convention approved it. Many of the Northern Whigs had left their party (§ 594). The Whigs lost votes on both sides, and Pierce and King were elected, carrying all but four States.

There were 254 electoral votes for Pierce and King, and 42 for Scott and Graham (§ 298). Some attempts were made to revive the Whig party, but they did not succeed. It was commonly said that the Whig party was killed by attempting to swallow the Fugitive-Slave Law.

596. What is said of a Pacific railroad? Of the difficulties in the way? What was done by Congress in 1853?

597. What was the Maine Law? What was its object?

598. What was the effect of the Presidential election in 1852? Who were the Democratic candidates? The Whig candidates? The Free-soil candidates? What is said of the Free-soil vote? How did the Whigs lose votes? Who were elected?

599. The Leading Events of Taylor's and Fillmore's administrations were as follows:

1849-53: Taylor's and Fillmore's Term.....	§ 583
1850: Death of Taylor, and succession of Fillmore....	592
Compromise of 1850.....	589
Admission of California.....	590
Fugitive-Slave Law passed.....	591
1851: The Maine Law passed.....	597
1853: Pacific Railroad surveys ordered	596

SUPPLEMENTARY QUESTIONS.

Locations.—Locate the State of California; Utah and Nevada (= Utah in 1850); New Mexico and Arizona (= New Mexico in 1850); San Francisco, Cal.; the State of Maine.

REVIEW.—Give the years in which Taylor's and Fillmore's administrations began and ended. The year of Taylor's death. The five parts of the Compromise of 1850.

599. What were the years in which Taylor's and Fillmore's terms began and ended? The leading events of 1850? Of 1851? Of 1853?

CHAPTER XIV.

PIERCE'S ADMINISTRATION: 1853-7.

FRANKLIN PIERCE, N. H., President.

WM. R. KING, Alabama, Vice-President.

600. Franklin Pierce, of New Hampshire, was born in 1804. He became a lawyer, and was elected Representative in Congress (Democratic), 1833-7, and United States Senator, 1837-42. At the outbreak of the Mexican war, he entered the army, and became brigadier-general. At the end of his term of the Presidency, he retired to private life, and died in 1868.



FRANKLIN PIERCE.

(1) INTERNAL AFFAIRS.

601. Exhibitions.—In 1851, there had been held at London a "World's Fair," the first of the great exhibitions of arts and manufactures which have since become so common. American inventions had taken a high place in it. In 1853, a similar exhibition was opened at the Crystal Palace, a large structure of glass and iron, on Reservoir Square, in New York City.

Railroads and steamers have made such exhibitions possible, and their present frequency shows that all parts of the world are growing nearer together.

602. Clearing-Houses.—The banking business in New York City had by this time grown so large that a clearing-house was opened there (1853). Its business is to balance daily the accounts of the different banks with one another, so as to avoid the trouble

600. What were the leading events in the life of Pierce?

601. What is said of the London Exhibition of 1851? Of the New York Exhibition of 1853?

602. What is said of the New York City Clearing-house? Of the growth of its business?

of paying large sums of money back and forth. Houses of this kind have since been opened in other cities; and the business of the New York City Clearing-house has grown to be the largest in the world.

In the clearing-house, each bank exchanges the checks it holds against other banks for their checks against it, paying or receiving only the difference in money. The business of the New York Clearing-house in 1880 was nearly \$39,000,000,000; that of the London Clearing-house in the same year, about \$21,000,000,000.

603. Roads and Bridges.—The condition of the ordinary roads of the country was now far better than it had been thirty years before; and it has been improving ever since. The growth of the railroad system had also forced the country to attend to the building of bridges, and particularly of suspension-bridges. A bridge of this kind had been thrown over the Niagara River with much difficulty in 1848. Since then they had increased in number; and in 1856 the first of them over the Mississippi River was erected at Minneapolis. The American suspension-bridges are now exceedingly numerous, and among the most beautiful of their class.

One of the most important, though not the largest, is that over the East River, between New York and Brooklyn, finished in 1883.

(2) FOREIGN AFFAIRS.

604. Naturalization.—A person born and living in a country owes obedience to its government, and is said to be one of its subjects. When he changes his residence to another country, and declares that he chooses that for his own in future, he is said to become its subject by naturalization, and then he ceases to owe obedience to the country in which he was born. This right of naturalization had always been asserted by the United States, and had been one of the causes of the war of 1812, as Great Britain would not admit that her subjects could become naturalized in the United States (§ 342). The growing power of the United States now made it possible to support the right effectively.

605. Martin Koszta was an Austrian subject by birth. He

603. What is said of the condition of roads? Of suspension-bridges? Of the bridge over the Niagara? Over the Mississippi? Of the present condition of American bridges?

604. What is meant by a subject by birth? By naturalization? What country had always asserted the right of naturalization? Why was it now able to support it effectively?

605. Who was Martin Koszta? How was he arrested? How was he released? What were the results?

had headed a rebellion in Austria, had been then taken steps to become a naturalized American. In 1853, the Austrians caught him in Asia Minor, and on board a frigate, claiming that he was still an Austrian. Thereupon a United States war-vessel ranged up to the Austrian vessel, threatened to fire on her, and compelled her to give Koszta up. Austria complained, but the American Government supported its officer and gave him a medal. Since then, foreign governments have not denied that their subjects might become American citizens by naturalization, and thus cease to owe obedience to their former governments.

606. Japan had hitherto refused to have any dealings with foreign nations. In 1854, Commodore M. C. Perry, with an American fleet, pushed his way into Japan, and induced its government to agree to a commercial treaty. Japan has since gone on rapidly in the road to an acceptance of our civilization.

607. Greytown, in Nicaragua, was bombarded in the same year for ill-treating an American vessel.

608. Filibustering Expeditions against the Spanish possessions in the West Indies were attempted during this period. Their object was to conquer Cuba, and then obtain its admission to the Union as a slave-State. Such expeditions are against the laws of the United States, and they had to be begun secretly. They were all failures, and many of their leaders were executed by the Spanish authorities. The American Government offered to buy Cuba from Spain, but Spain refused to sell it. There was some talk, also, of annexing the Sandwich Islands as a slave-State.

609. William Walker, a Southerner, began his filibustering expeditions against Central America during this period. They continued until 1860, when he was captured and shot by a Central American government.

610. The Ostend Circular.—In 1854, the three leading American ministers in Europe met at Ostend, in Belgium, and issued a circular, or general letter. It claimed that the possession of Cuba was a necessity for the United States. Many persons in Europe and America considered it a threat to attack Cuba, and blamed the ministers for issuing it.

606. Describe the opening of Japan to foreign commerce.

607. What is said of the bombardment of Greytown?

608. What is said of filibustering expeditions and their object? Were they successful? What offer was made to buy Cuba? What is said of the Sandwich Islands?

609. What is said of Walker's expeditions?

610. What is said of the Ostend circular?

SUPPLEMENTARY QUESTIONS.

Locations.—(School-map locations in *italics*.)—Locate *London, Eng.; Austria; Asia Minor; Japan; Cuba; the Sandwich Islands; Central America; Ostend, Belgium.*

(3) SLAVERY AND POLITICS.

611. Slavery had now split the great religious denominations, excepting the Episcopalians and Catholics, into Northern and Southern churches. It had split the Whig party into two parts (§ 594). It seemed to split everything it could reach. It had formed two sections (§ 425), which were every year becoming more opposed to each other, against the will of their people. Every one could see that there were signs of terrible danger to the country, though no one could see exactly from what quarter the danger was to come.

612. The American Party sprung up during this period, to take the place of the Whig party; but it only lived for a few years. Its members were sworn not to say anything of its proceedings, and they were therefore often called "Know Nothings." It tried to bring in a new question, instead of the dangerous question of slavery. Troubles in Europe had enormously increased the immigration into the United States, and many of the immigrants were very ignorant men. The American party wished to prevent foreign-born citizens from holding office, and from voting, except after a very long residence. It came to an end soon after the Presidential election of 1856 (§ 623).

613. The Democratic Party had been kept together in 1850 by the agreement that Congress should neither forbid nor permit slavery in the new Territories of Utah and New Mexico, but should leave their people to settle the matter (§ 589). In 1854, it became necessary to form Territorial governments for Kansas and Nebraska, for settlements were spreading to that quarter. In both of these Territories, Congress had "forever" forbidden slavery in 1820, when Missouri was admitted as a slave State (§ 426). But Stephen A. Douglas, of Illinois, and other new Democratic

611. What instances are given of the influence of slavery in splitting national organizations? In forming sections? What was the consequence?

612. What is said of the American party? Of its members? What were its objects? How did it come to an end?

613. How had the Democratic party been kept together in 1850? What new Territories were to be organized in 1854? What had been done as to slavery in them? What was the belief of Douglas?

leaders, thought that the Compromise of 1850 had changed all this, and that Congress was bound to act in the case of Kansas and Nebraska as it had done in the case of Utah and New Mexico.

614. Kansas-Nebraska Act. Douglas therefore put into the bill a declaration that Congress had had no right to forbid slavery in Kansas and Nebraska in 1820; that slavery was now neither forbidden nor allowed in those Territories; and that their people were to settle the matter. In this form the Kansas-Nebraska Act was passed, by the votes of Northern and Southern Democrats and Southern Whigs, and became law in 1854. It proved to be the coming source of danger, and there was thereafter no more peace on the subject of slavery; for it had reopened a question which had once been settled, but which could not now be settled again peaceably.

615. In the North there was more excitement and anger than had been caused by any previous action of Congress. People were reminded that slavery had been forbidden in Kansas and Nebraska as part of a bargain between the North and the South, and it was said that the South, having received its share in the admission of Missouri, had now broken its agreement as to the rest of the Louisiana purchase. It soon came to be believed that Southerners cared less for the Union, or for anything else, than they did for the extension of slavery; and the North began to unite against them.

616. The Republican Party.—At the first election of Congressmen after the passage of the Kansas-Nebraska Act, every one in the North who was opposed to the extension of slavery, whether he had been called a Democrat, a Whig, a Free-soiler, or an American, dropped his former party and voted for candidates opposed to the Kansas-Nebraska Act. At first they were called “Anti-Nebraska Men,” and under this name they elected, in the autumn of 1854, a majority of the House of Representatives for the next Congress. Before the new Congress met, they had taken

614. What declaration was put into the bill? How was the bill passed? What were the consequences?

615. What was the feeling in the North? What bargain was referred to? What was believed of the South?

616. What took place at the next election? What was the result of the election? What was the new party called? Who composed it? Did it extend to the South?

the name of the Republican party, which is still retained. The membership of the new party was mainly of former Northern Whigs, with a smaller number of former Democrats. It was confined to the Northern States, and had no members in Southern States, except in Missouri, among the German settlers, and in western Virginia, which had been largely settled by Ohio people.

617. In the South the feeling was as much astonishment as anger. People there were so accustomed to slavery that they could see no reason for this excitement in the North; and they concluded that it had been contrived by new men, who wanted only to get into power. They felt that the South was attacked without reason; and Southerners of all parties began to unite against the North as against a common enemy.

618. The Struggle for Kansas began at once. Money was raised in the North to fit out parties of immigrants, who were to settle Kansas and by their votes make it first a free Territory and finally a free State. In the same way, Southern parties were fitted out to take slaves to Kansas, and by their votes to make it first a slave Territory and finally a slave State. In such a struggle the South was at a disadvantage, for no man liked to take to Kansas his slaves, which had cost him money, under the risk of losing his slaves and money if his party should be beaten. So it happened that the Southern parties were chiefly young men, who went to Kansas for excitement's sake; while the Northern parties were real settlers, who went to stay and to make homes for themselves and their children. As very few of the Southern parties took slaves with them, one might suppose that there was little or no reason for quarrel between the settlers from the two sections. Quarrels arose because the settlers from each section voted together for one object, claimed to have won a victory, and attempted to force the other party to submit. In the end, the Northern immigrants completely outnumbered their opponents, and made Kansas a free State after a five years' struggle.

619. The Road to Kansas from the Northern States went

617. What was the feeling in the South? What did the people of the South believe about the excitement in the North? What did they do?

618. What parties of settlers were formed in the two sections? What was the disadvantage of the South? What was the difference between the two classes of settlers? What was the final result?

619. What was the direct road to Kansas? How was it blocked up? How was Kansas made a slave Territory? What road was taken by the free-State settlers?

straight across the slave State of Missouri. The people of western Missouri refused to allow free State parties to cross their State into Kansas, and forced them to turn back. When the first election-day came, parties of men from Missouri moved into Kansas, voted, and made it a slave Territory. Then the free-State parties took the roundabout road through Iowa, entering Kansas from the north; and the struggle in the Territory itself began.

620. The Struggle in Kansas, between free-State and slave State settlers began, at once. The Southern settlers formed one government, the Northern settlers formed another; and each considered the opposite party rebels against a lawful government. As each side attempted to put its laws into execution, and was resisted by force, the struggle soon became an open war. Men were shot; parties of immigrants were robbed and dispersed; and towns were plundered and burned. Small armies, with cannon, were formed on both sides; and the newspapers all over the country were filled with news from Kansas. The President sent out one governor after another; but none of them could do anything to keep order until the free-State settlers became so numerous that their opponents gave up the struggle. This did not take place until after the end of this administration, about 1858.

621. The Debates in Congress were of the angriest sort. Duels were threatened, and many members regularly carried pistols or knives, expecting to be attacked by some of their opponents. The Republicans usually controlled the House of Representatives, while the Democrats controlled the Senate; and many laws failed to be passed, for want of agreement between the two branches of Congress. Kansas had formed a State government, forbidding slavery, and applied for admission, with the support of the Republicans; but the Senate refused to admit her.

622. Assault on Sumner.—Sumner was one of the most effective Republican speakers in Congress; and many of his speeches were very unpleasant to Southern members. In 1856, he made a speech in the Senate which was particularly unpleasant to one of the South Carolina Senators. Thereupon, the Senator's nephew,

620. Describe the struggle in Kansas. How did it end?

621. What is said of the debates in Congress? Why did many laws fail to pass? Why was not Kansas admitted as a State?

622. What is said of Sumner's speeches? Of the assault upon him? What was its effect?

Preston S. Brooks, a South Carolina representative, entered the Senate chamber, attacked Sumner unexpectedly, and beat him with a club so cruelly that his life was despaired of. This scandalous affair added fuel to the flame, for it shocked the North, while it was not disapproved at the South.

623. The Presidential Election in 1856 was remarkable for the sudden increase of the new Republican party. The Democratic candidates were James Buchanan and John C. Breckinridge (§ 626). The Republican candidates were John C. Frémont, of California, and William L. Dayton, of New Jersey. The American, or "Know-Nothing," candidates were ex-President Fillmore (§ 583), and Andrew J. Donelson, of Tennessee. One State (Maryland) voted for the American candidates; eleven of the free States voted for the Republican candidates; and Buchanan and Breckinridge received the votes of the remaining nineteen States, and were elected.

There were 296 electoral votes: of these, Buchanan and Breckinridge received 174 Frémont and Dayton 114, and Fillmore and Donelson 8 (§ 298).

624. The Result of the Election was anything but pleasant to the South. Up to this time, no open opponent of slavery had ever received the vote of any State in a Presidential election: now an anti-slavery party, not yet two years old, had carried nearly all the free States, and had come dangerously near electing their candidates. It is quite certain that secession would not have taken place, even if Frémont and Dayton had been elected, for the South was not ready for it. But there was already a strong party of secessionists in the South (§ 657); and they spent the next four years in trying to prepare the South for secession in 1860, if the Republicans should then carry *all* the free States and elect their candidates.

SUPPLEMENTARY QUESTIONS.

Locations.—Locate the State of Kansas; the State of Nebraska; the State of Missouri; the State of Iowa.

REVIEW.—Give the years in which Pierce's administration began and ended. The name of the Vice-President. The year of the Koszta

623. For what was the Presidential election in 1856 remarkable? Who were the Democratic candidates? The Republican candidates? The American candidates? What was the result of the election?

624. What is said of this result? What was the new feature in the election? Was there any probability of secession then? How was secession prepared in the next four years?

case. Of the Kansas-Nebraska Act. The first year of the struggle in Kansas. The year of the assault on Sumner.

625. The Leading Events of Pierce's administration are as follows:

1853-7: Pierce's Term of office.....	§ 600
1853: Crystal Palace Exhibition.....	601
The Koszta case.....	605
1854: The Japan treaty.....	606
The Kansas-Nebraska Act.....	614
1855: Rise of the Republican party.....	616
The struggle in Kansas begun.....	618
1856: Assault on Sumner.....	622

625. What were the years in which Pierce's term of office began and ended? What were the leading events of 1853? Of 1854? Of 1855? Of 1856?

CHAPTER XV.

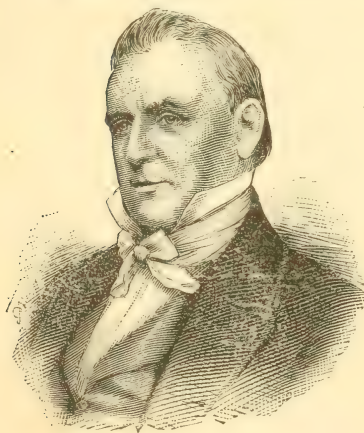
BUCHANAN'S ADMINISTRATION: 1857-61.

JAMES BUCHANAN, Pa., President.

JOHN C. BRECKINRIDGE, Ky., Vice-President.

(1) INTERNAL AFFAIRS.

626. James Buchanan, of Pennsylvania, was born in 1791. He became a lawyer, and served as a Representative in Congress (Democratic), 1821-31; minister to Russia, 1832-4; United States Senator, 1834-45; Secretary of State under Polk, 1845-9; and minister to Great Britain, 1853-6. At the end of his term of the Presidency, he retired to his home at Wheatland, near Lancaster, Pa., where he died in 1868.



JAMES BUCHANAN.

United States Senate in 1861, and left his seat to become a major-general in the Confederate army. In 1868, he resumed law-practice at Lexington, Ky., and in 1875 he died.

627. A Financial Panic occurred in 1857, brought on in part by too rapid building of railroads in places where they did not pay

John C. Breckinridge, of Kentucky, was born in 1821. He became a lawyer, and served as Representative in Congress (Democratic), 1851-5. He was chosen Vice-President at the age of 35, when but just old enough for the office, according to the requirements of the Constitution. He was defeated in 1860 for the Presidency, was sent to the

626. What were the leading events in the life of Buchanan? Of Breckinridge?
627. What is said of the panic of 1857. How did it compare with that of 1837?

expenses. Railroads had been built in parts of the country where there were but few inhabitants, but where it was hoped that the railroads would bring settlers. The settlers did not come rapidly, and the railroads did not pay expenses. Men who needed the money which they had put into the railroads began to offer their shares at lower prices. As prices fell, others became frightened and tried to sell; and, just as in 1837 (§ 497), a panic began. It probably caused more loss than in 1837, but the country was now so much richer that the loss was not felt so terribly.

628. The Mormons (§ 507) had by this time settled in Utah, around Salt Lake City. Here they became more troublesome than ever, and disobeyed all the laws made for them by Congress. In 1857, when the President sent a new governor to Utah, he sent a body of troops to enforce obedience. The Mormons made ready for resistance, and succeeded in keeping the troops out on the plains all through the winter. But in the spring of 1858 they submitted, and the troops entered Salt Lake City.

The Mormons, however, have never ceased to be troublesome. They have greatly increased in number, and Congress has not yet succeeded in stopping their illegal marriages.

629. Minnesota was admitted to the Union in 1858.

Minnesota was a part of the Louisiana purchase (§ 332); but settlement was delayed for a long time by the right of the Indians to the soil. In 1851, the Indians gave up their rights by treaty; and settlement went on with such wonderful rapidity that in seven years Minnesota was populous enough for admission as a State. The population has increased from 6,077 in 1850 to 780,807 in 1880. The State is so far north that its winters are cold, but the air is generally so still that the cold is easily endured. Agriculture is the principal industry of the people: wheat, Indian corn, and oats are the leading crops. But there are so many rapids and falls in the rivers of the State, and these furnish such excellent water-power, that manufactures are increasing. There are nearly 500 flouring-mills in the State already. Of these, the 21 "monster mills" of Minneapolis make about five million barrels of flour yearly. The principal cities are Minneapolis and St. Paul (the capital).



SEAL OF MINNESOTA.

628. Where were the Mormons now settled? What was their behavior? What was done by the President? What is said of the resistance of the Mormons?

629. What State was admitted in 1858?

630. Oregon was admitted to the Union in 1859.

The claim of the United States to the Oregon Country (§ 520), and its settlement by treaty with Great Britain (§ 544), have already been considered. Emigration to this part of the United States increased after the discovery of gold in California; and some gold was found here. But agriculture was soon found to be more profitable: Oregon wheat is remarkably fine, and Oregon has become a great wheat exporting State. The wheat region is the western part of the State. The eastern part is dry and barren; and the southeastern part contains the remarkable volcanic region known as the Lava Beds (§ 868). The canning of Columbia River salmon is also an important industry.



SEAL OF OREGON.

The population has increased from 13,294 in 1850 to 174,768 in 1880.

631. Kansas was admitted to the Union in 1861.

Kansas was a part of the Louisiana purchase (§ 332), with the exception of the extreme southwestern part, ceded by Mexico (§ 552). The struggle which attended its first settlement has already been narrated (§ 618). When the struggle had been decided against slavery, Kansas made repeated applications for admission as a State; but these were always voted down by the Senate until the Senators from the seceding States left their seats early in 1861 (§ 663). Kansas was then admitted. Its first settlement was due to the richness of its soil, which has already made it one of the great agricultural States of the Union. But settlement was increased much more rapidly when the Pacific Railroad system was begun (§ 864). An important part of it passed through Kansas; and it has assisted immigration into all parts of the State very materially. The population of Kansas has grown from nothing in 1850 to 996,096 in 1880.



SEAL OF KANSAS.

632. The Population of the United States, by the census of 1860, was 31,443,321, an increase of over 8,000,000 in ten years (§ 595). This was the point at which the population of the United States, which had been nothing 260 years before (§ 24), at last passed that of the mother-country; for the population of Great Britain and Ireland was but 29,000,000 in 1861. But the increase of population in the United States had now become startling.

630. What State was admitted in 1859?

631. What State was admitted in 1861?

632. What was the increase of population in ten years? How did the population compare with that of Great Britain? Why were the increases of population startling?

Each new census showed an increase of about one third; and these leaps grew longer as the population grew larger.

From 1790 to 1800 this one-third increase was but 1,400,000; from 1850 to 1860 it was 8,250,000.

633. The Census of 1860 showed a wonderful prosperity. Railroads had increased from nothing in 1830 to a length of 31,000 miles, built at a cost of nearly \$1,200,000,000, almost a clear increase of wealth. In merchant-vessels, the country now stood next to Great Britain. In agriculture, the product was far beyond that of any other country. The largest crop, cotton, made 5,000,000 bales of 400 pounds each. All the property of the country was now roughly valued at \$16,000,000,000: and yet this was the country on whose shores, 260 years before, Gosnold could find nothing but sassafras and a few half-naked Indians (§ 24).

634. The Map of the United States had changed greatly between 1830 and 1860, particularly west of Pittsburgh (§ 458). Texas and the great Pacific territory had been added to it, giving the country an entirely new shape in the far West (§ 574). Even in the East there were manufacturing cities, like Lowell and Paterson, which were not on most of the maps in 1830, but were now large cities. In the West, there were so many such cases that they can hardly be given here. In 1830, the maps of the United States had no such cities as Chicago, Milwaukee, or San Francisco; and no such States as Arkansas, Michigan, Florida, Texas, Iowa, Wisconsin, California, Minnesota, Oregon, or Kansas: all these were the growth of thirty years' work, aided by the railroad.

A table (Appendix V) gives the growth of cities in the United States: and another (Appendix IV) the growth of States.

635. Mineral Resources.—It had now been found that coal was not confined to two or three States; that there were great beds of it in most of the new States; and that this continent contained probably as much coal as all the rest of the world together. This is highly important, because so much work is done nowadays by machinery, which needs coal to run it. Gold was not confined to California: in 1858, it was found at Pike's Peak, in Colorado; and it has been found since in many other parts of the Rocky Mountains, from Idaho to New Mexico. In the same year was found a metal new to the United States: the Comstock lode of silver was dis-

633. What is said of the census of 1860? Of railroads? Of merchant-vessels? Of agriculture? Of the cotton crop? Of the property of the country?

634. How did the maps of 1860 compare with those of 1830? What territory had been added? What changes were there in the cities of the East? Of the West? What cities are referred to? What new States?

635. What is said of coal? Of gold? Of silver? Of the Rocky Mountain region in general? Of petroleum? Of the resulting wealth?

covered at Virginia City, in Nevada; and other mines were soon brought to light. Since then, it has been found that this Rocky Mountain region is rich in almost every kind of mineral. In 1859, wells sunk near Titusville, in northwestern Pennsylvania, struck a vast underground bed of petroleum; and this at once became a new and large source of wealth. It seemed as if nature was generously pouring wealth into the lap of this fortunate people.

The discoverer of the Comstock lode is said to have sold it for a few drinks of whiskey and a pony: it has since produced more than \$250,000,000 worth of silver.

636. Patents.—The industry and acuteness of the people made good use of their opportunities, and were urged on by the patent system. Now that the country had grown so populous, a patent on a useful invention was a source of great wealth, for it gave the inventor the profits from his invention for a number of years all over the country, and also, by treaties, in foreign countries. Thus the attention of the people was turned strongly to inventions; the inventions made it easier to produce wealth; and the new wealth urged on further invention.

637. American Literature had passed out of its childhood, and had grown into a vigorous life of its own. The writers who had appeared about 1830 (§ 466) had come to their full powers, and an increasing number of new men were at work with them. Of these new men, it is only possible here to name the historian Motley, the poet Lowell, and the philosopher Emerson. Much of the ability of the country had entered the work of writing for the newspapers, which now numbered over 4,000, sending out nearly 1,000,000,000 copies a year. A single American magazine was now issuing 200,000 copies a month.

638. Public Schools and Education.—Public schools had become a great feature of the new republic, and for good reasons. Immigrants were entering the country in a great stream, and all of them who were adult males were allowed to vote after a short residence. If they were ignorant, it could not be helped, and voting was itself something of an education for them; but it was

636. What was the effect of the patent system? How did inventions and wealth increase one another?

637. What is said of American literature? What new names are mentioned? What is said of newspaper work? Of one American magazine?

638. What was the connection between public schools and immigrants? How had the public schools increased in thirty years? What is said of private schools and colleges?

the business of the State to take care that their children should not grow up ignorant. Thus a great system of public schools had grown up since 1830 in every State. There were now about 110,000 of these in the whole country; and in them an army of 5,000,000 pupils were studying daily at the State's expense. In addition to these there was a great number of private schools, and nearly 400 colleges.

639. The Condition of the Country was far different everywhere from its condition fifty years before. The farms were cultivated far more easily and profitably by improved machinery, worked by horses or by steam. New fertilizers, such as guano, were making old farms produce more. Log-cabins and shanties were disappearing, and comfortable houses were taking their place. The houses contained comforts and conveniences which the richest of men could not have bought fifty years before: gas, hot-air furnaces, sewing-machines, and inventions of every sort to save labor or trouble. There were now few villages so small that they were not near a railroad or a telegraph, by which their people could go or send easily and quickly to any part of the United States.

640. The Cities had increased in comforts as well as in population. The dwellings had grown larger, the stores richer, and the streets finer; and the cities themselves had taken very much the appearance which they still have, although they have since increased in size, and the invention of elevators has caused the erection of very much loftier buildings than were possible in 1860. Great water-works brought pure water from a distance, and distributed it through the cities. Great parks were opened, as breathing places for the cities: New York City had just opened the finest of these, Central Park, and other cities were at work in the same direction. Public libraries, like the Astor Library in New York City, were appearing. Thirty years before, the "watchmen" had walked the streets at night with canes and lanterns, and there were hardly any arrangements to punish them for going to sleep or neglecting their duties. Now the new police system had been introduced, with officers to manage it and punish neglect or carelessness in the men.

639. What was the improvement in the farms of the country? In the houses? In the comforts of the houses? In the villages?

640. What is said of improvements in the cities? Of water-works? Of parks? Of public libraries? Of police?

This city police system is an English idea. It was introduced in London by Sir Robert Peel in 1829; and for this reason the policemen were at first often called "peelers."

641. An Ocean Telegraph to Great Britain was successfully laid in 1857, but it failed to work, and success was not finally achieved until 1866 (§ 830).

SUPPLEMENTARY QUESTIONS.

Locations.—Locate Salt Lake City, U. T.; the State of Minnesota; Minneapolis, Minn.; St. Paul, Minn.; the State of Oregon; the State of Kansas; Lowell, Mass.; Paterson, N. J.; Chicago, Ill.; Milwaukee, Wis.; San Francisco, Cal.; Pike's Peak, Col.; Virginia City, Nev.; Titusville, Pa.

REVIEW.—Give the years in which Buchanan's administration began and ended. The name of the Vice-President. What was the year of the Mormon difficulties in Utah? Name the three States admitted during this administration. Give the year in which silver was discovered in Nevada. The year in which petroleum was discovered in Pennsylvania.

(2) SLAVERY AND POLITICS.

642. The South had not shared equally in the prosperity of which the census of 1860 was so pleasant a picture. Plenty of money came into the South every year, for its cotton-crop of 1860 sold for about \$250,000,000; but the money seemed to do no good. It did not build up manufactures, railroads, colleges, schools, libraries, or the other signs of growth, as in the North. Lands were worth much less at the South than at the North. All the commerce was in Northern vessels; and Charleston, which in 1800 was one of the busiest seaports on the Atlantic coast, now did hardly any business of its own. It was not to be expected that the Southern people would be satisfied with such a state of affairs: they were exceed-



KING COTTON.

641. What was the first Atlantic telegraph?

642. What is said of the South? Of its receipts in money? Of its want of manufactures and other signs of growth? Of its lands? Of its commerce? Of the dissatisfaction of its people?

ingly dissatisfied, and sought long for the cause of their backwardness, and the remedy.

643. The Effects of Slavery.—The cause is now seen by every one to have been negro slavery, though the South could not see that in 1860. Slaves worked only because they were made to do so; they worked slowly, carelessly, and stupidly, and were fit for nothing better than to hoe cotton. In factories or on railroads they were of little use. The rich whites did not need to work; and the poor whites did not wish to work, because they had grown up in the belief that work was a sign of slavery. Here was the real reason for the backwardness of the South, compared with the North. In the North there was a general race for work, and everything was in active motion. In the South there was no great number of persons who really wanted to work, and everything stood still.

644. The Territories.—The South, in 1860, could only see that everything was going wrong. It was growing poorer as the North grew richer, and weaker as the North grew stronger. Five new free States had been admitted since Texas, the last slave State, had entered the Union; a sixth, Kansas, was demanding admission; and others were evidently coming soon. Every new free State made the South weaker in both branches of Congress (§ 524); and, as States are formed from Territories, the South came to believe that any refusal to allow slavery in the Territories was intended to make the South still weaker.

645. The Supreme Court of the United States is the body to which is given the power to decide whether the laws passed by Congress are such as the Constitution allows Congress to pass (§ 284). If it decides that the law in question was not permitted by the Constitution, the law is said to be unconstitutional, and will not be obeyed, for the other courts will not punish those who disobey it. In 1820, Congress had forbidden slavery in the Louisiana purchase, outside of Missouri (§ 426); but for nearly forty years no case had required the Supreme Court to decide whether

643. What was the reason of the condition of the South? What is said of slave labor? Of the two classes of whites? What was the difference between the South and the North?

644. How was the North growing stronger in Congress? How was the South growing weaker? Why did it wish for slavery in the Territories?

645. What is said of the Supreme Court? Had it decided as to slavery in the Territories? How did this subject come before it?

this law of 1820 was constitutional or not. Finally, one Dred Scott, a Missouri slave, who had been taken by his owner into the territory in which slavery had been forbidden, brought suit to be declared free. The case came at last before the Supreme Court, and was decided in 1857.

646. The Dred Scott Decision sustained the Southern view of slavery in the Territories. The Supreme Court decided that negro slaves were not considered by the Constitution as persons, but as property; that the object of the Constitution was to protect property; that a slave-owner had as much right to take his slaves as to take his cattle from one State to another, or to the Territories; and that Congress had no power to forbid slavery in the Territories.

It is not, however, easy to say exactly what *was* decided by the court, for the judges differed on almost every point.

647. Effects of the Decision.—The Dred Scott decision was not to end the matter, for the North refused to accept it. It was believed there that negro slaves were considered by the Constitution as “persons held to labor,” and not as property; and that they were property only by State law. The only effects of the decision were to make the South more certain that it was right, and to make the North exceedingly angry with the Supreme Court itself.

648. The Democratic Party, up to this time, had generally controlled the Union, and the South had generally controlled the Democratic party. Now most of the Northern Democrats began to hold back. If they did as Southern Democrats wished them to do, and accepted the Dred Scott decision, they could not expect to carry any more elections in the North. Some of them joined the Republican party. Most of them, with Douglas, tried to show that the Dred Scott decision did not mean all that the Southern Democrats said it meant. And so the slavery question, which had split almost everything else, was now splitting the Democratic party also (§ 611).

646. Which side did the Dred Scott decision sustain? What did the Supreme Court decide?

647. Did the decision end the matter? What was the belief in the North? What were the only effects of the decision?

648. What is said of the Democratic party? Why did Northern Democrats leave the Southern Democrats? What course was taken by Northern Democrats? What was the effect on their party?

649. The Fear of Negro Insurrection was always dreadful to a Southerner, for it meant the greatest of dangers to his wife, his children, and all that was dear to him. No such insurrection ever took place, but the people of the South were always on guard against it, day and night. Fifty years before, when slavery was but a little thing, John Randolph said that, when the fire-bell rang at night in a Southern city, every mother trembled for her children. In 1859, there were 4,000,000 slaves in the South, and the idea of a general insurrection was naturally far more frightful.

650. John Brown's Raid.—John Brown had been one of the free-State leaders in the Kansas troubles, and had grown into a religious fury against slavery. In 1859, with a few associates, he seized the town of Harper's Ferry, which contained the United States arsenal. He intended to carry the arms off to the mountains near by, and use them to arm the slaves. The telegraph sent the news through the South, and for a few days a wild excitement followed. Regular troops and Maryland and Virginia militia soon captured or shot the party; and Brown himself, with the survivors, was hanged by the State of Virginia. But the South had been too much startled to be easily quieted; and there was a strong feeling of anger that the "raid" should have been planned in the North.

(3) SECTIONAL DIVISION.

651. Sectional Division.—Slavery had by this time set the two sections, North and South (§ 425), completely against one another. It had arrayed them in successive conflicts with one another until there seemed to be no escape from the last and worst of conflicts. Men have tried to find explanations of this opposition in differences of climate, character, and blood; but there is not one of these cases of opposition which is not more easily explained by the treacherous influences of slavery. If Southern leaders opposed a protective tariff (§ 443), it was rather because slavery prevented manufactures in the South than because they were really fond of free trade. If they supported State sovereignty eagerly (§ 485), it was because slavery was protected by State laws and power.

649. What was the Southern feeling as to negro insurrection? How did John Randolph express it? What was the state of the case in 1859?

650. Who was John Brown? What was his attempt? How did it result? What were its effects?

651. What had been the influence of slavery on the two sections? What is said of other explanations? Of Southern opposition to a protective tariff? Of Southern support of State sovereignty? Of the present state of affairs?

Now that slavery is out of existence, there is no more thought of sectional division, except when some lingering trace of the influence of the dead evil shows itself.

652. The Feeling in the South in 1860 was that the North had not behaved in a kindly manner. The complaints were that nearly all the free States had voted for candidates of their own at the last election; that they had resisted the Fugitive-Slave Law; that they had tried to abolish slavery in the Territories; that they had begun a struggle with the South for the control of Kansas; that they had refused to accept the Dred Scott decision; and that they had sent John Brown on his raid against the South. Much of this was unjust: part of it was true, for the whole current of events, and the Northern current of feeling, were running hard against slavery, which the South defended. But it was not yet believed in the South that these complaints were enough to justify war.

653. The Feeling in the North.—People in the North were generally too busy to lay any plans against slavery. The Abolitionists (§ 470) had long desired that the slave-holding States should secede and rid the country of the guilt of slavery; but the Abolitionists were still very few in number. The great mass of the Northern people had gradually come to believe that the South liked slavery altogether too well; but they were perfectly willing to leave the Southern States to regulate the matter for themselves. Their principal complaint had been that the solemn agreement, called the Missouri Compromise, had been broken (§ 614); but this had failed to carry slavery into the Territories, for Kansas was now as good as a free State. The only remaining grievance was the Dred Scott decision: if it was to be carried into effect, Congress was to *protect* slavery in the Territories. This was what most of the Southern leaders now demanded, and what the Northern people would certainly never consent to do.

654. Parties in 1860.—The Democratic party, in 1860, split into a Northern and a Southern section; and the Republican party

652. What was the feeling of the South in 1860? What complaints are mentioned? Were they just or unjust? Were they enough to cause war?

653. Was the North plotting against slavery? What is said of the Abolitionists? What was the feeling of the Northern people? What had been their principal complaint? What was their only remaining grievance?

654. How did it happen that there were four parties in 1860? What were the Republican nominations? The Republican platform? The Southern Democratic candidates? The Southern Democratic platform? What were the Northern Demo-

and the former American party also made nominations. In this election there were thus at work four parties, as follows :

(a) **The Republican Party** nominated Abraham Lincoln (§ 667), and Hannibal Hamlin, of Maine, for President and Vice-President. Their "platform," or declaration of principles, declared that it was the right and the duty of Congress to *forbid* slavery in the Territories.

(b) **The Southern Democrats** nominated John C. Breckinridge (§ 626), and Joseph Lane, of Oregon. Their platform declared that it was the right and the duty of Congress to *protect* slavery in the Territories, whenever a slave-owner took his slaves thither.

(c) **The Northern Democrats** nominated Stephen A. Douglas, of Illinois, and Herschel V. Johnson, of Georgia. Their platform declared that they still believed that the people of each Territory ought to control the matter of slavery in that Territory ; but that they were willing to submit to the decision of the Supreme Court.

(d) **The American Party** nominated John Bell, of Tennessee, and Edward Everett, of Massachusetts. Their platform declared that they wished only for "the Constitution, the Union, and the enforcement of the laws." This was not intended to mean much, except that its Southern supporters did not wish to go to war in defence of slavery in the Territories, and wanted the slavery question dropped out of politics.

655. The Presidential Election in 1860 resulted in the success of the Republicans. No candidates received a majority of the popular vote ; but Lincoln and Hamlin, who received the largest popular vote, received a majority of the electoral votes, and were elected (§ 298).

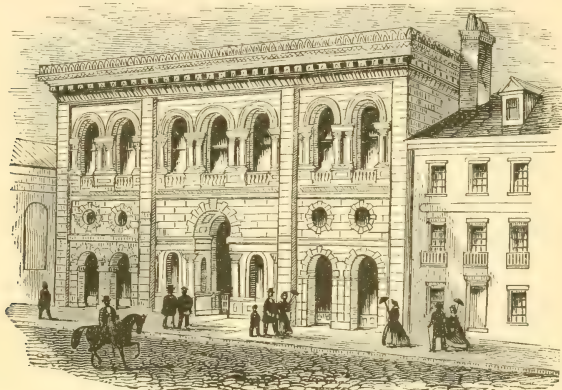
Lincoln and Hamlin received 180 electoral votes ; Breckinridge and Lane, 72 ; Bell and Everett, 39 ; and Douglas and Johnson, 12. Douglas received the next largest popular vote to Lincoln, but carried only Missouri and three electoral votes in New Jersey. Lincoln received all the electoral votes of the free States, except those of New Jersey, cast for Douglas. Bell carried Virginia, Kentucky, and Tennessee ; and Breckinridge all the other slave States than those three and Missouri.

cratic nominations? The Northern Democratic platform? The American nominations? The American platform? What is said of it?

655. How did the Presidential election result? What is said of the vote? Who were elected?

(4) SECESSION.

656. South Carolina seems to have been the only Southern State which was really anxious to escape from the Union. As soon as Lincoln's election was made certain, this State called a State



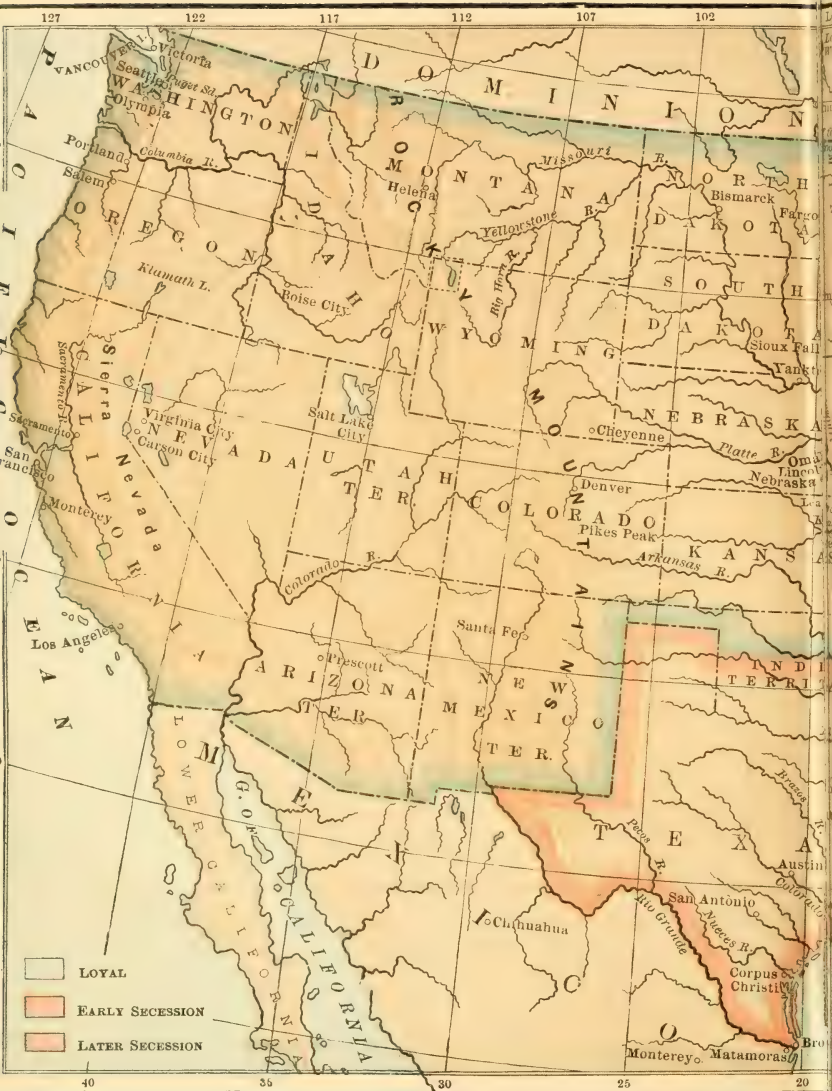
SECESSION HALL.

convention, which passed an "ordinance of secession," December 20, 1860. It declared that the Union between South Carolina and other States, under the name of the United States of America, was at an end; and that South Carolina was now independent. The State also made ready for war.

657. The Secessionists.—Secession was considered a right of the States by most of the Southern States (§ 486); but in other States than South Carolina the people do not seem to have wished to leave the Union. They did not wish to secede, though they believed in their right to do so. But there was a class of secessionists in every Southern State who wished to try it at once, for they knew that in a few years the North would be so much stronger that it would be altogether impossible to secede, and the right of secession would be gone forever. They were not a majority, but were active and influential.

656. What is said of South Carolina? Of its State convention? What did the ordinance of secession declare? What else was done?

657. What was the feeling in other States? What was the feeling of the secessionists? What is said of their numbers?



MAP OF THE AREAS OF SECESSION

Scale of Miles

0 50 100 200 300 400

Key West

Latitude West 15 from Washington 10

MAP OF THE
AREAS OF SECESSION

Scale of Miles

0 50 100 200 300 400

Longitude West 15 from Washington 10

5.

Q

2.

5

一



658. Arguments for Secession.—In other States than South Carolina the secessionists usually urged two arguments for secession. The first was that it would be disgraceful to leave South Carolina to stand alone, and that the other slave States ought to support her. Their second and stronger argument was that they did not intend to leave the Union altogether, but that they could “make better terms out of the Union than in it.” They argued that the North was growing very strong and very much opposed to slavery and to the South; that now was the time to secede and compel the North to give security for future good behavior; and that then all the States could come quietly and kindly back to the Union. The real secessionists never intended to follow out any such plan: they only wished to persuade the voters to call State conventions, whose action would bind the State.



SECESSION COCKADE.

659. The Other Southern States.—In six other Southern States, the argument above given induced a majority of the voters to elect State conventions, which passed ordinances of secession. In this manner the States of Mississippi, Alabama, Florida, Georgia, and Louisiana seceded in January, 1861; and Texas did the same in February. This was the first “area of Secession:” it now consisted of the seven cotton States, those lying south of North Carolina, Tennessee, and Arkansas.

Secession did not stop here. Four other slave States seceded later in the year, but for a different reason (§ 674).

660. The Confederate States.—The secessionists had the game in their own hands when they obtained control of the State conventions; and they at once went on to do what they had intended to do from the beginning. Without asking any permission from the voters, the State conventions sent delegates to Montgomery, in Alabama, and the delegates there formed a new government under the name of the Confederate States of America. They elected

658. What was the first argument of the secessionists? The second and principal argument? What was the real design of the secessionists?

659. Was the argument of the secessionists successful? In what States? What was the first “area of Secession”?

660. Did the secessionists stop with secession? How was the new government formed? What was it called? What further steps were taken?

Jefferson Davis and Alexander H. Stephens President and Vice-President; adopted a constitution and flag, both much like those of the United States; and took steps to form an army and navy.

661. Jefferson Davis was born in Kentucky in 1808. He graduated at West Point in 1828, but soon resigned and became a cotton-planter in Mississippi. He commanded a Mississippi rifle-regiment in the Mexican war, and served as United States Senator (Democratic), 1847-51 and 1857-61, and as Secretary of War under Pierce, 1853-7. In 1865, he was captured and imprisoned for two years, but was released on bail and has never been tried. He died December 6, 1889.



JEFFERSON DAVIS.



ALEXANDER H. STEPHENS.

Alexander H. Stephens, of Georgia, was born in 1812. He became a lawyer, and served as a Representative in Congress (Whig, and, after 1850, Democratic, § 594), 1843-59. He served again as Representative in Congress (Democratic), 1877-82, was elected governor of Georgia in 1882, and died in 1883. He opposed secession heartily in 1860, until Georgia seceded, and then "went with his State." In person, he was always weak and excessively thin; in his later years, he went everywhere in a wheeled chair. His mental vigor, however, was unabated until his death.

662. The Doctrine of State Sovereignty had thus put every man in the South on the wrong side, and kept him there. Southern voters had given their State conventions power to speak for their States; and, even when the whole purpose of the secessionists became plain, the voters felt bound to "follow their State" (§ 486). Thus the voters of six States, without their having a word to say in the matter, were made subjects of an illegal government; and

661. What were the leading events in the life of Davis? Of Stephens?

662. What was the effect of the doctrine of State sovereignty? How did it control the action of the voters? What was the result?

they were thus fraudulently bound to defend it, though it could only exist by warring on the United States.

Stephens, for example, was making honest and hearty speeches against secession ninety days before he was elected Vice-President of the Confederate States; but he felt bound to "follow his State" when it seceded.

663. Affairs in the South were all in favor of the secessionists. Even before the different States seceded, their authorities seized the forts, arsenals, dock-yards, ships, custom-houses, mints, and other property of the United States. Wherever there were any United States soldiers, they were surrounded and forced to surrender. As soon as a State seceded, its citizens who were in the service of the United States resigned their commissions, and took service, first under the State, and then under the Confederacy. Within sixty days the authority of the United States was paralyzed in seven States of the Union.

Officers of the army from seceding States generally resigned: a few, like Scott (§ 562), held to the Union. Officers in the navy did not so generally go with their States: some of the foremost naval officers of the United States, like Farragut, were Southerners. Thus, at the bombardment of the forts at Port Royal, in South Carolina (§ 685), two of the gunboat-captains were South Carolinians; and one of them, Captain Drayton, was firing on his own brother, who commanded the forts. Senators and Representatives, except Andrew Johnson, Senator from Tennessee (§ 826), from seceding States resigned and went home. Two of the Supreme Court justices were from seceding States; but they held to the Union, and gave no countenance to secession.

664. Fort Sumter.—In all the South there were only saved the forts near Key West, Fort Pickens at Pensacola, and Fort Sumter in Charleston harbor. Early in 1861, the South Carolina authorities began to build forts and batteries to attack Fort Sumter; and when a steamer, the *Star of the West*, was sent to carry supplies to it, in January, they fired on her and drove her back. This state of affairs continued until the end of Buchanan's term of office, in March, 1861: Major Anderson, commanding Fort Sumter, was not allowed by his government to fire on the forts around him, and they did not allow supplies to be brought to him by sea.

663. What is said of affairs in the South? Of seizures of property? Of the capture of soldiers? Of resignations? What was the result?

664. What forts were saved? What was done by the South Carolina authorities? What was the state of affairs at Fort Sumter?

665. The Federal Policy.—The Federal Government did nothing. Congress was in session during the secession winter; but it spent its time in talking about new proposals for compromise. The President was anxious to do nothing except to keep the peace until the end of his term. The departments at Washington contained many clerks who were secessionists, and who gave early and useful information to the Southern leaders. Seven States had wiped out the authority of the government within their limits, and had formed a new government of their own. Between them and the Federal Government was a wall of border States, not willing to secede, and yet not willing to see the seceding States brought back into the Union by force (§ 674). Affairs were in this dismal condition when Buchanan's term ended, and Lincoln was inaugurated, March 4, 1861.

666. The Leading Events of Buchanan's administration were as follows:

1857–61: Buchanan's Term.....	§ 626
1857: Dred Scott decision.....	646
Panic of 1857.....	627
First Atlantic telegraph.....	641
Mormon troubles.....	628
1858: Minnesota admitted.....	629
Gold discovered in Colorado.....	635
Silver discovered in Nevada.....	635
1859: Oregon admitted.....	630
Petroleum discovered in Pennsylvania.....	635
John Brown's "raid".....	650
1860: Lincoln elected President.....	655
South Carolina secedes (December 20).....	656
1861: Six other States secede.....	659
Steamer <i>Star of the West</i> fired on (January 9)....	664
The Confederate States formed (February 4)....	660
Kansas admitted.....	631

SUPPLEMENTARY QUESTIONS.

Locations.—(General map, § 657).—Locate Harper's Ferry, W. Va.; the State of South Carolina; Mississippi; Alabama; Florida; Georgia; Louisiana; Texas; Montgomery, Ala.; Key West, Fla.; Pensacola, Fla.; Charleston, S. C.

REVIEW.—Give the year of the Dred Scott decision. Of John Brown's "raid." Name the four candidates for President in 1860. The successful candidate. What was the platform of his party. Give the year of the secession of South Carolina. Of the secession of other States. Of the formation of the Confederate States. Name the President of the Confederate States. The Vice-President.

665. What was done by the Federal Government? By Congress? By the President? What was the state of the departments? What was the general condition of the South at Lincoln's inauguration?

666. In what years did Buchanan's term of office begin and end? What were the leading events of 1857? Of 1858? Of 1859? Of 1860? Of 1861?

CHAPTER XVI

LINCOLN'S ADMINISTRATION: 1861-65.

ABRAHAM LINCOLN, Ill., President. HANNIBAL HAMLIN, Me., Vice-President.

I EVENTS OF 1861.

667. Abraham Lincoln is the central figure of this period. Born in Kentucky, February 12, 1809, of poor parents, he emigrated with them to Indiana, and thence to Illinois, where he found work as a farm-hand, rail-splitter, and Mississippi boatman. By hard work and perseverance, he educated himself, became a lawyer, and served as Representative in Congress (Whig), 1847-49. In 1858, he had become known as one of the ablest men in Illinois, and was nominated by the Republicans for United States Senator against Douglas; and, though Illinois was then a Democratic State, Douglas barely escaped defeat. Lincoln was still little known outside of Illinois; and, when he was elected President in 1860, there was a very wide belief in the North that the "rail-splitter" was a wild, reckless, and dangerous man. In the South, it was even reported that he was a mulatto (and Hamlin a full-blooded negro), elected as an insult to Southerners. The people of both sections learned to know him better before his death in 1865 (§ 811). His best-known writings are the Emancipation Proclamation and the Gettysburgh Address.

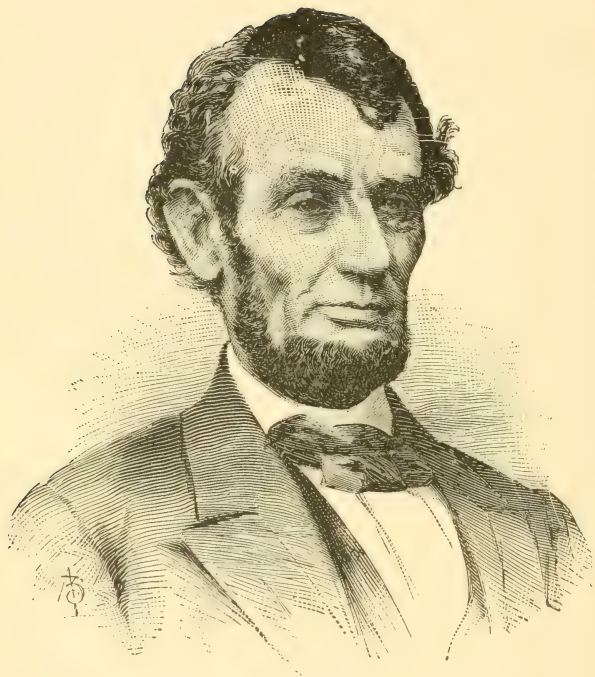
668. The New Administration began under every sort of difficulty. The seven Gulf, or cotton, States were altogether hostile. The slave States north of them were opposed to forcing the seceded States to return. Nobody felt quite certain that even the Northern States would go to war to preserve the Union. President Lincoln and his Cabinet were all new men who were without experience in managing the Federal Government; and this general uncertainty added greatly to their difficulties.

669. Fort Sumter (§ 664) was almost ready to surrender when Lincoln became President, March 4, 1861, for its garrison had hardly any provisions left. Early in April, the President ordered

667. What are the leading events in the life of Lincoln?

668. What was the position of the new administration? The feeling in the cotton States? In the slave States north of them? In the free States? How did all this increase the difficulties of the administration?

669. What was the state of affairs in Fort Sumter? What order was given by the President? What was its effect? Describe the surrender. What became of the fleet?



ABRAHAM LINCOLN.

a fleet to leave New York for Charleston, carrying provisions for the fort. As soon as this became known, the Confederate batteries were ordered to attack the fort. After a heavy fire of thirty hours, the ammunition in the fort was almost exhausted, and its wooden buildings were on fire; and Major Anderson surrendered the fort and garrison with the honors of war (April 13). The fleet returned to the North, having been unable to give any assistance.

No one was killed on either side during the fire; but one Federal soldier was killed, and several wounded, by the explosion of a gun with which the garrison was saluting the flag before leaving for New York.



FORT SUMTER.

670. In the North and West, the news of the fall of Fort Sumter roused such an intense excitement as had not been known there since the Revolution against Great Britain. Political differences were dropped, and the whole people was united in support of the government. When the President called for 75,000 volunteer soldiers (April 15), to put down the rebellion, four times as many were offered. Money and help of every kind were offered in great abundance by States and private persons; and every effort was made to put the city of Washington, the national capital, into a condition of security.

671. Washington was at first a very unsafe place for the government, for it was so near the Confederate States that it was exposed to immediate attack. Soldiers at once began to gather for

670. What was the feeling in the North and West? What is said of the call for volunteers? Of other offers of help?

671. Why was Washington insecure? How was the first blood of the war shed? Why was the day memorable? How was Washington made secure?

its defence. To reach it, they had to pass through Baltimore, where the secessionists were then very strong. Here, in a street-fight between a Massachusetts regiment and the mob which was trying to stop its march, the first blood of the war was shed on April 19, the anniversary of the fight at Lexington (§ 184). Other regiments passed by water from Havre de Grace on the Susquehanna through Annapolis, and Washington was soon made secure.

672. In the South the excitement was as great as in the North, and the people were now as much united. Even those who had not wished to secede did not believe that the government had any right to force the seceding States back into the Union. When the Confederate Government called for 35,000 volunteer soldiers, several times the number were offered.

673. Civil War had fairly begun. President Lincoln proclaimed a blockade of the Southern ports; that is, he forbade all vessels to enter or leave them, or to engage in commerce with them. The Confederate Government then issued "letters of marque," that is, permission to private persons to capture merchant-vessels belonging to the United States; and the Confederate Congress declared war against the United States. There was thus a difference between the parties to the war. The Confederate States claimed to be an independent nation, at war with the United States. The United States Government refused to recognize the existence of the Confederate Government, or to consider its people as anything else than rebellious citizens.

The United States Government had at first but three vessels with which to enforce the blockade; but others were rapidly bought or built, and the navy soon became very large (§ 821). Other calls were made for soldiers, and before July 200,000 men were under arms.

674. The Border States, between the Gulf States and the free States, did not desire to secede; but they generally believed that the Gulf States had a right to secede if they wished to do so, and that the government of the United States had no right to force them back into the Union. When they received President Lin-

672. What was the feeling in the South? What is said of the Confederate call for volunteers?

673. What is said of war? Of the blockade? Of letters of marque? What did the Confederate States claim to be? How did the United States Government regard them?

674. What was meant by the border States? What was their feeling? Which of them seceded, and why? What was the state of affairs in Maryland, Kentucky, and Missouri? In Delaware?

coln's call for volunteers to force the seceding States back into the Union, the southern row of border States, North Carolina, Tennessee, and Arkansas, refused to obey it, seceded themselves, and joined the Confederacy. In the northern row of border States, only Virginia seceded. There were many secessionists in Maryland, Kentucky, and Missouri; but the Union men were in the majority, and held their States to the support of the government. In Delaware there were hardly any secessionists: in all the other border States there were many persons who went into the Confederate army.

In Kentucky the State officers at first tried to be neutral, but the people forced them to support the government. In Missouri the State officers were open secessionists, but the Union majority of the people rose in arms, and, after some hard fighting, drove them out of the State. The people of the western part of Virginia refused to recognize the secession of their State, and formed a separate State, under the name of West Virginia (§ 757).

675. Foreign Nations generally considered it impossible for the United States to put down so extensive a rebellion, and believed that there would in future be two nations where the United States had been. They were not yet inclined to recognize the Confederate States as an independent nation, for it was known that the United States would declare war against any nation which should do so. Instead of doing so, they declared the Confederate States a belligerent power, that is, a power entitled to make war and have war-vessels. This gave Confederate cruisers the right to take refuge in foreign harbors. These vessels at first escaped from Southern ports through the blockade, but were not very successful. Little damage was done to American commerce until Confederate agents began secretly to build swift vessels in Great Britain (§ 727).

Great Britain recognized the Confederate States as belligerents in May, 1861, and other nations followed the example at once.

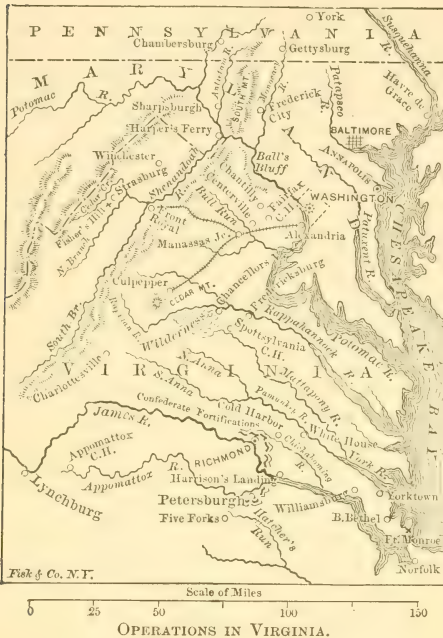
676. The Confederate States, in June, 1861, were eleven in number: Virginia, North Carolina, South Carolina, Georgia, Florida, Alabama, Mississippi, Tennessee, Arkansas, Louisiana, and

675. What was the feeling of foreign nations? Did they recognize the independence of the Confederate States? What course did they take? How did this help the Confederate States? What is said of Confederate cruisers?

676. Name the Confederate States as they were in June, 1861. What was their capital? The position of their troops in eastern Virginia? In western Virginia? In southern Kentucky? On the Mississippi? On the coast? How was the Confederacy protected?

Texas. Their capital was changed from Montgomery to Richmond as soon as Virginia seceded. Their troops poured into

eastern Virginia, which was to be the great battle-ground of the war, and held an irregular curved line from Harper's Ferry to Norfolk. They also had troops in the mountains of western Virginia, to repel attacks from Ohio. They moved troops into southern Kentucky to defend Tennessee. They had built many batteries along the Mississippi, so as to stop navigation on that river; and they were busily building forts along the coast of the Atlantic and the Gulf of Mexico,



for protection against the blockading fleets. The whole Confederacy was thus soon surrounded by a line of defences.

677. The Federal Troops were at first under the general command of General Scott (§ 562). They held the eastern side of the Potomac, from Harper's Ferry to Fortress Monroe, and that small part of the western side which is directly opposite Washington. Of the other parts of the exposed country they attempted only to hold Kentucky and Missouri until the new soldiers should be trained and formed into armies. In this they were successful. The armies were formed and placed; and, within three months after the surrender of Fort Sumter, the people of eleven States,

677. Who commanded the Federal troops? What was their line in eastern Virginia? In other parts of the country? How had they surrounded the Confederacy?

9,000,000 in number, were surrounded by a line of hostile fleets and armies which was never broken until the end of the war.

During these three months, while the two lines were settling down into their places, there was constant skirmishing from Virginia to Missouri. The most important conflict of this kind was at Big Bethel, near Fortress Monroe (June 10), in which the Union forces were defeated.

678. West Virginia.—Serious fighting began early in July, in West Virginia, where General George B. McClellan had crossed the Ohio River with a force of Ohio troops. He first secured the country along the river, and then moved into the mountains between eastern and western Virginia. Here he beat the enemy in the battle of Rich Mountain and in several other battles; and before the end of the month, the Confederates were driven out of West Virginia. In September, the Confederate General Robert E. Lee attempted to reconquer the lost ground, but he was beaten back by McClellan's successor, General Rosecrans.

679. George B. McClellan was born in Pennsylvania in 1820, and graduated at West Point in 1846. He became a captain in the Mexican war, but, during the peace which followed it, left the army and engaged in the management of railroads. He took charge of the Ohio volunteers in 1861, and became a major-general in the United States army. He was the Democratic candidate for President in 1864, but was defeated (§ 797). He was governor of New Jersey, 1878–81, and died suddenly in 1886.



GEORGE B. McCLELLAN.

680. Congress met July 4, having been called together in special session by the President. It voted to consider nothing but war business, appropriated \$500,000,000 for war expenses, authorized the President to call out 500,000 volunteers, and gave him all necessary powers to carry on the war.

678. Where did serious fighting begin? Describe McClellan's operations. Lee's attempt to regain the lost ground.

679. What were the leading events in the life of McClellan?

680. When did Congress meet? What were its proceedings?

681. Bull Run.—The successes in West Virginia made the Northern people anxious for an attack on Richmond, and Scott gave an unwilling consent. The overland road from Washington to Richmond is crossed, about 35 miles from Washington, by a little stream called Bull Run. Here the Confederate army was posted at Manassas Junction, under General P. G. T. Beauregard. The advancing Union army, under General Irwin McDowell, reached Bull Run (July 21), passed the stream successfully, and defeated a great part of Beauregard's army. In the afternoon, before the battle was decided, the Confederate General Joseph E. Johnston brought up a fresh army from the Shenandoah valley. The half-drilled Union army became panic-stricken, and fled in wild disorder to Washington. The enemy was in no condition to pursue.

The forces were at first about equal, 30,000 on each side. Johnston brought in about 10,000 fresh men in his army. The Confederate loss was 2,000; the Union loss, 3,000.

682. The Army of the Potomac.—On the day after the battle of Bull Run, General McClellan was called from West Virginia to command the army of the Potomac. In November, Scott was compelled by old age to give up the command of all the Union armies to McClellan, who set to work to drill and organize the Army of the Potomac, and before the end of the year it numbered 150,000 well-trained soldiers. No general advance was attempted, but the Confederate line was gradually pushed back from near Washington to its first position near Bull Run. The Confederate armies in Virginia were also increased and drilled. Both armies were busily fortifying their capitals, so that Richmond and Washington were soon surrounded by long lines of forts, mounted with heavy cannon.

683. Ball's Bluff.—In October a part of the Union forces, 2,000 in number, crossed the Potomac at Ball's Bluff, between Washington and Harper's Ferry. They were cut off by a heavier force of the enemy and defeated.

Senator E. D. Baker, of Oregon, who had become a general in the army, was among the killed.

681. Why was the advance on Richmond made? Where was Bull Run? What was the position of the Confederate army? Describe the advance of the Union army. The arrival of Johnston. The panic and defeat of the Union army.

682. Who took command of the Union army? What did he do? What did the Confederates do in Virginia? How were the two capitals made secure?

683. Give an account of the battle of Ball's Bluff.

684. In Missouri, General Nathaniel Lyon was at first in command of the Union forces. He was an energetic and able officer, and soon controlled all the central and northern part of the State. In the southern part, the Confederates were receiving reinforcements from Arkansas and Texas; and, when Lyon moved forward to attack them, he was defeated and killed in the hard-fought battle of Wilson's Creek, near Springfield (August 10). In October, General John C. Frémont, who had organized the army anew, moved forward again toward Springfield; but, before a battle took place, he was removed, and General Henry W. Halleck took command. Without any great battle, he gradually during the year drove the enemy out of Missouri.

In November, General Ulysses S. Grant (§ 688), in command of some Illinois troops, moved down the Mississippi from Cairo, Ill., to Belmont, Mo. He destroyed a Confederate camp, but was then again attacked and compelled to retreat to his gunboats.

685. On the Coast.—In August, 1861, a naval force, with troops on board, under Commodore Stringham and General Benjamin F. Butler, captured Hatteras Inlet and its fort. From this point attacks were made on the neighboring coast of North Carolina. In November, a still larger expedition from Fortress Monroe, under Commodore Dupont and General W. T. Sherman, captured Port Royal. There were 76 war-vessels and transports, and 15,000 soldiers. The war-vessels drove the enemy out of the forts, and then the army took possession of them. From this point the neighboring islands between Charleston and Savannah were captured. In September, the Union fleet took possession of Ship Island, near the mouth of the Mississippi, in preparation for an expedition the next year against New Orleans.

686. Summary.—During the year there had been serious land-campaigns in but two States, Virginia and Missouri. The two great battles of the year were Bull Run and Wilson's Creek, in both of which the Union forces had been beaten. In the smaller battles, with the exception of McClellan's successes in West Virginia, the Confederates had also generally been successful. The

684. Give an account of Lyon's operations in Missouri. Of the battle of Wilson's Creek. Of Frémont's operations. Of Halleck's operations.

685. Give an account of the capture of Hatteras Inlet. Of Port Royal. Of Ship Island.

686. Give the summary of the Confederate successes of the year. What was one reason for them? What is said of the Union successes? Of manufactures, commerce, and wealth in the North and West? In the Confederacy?

people of the North and West had been so long at peace that it took them some time to learn how to make war. On the other hand, the Union forces had saved three great States, Maryland, Kentucky, and Missouri, part of another, West Virginia, and the national capital, Washington. They had formed a vast army and navy out of nothing, and had walled in the whole Confederacy with besieging lines. They had secured, in Hatteras Inlet, Port Royal, and Ship Island, good harbors for their blockading fleets, and points of attack on the neighboring territory. Above all, the manufactories of the North and West were in active operation, commerce with foreign countries was free, money was abundant, and preparations for the next year's campaigns were encouraging. The Confederacy had no commerce, few manufactories, and could only depend on the fighting power of its men and the strength of its territory.

687. Foreign Affairs.—In November, a United States war-vessel, the *San Jacinto*, Captain Wilkes, stopped an English mail-steamer, the *Trent*, in the West Indies, and took out of her two passengers, Mason and Slidell. They were Confederate commissioners to Europe, who had run the blockade to Havana, and there took passage to England. This right to stop and search neutral vessels on the ocean had always been claimed by England as a war right, and had led to the war of 1812 (§ 342). The United States, as in 1812, denied any such right, and gave up the commissioners to Great Britain. But, for the moment, there seemed to be a probability of war with Great Britain; for the British Government sent troops and war-vessels to Canada, and used unnecessarily harsh language in demanding the commissioners. Thus, though the American Government maintained its own principles in giving up the commissioners, the American people had for some time a sore and angry feeling that Great Britain had not behaved well in the matter.

SUPPLEMENTARY QUESTIONS.

Locations.—Locate Charleston, S. C.; Washington, D. C.; Baltimore, Md.; Havre de Grace, Md. (§ 388); the eleven Confederate States; Richmond, Va.; Fortress Monroe, Va.; West Virginia; Manassas Junction, Va. (§ 676); the Shenandoah River, Va. (§ 676); Harper's

687. Give an account of the *Trent* affair. What is said of this right of search? How was the surrender made? Why did bad feeling remain?

Ferry, W. V.; Springfield, Mo.; Hatteras Inlet, N. C.; Port Royal, S. C.; the Savannah River.

REVIEW.—Give the years in which Lincoln's administration began and ended. Name the Vice-President. Name the seven States which first seceded (§ 659). The four States which afterward joined them. What was the first battle of the war? The first bloodshed of the war? The two most important battles of 1861? Who was the first commander of all the Union forces? Who succeeded him in November? What points on the coast were captured in 1861?

II. EVENTS OF 1862.

In the West.

688. Ulysses S. Grant was born in Ohio in 1822, and graduated from West Point in 1843. He became a captain in the Mexican war, but soon afterward resigned and entered business. In 1861, he was given command of an Illinois regiment, and fought his way up to the rank of lieutenant-general commanding the United States armies in 1864. His subsequent career is a part of this history. He served two terms as President, 1869–77 (§ 854), and died July 23, 1885, at Mount McGregor, N. Y.

689. In the West the severe fighting of the year began in Kentucky and Tennessee. The Confederates held a line running through Southern Kentucky, from Columbus to Mill Spring, through Bowling Green; and in Tennessee, near the northern boundary-line, they had built two strong forts, Fort Henry, on the Tennessee, and Fort Donelson, 12 miles distant, on the Cumberland. The whole line was commanded by General Albert Sidney Johnston. Against him were two Union armies. The larger, under General Don Carlos Buell, was in central Kentucky, arranged into a number of divisions and considerably scattered. The smaller, under Grant, was at Cairo.



ULYSSES S. GRANT, about 1863.

688. What were the leading events in the life of Grant?

689. What was the position of the Confederate forces? Who was their commander? What was the position of the Union forces?

All the forces under Buell numbered over 100,000; those under Grant, about 15,000.

690. Mill Spring was attacked in January by a division of Buell's forces, under General George H. Thomas. The Confederates were beaten and driven into Tennessee, and their commander, General Zollicoffer, was killed.



ALBERT SIDNEY JOHNSTON.

691. Fort Henry.—From Cairo Grant moved up the Tennessee River toward Fort Henry. Before he could reach it, it had been captured by the fleet of gunboats, under Commodore Andrew H. Foote, which had accompanied the army up the river.

692. Fort Donelson.—A large part of the garrison of Fort Henry had escaped by land to Fort Donelson. Grant's army followed them, besieged Fort Donelson, and captured it (February 12) after very hard fighting.

The prisoners numbered about 14,000.

693. The Effect of these victories was to break up the whole Confederate line and push it far back into Tennessee. Columbus and other points in Kentucky were evacuated, for fear their garrisons should be cut off by the advancing Union armies. Nashville, the capital of Tennessee, was occupied by Federal troops; and, as all the State authorities had left it, President Lincoln appointed Andrew Johnson (§ 826) military governor of Tennessee. Grant's army was increased to 40,000 men, and sent on steamboats up the Tennessee River. It encamped at Pittsburgh Landing, on the west side of the Tennessee River, in the southern part of Tennes-

690. Give an account of the battle of Mill Spring.

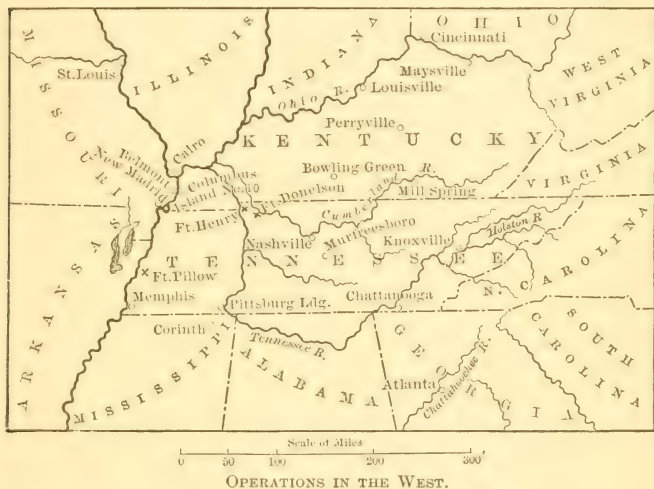
691. How was Fort Henry captured?

692. How was Fort Donelson captured?

693. What was the effect of these victories? What was done in Tennessee? What forward movement was made by Grant's army? Where did it encamp?

see; and Buell's army was hurried forward, down the eastern side of the river, to join it.

694. Pittsburgh Landing, or Shiloh.—Before Buell could reach Grant, Johnston had gathered all his forces to strike the camp at Pittsburgh Landing. His attack was made early in the morning (April 6), and was at first successful. The Union forces had no suspicion that an enemy was near them when the Confederate line burst on them from the woods and drove them down to the river-bank. Here the gunboats drove the enemy back by a heavy



fire of shells, and gave the Union forces time to rally. During the afternoon and night, about 20,000 of Buell's fresh troops reached Grant; Johnston had been killed during the battle; and the next morning the Union forces advanced and drove the Confederates off the field. This was the first of the great battles of the war. It is often called the battle of Shiloh, from the name of the little church around which the heaviest fighting took place.

The Union forces engaged were 57,000, and their loss 13,000. The Confederate forces were 40,000, and their loss 11,000.

694. Give an account of the first day's battle at Pittsburgh Landing. Of the second day's battle. What is said of this battle?

695. Corinth, in Mississippi, was now an important point to be secured by the Union forces, because of the number of railroads which centred there. The Confederates had fortified it strongly, and it was expected that Beauregard, who had succeeded Johnston, would defend it. General Halleck was now in command of the Union forces, and he slowly forced his way so near to Corinth that Beauregard evacuated it (May 30), and retired southward. Here the Union advance stopped for a time. It had opened up the Mississippi from Cairo to Memphis, and the Union line now ran along the southern boundary of Tennessee.

696. Bragg's Raid.—General Braxton Bragg now took Beauregard's place. In August he quietly moved the larger part of his army eastward until he had passed the Union line, and then struck north for Kentucky. Buell, who was also moving eastward toward Chattanooga, hastened northward with a weaker army, and reached Louisville ahead of Bragg. For over a month the Confederates remained in Kentucky, plundering the people. Then they turned back to the southward, finding the Kentucky people loyal to the Union. Both armies had been largely reinforced, and Buell pursued. He overtook Bragg at Perryville, and an indecisive battle was fought. The Confederates succeeded in carrying off their long trains of plunder to Chattanooga, while the Union army took post at Nashville.

697. Murfreesboro.—After leaving its booty at Chattanooga, the Confederate army moved northwest about half the distance to Nashville, and erected fortifications at Murfreesboro. General William S. Rosecrans had taken Buell's place in command at Nashville. In December, he set out, with about 40,000 men, to attack Murfreesboro. Before he had quite reached it, Bragg suddenly attacked him, with about an equal number of men, and one of the bloodiest battles of the war followed, lasting three days. It is often called the battle of Stone River, from a shallow stream which flowed between the armies. The Confederates had the advantage in the first day's fighting (December 31), but lost it in the

695. What was the importance of Corinth? How was it captured? What had the Union advance done?

696. What movement did Bragg make? What did he do in Kentucky? Give an account of the battle of Perryville. What was its result?

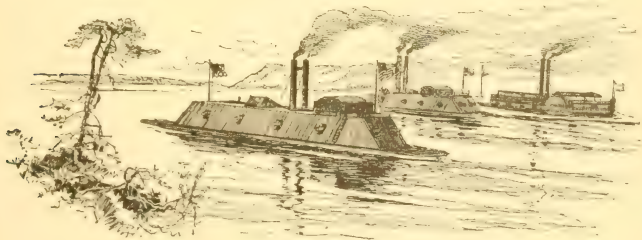
697. What was now the position of the two armies? Give an account of the battle of Murfreesboro or Stone River. What was its result?

next two days. In the end they slowly left the field and retired for a few miles, while the Union troops were unable to pursue. Both armies then went into winter quarters, each watching the other.

The Union loss was about 14,000; the Confederate loss, about 11,000.

698. At Corinth, Grant was only able to hold the ground already gained, for many of his men had been drawn off to Kentucky and Tennessee. In September, he repulsed two assaults on his position by the Confederate troops left behind by Bragg. Toward the end of the year, he undertook to advance toward Vicksburgh, but was compelled to give up the attempt until the following year (§ 735).

699. Across the Mississippi there was little severe fighting this year. In March, a battle was fought at Pea Ridge, near the north-western boundary of Arkansas, and the Confederates were defeated. For a time there were then hardly any Confederate armies in Missouri and Arkansas; but there was a great deal of guerrilla fighting, that is, attacks upon small parties of Union troops by armed men who were not regular soldiers or under any military control.



WESTERN GUNBOATS.

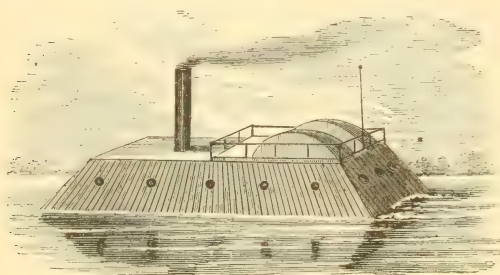
700. The Western Gunboats had done a great deal of the year's fighting. They were of a different appearance from ocean-

698. What was Grant doing at Corinth? What attacks were made on him? What advance did he undertake?

699. What is said of the battle of Pea Ridge? What was its result? What is said of guerrilla fighting?

700. What is said of western gunboats? How did they help the western armies? What is said of their operations on the Mississippi? Of the capture of Island Number Ten?

gunboats, many of them having been made by covering the sides of river-steamboats with iron plates or rails. Sometimes a beak or ram was added at the bow. While the Union armies were forcing their way across Kentucky and Tennessee, the gunboat fleet gave them great assistance by controlling the Tennessee and Cumberland rivers, capturing confederate batteries, and even taking an active part in the battles. At Pittsburgh Landing, the gunboats threw shells over the Union army into the Confederate ranks, and thus checked the advance. Before Bragg's raid took place, the



CONFEDERATE RAM.

gunboats had fought two successful battles with the Confederate gunboats on the Mississippi River, and had cleared that river of the enemy as far south as Vicksburgh. The

strongest resistance made by the Confederates was at Island Number Ten, near New Madrid. They fortified it, and defended it for nearly a month; but in the end the garrison surrendered.

SUPPLEMENTARY QUESTIONS.

Locations.—Locate Columbus, Ky.; Bowling Green, Ky.; Cairo, Ill.; the Tennessee River; the Cumberland River; Nashville, Tenn.; Corinth, Miss.; Memphis, Tenn.; Chattanooga, Tenn.; Louisville, Ky.; Perryville, Ky.; Murfreesboro, Tenn.; Vicksburgh, Miss.; New Madrid, Mo.; Pea Ridge, Ark. (general map).

REVIEW.—What were the two great battles of 1862 in the West? What two strong forts were captured? What important railroad centre? What fortified island? What State had been gained by the Union advance?

On the Coast.

701. Ironclad Vessels had as yet hardly been used on the ocean. Great Britain and France had built such vessels as experiments, but they had never been tried in war. At Norfolk the Confederates had been turning the frigate *Merrimac*, which they had captured in the navy yard there in 1861, into an ironclad ram. They called her the *Virginia*, but she was better known by her original name, the *Merrimac*. At New York, Captain John Ericsson (§ 454) had also been building an ironclad vessel, which he called the *Monitor*.



JOHN ERICSSON.

702. The Merrimac was finished early in the year. She sailed out (March 8) from Norfolk into Hampton Roads, where there was a fleet of five of the finest vessels then in the United States navy, besides a number of smaller vessels. The battle was soon over, for the Federal fleet could do nothing with the *Merrimac*. They poured on her a storm of heavy shot, but these bounded from her iron roof like India-rubber balls. She rammed and sunk the *Cumberland*, chased the others into shallow water, and there fired at them at her pleasure. Before she could finish the work, it became dark. When she went back to Norfolk for the night, there was apparently nothing to stop her from sailing to Washington the next morning or along the Atlantic coast. The blockade and the great Eastern cities were at the mercy of the monster, and the telegraph carried the alarming news everywhere.

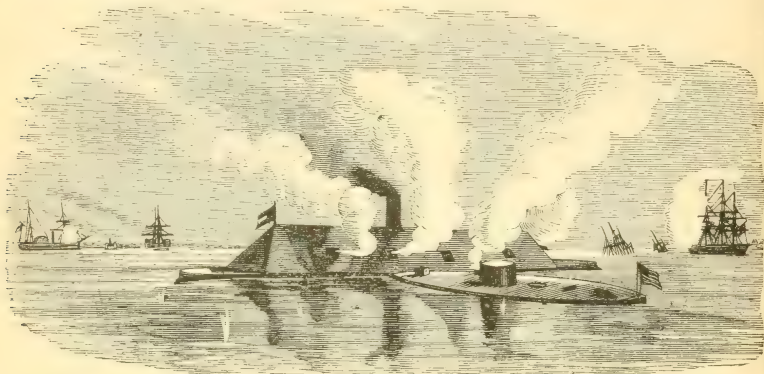
703. The Monitor unexpectedly arrived in Hampton Roads two hours after the *Merrimac* went back to Norfolk, and while the

701. What is said of the use of ironclad vessels in war? Of the building of the *Merrimac*? Of the building of the *Monitor*?

702. Give an account of the damage done by the *Merrimac* in Hampton Roads. Why did she not finish her work? What results seemed likely to follow?

703. What vessel unexpectedly arrived in Hampton Roads? Give an account of the battle between the *Monitor* and the *Merrimac*. How did it result?

alarm was at its highest. No one expected much from her, for she looked far smaller and weaker than the *Merrimac*. When the *Merrimac* sailed out into Hampton Roads the next morning, to finish her work, the little *Monitor* moved out between her and the wooden frigates, and a desperate combat followed. After four hours of firing and ramming, neither vessel was seriously injured;



THE MONITOR AND THE MERRIMAC.

but the *Merrimac* could do nothing with her antagonist. Finally, she gave up the fight and steamed back to Norfolk, from which, she never again came out (§ 715). The telegraph carried the joyful news everywhere that “the *Monitor* had whipped the *Merrimac*,” and the danger was over.

704. Changes in the Navy.—The events of these two days proved that the day of wooden war-vessels was past. The Federal Government soon had a great number of monitors afloat, sufficient to defend the whole coast. The Confederates also began to build ironclads, in order to break the blockade. Other nations at once began to give up wooden ships and form ironclad navies, so that this fight in Hampton Roads has since changed the navies of the world.

705. On the Coast there were further conquests. In February, a great naval expedition, under Commodore Goldsborough and General Ambrose E. Burnside, captured Roanoke Island, the scene

704. What did these events prove? What did the Federal Government do? The Confederates? Other nations?

705. What conquests were made in North Carolina? In Florida? In Georgia? What was the effect of these conquests?

of Raleigh's colonies (§ 23). Soon afterward, St. Augustine and several other places in Florida were captured by troops from Port Royal; and Fort Pulaski, at the mouth of the Savannah River, was besieged and captured. These captures made the work of the blockading vessels much easier, for most of the good harbors on the Atlantic coast were now in the hands of the Union forces. Charleston and Wilmington were almost the only good harbors left for blockade-runners.

706. New Orleans was a place of great importance to the Confederates, for while they held it they controlled the lower Mississippi. Thirty miles above the mouth of the river were two strong forts, Forts Jackson and St. Philip, on opposite sides of the river, each mounted with heavy guns. Across the river between them six heavy chains were stretched, supported by a great raft of cypress logs, so that the river was completely closed. Behind the raft there were thirteen gunboats, an ironclad floating battery, a ram, and fire-rafts to burn an enemy's vessels. Between the forts and New Orleans there were many batteries along the river-banks, and in the city there was an army of about 10,000 men.

707. A Naval Expedition against New Orleans, under Comodore David G. Farragut and General Benjamin F. Butler, sailed from Hampton Roads in February for Ship Island (§ 685). Here the troops, 15,000 in number, landed, until the navy could open the passage up the river. Farragut bombarded the forts for a week, and then determined to force his way up the river. Some of his gunboats ran up to the forts on a dark night, cut the raft and chains, and opened a way for the vessels. The frigates, which were



DAVID G. FARRAGUT.

706. Why was New Orleans important to the Confederates? What were its forts? Its defences in the river? Its defences above the forts?

707. What naval expedition was undertaken in February? What did Farragut determine to do? What preparations did he make?

wooden, were carefully protected with sand-bags inside, and chains outside; and at two o'clock in the morning of April 23 the fleet moved up the river.

708. The Fleet, numbering thirteen vessels, passed the forts after one of the most desperate battles of the war. Great bonfires were blazing on the banks, but the smoke was so thick that little could be seen. Each vessel fought for itself, firing at the forts, the gunboats, and the ironclads as they came near her; and none of them knew very much about the result until the smoke cleared away, and they found themselves above the forts. The Confederate fleet had been destroyed in the battle.

709. New Orleans surrendered to the fleet (April 25), and the forts surrendered soon after. General Butler then took command at New Orleans, and the fleet sailed on up the Mississippi until it met the western gunboat fleet from Memphis (§ 700). During the summer the western gunboats attacked and destroyed, near Baton Rouge, a powerful Confederate ironclad ram, the *Arkansas*. She had been built in the Yazoo River, and had passed out into the Mississippi to offer battle to the fleet.

710. The Mississippi River was now open through nearly all its course. The Confederates still had strong forts at Vicksburgh and Port Hudson; but they were placed on bluffs high above the river, so that the gunboats could not capture them, though they could run past them by night. There was no army at hand to give assistance; and the capture of these two places was left until the next year (§ 735). In the mean time, Farragut left the Mississippi, to take command in the Gulf of Mexico.

SUPPLEMENTARY QUESTIONS.

Locations.—Locate Norfolk, Va.; Fortress Monroe, Va.; Roanoke Island, N. C.; St. Augustine, Fla.; Port Royal S. C.; the Savannah River; Charleston, S. C.; Wilmington, N. C.; New Orleans, La.; Baton Rouge, La.; the Yazoo River, Miss.; Vicksburgh, Miss.; Port Hudson, La.

REVIEW.—What great naval battle was fought in 1862? What great city was captured by the naval forces? What great river was nearly opened? What two Confederate forts on the Mississippi were not yet taken?

708. Describe the passing of the forts. What became of the Confederate fleet?

709. What were the results of Farragut's exploit? Where did the fleet go next? What is said of the *Arkansas*?

710. What is said of the Mississippi River? Of Vicksburgh and Port Hudson? Of Farragut's movements?

In the East.

- 711. Robert E. Lee, of Virginia,** was born in 1807, and graduated from West Point in 1829. He became colonel and chief engineer in the Mexican war, and Superintendent of West Point in 1852. He commanded the force which captured John Brown in 1859 (§ 650). When Virginia seceded in 1861, he "followed his State," though he was not a thorough secessionist and had been offered the command of the United States forces in Virginia. He was badly beaten in West Virginia by Rosecrans (§ 678), but this year's campaign made him the leading Confederate general. He retained the respect of his opponents throughout the war, became President of Washington and Lee University, at Lexington, Va., in 1866, and died in 1870.



ROBERT E. LEE.

Virginia, was born in 1824, and graduated from West Point in 1846. He became a major in the Mexican war, and resigned in 1852 to become professor of mathematics in the Virginia Military Institute. He was not considered an able man in 1861, but was an ardent secessionist, and obtained a colonel's commission. At Bull Run, he held his position so obstinately that the men gave him the name of "Stonewall" Jackson. In this year's campaign, he came to the front as Lee's ablest subordinate, to whom much of Lee's success was due. He was killed by mistake by his own men in 1863 (§ 729). He was a man of simple character, so intensely religious as to be considered a fanatic, and a consummate soldier.



THOMAS JONATHAN JACKSON.

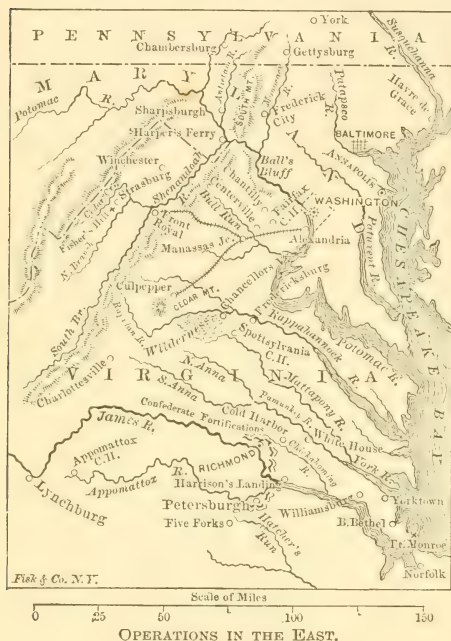
- 712. In Virginia** this was a battle-year. There was almost constant fighting, and four distinct campaigns: (1) McClellan's Peninsular campaign; (2) Pope's

711. What were the leading events in the life of Lee? Of Jackson?

712. What four campaigns were fought in Virginia this year?

campaign in front of Washington; (3) the Confederate invasion of the North; and (4) Burnside's Fredericksburgh campaign.

713. The Army of the Potomac had been increased to nearly 200,000 men, well drilled and armed, and in excellent condition.



The authorities at Washington were very anxious that McClellan should move the army directly south-west toward Richmond, so as to keep it always between the enemy and Washington. But the country on this route was very rough, was crossed by many rivers, and had been strongly fortified by the Confederates, so that McClellan preferred to carry his army by water to Fortress Monroe, and then move it up the peninsula between the York and James rivers to Richmond. The ob-

jection to this was that it opened the way to the Confederates for a sudden rush on Washington, a more valuable prize than Richmond. It was finally decided to follow McClellan's plan, but to keep a part of his army, under McDowell, in front of Washington, at Fredericksburg, and an army, under General N. P. Banks, in the Shenandoah valley.

This need of protecting Washington interfered with the plans of all the Union generals during the war. In the same way, the Confederate generals had to think first of protecting Richmond. Lee once said that he had "got a crick in his neck, from always having to look back over his shoulder at Richmond."

713. What had McClellan done with the Army of the Potomac? What was the government's plan of action? What were the objections to it? What was McClellan's plan? What was the objection to it? What plan was finally followed?

714. The Confederate Army was at Manassas Junction (§ 681). It was commanded by General Joseph E. Johnston. As fast as McClellan's army was moved to Fortress Monroe, Johnston's army was moved to the Peninsula, so as to hold position between McClellan and Richmond.

Johnston was wounded in one of the early battles, and Lee took his place. Jackson, commonly called "Stonewall" Jackson, was Lee's ablest assistant (§ 711).

715. Yorktown, on the Peninsula, the scene of Washington's capture of Cornwallis (§ 262), was the first fortified place on the road from Fortress Monroe to Richmond. Early in April, it was attacked by McClellan's army, and after a siege of a month the Confederates evacuated it and retired toward Richmond. At Williamsburgh they were overtaken by the Union forces, and an indecisive battle took place. The Confederates were now inside of the lines of intrenchments close around Richmond. The Union forces were divided into two parts by a little stream called the Chickahominy, which passes Richmond on the north and empties into the James. It is a dangerous thing thus to divide an army. McClellan risked it because he wished to push his line far enough north to join McDowell at Fredericksburgh, and get the assistance of his army without uncovering Washington (§ 713). The Union gunboats controlled the James River to within eight miles of Richmond; and the Confederates had destroyed the *Merrimac*, because she drew too much water to make her escape from Norfolk to Richmond.

716. Seven Pines and Fair Oaks.—Late in May there were heavy rains. The Chickahominy rose rapidly and carried away the bridges; the whole country on its banks became a great swamp; and McClellan's army was badly divided. Johnston's army at once attacked the weaker division, on the Richmond side of the Chickahominy, at Seven Pines and Fair Oaks (see map, § 718). After two days' heavy fighting, Johnston was badly wounded, and his army retired again toward Richmond. Lee took

714. What was the position of the Confederate army? Who were its commanders?

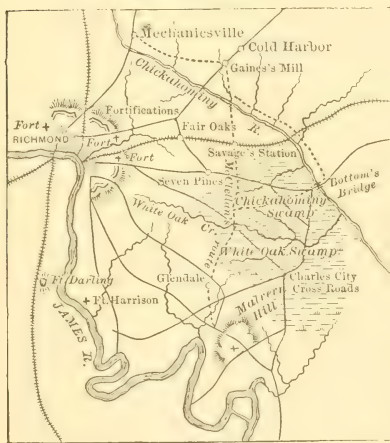
715. Give an account of the capture of Yorktown. Of the battle of Williamsburgh. What was now the position of the Confederate forces? Of the Union forces? Why did McClellan take such a risk? What had the Union gunboats done? What had become of the *Merrimac*?

716. What was the effect of the rains in May? Give an account of the battle of Fair Oaks. What did McClellan do then?

his place. McClellan spent several weeks in rebuilding the bridges; but, while he was doing so, Lee and Jackson were operating elsewhere with great success.

717. The Raids of Jackson and Stuart.—Johnston had already sent Jackson north to the Shenandoah, where Banks was in command of the Union forces (§ 713). Jackson beat Banks with a rush, and chased him to the Potomac. Indeed, it seemed as if the road to Washington was open to him; and the authorities there were so much alarmed that they called McDowell back from Fredericksburgh to defend the city. This was just what the Confederates wanted. They had balked McClellan's plan (§ 715). In the middle of June, General J. E. B. Stuart, an active cavalry officer, was sent on another raid. Stuart's force rode completely around McClellan's army, burning provisions and cars, and tearing up railroads, so as to interfere very much with McClellan's operations.

718. Seven Days' Battles.—Lee now had to deal only with



Scale of Miles
0 6 10
THE SEVEN DAYS' BATTLES.

McClellan, for he had got his other enemies out of the way. He hurried Jackson back to Richmond, and crossed the Chickahominy to meet him. He thus had about 90,000 men, nearly as many as McClellan; but his troops were united, while McClellan's were still divided by the river. The terrible series of battles known as the Seven Days' Battles began (June 26) at Mechanicsville, a little place just north of Richmond, where Lee attacked that part of McClellan's army

717. Give an account of Jackson's raid. What were its results? Give an account of Stuart's raid.

718. What movement was next made by Lee? How many men had he? How did the Seven Days' Battles begin? What was the effect of the battle of Gaines's Mill? Why did McClellan retreat? What were the principal battles of the retreat? How did the retreat end?

north of the Chickahominy, and was repulsed. The next day he won a victory at Gaines's Mill, and cut off McClellan from his supplies on the York River. Then McClellan began a retreat to the James River on the south, in order to reunite his forces. Lee followed, and for the rest of the week there was desperate fighting every day, the principal battles being those of Savage's Station (June 29), Glendale, or Frazier's Farm (June 30), and Malvern Hill (July 1). The last-named battle ended the series, for Lee was repulsed, and McClellan had reached the James River. This ended McClellan's Peninsular campaign, and his army was soon needed for the defence of Washington.

The losses were about the same for both armies, 15,000 men each.

719. Pope's Campaign.—The Union forces between Fredricksburgh and Washington, 40,000 in number, were now put under command of General John Pope. Lee kept enough men to hold Richmond, and sent the rest, under Jackson, north to attack Pope. Jackson completely defeated Pope in the battle of Second Bull Run (August 29), on the old Bull Run battle-field (§ 681), and drove his army in confusion through Chantilly and Fairfax Courthouse back to Washington. The authorities there hastily ordered McClellan to bring his army back by water; and, as fast as this was done, the rest of Lee's army was moved north to join Jackson. Thus, early in September, the two armies were again about where they had been at the beginning of the year.

720. Lee's Invasion of the North.—While McClellan's army was still at Washington, Lee crossed the Potomac, took possession of Frederick City, and apparently intended to move right on to Philadelphia or Baltimore. McClellan, who now commanded all the forces around Washington, marched through Maryland and covered Baltimore, so that Lee was compelled to turn to the northwest, through the mountains. While he held the mountain-passes, Jackson had stopped long enough to capture Harper's Ferry, with a garrison of 12,000 men, and a large amount of supplies.

721. Antietam.—McClellan was now pressing hard on the rear

719. Where was Pope's army? How was the attack on him begun? What was its effect on McClellan's army? What were then the positions of the opposing armies?

720. What movement was now made by Lee? By McClellan? How did this change Lee's course? What was done by Jackson?

721. How was the battle of Antietam brought on? What was its result? What change of command was made in the Union army, and why?

of the Confederate army, and forced his way through the mountain-passes. Lee was compelled to give up his invasion of the north, and turn and fight. He took position along Antietam Creek, near Sharpsburgh, and here was fought the great battle of Antietam, or Sharpsburgh (September 17). It was a drawn battle, but the result was against the Confederates, for they had to give up the invasion of the North and recross the Potomac into Virginia. McClellan followed them slowly, and by November the armies were back again not far from the positions they had held at the beginning of the war. McClellan was blamed for his slowness, and the command of the army was taken from him and given to General Ambrose E. Burnside.

The Confederate forces at Antietam numbered 40,000; the Union forces 55,000, though there were about 25,000 others who took no part in the battle. Each side lost about the same number, 12,500. McClellan held no further command during the war.

722. Burnside's Campaign.—Burnside marched his army,



AMBROSE E. BURNSIDE.

which now numbered 125,000 men, to Fredericksburgh, intending to cross the Rappahannock there, and move straight for Richmond. Lee and Jackson reached their side of the Rappahannock first, and fortified the hills behind Fredericksburgh. Nevertheless, Burnside crossed the river and attempted to storm the hills (December 13). He was defeated, with heavy loss, and was driven back to the north side of the Rappahannock. The command of the army was then taken from him, and

given to General Joseph E. Hooker.

The Union loss was about 12,000; the Confederate loss, 5,500.

722. What was Burnside's plan of campaign? What was done by Lee? Describe the battle of Fredericksburgh. What were its results?

723. Military Summary.—In the spring of 1862, the advantages were all with the Union forces. Mill Spring, Forts Henry and Donelson, Pea Ridge, Pittsburgh Landing, and Corinth, in the West, the naval battle at Hampton Roads, Roanoke Island, Fort Pulaski, and New Orleans, on the coast, were all important Union victories. The disasters in Virginia during the summer, and Bragg's raid into Kentucky, were not so favorable. But, on the whole, the year was marked by long steps forward. No territory had been lost in Virginia; the Union lines had been advanced across the whole State of Tennessee; the Mississippi had been almost opened; and great pieces had been taken out of the Confederacy in every direction. The blockade was growing stricter constantly, so that the Southern people were in want of such common medicines as quinine; and the two great attempts, by Bragg and Lee, to burst through the besieging line of armies had been beaten back. But there was no notion now that the war was to be an easy matter. At the end of the year, 1,300,000 volunteers had been called for, and the number of vessels in the navy was nearly 600. The expenses of the government were nearly \$3,000,000 a day.

724. Emancipation.—Slavery was not interfered with by the government at the beginning of the war. But there was a strong feeling at the North that slavery was the real cause of the war; and, as the struggle grew hotter, many who had never been Abolitionists began to wish that Congress and the President would, as a war-measure, attack slavery. Just after the battle of Antietam, President Lincoln issued his first Emancipation Proclamation. It warned the seceding States that he would declare their slaves free unless they returned to the Union before the first day of the next year. No seceding State returned, and the final Emancipation Proclamation was issued, January 1, 1863. From that time, the army and navy of the United States considered all negroes free men, and refused to allow their former masters to treat them as slaves; and, as fast as the army and navy gained control of the

723. What Union victories had been won in the spring? What were the disasters of the summer? What had been gained during the whole year? How had the besieging lines around the Confederacy been kept? What exertions was the government making?

724. Was the government fighting against slavery at first? Why was its policy changed? What is said of the first Emancipation Proclamation? Of the second Emancipation Proclamation? What were its consequences?

South, the masters were obliged to surrender control of the negroes. Colored men were also enlisted as soldiers and sailors.

It was not until 1865 that the Constitution was amended so as to forever forbid slavery (§ 838).

725. Financial Affairs.—The support of such enormous armies and navies required the expenditure of money on an equally large scale, and the revenue of the government was not at all equal to it. In 1862, the government decided to issue paper money in bills, which were often called “greenbacks” from the color of the ink with which their backs were printed. This was made a legal tender; that is, any one who owed a debt had the right to pay it in paper money, no matter how much the paper might have decreased in value. From this time until 1879 (§ 902), the government paid out its own paper money for its expenses. It would not have been safe to issue too much of this kind of money, for it decreases in value rapidly when too much is issued (§ 234); and a large part of the expense of the war was paid by loans, by selling bonds, or promises to pay, with interest, in the future. In order to encourage the sale of the bonds, the National Banking system was established in 1863. Banks were not allowed to issue currency, without depositing a slightly larger amount of bonds at Washington. All the banks which issued currency were thus compelled to buy bonds, that is, to take part in the loaning of money to the government (§ 496).

726. Foreign Affairs.—The Confederates had always expected that Great Britain and France would intervene in the war; that is, that they would agree to consider the Confederate States an independent nation, and attempt to force the United States to follow their example. They expected this because the cotton-factories in those two countries were in great difficulties for want of the Southern cotton, which was cut off by the blockade (§ 673). The Emancipation Proclamation put an end to any such expectation; the people of Great Britain would not have allowed their government to attempt to force the United States to stop abolishing slavery, and the French Government would not have ventured to intervene alone.

725. What is said of the greenbacks? Of bonds and loans? Of the National Banking system?

726. What had the Confederates expected from abroad? Why? What was the effect of the Emancipation Proclamation?

727. Confederate Privateers.—New reasons arose for ill-feeling against the British Government. Confederate agents in England built and armed two fast-sailing steamers, the *Alabama* and the *Florida*. The British Government was not sufficiently careful to seize them; they escaped to sea, and soon almost entirely drove American commerce from the ocean. Whenever they were closely chased by American frigates, they



THE ALABAMA.

found a friendly refuge in British harbors, until they could again get out to sea and renew their work of destruction. And, as they were British built, British armed, and manned mostly by British sailors, it looked to the people of the United States as if the building of these vessels were a British trick to destroy the commerce of a friendly nation (§ 854).

728. The Sioux War.—During the summer of 1862, the Sioux Indians, in western Minnesota, revolted. They had made many complaints of their treatment by the government, and in August they burst suddenly upon the outlying settlements, killing men, women, and children without mercy. Troops were hurried back from the western armies, and the Indians were driven out of the State. Thirty-eight of them were tried, convicted of murder, and hanged.

SUPPLEMENTARY QUESTIONS.

Locations.—Locate Washington, D. C. (§ 713); Richmond, Va.; Fortress Monroe, Va.; the James River; the York River; Fredericksburgh, Va.; the Shenandoah River; Manassas Junction, Va.; Williamsburgh, Va.; Frederick, Md.; Philadelphia (general map); Baltimore; Harper's Ferry, W. Va.; Sharpsburgh, Md.

REVIEW.—What were the four Virginia and Maryland campaigns of 1862? Name three of the Seven Days' Battles. What battle stopped the Confederate invasion of the North? What great battle ended the

727. What is said of the *Alabama* and the *Florida*? Why were they looked upon as British vessels in disguise?

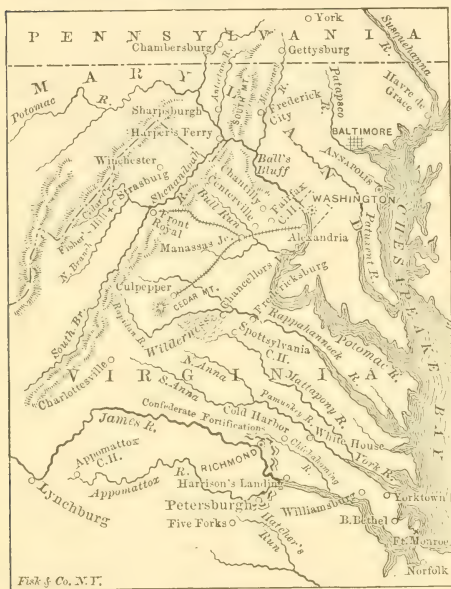
728. What is said of the Sioux war in Minnesota? How was it ended?

year? Who was the Confederate commander? His ablest assistant? Who was the Union commander in most of the battles? What proclamation of the President attacked negro slavery? What English-built privateers escaped during the year? What Indian war took place?

III. EVENTS OF 1863.

In the East.

729. Chancellorsville.—For some months the Army of the



OPERATIONS IN THE EAST.

Potomac, under General Hooker, lay quiet on the north side of the Rappahannock (§ 722). Then Hooker again led the army across the Rappahannock, keeping to the north of the strong defences behind Fredericksburgh, and thus forced his way about ten miles toward Richmond. He was then met by Lee's army at a little place called Chancellorsville, and one of the great battles of the war followed (May 2–3). By skilful generalship, Lee and Jackson inflicted heavy loss on

the Union army, and drove it back across the Rappahannock. But the Confederates suffered a heavier loss in the death of "Stonewall" Jackson. He was shot, through mistake, by some of his own men, during the night after the first day's battle. Lee said, very truly, that he had lost his right arm in losing Jackson.

The Union forces engaged numbered 90,000, and their loss was 17,000; the Confederate forces numbered 45,000, and their loss was 12,000.

729. Describe Hooker's advance toward Richmond. The battle of Chancellorsville. What is said of "Stonewall" Jackson's death?

730. Second Invasion of the North.—During the month of June, Lee made preparations for a second invasion of the North. His army, now numbering 70,000 men, was moved around the west of Hooker's army, until it reached the Shenandoah valley. At the same time, Hooker was drawing back his army of about 100,000 men toward Washington, to protect that city. Soon the movement changed into a race between the two armies for the North. Lee's army moved through the Shenandoah valley, crossed the Potomac at Harper's Ferry, marched across Maryland, and entered Pennsylvania. The main body was at Chambersburgh, but parts of it held York and came within a few miles of Harrisburgh. The invasion caused great alarm in the North. All business was stopped in Philadelphia, and militia regiments were hurried forward from all the States to aid the Army of the Potomac.

731. The Army of the Potomac had crossed the Potomac between Lee and Washington, and moved north through Maryland so as to protect Baltimore and Philadelphia. General George G. Meade had now taken Hooker's place as commander. Just as Lee turned his course east from Chambersburgh to attack Philadelphia, the Army of the Potomac moved up between him and the city, and the two armies met at Gettysburgh.

732. The Battle of Gettysburgh was fought July 1, 2, and 3. The Union army was on the crest of a line of hills called Cemetery Ridge; the Confederate army was on the crest of a line of hills opposite,



GEORGE G. MEADE.

730. How did Lee begin his invasion? What was his line of march? What was the feeling in the North?

731. What was the Army of the Potomac doing? How did the two armies meet?

732. When was the battle of Gettysburgh fought? Describe the positions of the two armies. What was the result of the first day's fighting? Of the second day's fighting? How did the final struggle take place? What was its result?

called Seminary Ridge; between them, in the valley, was the town of Gettysburgh. The first day's fighting was rather in favor of the Confederates. On the second day they even gained one of the Union positions. The final struggle came on the third day. After a tremendous fire of two hours from 150 cannon, the Confederates made their last charge in a line more than a mile long. It was gallantly made, and gallantly repulsed after a three hours' struggle. When the sun set, the battle of Gettysburgh was over, and Lee was defeated.

The Union loss was about 23,000; the Confederate loss, about 30,000. While the last charge was being repulsed, the arrangements were being made for the surrender of Vicksburgh (§ 738).

733. Lee's Retreat was begun during the night, and his army moved southward through Maryland and Virginia to the Rapidan, a branch of the Rappahannock. The Army of the Potomac followed slowly until it reached the opposite bank of the Rapidan. Here the two armies remained in position until Grant came to take command in Virginia the following year (§ 761). But Lee's army never fully recovered from the terrible losses of Gettysburgh, and it made no further effort to break through the Union line, or invade the North.

SUPPLEMENTARY QUESTIONS.

Locations.—Locate the Rappahannock River; Fredericksburgh, Va.; the Shenandoah River; Harper's Ferry, W. Va.; Chambersburgh, Pa.; York, Pa.; Carlisle, Pa.; Philadelphia; Gettysburgh, Pa.

REVIEW.—Name the two great battles of 1863 in the East. Which was marked by the death of Stonewall Jackson? Which stopped Lee's second invasion of the North?

In the West.

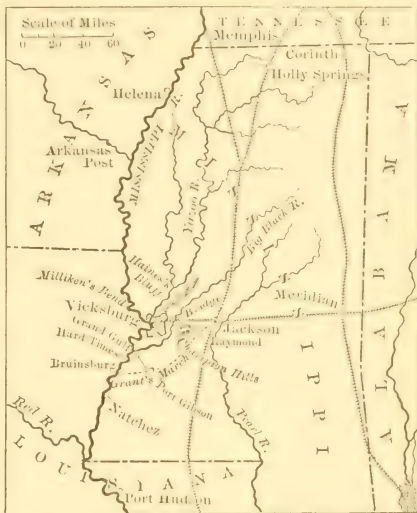
734. Union Positions.—In the beginning of the year 1863 there were four Union armies in the West. One was near Murfreesboro, under Rosecrans (§ 697); another was in northern Mississippi, near Holly Springs, under Grant (§ 698); a third was in Louisiana, under Banks, who had succeeded Butler (§ 709); and a fourth was in Arkansas (§ 699). The leading object of these armies was to open up the Mississippi, and thus split the Confederacy; and as Grant was operating close to the line of the river,

733. What is said of Lee's retreat? Of the pursuit? Of the positions of the opposing armies? How had Lee's army been weakened?

734. How many Union armies were in the West? Name them. What was their leading object? Who was to do the work?

the burden of the work fell first on him. His ablest assistant was Sherman (§ 773).

735. Confederate Positions.—The river was still blocked by strong Confederate fortifications at Vicksburgh and Port Hudson (§ 710). Between Vicksburgh and Grant was a Confederate army under Pemberton; and all the Confederate forces in the West were under J. E. Johnston (§ 714), who had succeeded Bragg. But Pemberton and Johnston did not work well together. When Grant had begun his march toward Vicksburgh the year before, Pemberton had sent cavalry around to the rear of Grant's army, captured Holly Springs and its supplies, and thus compelled Grant to return unsuccessful. He was so



THE VICKSBURG CAMPAIGN.

elated by this success that he overrated his own skill, and gave but a half-hearted obedience to Johnston's directions. Johnston wished to have no siege of Vicksburgh, but to fight Grant in the open field: Pemberton proceeded to strengthen the fortifications in every way, and to get ready for a siege.

Early in the year 1863, Sherman led an expedition up the Arkansas River, and captured Fort Hindman, or Arkansas Post, a fortification which threatened the flank of any attack on Vicksburgh.

736. Grant's First Plan was to lead his army across the Mississippi, near Memphis, and move down the west bank of the river until he should be opposite Vicksburgh. Here he endeavored to

735. What were the chief Confederate fortifications? What was Pemberton's command? Johnston's command? What success had Pemberton gained in the previous year? What effect did it have on him? How did Johnston and Pemberton disagree?

736. What was Grant's first plan? What did he endeavor to do? How did his plan fail?

cut a canal across a great bend in the Mississippi, and thus leave Vicksburgh at a distance from the river. But the river refused to run through the canal, and the plan failed. After two months' hard work, he found that Vicksburgh was too strong to be taken from this side.

737. Grant's Second Plan.—Grant, having given up this mode of attack, moved his army in April still farther south, past Vicksburgh, through a low, flat, and terribly swampy country. At the same time, the gunboat fleet ran past the batteries without much injury, and these ferried Grant's army across the Mississippi, at Grand Gulf, near Port Gibson, so that it was now again on the Vicksburgh side of the river, but below the city. Sherman, with a part of the army, kept up a noisy attack on the northern side of the city, on the Yazoo River, to distract Pemberton's attention. Johnston was gathering a force at Jackson, to aid Pemberton.

738. Vicksburgh.—After crossing the Mississippi, Grant moved northeast, fighting five successful battles as he went, until he reached Jackson. He thus drove Pemberton into his fortifications at Vicksburgh on one side, while he drove away Johnston on the other. Then, turning back from Jackson, he rejoined Sherman, and the whole army formed a close siege of Vicksburgh. From that time, his grip on the place could not be loosened. He threatened Johnston in his rear, while he besieged Pemberton in his front; and, after a siege of six weeks, the place surrendered, with 32,000 prisoners (July 4).

739. Port Hudson surrendered (July 9) to the Louisiana army under Banks. By the captures of Vicksburgh and Port Hudson, the whole Mississippi River passed under the control of the Union armies and fleets. The Confederates could no longer bring grain and cattle across the Mississippi from Texas and Arkansas, to feed their armies east of the Mississippi.

740. In Arkansas the Confederates attacked the post at Helena, July 4, and were badly defeated. After the fall of Vicksburgh, Grant sent a force into the State and took possession of

737. What was Grant's next movement? How did the gunboats aid him? What was Sherman doing? What was Johnston doing?

738. What was Grant's next line of march? What was its effect? How was the siege formed? How did it end?

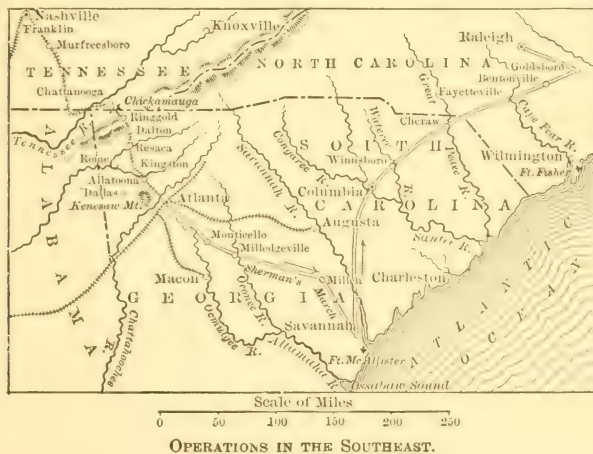
739. What is said of the surrender of Port Hudson? What were the effects of these victories?

740. What was done in Arkansas this year?

nearly all of it, though there was still some fighting by Confederate guerrillas (§ 699).

741. Cavalry Raids had now become common on both sides. A cavalry force, if it could get into the rear of an opposing army, could inflict more damage, by tearing up railroads and burning supplies, than could be made up by the capture of the raiders. One of the boldest of these raiders was the Confederate John Morgan. In July he passed through Tennessee and Kentucky with 4,000 horsemen, crossed the Ohio River into Indiana, and moved eastward into Ohio, fighting the militia as he went. The whole State was alarmed, and he was captured before he could return into Kentucky.

He escaped from prison, but was killed soon afterward in a Kentucky skirmish. Toward the end of the war, the Union cavalry forces became fully as good soldiers as their opponents, and much more successful.



742. Chattanooga was a most important point for both sides. The army which held it could control all east Tennessee, and at the same time could attack the mountainous region to the south of it, in northern Georgia. In June, Rosecrans moved his army south

741. What is said of cavalry raids? Describe Morgan's raid.

742. Why was Chattanooga an important point? What movement did Rosecrans make in June? What movement did he make during the summer? Where did the Confederate army halt?

from Murfreesboro, and Bragg retired slowly before him to Chattanooga. During the summer, Rosecrans moved part of his army so far around Bragg's army that the Confederates evacuated Chattanooga, and retired about twelve miles south into Georgia. Here they took a position behind a little creek called the Chickamauga.

743. Chickamauga.—Rosecrans thought that Bragg was retreating, and hurried to pursue him. But Bragg had received reinforcements from Lee's army, and defeated the Union army in the battle of Chickamauga (September 19–20). Most of Rosecrans's men fled in confusion to Chattanooga, but a part, under General George H. Thomas, held their ground obstinately, and covered the retreat. Bragg followed and shut up the Union army in Chattanooga so closely that it was almost starved.

The Union forces numbered about 55,000; the Confederate forces, about 60,000. The loss of each was about equal, 17,000.

744. The Siege of Chattanooga was kept up for about two months. But one road, and that a bad one, was open to the Union troops. The others were controlled by the Confederates, who held Lookout Mountain and Missionary Ridge, each of them nearly half a mile high, and so strongly fortified as to seem to defy attack. The Union army could neither advance nor retreat, and there seemed to be a chance, at one time, that it would have to surrender. Bragg was so sure of an easy success that he sent a part of his army, under Longstreet, up the Tennessee River to besiege Knoxville, which was held by Burnside (§ 722).

745. Grant was now, since his success at Vicksburgh, one of the most prominent Union generals, and he was sent to Chattanooga. All the western armies east of the Mississippi were put under his command, and he drew men from all of them, as well as others from the Army of the Potomac, under Hooker. He also brought Sherman, and several other generals in whom he had confidence. He then made quiet preparations for that which hardly seemed possible, the storming of the lofty mountains held by the Confederates.

743. What is said of the battle of Chickamauga? Who covered the retreat? What was Bragg's next movement?

744. What is said of the siege of Chattanooga? What was the position of the Union army? What is said of the siege of Knoxville?

745. Who was sent to Chattanooga? What command was given him? What preparations did he make?

746. Lookout Mountain and Missionary Ridge were taken by sudden assaults (November 23, 24, and 25). The Confederates expected no such result, and the Union troops were almost as much



LOOKOUT MOUNTAIN.

surprised at their own success. Part of the fighting was so high up the mountain-side that the troops were hidden by the clouds, and for this reason the battle of Lookout Mountain is often called "the battle above the clouds."

The Union forces numbered about 60,000; their loss was 6,000. The Confederate forces numbered about 35,000; their loss was 10,000.

747. The Confederate Retreat.—Bragg's army retreated to Dalton, where Johnston was put in command of it. At the same

746. What is said of the battles of Lookout Mountain and Missionary Ridge? What is the battle of Lookout Mountain often called, and why?

747. What became of Bragg's army? Of Longstreet's army?

time, Longstreet gave up the siege of Knoxville, and retreated across the mountains into Virginia. For the rest of the year military operations in the West ceased.

SUPPLEMENTARY QUESTION.

Locations.—Locate Murfreesboro, Tenn.; Holly Springs, Miss.; Vicksburgh, Miss.; Port Hudson, La.; Memphis, Tenn.; Port Gibson, Miss.; the Yazoo River; Jackson, Miss.; Helena, Ark.; Chattanooga, Tenn.; Knoxville, Tenn.; Dalton, Ga.

REVIEW.—What two strong posts on the Mississippi were captured by the Union forces in 1863? What victory was won by the Confederate forces in the West? What place did they then besiege? Who broke up the siege? By what battles?

On the Coast.

748. Fort Sumter was attacked in April by a fleet of ironclads from Port Royal; but, after half an hour's firing, one of the vessels was lost, and the rest retired.

749. Charleston was besieged for the last half of the year by a land-force from Port Royal, under General Q. A. Gillmore, aided by gunboats and ironclads. Gillmore, after hard fighting, captured an earthwork called Fort Wagner. He battered Fort Sumter into ruins, and destroyed about half of Charleston by firing shells into it from a distance of about five miles. But he failed to capture Fort Sumter, or to get any nearer to Charleston than the island at the mouth of the harbor.

750. The Ironclad Atlanta had been built by the Confederates in the Savannah River. She was much like the *Merrimac*, but larger and stronger. In June she steamed down the river to drive away the blockading fleet. The *Weehawken*, a monitor, met her and captured her after a fight of fifteen minutes, in which the *Weehawken* fired but five shots.

751. In Texas, Sabine Pass and Brownsville were captured during the year by expeditions from New Orleans.

SUPPLEMENTARY QUESTIONS.

Locations.—Locate Charleston, S. C. (general map); the Savannah River; Sabine Pass, La.; Brownsville, Tex.

REVIEW.—What battle between ironclads was fought in 1863? What fort was ruined?

748. What attack was made on Fort Sumter? What was its result?

749. What is said of the siege of Charleston? What did Gillmore accomplish? What did he fail to do?

750. What is said of the *Atlanta*? How was she captured?

751. What was done in Texas?

752. Military Summary.—The year 1863 was one of great advantage to the forces of the United States in the West. Kentucky, Tennessee, Missouri, and Arkansas had been finally secured, and the seat of war had been changed to their southern border. The Mississippi had been opened, and the Confederacy divided into two parts, each of which in future had to fight for itself, while the Federal Government could send troops from the North to either side of the river. A new set of generals had appeared, Grant, Sherman, Sheridan, and others, who were very hard and fast fighters, and cared little for politics or anything else than the war. In the East less had been done, and Lee was still more than a match for his opponents. But even here advantages had been gained. Lee's army had been so badly shattered by the terrible slaughter at Gettysburgh that it was never again quite equal to what it had been before; and his last and strongest attempt to burst through the attacking line and carry the war into the North had been a failure. It seems now that July, 1863, was the turning-point of the war, after which the Confederacy grew steadily weaker. During that month occurred the battle of Gettysburgh, the surrender of Vicksburgh and Port Hudson, the conquest of Arkansas, and the movement on Chattanooga. The results were so evident that in August a day of thanksgiving was proclaimed by President Lincoln, and a day of fasting and prayer by the Confederate authorities.

Internal Affairs.

753. In the Confederacy there was now great and general distress. The government forced all men between the ages of 18 and 45 into the army, so that women and children had to do men's work. The soldiers were badly fed, clothed, and armed. Food was scarce and dear, for the people could now get no cattle from beyond the Mississippi, no grain from Virginia and Tennessee, no sugar from Louisiana, and no salt or fish from the coast. Cotton could not be sold, for the blockade was too strict. The railroads were fast wearing out, and there were no great iron-works to replace

752. What successes were won this year in the West? What new generals had appeared? What had been done in the East? What advantages had been gained? What was the turning-point of the war? What events occurred during this month? What was done in August?

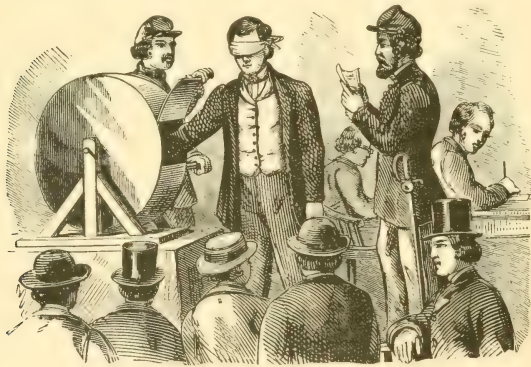
753. What was the state of affairs in the Confederacy? What is said of the men? Of food? Of cotton? Of the railroads? Of common articles? Of paper money?

them. It was almost impossible to get such common articles as paper, and printing was sometimes done on one side of wall-paper. The government had issued so much paper money that it was almost worthless. One dollar in gold was worth twenty dollars in Confederate money.

Butter sold for \$5 a pound; beef, \$1.50 a pound; coffee, \$10 a pound; corn and potatoes, \$14 a bushel.

754. In the North and West there was no such distress. Food, manufactures, and money were abundant. Taxes were high, but the people paid them willingly and easily. The tariff had been made very high in 1861, so as to first increase American manufactures, and then lay taxes on them. Paper money had been issued (§ 725), and had decreased in value so that one dollar in gold was worth one and a half dollars in paper; but wages had increased nearly enough to make this good.

755. The Army was well fed, armed, and clothed; and the



DRAFTING SOLDIERS.

people formed Sanitary Commissions and other associations to care for the comfort of the soldiers in the field. These associations built hospitals, distributed food, medicines, and assistance of every kind, and aided the sick and wounded. To help pay their ex-

754. What was the state of affairs in the North and West? What is said of taxes? Of the tariff and manufactures? Of paper money?

755. What is said of the army? Of popular associations and their work? Of the fairs?

penses, great fairs were held all over the country, on a scale never equalled before or since.

The New York City fair brought in \$1,200,000; the Philadelphia fair, \$1,080,000; and the Brooklyn fair, \$400,000.

756. Drafts were used this year to fill up the armies, for volunteering had become slow. Names were drawn by lot from lists of able-bodied men all over the country, and those whose names were drawn were forced to enter the army or pay for a substitute. The first draft in New York City, in July, was stopped by a great mob, which held control of the city for several days, and burned houses and murdered negroes at its will. Finally it was scattered by soldiers hurried back from Gettysburgh (§ 732), and drafting went on unopposed.

Drafts never brought many soldiers, but they hurried volunteering.

757. West Virginia was admitted to the Union in 1863.

West Virginia was the mountainous western part of Virginia. It had been settled in great part by immigrants from Ohio; there were not many slaves in it; and, when Virginia seceded in 1861, the people of this section refused to obey (§ 674). At first they claimed that their legislature was the legislature of Virginia; but they soon formed a separate State which was admitted by Congress in 1863. The State is rich in minerals—iron, coal, salt, and petroleum; and its population in 1880 was 618,457.



SEAL OF WEST VIRGINIA.

Foreign Affairs.

758. Mexico.—France, aided at first by Great Britain and Spain, had overturned the republican government of Mexico as soon as the troubles in the United States began. The United States considered this an unfriendly act (§ 427), but could do nothing just then to resist it. France now made Mexico an empire, with Maximilian, an Austrian archduke, as emperor. Maximilian accepted the throne in the following year (§ 829).

756. What is said of drafts? How were they held? What riot took place in New York City? How was it suppressed?

757. What State was admitted in 1863?

758. What had France done in Mexico? Why did not the United States interfere? What did France do this year?

759. The Confederate Privateers *Alabama* and *Florida* (§ 727) continued their destruction of American commerce; and a new vessel, the *Georgia*, was sent out on the same work. This vessel, like the others, was built in Great Britain. Confederate agents also built two powerful ironclad rams in Great Britain, declaring that they were intended for the emperor of China; but the United States threatened to declare war against Great Britain if they were allowed to go to sea, and the British Government at the last moment seized them. Confederate agents also tried to build ironclads in France, but the French Government refused to permit them to do so.

IV. EVENTS OF 1864.

760. Confederate Positions.—There were now but two great Confederate armies east of the Mississippi. Lee's army, 62,000 strong, held the Rapidan River, near Fredericksburgh. Johnston's army, 75,000 strong, held Dalton, in Georgia. Around it and behind it, to the south, there were great mountains, which continued beyond Atlanta. They gave Johnston a great number of strong defensive positions, and made it extremely difficult to drive him out of the mountains into the flat country to the south, between Atlanta and the sea.

761. Union Positions (East).—Grant had now become the most prominent Union general, and he was given command of all the armies of the United States, with the rank of lieutenant-general. He left Sherman (§ 773) to command the army before Dalton, while he himself went to Virginia to meet Lee, taking Sheridan with him. When he took his new place with the Army of the Potomac, it numbered 116,000 men, about twice as many as Lee's army.

Nothing was so important an assistance to the successful conclusion of the war as the complete confidence which the people of the North and West now gave to Grant, unless it was the frank, hearty, and complete confidence which Grant always gave to his assistants, Sherman, Sheridan, Thomas, and others.

759. What is said of the Confederate privateers? Of the building of Confederate ironclads in Great Britain? In France?

760. What were the positions of the two great Confederate armies? What was the strength of Johnston's position?

761. What is said of Grant? Who were the two Union commanders? How many were in the Army of the Potomac?

762. Union Positions (West).—Three armies had been acting in the West: the Army of the Mississippi, which had captured Vicksburgh; the Army of the Tennessee, which had fought at Murfreesboro; and the Army of the Ohio, which had forced its way through eastern Tennessee to Knoxville (§ 744). All three were now united at Chattanooga under Sherman, so that he had 100,000 men. His object was to drive Johnston's weaker army southward through the mountains to the open country beyond Atlanta, and there overthrow and destroy it.

To make certain that there should be no interference by other Confederate armies in the West, Sherman led an army eastward to Meridian, Miss., early in the year. He destroyed the railroads for miles in every direction so completely that no army or supplies could be moved against him (§ 788).

763. Plan of United Action.—It was agreed by Grant and Sherman that both should begin the forward movement on the same day (May 5); and that each should keep his opponent so busy that the two Confederate armies would not be able to send assistance to one another, as they had been in the habit of doing. When the fighting began, the Confederate armies were allowed no time for rest.

SUPPLEMENTARY QUESTIONS.

Locations.—Locate Fredericksburgh, Va. (§ 713); Dalton, Ga. (§ 742); Atlanta, Ga.; Vicksburgh, Miss.; Murfreesboro, Tenn.; Knoxville Tenn.; Chattanooga, Tenn.

REVIEW.—What two generals were in command of the United States and Confederate armies in Virginia in 1864? At Chattanooga? What was the date fixed for the forward movement?

In the East.

764. Grant and Lee.—Grant had won his western victories by "constant hammering," and he set out to do the same thing in Virginia. But he had now to meet an enemy very different from Pemberton or Bragg. Lee had already won the reputation of being one of the most skilful generals of modern times; and "constant

762. Name the three western armies of the United States? Where were they now united, and under whom? What was Sherman's object?

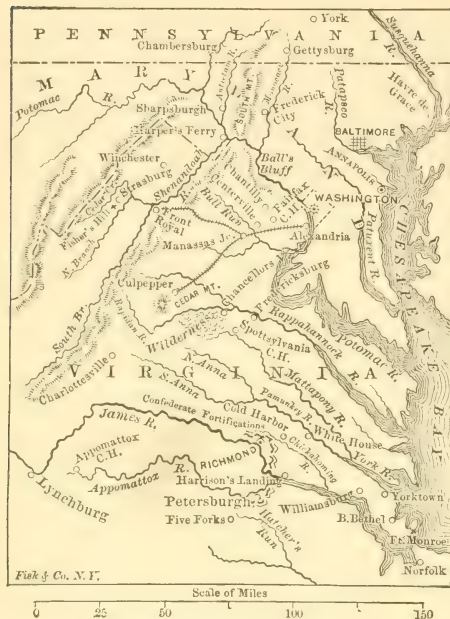
763. What plan of action was agreed upon by Grant and Sherman?

764. What had been Grant's method of warfare? What is said of Lee's reputation? What was Grant at last forced to do?

hammering" at him was a very perilous undertaking. It was like a battle between a man with a sword and a man with a club; and it was not until Grant laid down the club, and used his own military skill, that his superiority in strength gave him the advantage.

765. Grant's Plan.

Grant had decided to take the overland route from the Rappahannock River to Richmond (§ 713). An army of 30,000 men, under Butler, was sent up the James River, to a point near Petersburg, to attack Richmond from that side. Another army, under Sigel and Hunter, was sent up the Shenandoah valley to attack Lynchburgh and



OPERATIONS IN THE EAST.

threaten Richmond from the west.

766. The Wilderness, as it was called, between Fredericksburgh and Richmond, was crossed from west to east by many rivers, and Lee had filled it with fortifications. From behind these he fought Grant successfully for two weeks, repulsing his stubborn attempts to storm the works. The fighting was the bloodiest of the war. In the first three days of the Wilderness battles the Union loss was 14,000; and in the next eleven days, at Spottsylvania Court-house,

765. What was Grant's route? Where was Butler sent? Where were Sigel and Hunter sent?

766. What was the nature of the Wilderness? How did Lee make use of it? What is said of the fighting? Of the Union losses? Of Lee's loss?

it was 14,000 more: a total loss in two weeks of 28,000 men. Lee's loss is not certainly known.

The Union loss in these two weeks was about equal to the whole population of Bridgeport, Conn., Elizabeth, N. J., Utica, N. Y., Peoria, Ills., or Savannah, Ga. But in the losses are included wounded men who afterward returned to duty, so that Grant did not really *lose* all of the numbers above stated.

767. Flank Movements.—Grant now resorted to his military skill, with more success. At each of Lee's defences he attacked lightly in front, at the same time pushing part of his force to the left, attacking the rear of Lee's army, and so forcing him to retreat to a new position. In this manner Grant worked his way southward to the Chickahominy (§ 715). Lee's army was now inside of the main defences of Richmond, the centre of which was at Cold Harbor. Once more Grant tried the "hammering" process. The whole Union army was ordered to assault the Confederate works at once; but the assault was hopelessly repulsed in twenty minutes. These two weeks' fighting had cost the Union army more than 10,000 men, and the Confederates less than 2,000.

768. The Auxiliary Movements had not been successful. Butler had been forced by the Confederates into a peninsula on the James River; and then they had built fortifications in front of him and "bottled him up." Sigel and Hunter had been defeated; and their army was driven off into West Virginia, so as to leave the Shenandoah valley unprotected. Lee was quick to take advantage of this. In July he sent part of his army, under Early, through the Shenandoah valley, to pass down through Maryland and attack Washington. But he found the forts around Washington too strong for him, and returned to Virginia, having succeeded only in frightening the authorities at the capital.

769. The Defences of Richmond on the north and east had now been found too strong to be taken by assault; and Grant determined to move his army around, cross the James River, and attack the city from the south. In carrying out this movement, the

767. How did Grant change his method? How did he force Lee back? Where did the advance stop? What is said of the assault on Cold Harbor?

768. What is said of the auxiliary movements? What had become of Butler? Of Sigel and Hunter? What is said of Early's raid? Did it accomplish anything?

769. How did Grant change his plan, and why? What was the line of march? When did it take place? What new obstacle appeared? What army defended it?

army followed nearly the line of the Seven Days' Battles of 1862 (§ 718), but with very little fighting. The movement was accomplished successfully in June; but the army had no sooner crossed the James River than it came up against the fortifications of Petersburg, which were too strong to be taken by assault. Within them was Lee's army, which had moved across from Richmond as Grant had moved.

770. Petersburg is about 20 miles south of Richmond. The Confederate fortifications ran in an irregular curve from below Petersburg around to the north of Richmond, a distance of about 30 miles. To defend this line Lee had about 60,000 men. Before him was Grant, with about twice as many men, attacking him at different places, and keeping him so busy that he could not interfere with the operations in the West. This was the situation of affairs during the rest of this year and until the end of the war in the following spring. Both armies were strongly fortified. But Grant's constant effort was to push his lines farther around to the southwest, so as to attack Lee's railroad communications. Whenever he succeeded in doing so, Lee had to face him with new fortifications. Thus Lee's line was always growing weaker as it grew longer, for he could hardly get any fresh troops, while Grant had as many as he needed.

The Union loss during the rest of the year was about 40,000; the Confederate loss, about 20,000.

771. The Petersburg Mine.—But one direct attempt was made to storm Lee's line during the year. A mine was dug under one of the Confederate forts, and filled with four tons of gunpowder. It was exploded (July 30), and the fort and garrison were blown to pieces. But the assault which was to follow was badly managed, and the Union troops were driven back with heavy loss.

772. The Shenandoah Valley, into which Early had retired (§ 768), was now guarded by a Union army under Sheridan. In September, Sheridan defeated Early in the battle of Winchester.

770. Where is Petersburg? Where were the Confederate lines? What was Grant's position? What was his principal object? How did this weaken Lee's line?

771. What is said of the Petersburg mine? What was its result?

772. How was the Shenandoah valley guarded? What is said of the battle of Winchester? Of the battle of Cedar Creek?

In the following month, Early surprised the Union army at Cedar Creek, about twenty miles southwest of Winchester, and defeated it while Sheridan was absent at Winchester. In the afternoon, Sheridan rejoined his defeated army, rallied the men, and defeated Early, driving him far up the valley. The story is told in Read's poem of "Sheridan's Ride."

During this campaign, Sheridan laid waste the whole Shenandoah valley, burning barns and destroying crops and farming implements. Over 2,000 barns were burned. The object of the destruction was to make the valley so desolate that no Confederate troops could operate in it.

SUPPLEMENTARY QUESTIONS.

Locations.—Locate the Rappahannock River; Richmond, Va.; the James River; Petersburg, Va.; the Shenandoah River; Lynchburgh, Va.; Fredericksburgh, Va.; Winchester, Va.

REVIEW.—Name the three great battles of Grant's overland route to Richmond. The town which was besieged for the rest of the war. Sheridan's two battles in the Shenandoah valley.

773. William Tecumseh Sherman was born in Ohio in 1820, and graduated at West Point in 1841. He became a captain in the Mexican war, and then entered business. He became a major-general in the United States army, 1861-5, and general commanding, 1869-83. His abilities were not properly estimated at the beginning of the war, and it was even commonly reported that he was crazy. Grant knew him better, and supported him as he himself had been supported by Lincoln; it had been reported to Lincoln that Grant drank whiskey excessively, but Lincoln replied that he would be glad to send a barrel of "Grant's whiskey" to each of the other generals. Grant's hearty support gave Sherman the opportunity to prove his ability, and he came out of the war with the reputation of one of the ablest of its generals. Having retired from the army, he spent the rest of his life in New York City. He died February 14, 1891.



W. T. SHERMAN.

773. What were the leading events in the life of Sherman? Of Johnston?

Joseph E. Johnston, of Virginia, was born in 1807, and graduated from West Point in 1829. He became



JOSEPH E. JOHNSTON.

colonel in the Mexican war, and major-general in the Confederate army in 1861. His operations at Bull Run (§ 681), Vicksburgh (§ 738), in Georgia (§ 774), and in North Carolina (§ 802) are a part of our history. Next to Lee, he seems to have been the ablest of the Confederate generals, but Lee had the advantage of the confidence of Davis, who disliked Johnston extremely, and was always happy to turn him out of service, if he could find a fair excuse for doing so.

In the West.

774. Sherman's Advance from Chattanooga against Dal-

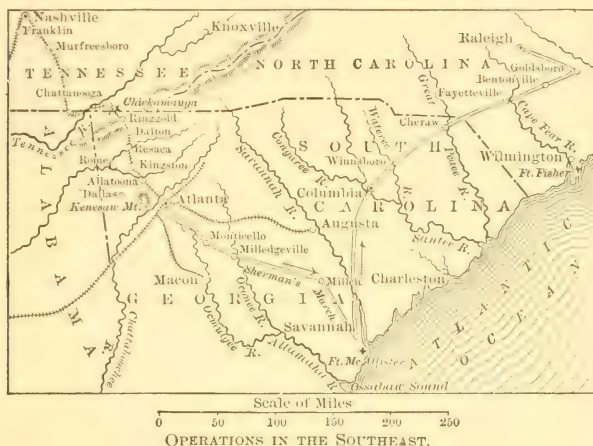
ton and Atlanta was through a country of lofty mountains, with strong defensive positions; but there was no "hammering." Both Sherman and Johnston were masters of their art; and the contest between them was as scientific as a skilful game of chess or a fencing-match. Johnston held each position until Sherman's forces began to lap around toward his rear; then he retired cautiously to another position, and the same process was gone through again. Neither general was careless enough to give the other the slightest advantage. In this manner Johnston was slowly driven back from one position to another, until he was forced to cross the Chattahoochee River, and take his strongest position, Atlanta. Beyond Atlanta he could not go much farther south (§ 762). The principal battles were Resaca, Dallas, and Kenesaw Mountain. But there was no such slaughter as in Virginia. Sherman's loss during his whole two months' march to the Chattahoochee was about the same as the Union loss in the two weeks' battles around Cold Harbor (§ 767).

775. Johnston's Plan had been to bring Sherman just far

774. What is said of the country in which Sherman was operating? Of the contest between Sherman and Johnston? How far did Johnston's retreat continue? Which were the principal battles? What is said of the losses?

775. What had been Johnston's object? How had Sherman's force been weakened? What was Johnston ready for?

enough from Chattanooga to be able to meet him on equal terms. All Sherman's supplies were brought by the single railroad behind him. As he advanced, it was necessary for him to leave guards to protect the railroad: otherwise the Confederate cavalry would work around to his rear, tear up the railroad, and starve his army (§ 741). But every guard thus left weakened his force, and made it more nearly equal to Johnston's. Johnston had played his game of war so successfully that he was now ready to fight the long delayed battle, and had begun arrangements to do so.



776. Johnston's Removal.—Johnston's long retreat had been skilfully conducted, but the people of the Confederacy did not quite understand the skill of it. They were startled as Sherman's storm of war came rolling up toward the edge of the Georgia mountains above them; and Jefferson Davis, who always disliked Johnston, made this feeling an excuse for removing him. General J. B. Hood was appointed in his place. The results were that he threw away all the advantages still retained by Johnston; one of the two great Confederate armies was lost before the end of the year; and the Confederacy itself fell in the following spring.

777. Hood had a great reputation as a hard fighter, and was

776. How had the people of the Confederacy felt about Johnston's retreat? What was done by Jefferson Davis? Who was appointed in Johnston's place? What were the results?

777. What is said of Hood? What did he do? How was the capture of Atlanta accomplished?

anxious to support it. He made three furious attacks on Sherman's army in July, which were the severest battles yet fought in Georgia. He was beaten in all three. Early in September, Sherman fought his way around toward the rear of Atlanta, and Hood was compelled to leave the city, which was then occupied by the Union forces (September 2).

So far, both armies had lost about the same number of men, 30,000. More than half of the Confederate loss had been sustained in Hood's battles. Both armies had been reinforced to about their original strength (§§ 760, 762).

778. Hood's Plan.—Early in October, Hood moved his whole army past Atlanta, and marched northwest toward the country from which Sherman had set out. He hoped to compel Sherman to follow him, and thus to change the seat of war again to Tennessee or the North. Sherman made a show of pursuing him until he saw him fairly started for Tennessee, and then returned to Atlanta, tearing up the railroad behind him as he came (§ 780). He had already sent nearly half of his army to Tennessee, under Thomas, hoping that Hood would take the course he did.

779. Hood's Tennessee Campaign.—Thomas gathered all the



GEORGE H. THOMAS.

Union troops in Tennessee at Nashville, so that he was rather the superior in numbers as Hood drew near the city. At Franklin, a few miles south of Nashville, a battle was fought (November 30), and the Confederate army suffered severely. But it pressed on and besieged Nashville. After long preparation, Thomas attacked the besiegers and completely defeated them (December 15 and 16). The pursuit was

so vigorous that Hood's troops were scattered in every direction.

778. What new plan did Hood adopt? What did he hope to do? What did Sherman do? What had he already done?

779. What is said of Thomas? Of the battle of Franklin? Describe the final battle and pursuit? What was its result?

One of the Confederacy's two great armies had thus faded into nothing (§ 760).

780. Sherman's New Plan.—Sherman, on his return to Atlanta, had before him a country in which there was not an organized Confederate army between him and Virginia, nor the material to make one. Hood's mistake had put the whole Confederacy at Sherman's mercy. He had an army of 60,000 picked veteran troops, with abundant supplies, and with States before him which had not felt the war, and were the richest part of the Confederacy. In the middle of November, he burned Atlanta, cut the telegraph-wires to the North, and set out on his march southeast to the sea. But the sea was not his final destination: his real aim was at the back of Lee's army, far away in Virginia.

781. The March through Georgia was finished in a little less than a month, and during all this time it was not certainly known at the North what had become of Sherman's army. Its route was through Milledgeville and Millen, down the peninsula between the Savannah and Ogeechee rivers, to Savannah. It marched in four columns, covering a strip of country about 60 miles wide, all of which was made desolate. The railroads were destroyed, the depots and bridges were burned, and the army lived on the country. There was hardly any resistance to the march: indeed, it is doubtful whether, on open ground, any army of the war could have successfully resisted this army of Sherman's.

782. Savannah.—The army reached Ossabaw Sound, at the mouth of the Ogeechee River (December 13). Fort McAllister, which guarded Savannah, was stormed with a rush in fifteen minutes, by General Hazen with part of the 15th corps, and communication was opened with the blockading fleet. After a siege of eight days, Savannah was captured. Its garrison blew up two ironclads which had been built at this city, and escaped to Charleston. Sherman's army remained at Savannah until February, 1865.

SUPPLEMENTARY QUESTIONS.

Locations.—Locate Chattanooga, Tenn.; Dalton, Ga.; Atlanta, Ga.; the Chattahoochee River; Franklin, Tenn.; Nashville, Tenn.; Milledge

780. What was Sherman's position? What were his advantages? What did he do in November? What was his real aim?

781. What is said of Sherman's march through Georgia? What was its route? What was done on the march?

782. Where did the army reach the sea? How was communication opened with the fleet? How was Savannah captured?

ville, Ga.; Millen, Ga.; the Savannah River; the Ogeechee River; Savannah; Ossabaw Sound, Ga.

REVIEW.—Name the three leading battles of Sherman's march to Atlanta. The Confederate commander who succeeded Johnston. The two battles of his Tennessee campaign. The city at which Sherman's march to the sea began. The city at which it ended.

On the Coast.

783. Operations on the Coast, during this year, consisted of a number of attacks intended either to keep the Confederates busy and prevent them from sending assistance to Hood and Lee, or to capture Mobile and Wilmington, the last ports of the Confederacy for blockade-running.

784. In Florida, an expedition from Port Royal landed at Jacksonville in February, and marched west into the interior. The army was defeated by the Confederates in the battle of Olustee, and the expedition was given up.

785. In Louisiana, an expedition under Banks was sent up the Red River from New Orleans early in the year. Its object was to capture Shreveport and conquer the western part of the State, which was still held by the Confederates. It was defeated in April at Sabine Cross-roads and Pleasant Hill, near Shreveport, and returned without accomplishing anything.

786. In North Carolina, the Union troops were driven from some of their positions, early in the year, by the Confederates, aided by a powerful ironclad, the *Albemarle*. In October, Lieutenant Cushing, of the blockading fleet, blew up the *Albemarle* at Plymouth with a torpedo, one dark night, and the Union forces recovered their positions.

Cushing's exploit was one of the most heroic of the war. Out of his crew of thirteen volunteers, only himself and one other escaped.

787. Fort Fisher guarded the entrance to Wilmington. In December, a land and naval expedition, under General Butler and Admiral Porter, was sent from Fortress Monroe to capture it. The navy bombarded the fort, but the army failed to capture it, and the expedition returned. Grant sent it back again under another

783. What were the objects of the operations on the coast?

784. What is said of the Florida expedition? What was its result?

785. What expedition was begun in Louisiana? What was its object? What was its result?

786. What is said of operations in North Carolina? Of the destruction of the *Albemarle*?

787. Where is Fort Fisher? What is said of the first expedition against it? Of the second? What were the results?

commander, Terry, who assaulted and captured the fort in January, 1865. Wilmington was captured soon after. The Confederates had now but one harbor on the Atlantic coast, Charleston, and that was blockaded very closely.

788. Forrest's Raid.—Before taking command of the army opposed to Johnston, Sherman led an expedition east from Vicksburgh (§ 762). It was intended finally to attack Mobile from the land side. It reached Meridian, but its cavalry column, which was coming from Tennessee, was defeated by the Confederate General N. B. Forrest, and Sherman returned to Vicksburgh, after destroying an immense amount of property. Forrest passed on into Tennessee on a raid, and captured Fort Pillow, near Memphis. Its garrison was mostly negro troops, and Forrest's men killed nearly all of them.

789. Mobile Bay was defended by two strong forts, Fort Gaines and Fort Morgan, on opposite sides of the entrance. Inside of the entrance there were a great number of torpedoes, three gunboats, and a powerful ironclad ram, the *Tennessee*, commanded by Admiral Buchanan, formerly captain of the *Merrimac* (§ 702). Outside was the blockading fleet, consisting of fourteen wooden vessels and four monitors, under Farragut (§ 707). Farragut fought his way through the obstructions and past the forts into the harbor (August 5). He then fought and captured the *Tennessee*, much of the fighting being done by the wooden frigates. The forts then surrendered, and there was no more blockade-running at Mobile. The city itself was not captured until the following year (§ 801).

The passage of the forts, during which Farragut stationed himself in the rigging of his vessel, in order to see over the smoke, is the most celebrated part of the day's work. When cautioned to avoid the torpedoes which lined the entrance, the admiral expressed his contempt for the torpedoes in strong language and gave the order "Go ahead!" One vessel was sunk by a torpedo, but it was not Farragut's. The fight in the bay was fully as noteworthy. The *Tennessee* was the strongest of the Confederate ironclads, and yet Farragut attacked her with wooden vessels. These rammed her until their bows were broken off, and helped materially in capturing her.

788. What expedition did Sherman organize? What was its object? How was it defeated? What is said of the capture of Fort Pillow?

789. What were the defences at the entrance of Mobile Bay? Inside of the entrance? What was the attacking force? How did Farragut force his way into the harbor? Describe the battle that followed? What were its results?

790. Military Summary.—The year's operations had crushed in the shell of the Confederacy. The battle of Nashville had destroyed one of the two Confederate armies. There was but one important Confederate army left, that of Lee, in Virginia. Lee could do nothing to help the States farther south, for any weakening of his line would be followed by an instant attack from Grant, who was watching him vigilantly. Sherman, at Savannah, could go where he pleased, for there was nothing to resist him; and it was evident that he meant to go to Virginia, and crush Lee between two armies. Everywhere the people of the Confederacy seemed to be worn out and discouraged by the terrible distresses which they had endured for four years; and so many of the able-bodied men had been killed or crippled, that it was not easy to find men to form new Confederate armies.

SUPPLEMENTARY QUESTIONS.

Locations.—Locate (general map) Jacksonville, Fla.; the Red River, La.; Shreveport, La.; Plymouth, N. C.; Wilmington, N. C.; Meridian, Miss.; Memphis, Tenn.; Mobile, Ala.

REVIEW.—Against what two cities were the coast operations of 1864 directed? Who destroyed the naval defences of Mobile? What fort was captured at Wilmington?

On the Ocean.

791. Confederate Privateers continued to destroy American commerce during the year. Three of them, the *Alabama*, the *Florida*, and the *Georgia*, were captured or destroyed, but others took their places.

792. The Alabama, Captain Semmes, had put into the harbor of Cherbourg to refit, and was there watched by the *Kearsarge*, Captain Winslow. The two vessels were of equal strength, and Semmes sent Winslow a challenge to a sea-fight, which was just what Winslow desired. It took place (June 19) seven miles off the coast, and was watched by many spectators on the shore. The

790. What had been done by the year's operations? What is said of Lee's army? Of Sherman's army? Of the people of the Confederacy?

791. What is said of the Confederate privateers? Name those that were captured or destroyed?

792. Where had the *Alabama* taken refuge? What vessel was watching her? What is said of the two vessels? Describe the battle. What was its result?

fire of the *Alabama* was fast and wild; that of the *Kearsarge* was slower and sure. In an hour the *Alabama* raised the white flag, and twenty minutes afterward she sank. Her captain was picked up by an English yacht, and carried to England.

The superiority of the *Kearsarge's* fire caused particular satisfaction in the United States, for the *Alabama's* gunners were from British war-vessels (§ 370, note).

793. The Florida was surprised and captured in the neutral port of Bahia by the *Wachusett*, Captain Collins. Her capture was not legal; but before anything could be done, she was accidentally sunk near Fortress Monroe.

Her capture in a neutral port was much like that of the *Essex* in 1814 by the British (§ 374).

794. The Georgia had been sold, and had become an English merchant-vessel. The sale was illegal, and the *Georgia* was captured on her first voyage, off Lisbon, by the *Niagara*.

SUPPLEMENTARY QUESTIONS.

Locations.—(School-map.)—Locate *Cherbourg, France; Bahia, Brazil; Lisbon, Portugal*.

REVIEW.—Name the three Confederate privateers captured or destroyed in 1864. Which was destroyed in battle?

Internal Affairs.

795. In the Confederacy, the distress of the preceding year had only grown worse (§ 753). Confederate money had become almost worthless. One dollar in gold would buy fifty dollars of it, so that a one-dollar bill was really worth but two cents. Hardly any business was done; and every one was waiting for the inevitable end of the war. Women and children of course suffered most by the destruction of property and the scarcity of food; but they exhibited a wonderful patience under suffering.

796. In the North and West, comfort and prosperity had

793. How was the *Florida* captured? What became of her?

794. How was the *Georgia* captured?

795. What was the state of affairs in the Confederacy? What is said of Confederate money? Of business? Who were the greatest sufferers?

796. What was the state of affairs in the North and West? What calls had been made for troops? What effect did they have?

hardly been checked (§ 754). But, in spite of prosperity, the long severity of the war had begun to tell on the people. At different times in the year, the President had called out a total of about 1,200,000 new men, and many persons began to be alarmed by the apparent necessity for such numbers of fresh soldiers. It began to be believed that there must have been enormous losses in the war which had not been made public.

In fact, the government never received half the number of men it called for. Desertions and evasions made up for the rest, and this was the fact which was not made public.

797. In the Presidential Election of 1864, the Democrats nominated General McClellan (§ 679) and George H. Pendleton, of Ohio, and declared that the war ought to cease. The Republicans nominated President Lincoln and Andrew Johnson, of Tennessee (§ 826), and declared that the war ought to go on until successfully ended. Lincoln and Johnson were elected, receiving the electoral votes of all the States that voted, excepting New Jersey, Delaware, and Kentucky.

Of the 233 electoral votes, Lincoln and Johnson received 212, and McClellan and Pendleton 21 (§ 298).

798. Canada had become a refuge for a number of Confederate agents, who contrived various means of annoying the Northern States. They endeavored to release the Confederate prisoners who were shut up in camps in the North and West, and even to set fire to New York City; but they failed.

In October a number of them rode into the little town of St. Albans, in Vermont, and robbed the bank there.

799. Exchange of Prisoners had ceased, for the Confederate authorities refused to exchange negro soldiers. The Union prisoners, shut up amid the misery of the Confederacy, suffered horribly, particularly at Andersonville, a prison near Macon, in Georgia.

800. Nevada was admitted to the Union in 1864.

797. What is said of the Democratic nominations in 1864? Of the Republican nominations? Who were elected?

798. What is said of Canada? What did the Confederate agents endeavor to do?

799. Why had exchange of prisoners ceased? What was the condition of the Union prisoners?

800. What State was admitted in 1864?

Nevada is a part of the Mexican cession of 1848 (§ 574). Its soil is extremely arid, only one thirtieth of it being fit for cultivation. It cannot be said to have any agriculture, and its outlook for manufactures is hardly worth considering. Its wealth is in its mines, particularly those of silver (§ 635). Its production of this metal since 1859 has been so enormous as to throw the prices and business of the world into considerable confusion. The future of the silver-mines is uncertain. Most of them run in pockets, or bonanzas; and all of these that are known are now worked out. The principal mines have been worked so deep into the earth that the miners can hardly endure the heat. The population in 1880 was 63,483. The capital is Carson City; and the principal town is Virginia City.



SEAL OF NEVADA.

V. EVENTS OF 1865.

Conclusion of the War.

801. In Mississippi and Alabama several Union columns were already moving from place to place, seizing Confederate supplies and arms, and scattering any body of Confederate troops that attempted to make head against them. The only serious resistance was at Mobile; and that city surrendered in April, after a siege. This really ended the war in this section; but early in May, when the war had ended in Virginia and North Carolina, a general surrender of the Confederate troops in Mississippi and Alabama was made by General Richard Taylor (§ 809).

802. Sherman's Northward March began from Savannah (February 1). He moved directly north to Columbia, which was burned while he held possession of it. Each side accuses the other of having burned the city. From Columbia, Sherman moved northeast to Fayetteville, following nearly the same route as that taken by Cornwallis in 1781 (§ 252). So far, he had met little armed resistance, and his principal difficulty had been the winter rains and the swollen rivers and swamps. Now he had to move more cautiously, for he had his old enemy again before him.

801. What was done in Mississippi and Alabama? What is said of Mobile? How did the general surrender take place?

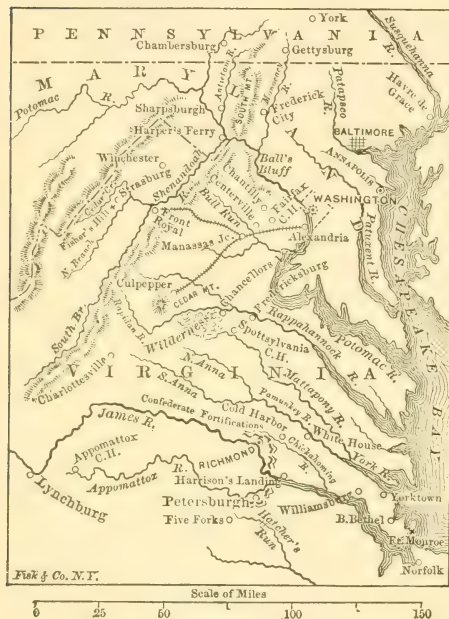
802. Where did Sherman's northward march begin? What route did he follow? What resistance did he meet? What enemy met him in North Carolina?

Davis had been forced to call Johnston back to service, and he had gathered 40,000 men to dispute Sherman's farther advance.

As Sherman marched north through the Carolinas, the Confederate garrisons in Charleston and other coast-towns were forced to leave their posts and hurry northward ahead of him. Thus the whole Atlantic coast was seized by the Union forces.

803. Johnston's Army was composed of some fragments of

the scattered Western armies, and of the garrisons of Charleston and other coast-cities which had been evacuated as Sherman's army passed them. The whole had been gathered up by Johnston, and formed into an army. He attacked Sherman furiously near Goldsboro (March 19), and for a time the battle was doubtful. But Sherman finally drove Johnston back, and reached Goldsboro. Here he was joined by fresh troops from Wilmington, and both armies waited for the results of operations in Virginia.



804. Grant's Opening Movement.—It has already been seen that Grant's general plan was to push his line farther to the southwest around Petersburg, thus, while he had men enough to keep his own line strong, forcing Lee to lengthen and weaken his line

803. How had Johnston's army been formed? What attack did he make on Sherman? What was its result?

804. What was Grant's general plan? What is said of Hatcher's Run? For whom did he then wait?

(§ 770). He made another movement in this direction the day before Sherman started from Savannah, reaching a little stream called Hatcher's Run, and holding his ground. He then waited for Sheridan to join him from the Shenandoah valley.

805. Sheridan, with 10,000 picked cavalry, moved up the Shenandoah valley to Staunton, near Lynchburgh. There he turned eastward to Charlottesville, scattering Early's army on the way. He then moved eastward, passing to the north of the defences of Richmond, and joined Grant. He had destroyed the canal, the railroad, and bridges all the way from Lynchburgh to Richmond, and thus cut off much of Lee's supplies.



PHILIP H. SHERIDAN.

Just before Sheridan reached Grant, Lee assaulted the centre of the line before him. He captured Fort Steadman, but was soon driven out again.

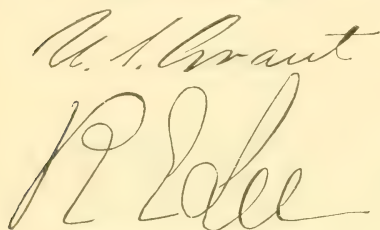
806. The Final Advance began (March 29) while Sherman was resting at Goldsboro. Sheridan made another movement to the southwest, across Hatcher's Run, to Five Forks, and held his ground. Lee again lengthened his line to meet this new danger; but it was now so long that his 50,000 men could no longer guard it. Grant at once advanced his whole line, 100,000 strong, and burst his way through Lee's line of intrenchments (April 2). Lee retreated westward during the night, and Richmond and Petersburg were entered by the Union troops. Davis and the Confederate government escaped by railroad to North Carolina.

Davis was captured in Georgia the next month, and was imprisoned in Fortress Monroe for two years. He was then released without trial. The United States did not put any one to death for treason.

805. Describe Sheridan's route. What did he accomplish?

806. When did the final advance begin? What is said of Five Forks? What was its result? What is said of Grant's advance? Of the fall of Richmond?

807. Lee's Surrender.—Lee's line of retreat was westward, between the James and Appomattox rivers, toward Lynchburgh. From this place he hoped to make his way south into North Carolina, and join Johnston. But Grant's army was in hot pursuit; and, before Lee could reach Lynchburgh, Sheridan had passed him and interposed between him and that place. Lee's retreat was cut off; his men were few, hungry, and worn out; and he surrendered the Confederate forces in Virginia, at a little place called Appomattox Court-house (April 9). Grant asked no terms of surrender



SIGNATURES OF GRANT AND LEE.

that were not generous. Lee's troops were only to promise to bear arms no longer against the United States. They were to give up public property, except that they were to keep the horses for use in the spring ploughing.

808. Johnston's Surrender.—Sherman at once pushed forward from Goldsboro, and occupied Raleigh. Here Johnston surrendered his army (April 26). His men, like Lee's, were dismissed on giving their word to do no further act of war.

809. General Surrender.—The other Confederate forces east of the Mississippi surrendered early in May (§ 801), and toward the end of the same month those west of the Mississippi surrendered. They received the same terms as those given to the armies of Lee and Johnston. The war was over, and the soldiers of the Confederacy went quietly back to their desolated homes, there to begin a new struggle against poverty.

810. The Victorious Armies of Grant and Sherman, numbering about 150,000 men, were reviewed in Washington, near the end of May, by their commanders and the officers of the government. For two days the long line of sunburnt veterans marched through

807. What was Lee's line of retreat? What was his purpose? How was it defeated? What is said of his surrender?

808. What movement did Sherman now make? What is said of Johnston's surrender?

809. What is said of the general surrender? What became of the Confederate soldiers?

810. What is said of the grand review of the victorious armies? Of the return of the Union soldiers?

the principal street, accompanied by the music of military bands, flowers, and the cheers of spectators from all parts of the country. The disbanding of the army then began (§ 827). The regiments were given similar triumphal receptions on their arrival in their own States, and the companies on their arrival at their towns.

The veterans still maintain an association, under the name of "The Grand Army of the Republic."

SUPPLEMENTARY QUESTIONS.

Locations.—Locate Mobile, Ala.; Savannah, Ga.; Columbia, S. C.; Fayetteville, N. C.; Charleston, S. C.; Goldsboro, N. C.; Wilmington, N. C.; Petersburg, Va.; the Shenandoah River; Charlottesville, Va.; Lynchburgh, Va.; Richmond, Va.; Appomattox Court-house, Va.; Raleigh, N. C.; Washington, D. C.

REVIEW.—What Union general marched through the Carolinas in 1865? What battle ended Lee's defence of Petersburg? Where did Lee's surrender take place? Where did Johnston's surrender take place? During what month did the general surrender take place?

Death of President Lincoln.

811. Public Rejoicings were continued in the North and West for nearly a week after Lee's surrender. The firing of cannon, public meetings, processions, and the illumination of houses showed the joy of the people that the war was over and successfully over. In it all there was a general feeling of gratitude to President Lincoln for his share in the work. He had entered Washington, four years before, almost unknown: now he was recognized as a wise, prudent, and great-hearted leader of men. In all the ups and downs of the war, he had not lost his temper, his courage, or his self-control, and he had always done the sensible thing at the fit time. The more that the people had come to know him, the more they had liked and trusted him.

In spite of Lincoln's lack of early education, his speeches and documents are among the finest in our history. Examples are his Emancipation Proclamation, his Gettysburgh Address, and his second Inaugural Address. In the latter occurs the sentence: "With malice toward none, with charity for all, with firmness in the right as God gives us to see the right, let us finish the work we are in, to bind up the nation's wounds, to care for him who shall have borne the battle and for his widow and orphans, to do all which may achieve and cherish a just and lasting peace among ourselves and with all nations."

811. How was the joy of the people shown? What was their feeling toward the President? What work had he done?

812. The Assassination of the President.—A conspiracy had been formed by a number of persons in and near Washington to kill the leading officers of the government, in order to throw the national affairs into confusion and give the Confederacy a last chance. Its leader, John Wilkes Booth, seems to have been crazed by a desire to be talked about, and some of his associates were at least feeble-minded. The President had avoided military guards and protection throughout the war, and his fearlessness made him an easy victim. One of his few pleasures, when tired out, was to attend the theatre. On the appointed night, Booth stole into the private box where the President was sitting, and shot him through the head from behind, so that he died the next day (April 15, 1865). Another conspirator had attacked Secretary Seward, who was ill and in bed, but only wounded him. Booth was chased into lower Maryland, and killed in a barn in which he had hidden himself. The other conspirators were arrested, four of them hanged and four imprisoned.

After firing the shot, Booth leaped from the box to the stage, raised a dagger above his head, and shouted, "*Sic semper tyrannis!*" ("May this always be the fate of tyrants!"—the motto of Virginia.) He then ran off through a side door, mounted a horse, and escaped for a time.

813. The Funeral of the President lasted for about three weeks. The body was taken slowly to New York City, and thence westward to his home in Springfield, Illinois. All business was stopped in the cities on the route, and the whole people joined in the ceremonies. His late enemies in the seceding States lamented his death, for they had come to see that he had never had any hatred to them, and that his murder was the worst calamity that could have befallen them.

814. Andrew Johnson, the Vice-President (§ 826), became President at Lincoln's death. As Lincoln had served but little more than a month of his second four years, his second term will be considered Johnson's administration.

812. What conspiracy had been formed? What is said of its leader and members? How did the President expose himself to danger? How was the murder managed? What other success had the conspirators? What became of them?

813. Describe the funeral of the President. What was the feeling in the seceding States?

814. Who became President at Lincoln's death?

Military Summary of the War.

815. The Course of the War seems to fall naturally into two parts. For the first two years the Federal Government was busied in fixing its encircling lines and in winning territory piecemeal from the Confederacy. For the last two years its energies were bent on seeking and defeating the principal Confederate armies. The turning-point of the war was in July, 1863 (§ 752); and the leading Union generals at the end were not those who had led at the beginning.

816. Events of 1861 (§ 681).—The principal battles of 1861 were those of Bull Run (July 21) and Wilson's Creek (August 10), in both of which the Union forces were defeated. But the Union armies had seized and held a vast extent of doubtful territory, so that the Confederacy was much smaller than had been expected; and operations on the Atlantic coast had been fairly commenced at Port Royal.

817. Events of 1862 (§ 688).—Two attempts were made this year by the Confederate armies to break through the encircling line, by Bragg in August and by Lee in September. Both were defeated. The great battles in the East were the Seven Days' Battles in June and July, Antietam (September 17), and Fredericksburgh (December 13). Of these, Antietam was the only decided Union victory. The great battles in the West were Fort Donelson (February 16), Pittsburgh Landing (April 6-7), and Murfreesboro (December 31), all Union victories. The capture of New Orleans (April 28) was also a most important Union success. The result of the year's operations was the winning of a great amount of territory in the West, but the Confederate armies were still as strong and as confident as ever.

818. Events of 1863 (§ 729).—In the East the principal battles were Chancellorsville (May 2-3), a Confederate victory; and Get-

815. How may the course of the war be divided? What was the work of the first two years? Of the last two years? When was the turning-point? What is said of the Union generals?

816. What were the principal battles of 1861? What had the Union armies done?

817. What two attempts were made by the Confederates to break through? What were the great battles of 1862 in the East? In the West? What were the results of the year's operations?

818. What were the principal battles of 1863 in the East? In the West? Which side was more successful in the West? What was the condition of the Confederate armies there?

tysburgh (July 1-3), a Union victory, which defeated the last great attempt, by Lee, to break through the encircling line. In the West, a Confederate army was captured at Vicksburgh (July 4), the Mississippi was opened, and the Confederacy was divided. The Confederate victory of Chickamauga (September 19-20) was followed by the Union victories of Lookout Mountain and Missionary Ridge (November 23-25). The advantages of the year's operations in the West were altogether with the Union forces, and the Confederate armies in that section for the first time began to show a falling off in strength and confidence.

819. Events of 1864 (§ 760).—The great battles of the East were the Wilderness battles and Cold Harbor in May and June, ending in the siege of Petersburg, which lasted until the end of the war. While it was going on, the western army of the Confederacy was blotted out at Nashville (December 15); and Sherman, with hardly an enemy before him, had reached Savannah on his way northward to crush Lee.

820. Events of 1865 (§ 801).—Sherman's march northward from Savannah in February swept up before it all the available forces of the Confederacy into a great trap, from which there was no escape. But Sherman took care not to push fast or far enough to drive Johnston and Lee close together. The operations of the two Union generals were so timed as to prevent the scattered Confederate forces from uniting into one army. One by one they were forced to surrender (Lee April 9, and Johnston April 26); and the war was over.

821. The Armies on both sides were large. The number of men called into the Union armies during the war was 2,942,748; and 2,690,401 of these entered the army, some for three months, some for six months, and some for one year, two years, or three years. The largest number in service at one time was in May, 1865; it was then 1,000,516, of whom 650,000 were fit for active service. The Union navy grew steadily larger until the end of the war, when it numbered 700 vessels, 60 of them ironclads, and 50,000 sailors. The Confederacy did not need so many men as the Federal Government, for it had no conquered territory to garrison, and could move its men quickly from one army to another.

819. What were the great battles of 1864 in the East? What was being done in the West?

820. What was the effect of Sherman's march in 1865? Why did he stop where he did? How was the war ended?

821. What is said of the number of men in the Union armies? Of the greatest number at one time? Of the size of the navy? Of the number of men in the Confederate armies? Of the greatest number at one time?

The total was probably about 1,300,000, and the largest number at one time was in January, 1863. The following table is given from a careful writer, as the number at the dates named. The Southern figures are estimates.

	United States.	Confederacy.
January 1, 1861.....	16,367	
July 1, 1861.....	186,751	150,000
January 1, 1862.....	575,917	350,000
January 1, 1863.....	918,191	690,000
January 1, 1864.....	860,737	400,000
January 1, 1865.....	959,460	250,000
March 31, 1865.....	980,086	175,000
May 1, 1865.....	1,000,516	

822. The Dead numbered about 300,000 on each side. The Union losses are known, and are given below: the Southern losses can only be guessed at. National cemeteries have been laid out on the battle-fields, in which the bodies of the dead are collected; and many of the cities and towns have their soldiers' monuments. Liberal pensions are paid to wounded Union soldiers, and to the families of the dead.

In the Union armies there were killed in battle, 44,238; died of wounds, 49,205; died of disease, 186,216; suicide, homicide, and executions, 526; unknown causes, 24,184; total, 304,369. Of these there were only 7 executions. In Confederate prisons, 26,168 are known to have died, but thousands of others have since died of disease contracted in them. There are buried in the national cemeteries 318,870 bodies; but some of these were Confederate soldiers.

823. The Cost of the War cannot be figured up. The receipts of the United States, 1861-65, were about \$780,000,000, most of which was spent on the war; and, in addition to this, there was at the end of the war a national debt of \$2,750,000,000. If we try to add to this (1) the expenses and debts of States, cities, and towns; (2) the payments for pensions, which will probably reach \$1,500,000,000; (3) the expenses of the Confederacy, which cannot be fully known; (4) the destruction of private property in the South by Union armies, and on the ocean by Confederate privateers; and (5) the loss of \$2,000,000,000, the money value of the slaves set free by the war, the total cost of the war passes beyond possibility of estimate.

824. The Object of this enormous expenditure of blood and money by the national people was not to show which section was the stronger, for every one knew beforehand that the North was

822. What was the number of the dead? What is said of national cemeteries? Of soldiers' monuments? Of pensions?

823. What were the receipts of the United States during the war? What was the debt? What other expenses were there?

824. Was it the object of the war to show which section was the stronger? To show which had the braver men? To satisfy Northern hatred of the South? To abolish slavery? What was the object of the war?

the stronger. It was not to show which had the braver men, for the soldiers on both sides came out of the war with an equal respect for each others' bravery. It was not to satisfy any hatred of the North against the South, for there was no such thing. It was not to abolish slavery, though slavery was abolished as a part of the war. The object of the war was to keep the nation one, to prevent any future attempt to secede, and to see to it that there should not be two nations in place of one, waging wars with one another and taxing men, women, and children to carry them on. This was the object for which the Union men fought and, when necessary, died: to secure perpetual peace and a united nation to their children and their children's children forever.

825. The Leading Events of Lincoln's administration, including the war for the Union, are as follows:

(U., Union victory; C., Confederate victory; Ind., indecisive.)

1861-5: Lincoln's Term of Office.....	§ 668
1861: Fort Sumter, S. C., evacuated, April 13 (C.)..	669
Volunteers called for by the President, April 15	670
First bloodshed at Baltimore, April 19.....	671
Capture of Norfolk navy yard, April 20 (C.)..	701
Secession of four border States, May and June	674
Meeting of Congress, July 4.....	680
Battle of Rich Mountain, W. Va. July 11 (U.)	678
Battle of Bull Run, Va., July 21 (C.).....	681
Battle of Wilson's Creek, Mo., August 10 (C.)	684
Capture of Fort Hatteras, N. C., Aug. 29 (U.)	685
Battle of Ball's Bluff, Va., October 21 (C.)...	683
Capture of Port Royal, S. C., Nov. 7 (U.)...	685
Trent affair, November 8.....	687
1862: Battle of Mill Spring, Ky., January 19 (U.)...	690
Capture of Fort Henry, Tenn., Feb. 6 (U.)...	691
Capture of Roanoke Island, N. C., Feb. 8 (U.)	705
Capture of Fort Donelson, Tenn., Feb. 16 (U.)	692
Battle of Pea Ridge, Ark., March 5-8 (U.)...	699
Battle of <i>Monitor</i> and <i>Merrimac</i> , March 9 (U.)	703
Battle of Pittsburgh Landing or Shiloh, Tenn., April 6-7 (U.).....	694
Capture of Island Number Ten, April 7 (U.)	700
Capture of Fort Pulaski, Ga., April 11 (U.)...	705
Capture of New Orleans, La., April 25 (U.)...	709
Capture of Yorktown, Va., May 4 (U.).....	715
Battle of Williamsburgh, Va., May 5 (Ind.)..	715
Capture of Corinth, Miss., May 30 (U.).....	695

825. What years were covered by Lincoln's term of office? State the leading events (1861) of April. Of May and June. Of July. Of August. Of October. Of November. State the leading events (1862) of February. Of March. Of April. Of

1862:	Battle of Fair Oaks, Va., May 31 (U.).....	716
	Jackson's raid on Banks, Va., June (C.).....	717
	Seven Days' Battles, Va., June 25-July 1 (Ind.)	718
	Pope's campaign, Va., August (C.).....	719
	Second battle of Bull Run, Va., Aug. 30 (C.)	719
	Capture of Harper's Ferry, W. Va., Sept. 15 (C.)	720
	Battle of Antietam, Md., September 17 (U.)..	721
	Bragg's invasion of Kentucky, September....	696
	Battle of Perryville, Ky., October 8 (Ind.)...	696
	Battle of Fredericksburgh, Va., Dec. 13 (C.)	722
	First attempt on Vicksburgh, Miss., Dec. 29 (C.)	735
	Battle of Murfreesboro, Tenn., Dec. 31 to Jan. 2 (U.).....	697
1863:	Emancipation Proclamation, January 1.....	724
	Capture of Arkansas Post, Ark., Jan. 11 (U.) (note)	735
	Draft Act passed, March 3.....	756
	Fort Sumter, S. C., attacked by ironclads, April 7 (C.).....	748
	Grant's campaign before Vicksburgh, Miss., May 1 to 17 (U.).....	738
	Battle of Chancellorsville, Va., May 2-3 (C.)..	722
	Battle of <i>Wechaucken</i> and <i>Atlanta</i> , June 17 (U.)	750
	Admission of West Virginia, June 20.....	757
	Lee's second invasion of the North, June....	730
	Battle of Gettysburgh, Pa., July 1-3 (U.)....	732
	Capture of Vicksburgh, Miss., July 4 (U.)....	738
	Battle of Helena, Ark., July 4 (U.).....	740
	Capture of Port Hudson, La., July 9 (U.)....	739
	Draft Riots, New York City, July 13-16.....	756
	Morgan's Ohio raid, July.....	741
	Battle of Chickamauga, Ga., Sept. 19-20 (C.)..	743
	Siege of Chattanooga, Tenn., Oct. and Nov....	744
	Siege of Knoxville, Tenn., Nov. 18-29....	744, 747
	Battle of Lookout Mountain, Tenn., Nov. 24- 25 (U.).....	746
1864:	Expedition to Meridian, Miss., February (note)	762, 788
	Grant made lieutenant-general, March 3.....	761
	Red River expedition, La., April (C.).....	785
	Capture of Fort Pillow, Tenn., April 12 (C.)..	788
	Battles of the Wilderness, Va., May 5-7 (Ind.)	766
	Battles at Spottsylvania Court-house, Va., May 8-18 (Ind.).....	766
	Battle of Resaca, Ga., May 14-15 (U.).....	774
	Battle of Dallas, Ga., May 25-28 (U.).....	774
	Battle of Cold Harbor, Va., June 3 (C.).....	767
	Siege of Petersburg, Va., begun, June.....	770

May. Of June and July. Of August. Of September. Of October. Of December.
State the leading events (1863) of January. Of March. Of April. Of May. Of
June. Of July. Of September and October. Of November. State the leading
events (1864) of February and March. Of April. Of May. Of June. Of July. Of

1864:	Battle of <i>Kearsarge</i> and <i>Alabama</i> , June 19 (U.)	§ 792
	Battle of Kenesaw Mountain, Ga., June 27 (U.)	774
	Battles before Atlanta, Ga., July 20-28 (U.)..	777
	Early's raid on Washington, July	768
	Petersburgh mine, July 30 (C.).....	771
	Battle of Mobile Bay, Ala., August 5 (U.)....	789
	Capture of Atlanta, Ga., September 2 (U.)....	777
	Battle of Winchester, Va., September 19 (U.)..	772
	Battle of Cedar Creek, Va., October 19 (U.)..	772
	Admission of Nevada, October 31.....	800
	Sherman's march to the sea, Nov. and Dec....	781
	Battle of Franklin, Tenn., November 30 (U.)..	779
	Capture of Fort McAllister, Ga., Dec. 13 (U.)	782
	Battle of Nashville, Tenn., Dec. 15, 16 (U.)..	779
	Capture of Savannah, Ga., December 21 (U.)..	782
1865:	Capture of Fort Fisher, N. C., Jan. 15 (U.)....	787
	Sherman's march northward, Feb. and March	802
	Columbia, S. C., captured, February 17 (U.)..	802
	Charleston, S. C., captured, Feb. 18 (U.)....	802
	Wilmington, N. C., captured Feb. 21 (U.)....	787
	Battle of Goldsboro, N. C., March 19 (U.)....	803
	Sheridan's raid on Lynchburgh, Va., March..	805
	Battle of Five Forks, Va., April 1 (U.).....	806
	Petersburgh, Va., captured, April 2 (U.).....	806
	Richmond, Va., captured, April 3 (U.).....	806
	Surrender of Lee, April 9.....	807
	Assassination of Lincoln, April 14.....	812
	Surrender of Johnston, April 26.....	808
	Jefferson Davis captured, May 11..... (note)	806
	General surrender, April and May.....	809

August. Of September. Of October. Of November. Of December. State the leading events (1865) of January. Of February and March. Of April. Of May.

CHAPTER XVII.

JOHNSON'S ADMINISTRATION: 1865-9.

ANDREW JOHNSON, Tennessee, Vice-President and President.

826. Andrew Johnson was born in North Carolina in 1808, and removed to Tennessee in 1826. He served as Congressman (Democratic), 1843-53; governor, 1853-7; United States Senator, 1857-62 and 1875; and Vice-President and President, 1865-69. He died in 1875. His early years were passed under many disadvantages. He is said to have been taught to read and write, after his marriage, by his wife. He was at first a tailor, but was soon drawn into politics. He was an outspoken Unionist, and was the only Southern Senator who refused to leave his place when his State seceded. He was always ready to struggle for what he believed to be right, and seldom willing to believe that he himself was wrong.



ANDREW JOHNSON.

(1) INTERNAL AFFAIRS.

827. The Armies were paid off and sent home at the rate of 300,000 a month until nearly all had retired to private life. About 50,000 were retained as a standing army for the Southern States. Many persons had thought that it would be very dangerous to turn a million soldiers adrift so suddenly; that they would not find work, but would unite in lawless companies for plunder. Nothing of the kind followed. The old soldiers turned out to be better lawyers, editors, workmen, and managers than they were before the war, through the habits of prompt obedience learned in

826. What was Johnson's life and character?

827. How were the armies disbanded? What force was retained? What fear of disorder had existed? Was there any such result?

the army. A man must usually learn what obedience is before he can make others obey.

828. The Fenians were a body of men of Irish birth who felt that they had grievances against Great Britain. Most of them had served in the army, had grown fond of soldiering, and now wanted "a brush with the British." As Canada was a part of the British Empire, about 1,500 of them invaded it in 1866 from Buffalo. As there was no war between the United States and Great Britain, Americans could not be allowed to make war on their own account; and the President interfered, and stopped the movement.

829. Mexico was, at the end of the war, still occupied by French troops, against the will of the Mexicans (§ 758). The United States now began to urge their withdrawal in more decided language, and France consented to take them away. The United States had no objection to Maximilian's remaining as emperor, if the Mexicans wished it. He refused to leave with the French troops, and, in 1867, was captured and shot by the Mexicans. The United States asked that his life should be spared, but the request was refused.

Maximilian's wife, Carlotta, became insane through grief.

830. The Atlantic Telegraph, which had several times failed (§ 641), was successfully laid from Ireland to Newfoundland in 1866. Other cables of the kind have since been laid, so that it is now hardly possible that any accident should entirely break off telegraphic communication between the United States and Europe.

831. Alaska was bought from Russia in 1867 for \$7,200,000. As it is the last addition up to 1884, a table is given below, showing the original territory of the United States, and the successive additions.

	Square miles.
United States in 1783 (§ 264).....	827,844
Louisiana, 1803 (§ 332).....	1,171,931
Florida, 1819 (§ 418).....	59,268
Texas, 1845 (§ 533).....	376,133
Mexican Cession, 1848 (§ 573).....	545,783
Gadsden Purchase, 1853 (§ 574).....	45,535
Alaska, 1867 (§ 831).....	577,390
Total in 1885.....	3,603,884

828. Who were the Fenians? What enterprise did they undertake? How was it stopped?

829. What was the state of affairs in Mexico? Why were the French troops withdrawn? What became of Maximilian?

830. What is said of the Atlantic telegraph? Of other cables?

831. What is said of the purchase of Alaska? What does the table contain? Which addition was larger than the original United States?

832. The National Debt, at the end of the war, was about \$2,750,000,000 (§ 823). Other governments have debts as large, or larger; but they make no attempt to pay them. The American people, on the contrary, now attacked their debt as vigorously as if it had been a hostile army in the field. Taxes on imported goods, and on goods manufactured in the country, were not decreased; and whatever money could be spared out of the large receipts of the government was applied to paying off the debt. Before the armies were quite disbanded, \$30,000,000 had been paid; and this beginning has since been perseveringly followed up (§ 938).

833. Nebraska was admitted to the Union in 1867.

Nebraska is a part of the Louisiana purchase (§ 332). It became a Territory in 1854 (§ 614), by the Kansas-Nebraska Act. It had been very little explored; and it was believed to be quite worthless. It has since proved to be one of the richest agricultural districts of the United States; its soil will grow with profit almost any product of temperate latitudes. Its minerals and ores, excepting coal, are of little importance; but its soil is richer than any mines. The whole eastern half of the State is a well-watered, rolling prairie, whose streams give promise of manufactures in the future. The western half is still dry; but the rains seem to move westward with the population. It seems probable that the whole State will in time be equally profitable for agriculture. The population increased from 4,494 in 1855 to 452,433 in 1880; and immigrants are pouring in faster than ever. And yet, in 1880, only one twenty-fifth part of the State had been brought under cultivation. The people have been very liberal in educational matters; their university and public schools rank high among institutions of the kind; and few States have better reasons than Nebraska for confident expectation of prosperity and usefulness.



SEAL OF NEBRASKA.

(2) RECONSTRUCTION.

834. The Problem of Reconstruction.—We come now to some of the most difficult questions of American history, those of the six years from 1865 to 1871, in which the American people tried to straighten out a state of affairs which had been completely tangled

832. What is said of the national debt? How did the American people deal with it? What was their success?

833. What State was admitted in 1867?

834. What is said of this period? What was the first question? What was the difference between North and South? What result was possible? Was there any law to prevent it?

by the Civil War and its results. The first question was, What should be done with the voters of the seceding States? The Northern States were each divided into two nearly equal parties, so that one party controlled some States and the other party controlled the others. But Southern voters had for years thought of hardly anything in politics except the defence of slavery. All the Southern States were thus in the habit of acting together: they formed what is now often called a "solid South." They were so nearly a majority of both Houses of Congress that a very little help from parts of the North would at once give them control of the government, and the power to make laws as to the national debt, pensions, and other expenses of the war. And yet there was no express law to prevent them from taking part at once in the government. It was, in fact, equally hard to let them in or to keep them out.

835. The President's Feeling.—President Johnson was always a hearty Union man. He had expressed great anxiety to hang some of the Confederate leaders, and his first act as President was to offer large rewards for the capture of Davis and other leaders, on the charge of planning Lincoln's murder. But Johnson had been a Southern "poor white": his feeling was altogether one of dislike to the richer Southerners who had brought about the war; and he had no great anxiety for the protection of the "freedmen." He was altogether a War Democrat: he was anxious to maintain the Union, but equally anxious that the States should each be free from interference by the Union. It was certain from the beginning that he would never consent "to keep the seceding States out."

"Freedmen" was the usual name for the former slaves, set free by the war. During the war they were often called "contrabands," a name said to have been invented by General Butler. Runaway slaves had come into his camp, and the law directed him to return them to their owners, a thing which he was determined not to do. He got over the difficulty by declaring the slaves "contraband of war," like gunpowder, or any other valuable war material, which must not be allowed to pass into the enemy's possession.

836. The Southern State Governments, when Johnson be-

835. What was the President's feeling as a Unionist? As a "poor white"? As a War Democrat?

836. How had the Southern governments been broken up by the war? Why were they not reorganized by the Southern people?

came President, were in complete confusion. The Union cavalry forces were ranging through the South, capturing governors and other leading men, and sending them to forts for safe-keeping. They were released after a short imprisonment; but at the time no one was quite sure that the Confederate leaders would not all be hanged or shot for treason. Every Southern man who could have been of service in government was only anxious to keep out of the way, and almost all semblance of government disappeared. The first business was to get some form of government that would maintain order.

837. The President's Plan of reconstruction was, first, to appoint provisional, or temporary, governors for each State. These governors called conventions of delegates, elected by the white people, the former voters. These conventions, when they met, did three things: they repealed or declared void the ordinances of secession, promised never to pay any debt incurred in supporting the Confederacy, and ratified the Thirteenth Amendment, abolishing slavery, which Congress had proposed early in 1865. Before the end of the year 1865, all the governments of the seceding States had been reorganized according to the President's plan, or "my policy," as he often called it.

Virginia, Tennessee, Louisiana, and Arkansas had already been reorganized, in much the same manner, under President Lincoln, and were not interfered with.

838. The Thirteenth Amendment, forever abolishing slavery, having been ratified by three fourths of the States, was declared a part of the Constitution in December, 1865. It was necessary because the Emancipation Proclamation (§ 724) had only freed the slaves, and did not prevent a new establishment of slavery.

839. The Treatment of the Freedmen was a difficult matter to manage. The Southern people did not believe that the freedmen would willingly work now that they no longer had the slave-driver to force them to it. The laws passed by the new governments of the seceding States were therefore usually designed to force the freedmen to work under penalty of being declared vagrants and

837. What was the first point of the President's plan? What was done by the governors? By the conventions? What was the result?

838. What Amendment was ratified in 1865? Why was it necessary?

839. What was the Southern plan of treatment of the freedmen? How did the North look upon this? What was the result?

sent to jail and hard labor. To most of the Northern people this looked very much like setting up slavery again under a new name; and their Representatives in Congress, when Congress met in December, 1865, refused for the time to admit any members from the seceding States.

840. A New Issue was thus brought into politics. The President thought that the Republican majority in Congress had no more right to keep out members from the seceding States than those States had to attempt to leave the Union. He was supported by the Northern Democrats, and by the Southern people, who did not count for much, however, so long as their Representatives were not admitted. The Republicans had a two-thirds majority in both Houses of Congress, sufficient to pass laws over the President's veto (§ 478). They had not yet formed any plan: they were only determined not to admit the Southern members until the safety of the freedmen should be made certain. In this they were supported by the Republican party of the North; and the whole struggle turned upon the elections in 1866 for the Congress which was to meet in 1867.

841. Tennessee was readmitted to the Union in 1866, and her members were received by Congress. The State had been reorganized in such a manner that the freedmen seemed quite secure.

842. The Congressional Elections of 1866 resulted in the complete success of the Republicans. They were to have the same two-thirds majority in the next Congress, and for the next two years could pass such laws as they thought best, without any obstruction from the President's veto. They had now fully formed their plan of reconstruction, and were able to carry it into effect.

843. The Plan of Congress had two leading purposes: the freedmen were to vote; and the Confederate leaders were not to vote. These purposes were to be reached by putting all the seceding States under military governors, who should call new conventions to form State governments. The power to vote for delegates

840. What was the feeling of the President? Who supported him? What advantage had the Republicans? What was their plan? What was the turning-point of the struggle?

841. What is said of the readmission of Tennessee?

842. What was the result of the Congressional elections?

843. What were the two leading purposes of Congress? How were they to be reached? Who were to vote? When were Senators and Representatives to be re-admitted?

to these conventions was given to the freedmen, but not to the leading Confederates. If the new forms of government should allow freedmen to vote, and if the new governments should ratify the Fourteenth Amendment, which denied to the leading Confederates the power to hold office, Congress would admit the Southern Senators and Representatives.

844. The Reconstruction Acts were passed by Congress in March, 1867, over the veto of the President. They contained the plan of Congress, as just explained; and the President executed them by appointing the military governors. These governors, supported by portions of the army, took care that in forming the new governments freedmen should be allowed to vote, and leading Confederates should be forbidden to vote.

845. The Work of Reconstruction went on through the years 1867 and 1868; and in June, 1868, six States were readmitted to Congress: Alabama, Arkansas, Florida, Louisiana, North Carolina, and South Carolina. It is not difficult to understand that the Reconstruction Acts were bitterly disliked by the Southern whites, for they made the negroes, who had been slaves but two years before, equal or superior to their former masters. It was hoped in

North that the freedmen would be made secure by having the right to vote for representatives in the State governments. We shall see hereafter how this resulted (§ 873). But for the first few years, the whites were powerless, and the freedmen had their full share in the government. Four States, Georgia, Mississippi, Texas, and Virginia, refused to yield, and were not readmitted until 1870 (§ 871). Tennessee had been admitted in 1866 (§ 841).

846. The Fourteenth Amendment, proposed by Congress in 1866, was ratified and became a part of the Constitution in July, 1868. It provided that no State should take away the privileges of citizens of the United States; that the higher class of Confederate office-holders should hold no office until pardoned by Congress; that the debt of the United States should be paid in full; and that the Confederate debt should never be paid. By "privileges of

844. What is said of the Reconstruction Acts? How were they executed?

845. What States were first readmitted? Why were the Reconstruction Acts disliked by the Southern whites? What was the hope in the North?

846. What Amendment was ratified in 1868? What did it provide? What was meant by "privileges of citizens"?

citizens" was meant the right of the freedmen to be treated exactly like whites in making and enforcing laws.

847. The Reconstructed Governments at once took control of their States. Their State constitutions, as has been stated, allowed the freedmen to vote, while they forbade the leading Confederates to vote or hold office until pardoned by Congress. The negroes, with a few white leaders, voted together; the whites also voted together; and thus the voting population of the seceding States was divided on "the color line." The unhappy results were very soon visible (§ 873).

(3) IMPEACHMENT.

848. The President and Congress.—While Congress was thus successfully carrying out its plan of reconstruction, its quarrel with the President was steadily growing angrier. Bill after bill was passed by Congress, vetoed by the President, and at once passed over the veto. The President was a passionate man and hasty of speech. He believed that the Republican majority in Congress was keeping the Southern members out only in order to be able to pass bills over his veto; and he did not hesitate to express his dislike of Congress in public speeches. Of course this made Congress still more ready to pass bills which were disagreeable to him.

849. The Tenure of Office Act was passed by Congress, in March, 1867, over the President's veto. It forbade the President to remove the higher classes of office-holders without asking and receiving the consent of the Senate (§ 920). Johnson, believing that the Constitution gave Congress no power to pass such an act, determined to disobey it. He removed Stanton, the Secretary of War, and when the Senate refused to consent to the removal, the President paid no attention to the refusal, and ordered Stanton's successor to take possession of the office.

847. Who were the voters in the reconstructed States? How were they divided?

848. What is said of the quarrel between Congress and the President? What was the President's belief? What were the results?

849. What is said of the Tenure of Office Act? What did it forbid? Why did the President decide to disobey it? How did he disobey it?

850. Edwin M. Stanton was born in Ohio in 1814. He was Attorney-General, 1860-1, under Buchanan, and Secretary of War, 1862-8. He was a man of unbounded energy, and his enormous amount of work in the War Department during the Civil War broke down his health. His services to the country were very great, but it was often difficult for his associates to get on with him peaceably. He died at Washington in 1869.



EDWIN M. STANTON.

851. The Impeachment of the President followed at once. The House of Representatives voted to impeach him; that is, to accuse him of having disobeyed the laws, and of being unfit to be President. An impeachment must be tried by the Senate, and it is necessary that two thirds of the Senators should vote guilty in order to convict the accused. In this case there was a long trial before the Senate, and the vote was 35 guilty to 19 not guilty. This was not a two-thirds vote, and the President was acquitted.

852. The Presidential Election of 1868 turned on Reconstruction, as it had been managed by Congress. The Republicans supported it, and nominated Grant (§ 688), and Schuyler Colfax, of Indiana. The Democrats opposed it, and nominated Horatio Seymour, of New York, and Frank P. Blair, of Missouri. The Republicans were successful, and Grant and Colfax were elected.

Of the 294 electoral votes, Grant and Colfax received 214, and Seymour and Blair 80 (§ 298). Mississippi, Texas, and Virginia were not allowed to vote, as they had not yet been reconstructed and readmitted.

SUPPLEMENTARY QUESTIONS.

Locations.—(School-map locations in *italics*.)—Where is *Ireland*? *Newfoundland*? The State of Nebraska? Buffalo, N. Y.? Alaska?

REVIEW.—Give the years in which Johnson's administration began

850. What is said of Stanton?

851. How was the President impeached? Why was he not convicted?

852. What was the issue in the Presidential election of 1868? Who were nominated? Who were elected?

and ended. The year in which the Thirteenth Amendment was ratified. The year in which the Atlantic telegraph was successfully laid. The year in which the Reconstruction Acts were passed. The year of the admission of Nebraska. Of the purchase of Alaska. Of the impeachment of President Johnson. Of the ratification of the Fourteenth Amendment.

853. The Leading Events of Johnson's administration were as follows:

1865-69: Johnson's Term of Office.....	§ 826
1865: Disbanding of the armies.....	827
Southern State governments reorganized.....	837
Thirteenth Amendment ratified	838
1866: Tennessee readmitted.....	841
Atlantic telegraph laid.....	830
Fenian invasion of Canada.....	828
1867: Reconstruction Acts passed by Congress.....	844
Tenure of Office Act passed by Congress.....	849
Nebraska admitted	833
Maximilian shot.....	829
Alaska purchased.....	831
1868: Removal of Stanton.....	849
Impeachment of the President.....	851
Six States readmitted.....	845
Fourteenth Amendment ratified	846

853. In what years did Johnson's administration begin and end? What were the leading events of 1865? Of 1866? Of 1867? Of 1868?

CHAPTER XVIII.

GRANT'S ADMINISTRATIONS: 1869-77.

ULYSSES S. GRANT, Ill., President. { SCHUYLER COLFAX, Ind., Vice-President, 1869-73.
HENRY WILSON, Mass., Vice-President, 1873-77.

(1) FOREIGN AFFAIRS.

854. **The Alabama Claims** were an outgrowth of the Civil War. The United States claimed that every nation was bound to prevent persons living in its territory from waging war against a friendly nation; that Great Britain had not been properly careful to prevent the *Alabama* and other Confederate privateers from escaping to sea (§ 727); and that she ought now to pay for at least part of the damage done by them. The answer of Great Britain was that there had been no laws, at that time, under which the government could seize the privateers; but that matters would be better arranged in future. To this the United States answered that Great Britain was still bound to pay damages for her neglect to pass the needful laws in due season.



ULYSSES S. GRANT, about 1875.

855. The Treaty of Washington, in 1871, ended the long dispute between the two countries. It referred all matters in dispute between Great Britain and the United States to arbitrators, or

854. What is said of the Alabama claims? What was the claim of the United States? What defence did Great Britain offer? How did the United States answer it?

855. How was the dispute ended? What was the agreement of the treaty of Washington? How were the Alabama claims to be decided?

umpires. The Alabama claims were to be decided by five arbitrators, to be appointed by Great Britain, the United States, Italy, Switzerland, and Brazil.

856. The Alabama Arbitrators met at Geneva, in Switzerland, in 1872, heard the evidence and arguments on both sides, and decided that Great Britain should pay \$15,500,000 to the United States, for the damage done.

857. The Northwestern Boundary, between Vancouver's Island and the United States, was still doubtful and disputed (§ 544); and the treaty of Washington left the decision to the Emperor of Germany. He decided in favor of the boundary as the United States had claimed it.

858. The Canadian Fisheries had also caused disputes. Great Britain claimed that American fishermen made use of the shores near the fisheries, and that the United States ought to pay for this privilege. The treaty of Washington referred this question to another board of arbitrators, whose decision was that the United States should pay \$5,500,000 to Great Britain (§ 922).

859. San Domingo, the eastern half of the island of Hayti, is a republic, inhabited chiefly by negroes. Its rulers were anxious, and its people were willing, to be annexed to the United States. A treaty of annexation was agreed upon in 1869, but it provoked great opposition in the United States, for it would have brought in a great number of ignorant voters, of whom the country had already enough to take care of. The United States Senate refused to confirm the treaty, and it fell through.

860. The Virginius was an American vessel which, in 1873, was carrying supplies to Cuba, to help insurgents against Spain. Her business was unlawful, and she was captured on the ocean by a Spanish war-vessel and taken to Cuba. The Spanish authorities at once put the crew and passengers on trial, and shot them as fast as they could be found guilty. This ferocity of punishment excited great anger in the United States, and there was some danger of war; but the government of Spain succeeded in stopping the bloody work of its agents in Cuba. Those of the prisoners who were still alive were sent to Spain, and were released after an imprisonment.

SUPPLEMENTARY QUESTIONS.

Locations.—(School-map locations in *italics*.)—Locate *Geneva*. Vancouver's Island. *Hayti*. *Cuba*.

REVIEW.—In what year was the treaty of Washington agreed

856. What was the result of the Alabama arbitration?

857. What was the result of the Northwestern boundary arbitration?

858. What was the result of the Canadian fisheries arbitration?

859. What is said of the San Domingo treaty? Why did it fail?

860. What was the case of the *Virginius*? How was war avoided?

upon? What were the three questions referred to arbitration? How much did Great Britain pay under the first? How much did the United States pay under the third?

(2) INTERNAL AFFAIRS.

861. Grant's First Administration (1869-73) was marked by general prosperity. The production of gold and silver from the Pacific States and Territories increased rapidly. Agriculture was prosperous, for wars and bad harvests in Europe made a great market for American grain and cattle. New agricultural regions in the far West began to be settled. Railroads were building in every direction. More miles of railroad were built in the United States during these four years than had been built in any other country of the world during all the years past. Indeed, more were built than were yet necessary, for every man who had money to use was eager to share in the profits of railroad-building.

862. Grant's Second Administration (1873-77) was the opposite of the first. Extravagant railroad-building brought on a financial panic, which began in 1873 and did not come to an end until about 1879 (§ 891). Many railroads had been built in parts of the country where they did not pay interest on the expense of building them. As soon as those who had built them began to wish to sell, nobody wished to buy. Money became scarce; many great fortunes were lost; and there was general distress. In addition to financial troubles, there was a great number of political scandals (§ 879), ending in a dangerous disputed election (§ 883), so that there have been few periods in our history when the general feeling about the future has been more gloomy than during this administration.

863. The Census of 1870 showed a population of 38,558,371, an increase of 7,000,000 since 1860 (§ 632). At previous rates, in time of peace, the increase should have been about 10,000,000; but the war, with its loss of life, decrease of immigration, and general confusion, had made the difference. Most of the Southern States had hardly any increase.

861. What is said of Grant's first administration? Of gold and silver? Of agriculture? Of railroad-building?

862. What is said of Grant's second administration? Of the financial panic of 1873? Of political scandals?

863. What was the increase by the census of 1870? Why was it smaller than usual?

864. The Central Pacific Railroad, from Omaha to San Francisco, was completed in 1869. It had been begun in 1862, during the heat of the war, and Congress had assisted it by giving the company public lands, and promising to pay the interest on its bonds if it should be unable to do so. The completion of this railroad made it possible for the traveller to cross the continent in a week; and an easy passage was provided for mails and merchandise between Europe and Asia. Americans had made a substitute for the "northwest passage," sought for by early discoverers (§ 22).

865. The Importance of the Pacific railroad system is very largely that it is one of the forces which make it possible to keep so large a country under one government. An Oregon Congressman can now reach Washington within a fortnight: in 1842 (§ 520), the journey would have cost him from three to six months. If a foreign enemy should attack the Pacific coast, the whole power of the country could be brought to its defence almost at once. In addition to all this, the Pacific railroads have rapidly built up the territory through which they pass, by encouraging settlements. Great States, like Kansas, Nebraska, and Colorado, owe very much of their wonderful growth to the fact that the Pacific railroad system has passed through them.

866. Other Pacific Railroads.—The Northern Pacific Railroad was completed in 1883. It runs from Duluth and St. Paul, through Dakota, to Puget's Sound, where it meets the lines running down the coast. The Southern Pacific Railroad runs from Shreveport to Los Angeles, through a warmer section of the country, where snow does not interfere with the working of the road in winter.

867. Great Fires were numerous during the years 1871 and 1872. Chicago was burned in October, 1871. This was the greatest fire in modern times. It began in the poorer part of the city, and was hurried by a high wind into the richest portion, among banks, business houses, and the handsomest of the private residences. When it ceased burning on the third day, 100,000 people were homeless, \$200,000,000 in property had been destroyed, and for miles along the lake-front there were only ruins. In the same month

864. What is said of the Central Pacific Railroad? How had Congress assisted it? What are its advantages?

865. What is the importance of the Pacific railroad system? How has it built up the States through which it passes?

866. What is said of the Northern Pacific Railroad? Of the Southern Pacific Railroad?

867. What is said of the burning of Chicago? Of the Wisconsin fires? Of the Boston fire? Of public benevolence? Of the rebuilding of the cities?

great forest-fires swept over Wisconsin, and more than 1,500 persons were burned to death. In November, 1872, a large part of Boston was burned, with a loss of \$70,000,000. The news of each of these disasters had hardly been telegraphed when train-loads of provisions and supplies were started from all parts of the country to the place where they were needed. Rebuilding began at once; and Chicago and Boston soon rose from their ruins, finer cities than before their misfortune.

868. Indian Troubles were quite numerous during Grant's second administration. The Modoc Indians, living near Klamath Lake, in southern Oregon, were ordered by the government to go to another reservation; but they refused to go, and killed the peace commissioners sent to them. Their country, the "lava-beds," was a region of old volcanoes, with underground passages miles in length; and it was not until 1873, after nearly a year's fighting, that the troops could drive them out of their hiding places. The Sioux Indians, under Sitting Bull, were also troublesome. In 1876, they were gradually driven toward the Big Horn River, in southern Montana. Here General Custer, with a single cavalry regiment, rashly charged the whole tribe, and he and all his men were killed. Fresh troops afterward arrived, and drove the Indians into British America.

869. Colorado was admitted to the Union in 1876.

Colorado, named from its principal river, is formed partly from the Louisiana purchase of 1803 (§ 332), and partly from the Mexican cession of 1848 (§ 573). Gold was discovered at Pike's Peak in 1858, and silver at Leadville in 1877. The leading industry is still mining, but cattle-raising, a surer road to wealth, has increased steadily. Agriculture is much hindered by the elevation of a great part of the State, but this is no hindrance to grazing. In 1890, the population of the State was 412,198, and its development has been very rapid. In 1870 it had not a mile of railroad; in 1892 it had over 4000 miles.



SEAL OF COLORADO.

870. The Centennial, or hundredth, anniversary of the Declaration of Independence was celebrated in 1876 (§ 206). As a part of the celebration, an International Exposition was held at Philadelphia from May until November. In its great buildings were collected specimens of the productions,

868. Give an account of the Modoc war. Of the Sioux war.

869. What State was admitted in 1876?

870. What celebration took place in 1876? What is said of the International Exposition?

manufactures, and arts of every country. It was visited by nearly ten million people, and served excellently as a general educator.

SUPPLEMENTARY QUESTIONS.

Locations.—Locate Omaha, Neb.; San Francisco, Cal.; Duluth, Minn.; Minneapolis, Minn.; Puget's Sound, Or.; Shreveport, La.; Los Angeles, Cal.; Chicago, Ill.; Boston, Mass.; Klamath Lake, Or.; Big Horn River, Mont.; Colorado.

REVIEW.—Give the years in which Grant's administrations began and ended. The names of the Vice-Presidents. The year of the completion of the Central Pacific railroad. Of the burning of Chicago. Of the Centennial celebration.

(3) THE END OF RECONSTRUCTION.

871. Reconstruction was completed in 1870, by the readmission of Georgia, Mississippi, Texas, and Virginia (§ 845). Early in 1871 all the States were represented in Congress for the first time since 1861.

Hitherto these four States had not been willing to change their forms of government so as to meet the wishes of Congress.

872. The Fifteenth Amendment was ratified by three fourths of the States, and became a part of the Constitution in 1870. It had been proposed by Congress the year before. It forbade the United States, or any State, to prevent any person from voting because of his "race, color, or previous condition of servitude."

873. Negro Suffrage was thus made the law of the land. It was hoped that the Southern negroes, having by national law the right to vote, would be able to take care of themselves by electing representatives in their State governments. Unfortunately, the freedmen were the most ignorant part of the population. It had been part of the law of slavery to keep them ignorant and to make them afraid of their masters. They were still so ignorant and timid that they knew but one way of voting, to vote together and vote against the whites. State legislatures have the power to lay taxes, and all the Southern property on which taxes were laid belonged to the whites. The whites therefore used every means to

871. How was reconstruction completed?

872. What is said of the Fifteenth Amendment? What did it forbid?

873. What was hoped from negro suffrage? What were the reasons for its failure? Why did the whites oppose negro suffrage? How did they at first oppose it?

keep the negroes from voting, for fear negro legislatures would make the taxes unbearably heavy. Sometimes they paid their negro workmen to stay at home on election-day; sometimes they threatened to discharge them if they voted; and thus, in several of the States, the whites soon got control of the State governments again.

874. Carpet-bagger was a name given by Southern whites to Northern men who settled in the South and voted with the negroes. The name was given to them because they were said to have brought nothing but their carpet-bags with them from the North. Many of them were former Union soldiers. A "scalawag" was a native Southern white who voted with the negroes, and was considered a traitor by the whites.

875. Disorder in the South soon became very common in those States in which the bribes or threats above mentioned were not enough to keep the legislatures out of the control of the freedmen. The whites asserted that the reconstructed governments made bad laws and stole the public moneys. The reconstructed governments asserted that the whites resisted the laws by violence, and whipped or killed negroes, in order to prevent them from voting. Both assertions seem to have been correct. The disorders were worst in South Carolina, Mississippi, Arkansas, and Louisiana, but they extended more or less to all the seceding States.

876. The Reconstructed Governments appealed to the President for help. The Constitution and laws provide that a State government which cannot put down disorder within its limits may obtain support from the President. President Grant sent troops to the assistance of the States which asked for it, and thus kept their governments in existence. Nevertheless, in one State after another, the whites succeeded in carrying the elections and getting quiet control of the State government: the Federal troops were then no longer asked for. In this manner, before the end of Grant's second term, the whites had obtained control of all the Southern State governments excepting those of South Carolina, Florida, and Louisiana. Even in these three States, they claimed to have carried the elections, but the Federal troops still prevented them from turning out the reconstructed governments.

874. What was meant by a carpet-bagger? By a "scalawag"?

875. Where was the disorder in the South? What was the charge made by the whites? By the reconstructed governments? Where were the disorders worst?

876. What right had the reconstructed governments to ask the President for help? What support did he give them? Did this save the reconstructed governments?

877. The Ku-Klux-Klan was a secret society of whites, extending all through the Southern States. It operated originally as a sort of police to keep the freedmen in subjection. It then attacked the white Republicans, the "carpet-baggers" or "scalawags" (§ 874). Finally it seems to have gone into the work of committing murders for pay or spite, so that the better class of whites were compelled to aid in putting it down. Before this took place, Congress passed a number of severe laws, intended to put an end to the society and its practices of riding by night in masks and disguises to terrify, whip, or murder freedmen and white Republicans.

878. Reconstruction, so far as it aimed to make freedmen voters, was thus a failure in all but three States before 1876; and even in these three States, South Carolina, Florida, and Louisiana, it became a failure in 1877 (§ 888). And yet, in spite of this failure, it has been a success in other respects. As a slave, the negro had been only a thing, a piece of property, without any rights. Reconstruction has given him every right but that of voting; and even this right is being obtained slowly but surely, as the negro shows himself worthy of it.

(4) POLITICAL AFFAIRS.

879. Political Scandals were unhappily numerous during this period. A Whiskey Ring was discovered in the West in 1875, composed of distillers and revenue officers, and formed for the purpose of swindling the government out of the taxes on the manufacture of whiskey. Many of the Indian troubles came from the frauds of government agents who swindled the Indians out of their allowances. It was charged that the scheme for annexing San Domingo (§ 859) was contrived by government agents who owned land in San Domingo, and wished to increase its value by annexation. One of the President's Cabinet was impeached for taking bribes, but escaped by resigning; and several members of Congress were charged with accepting shares of Credit Mobilier stock, given them as inducements to buy their votes. Very many of these scandals were the result of the system of appointing men to office for political services, which had been begun under Jackson (§ 475).

877. What was the Ku-Klux-Klan? What were its objects? What laws were passed by Congress in relation to it?

878. What was the failure of reconstruction? What was its success?

879. What is said of political scandals? Of the Whiskey Ring? Of the Indian troubles? Of the San Domingo scheme? Of official corruption and bribery? What was the reason for many of these scandals?

The Credit Mobilier was organized to take contracts for work on the Pacific Railroad. It wished to have certain bills passed by Congress; and it secured votes in Congress by giving stock to members.

880. Liberal Republicans.—A few of these political scandals had come out to public view during Grant's first administration. As those who were engaged in them were mainly Republicans, the Democrats used them as arguments that the whole Republican party was equally bad, and some of the Republicans began to feel very much inclined to leave their party. Moreover, many of the Republicans were not satisfied that Federal troops should be used so constantly to support the reconstructed governments: they thought that if these governments were not able to sustain themselves, they were not fit to exist. These two reasons caused the formation of the "Liberal Republican" party in 1871-2.

881. The Presidential Election of 1872 was influenced largely by the state of affairs in the South. The Liberal Republicans nominated Horace Greeley, of New York, and B. Gratz Brown, of Missouri, and the Democrats accepted these nominations as their own. The Republicans nominated President Grant and Henry Wilson, of Massachusetts, and approved the President's use of Federal troops at the South. The Republicans were successful, and Grant and Wilson were elected President and Vice-President.

Grant and Wilson received 286 of the 366 electoral votes. Greeley died soon after the election. His mind had been overthrown by the excitement of the struggle.

882. Grant's Second Term was marked by a great increase in the scandals which became public. No one ever suggested or suspected that the President was implicated in them in the least, but they were used as political arguments against the party which had elected him. In 1876, the Democrats nominated Samuel J. Tilden, of New York, and Thomas A. Hendricks, of Indiana, declaring their purpose to "reform the government." The Republicans nominated Rutherford B. Hayes, of Ohio, and William A. Wheeler, of New York, declaring that the government would be safe if left under their control. At this election there seemed to be no great

880. What was the first reason for Republican dissatisfaction? The second? What new party grew out of them?

881. Who were nominated by the Liberal Republicans and Democrats in 1872? By the Republicans? What was the result of the election?

882. What is said of Grant's second term? Who were nominated by the Democrats? By the Republicans? What was the difference between the parties?

disputed principles between the two parties: one party wished to get in, and the other to stay in.

The Independent, Greenback, or National party also nominated candidates, but they obtained no electoral votes. The object of the party was to have all paper money issued by the government, and none by banks. The objection is that a government will be very apt to issue too much; and that the more of it is issued the less it will buy, and the less men will get for their wages. National banks are not tempted to issue too much, for they cannot issue paper money without buying and depositing bonds to make it secure.

883. The Presidential Election of 1876 was thrown into complete confusion by the state of affairs at the South. It must be remembered that when the people at large vote, they do not vote for President and Vice-President: they vote for electors, and these electors afterward vote for the President and Vice-President (§ 298). When the election by the people was over, it was found that, outside of Florida and Louisiana, each party had obtained nearly the same number of electors, and that both parties claimed to have carried the two deciding States, Florida and Louisiana.

There were other points of dispute, but these two States were the most important.

884. Returning Boards.—The reconstructed governments, on account of violence in their States, had usually appointed "returning boards," of about five men, whose duty was to examine the vote of the State, and throw out the votes of any counties or parts of counties in which voters had been kept away from the polls by terror or violence. In Florida and Louisiana, the Democrats had a majority of the votes cast; the Republicans had a majority after the returning boards had thrown out the votes of those counties which they decided against. The Democrats protested that this was illegal, as it made the returning boards masters of the election; the Republicans defended it, as any other arrangement would make force and fraud masters of the election.

885. Congress had for about fifty years claimed and exercised the power to decide disputes about electoral votes (§ 920). But now the Democrats had a majority in the House of Representatives; the Republicans had a majority in the Senate; and it was certain that the two bodies would not agree in any decision about Florida and Louisiana. When Congress met in December, 1876, the danger was plain to all men that Congress would argue the matter

883. How are the President and Vice-President elected? What States were disputed in 1876?

884. What is meant by returning boards? How did they decide in Florida and Louisiana? How did the parties like the arrangement?

885. What power had Congress claimed? What was the difficulty in 1876? What was the danger?

without any result until March, that then two Presidents would claim the office, and that civil war between their supporters would follow.

886. The Electoral Commission.—Congress argued the matter until it was found that no agreement could be reached by the two Houses, and then the moderate men of both parties united in passing a special law to create an Electoral Commission. This commission was to be composed of fifteen members, five of them judges of the Supreme Court, five Senators, and five Representatives. The commissioners were to consider the disputed points, and to decide what seemed to them the true votes. Their decision was to hold good, unless the two Houses should agree to overrule it, and every one knew that the two Houses could not agree in anything. The decision was therefore really with the commission.

887. The Decision.—It had been intended that seven of the commissioners should be Republicans, seven Democrats, and the fifteenth one who was not an adherent of either party. This fifteenth member was unable to serve, and a Republican took his place. It was then found that on disputed questions the seven Democrats and the eight Republicans voted unitedly, so that all the important points were decided in favor of the Republicans by steady votes of eight to seven. The Houses did not agree in changing any of the commission's decisions; and R. B. Hayes became President, and W. A. Wheeler Vice-President.

There were 185 electoral votes thus declared for Hayes and Wheeler, and 184 for Tilden and Hendricks.

888. The Result was not pleasant to many of the Democrats, but the country was glad to find any means of escape from a pressing danger. One result was that the remaining reconstructed governments in the South were left to their fate. Unable to support themselves, and supported only by Federal troops, it was seen that their control of important electoral votes had thrown the whole country into a position of extreme peril. Even before the new administration came into office, President Grant had withdrawn

886. What law was passed? How was the commission to be composed? How was the decision to be made?

887. What had been the intention in forming the commission? How was the decision made?

888. What was the feeling in regard to the decision? What was its result in Southern affairs?

the Federal troops from the support of the reconstructed governments, and his action met general approval. Within two months, the last of the reconstructed governments disappeared, and a "solid South" took their place (§ 834). All the Southern States were controlled by the white voters, and all were Democratic.

SUPPLEMENTARY QUESTIONS.

Locations.—Where is Florida? Louisiana?

REVIEW.—In what year was reconstruction completed (§ 871)? What Amendment was adopted during these administrations? Which were the most important States claimed by both parties in 1876? What body was appointed to decide the dispute? Who were declared elected?

889. The Leading Events of Grant's administrations were as follows:

1869-73: Grant's First Term.....	§ 861
1869: Pacific Railroad completed.....	864
San Domingo treaty.....	859
1870: Reconstruction completed.....	871
Fifteenth Amendment ratified.....	872
1871: Ku-Klux disorders.....	877
Burning of Chicago.....	867
Treaty of Washington.....	855
1872: Burning of Boston.....	867
Modoc war.....	868
1873-77: Grant's Second Term.....	862
1873: Beginning of the panic.....	862
The <i>Virginius</i> case.....	860
1876: Centennial celebration.....	870
Admission of Colorado.....	869
Sioux war.....	868
1877: Electoral Commission.....	886

889. What were the leading events of 1869? Of 1870? Of 1871? Of 1872? Of 1873? Of 1876? Of 1877?

CHAPTER XIX.

HAYES'S ADMINISTRATION: 1877-81.

R. B. HAYES, Ohio, President.

WM. A. WHEELER, N. Y., Vice-President

890. Rutherford Birchard Hayes was born in Ohio in 1822. He became a lawyer; entered the Union army during the Civil War, and became a brigadier-general; was a Republican Congressman, 1865-7, and governor of Ohio, 1868-72 and 1876-7. Ohio has a large electoral vote, and is an important State to both parties. Hayes's success in two elections for governor led to his nomination for President. He served as President 1877-81, and died Jan. 17, 1893.

(1) INTERNAL AFFAIRS.

891. Hayes's Administration proved to be a period of calm and contentment, such as the country had not known since 1860. The war was over, and its passions were dying away. Reconstruction had done all that it could do, and had shown what it could not do. The panic of 1873 was passing off gradually, as the growth of the country brought into use and profit the railroads which had been useless and unprofitable. The country's history during these four years is only the story of the daily labor of fifty millions of people who were working busily, filling new regions like Dakota, and selling the produce of their labor in enormous quantities to other na-



R. B. HAYES.

890. Give the leading incidents in the life of Hayes.

891. What is said of Hayes's administration? Of the war? Of reconstruction? Of the panic? Of the general history of this period?

tions. The history of such a period offers very little that can be written about.

It is an old saying: "Happy is the nation which has no history."

892. The Census of 1880 showed a population of 50,155,783, an increase of 11,000,000 since 1870 (§ 863). The highest rates of increase were now in the Southern States.

893. Electricity was brought into use, during this period, in many new and wonderful ways. It had already been put to use in the telegraph (§ 527). Now the telephone was perfected: it has already enabled men to converse when they are a thousand miles apart. The electric light was brought into use for lighting houses and streets. The first promising attempts were made to use electricity as a means of transmitting power, in driving ordinary machinery and locomotive engines.

894. Elevated Railroads were introduced in New York City, where the surface of the streets was too crowded to allow rapid travel. The elevated roads have enabled men to live in the upper part of the city and do business in the lower part, and they have thus made New York a still more rapidly growing city.

Some other cities have adopted the same idea. In San Francisco and Chicago a different plan is used for rapid street travel. The railroad is on the surface of the street; and the cars are drawn by a moving cable just below the surface, run by a stationary engine. The cities of Europe still depend mainly on horse-railroads.

895. The Nez Perce Indians were ordered to remove, in 1877, from one reservation to another. They refused, and began war. They were pursued for 1,500 miles, from Idaho through Montana, and were finally compelled to surrender. But their skilful retreat was much admired by the officers opposed to them: they marched and fought like white troops, did no scalping, and killed no women or children.

896. Railroad Strikes were numerous during the summer of 1877. The railroads attempted to lower the wages of the men; most of the men refused to work for the new wages, and some of

892. What was shown by the census of 1880?

893. What is said of electricity? Of the telephone? Of the electric light? Of electricity as a power?

894. What is said of elevated railroads? Of their effect on New York City?

895. What difficulty arose as to the Nez Percé Indians? What is said of their retreat? Of their manner of fighting?

896. How did the railroad strikes begin? What riots took place? How were they ended?

them refused to allow the trains to run. In some cases they resisted the troops which were protecting the railroads; and there were dangerous riots at Pittsburgh, Chicago, St. Louis, and other places. After nearly two weeks of general confusion, the riots were suppressed, and the trains began running regularly again.

The worst riot took place at Pittsburgh, where the rioters held control of the city for several days. Nearly 100 lives were lost, and \$3,000,000 worth of property was destroyed, before order was restored.

897. Yellow Fever attacked the Southern States in 1878, and nearly 15,000 persons died of it. The attack was worst at Memphis and New Orleans, and those cities were at one time abandoned by every one who could leave them. Assistance of every kind, medicines, money, and nurses, was sent to the afflicted region from all parts of the country.

898. The Mississippi River had for a long time been hard to control. It brings with it vast quantities of mud, which gradually drops to the bottom of the river. Great shallows are thus formed at the mouth of the river, so as to hinder navigation; and the level of the river is raised, so that any freshet pours over the banks, and drowns the neighboring country. The first difficulty was removed, during this period, by narrowing the mouth of the river. The current was thus made swift enough to scour out the mud and carry it into the Gulf of Mexico; and ocean steamers can now pass up the Mississippi to New Orleans. The second difficulty has not yet been overcome (§ 912).

SUPPLEMENTARY QUESTIONS.

Locations.—Locate Idaho; Montana; Pittsburgh, Pa.; Chicago, Ill.; St. Louis, Mo.; Memphis, Tenn.; New Orleans, La.; the Mississippi River.

REVIEW.—In what years did Hayes's administration begin and end? Name the Vice-President. What was the year of the railroad strikes? The city in which the worst of the riots took place?

(2) FINANCES.

899. Silver had for some years been decreasing in value all over the world, partly because of the enormous production of the silver-

897. What is said of the yellow-fever epidemic? Where was it worst? What assistance was given?

898. Why is the Mississippi River hard to control? What is the first difficulty? The second? How was the first difficulty removed? What is said of the second?

899. What is said of silver? Of what does the value of gold or silver depend? Why was the value of silver decreasing?

mines of Nevada and other Pacific States and Territories. The value of gold or silver, like that of anything else, depends not only on the use that people have for it, but on the cost of getting it. About this time silver began to be used less as a money metal, Germany in particular largely discarding it. At the same time in Nevada the miners had found new and cheaper ways of getting the silver out of the ore; and the mines there were yearly sending out larger quantities of silver. Its price, as compared with gold, was steadily falling for both reasons.

900. Demonetization of Silver.—The laws of the United States allowed both gold and silver to be coined into dollars. As the amount required to make a silver dollar was then worth more than the amount required to make a gold dollar, few silver dollars were coined, for the owner of silver could exchange it for gold, and have the gold coined into more dollars than the amount of silver would have made when coined. Hence, in 1873, Congress “demonetized” silver, *i.e.*, no longer allowed silver to be coined into dollars.

901. Remonetization of Silver.—After 1873 the silver previously required to make a silver dollar became worth *less* than a gold dollar. Had silver not been demonetized, no one would now have had gold coined into dollars, for reasons just the opposite of those given above (§ 900). Thus debts contracted in gold dollars could have been paid in silver dollars of less value. Owing to the demands of the debtor class, Congress in 1878 partially remonetized silver, *i.e.*, spent monthly a certain amount for silver, and coined the purchased silver into dollars.

This law is called the Bland-Allison Bill. From 1789 until 1873 only 8,000,000 silver dollars were coined. From 1878 until 1890 about 400,000,000 silver dollars were coined. Most of them are still in the Treasury, for the people do not find them as convenient as paper currency.

902. Resumption.—Ever since 1862 (§ 725), paper money, issued by the government or by national banks, had been the only money in general use. It had been the only money used by the government, except that it demanded coin for the duties on imports, and paid coin for the interest on the public debt. It had been worth less, and sometimes much less, than gold, partly because such

900. Why was silver demonetized in the United States?

901. What was the objection to demonetization? Was it just? What was the result?

902. What is said of paper money? Of its previous value? Of the resumption of specie payments? What was the result?

large amounts of it had been issued, and partly because it had sometimes been doubtful whether the government would be able finally to pay coin for it. It had been decided to resume specie payments; and the government was prepared, January 1, 1879, to pay in gold or silver any of its notes that were brought to it for payment. But the notes were by this time equal in value to gold, and more valuable than silver, so that most people preferred to keep the paper money, on account of its convenience.

903. Refunding was also accomplished during this period. For a long time, a high rate of interest had been paid on the public debt, so that the United States paid between one hundred and one hundred and fifty million dollars a year for interest. It was now so certain that the debt would be paid, that men who had money to lend were willing to lend it to the government at a lower rate of interest. As fast as possible, new bonds were sold at low interest, and the money was used to pay the old bonds. The annual saving in interest was about \$30,000,000.

The total amount of the debt was now about \$2,000,000,000 (§ 916).

(3) FOREIGN AFFAIRS.

904. Chinese Immigrants to the Pacific States had become very numerous. They had been accustomed to live far more meanly than white laborers had been used to do and could therefore work for less wages. White laborers alleged that they had to bid for work at lower wages than they had been used to. The consequence was that there were riots, attacks on the Chinese, and a general hatred of them in California. In 1880, a treaty was made with China which allowed the United States to stop Chinese immigration for a time (§ 918).

(4) POLITICAL AFFAIRS.

905. Congress and the President were often in conflict during this administration. The Democrats generally controlled Congress, and they wished to repeal certain laws which had been

903. What is said of the previous interest? Of the new interest? How was refunding accomplished? What was the saving?

904. What were the objections to Chinese immigrants? What was the feeling toward them? What treaty was made with China?

905. What conflicts took place? What was the reason for these conflicts? How were the repealing acts defeated?

passed by former Republican Congresses. The repealing acts were vetoed by the President, and the majority in Congress was not large enough to pass them over the veto (§ 478). The result was that there was a great deal of excitement, and very little was done.

906. In the Presidential Election of 1880 the Democrats nominated Winfield S. Hancock, of New York, and William H. English, of Indiana; and the Republicans nominated James A. Garfield, of Ohio, and Chester A. Arthur, of New York (§ 908). The result was the election of the Republican candidates: they received 214 electoral votes to 155 for their opponents. The popular vote was nearly equally divided.



W. S. HANCOCK.

The National, or Greenback, party also nominated candidates, but they received no electoral votes.

SUPPLEMENTARY QUESTIONS.

REVIEW.—What was the year of the demonetization of silver? Of the remonetization of silver? Of the resumption of specie payments? Who were elected President and Vice-President in 1880?

907. The Leading Events of Hayes's administration were as follows:

1877–81: Hayes's Term of Office.....	§ 890
1877: Nez Percé war.....	895
Railroad strikes.....	896
1878: Yellow-fever epidemic.....	897
Remonetization of silver.....	901
1879: Resumption of specie payments.....	902
1880: Treaty with China.....	904

906. What nominations were made in 1880? Who were elected? What was the state of the vote?

907. What were the years in which Hayes's administration began and ended? What were the leading events of 1877? Of 1878? Of 1879? Of 1880?

CHAPTER XX.

GARFIELD'S AND ARTHUR'S ADMINISTRATIONS: 1881-5.

JAMES A. GARFIELD, O., Pres. CHESTER A. ARTHUR, N. Y., Vice-Pres. and Pres.

908. James Abram Garfield was born in Ohio in 1831. He became a lawyer, after filling a college professorship for a time, entered the Union army, and rose to the rank of major-general. He served as Congressman (Republican), 1863-81; was elected United States Senator in 1881, and President in 1881. He died by assassination in 1881 (§ 909).



JAMES A. GARFIELD.



CHESTER A. ARTHUR.

Chester Alan Arthur, of New York, was born in Vermont in 1830. He became a lawyer, and was Collector of the Port of New York, 1871-8. He was elected Vice-President in 1880, and became President at the death of Garfield. He was the fourth Vice-President who has thus been called to the Presidency, and his administration was decidedly the most successful of all of the four. He died in 1886.

909. Death of Garfield.—Garfield was inaugurated March 4,

908. What were the leading events in the life of Garfield? Of Arthur?

909. What is said of the assassination and death of Garfield? Who became President in his stead? How is the succession to the Presidency now regulated?

1881. Four months afterward (July 2), he was shot and mortally wounded by a disappointed villain whom he had refused to appoint to office. After an illness of eighty days, the President died (Sept. 19) at Elberon (near Long Branch), New Jersey, to which place he had been removed from Washington. Vice-President Arthur became President at Garfield's death. Congress has since (§ 922) provided that in case of the death or disability of both President and Vice-President, the members of the Cabinet (§§ 299, 922) shall succeed to the Presidency, in the order of the establishment of their offices.

910. Civil-service Reform.—Since Jackson's time (§ 475), every President had been expected to appoint men to office because they had worked for his party, rather than because they were good public servants. Garfield's death, which was mainly the result of this system of appointment, brought a larger number of the people to think of the evils involved in it, and to call for a better system. Congress (1883) passed the Civil-service Act, allowing the President to select examiners and to make appointments on their examination and recommendation of candidates. This method of appointment has been very successful in other countries; and in ours it has been applied to a steadily larger part of the civil service by Presidents Arthur, Cleveland, and Harrison, since it relieves the President of needless work and annoyance. It has even been adopted by some of our States and cities.

911. The Yorktown Celebration.—The hundredth anniversary of Cornwallis's surrender (§ 262) was celebrated at Yorktown 1881. But, in order to show the country's friendship at present for Great Britain, President Arthur ordered that the celebration should end with a general salute to the British flag.

912. Natural Disasters.—Just after the Civil War, the government had established a Weather Bureau, to give warning by telegraph of the movements of storms. It had been of great service; but it could do nothing to guard against such misfortunes

910. How had appointments to office been made? What was the effect of Garfield's death? The Civil-service Act? Has it been a success?

911. How was the Yorktown surrender celebrated?

912. What was the design of the Weather Bureau? What natural disasters were beyond its foresight?

as the overflow of the Mississippi (§ 898), which drove 100,000 persons from their homes in 1882, and the cyclones, or revolving windstorms, which do great damage every year in the South and West.

913. The Mormons.—Congress passed a stringent law in 1882, intended to put an end to the polygamy of the Mormons in Utah (§ 628). It is not yet certain that they will obey the law. Until it is, it will not be safe to admit Utah as a State, for the legislature of a State can make what laws it pleases about marriage.

914. The Cincinnati Riots.—The country was startled in 1884 by a mob-outbreak in Cincinnati, which burned the court-house and other public buildings, and kept control of the city for several days until dispersed by the militia. It was then found that the reason for the mob's existence was that justice had been badly executed and criminals had escaped punishment.

915. General Prosperity.—The country had now fully recovered from the panic of 1873 (§ 862). Work was plenty for everybody, and agriculture, trade, and manufactures were flourishing. This was especially noticeable, and for the first time, at the South. That section had found free labor far more profitable than slave labor (§ 643). Its crops were very large; railroads were now building in every direction; rich iron-mines were opening; and manufactures were appearing as they had never done while the workmen were slaves. Successful expositions at Atlanta (1881) and New Orleans (1884–5) showed the great resources of the “New South” and its wonderful advance since 1865.

916. The Tariff of 1883.—The payment of the debt had gone on so rapidly that the debt was now only about half as large as at the end of the Civil War (§ 832). It was no longer possible to use so much of the government revenues in paying the debt, for bond-holders who had consented to take lower rates of interest (§ 903) had done so on the government's promise not to pay off

913. What law was passed as to the Mormons? Why?

914. What was the Cincinnati riot? What was the reason for it?

915. What was the state of the country? Of the South? What expositions were held there?

916. Why was the payment of the debt checked? What was the Tariff of 1883? Was there any further attempt to reduce the revenue? How was it defeated?

their bonds for a number of years to come. It was then proposed to decrease the duties on imports, in order to make the government revenues smaller. For that purpose, a new tariff was adopted by Congress, in 1883, on the report of a Tariff Commission, composed of business men familiar with the subject. As it turned out, this new tariff made very little reduction in the duties; and the Democrats in Congress made another attempt to reduce them the next year. This brought up the old question of Free Trade or Protection (§ 432). Duties had been made high in 1861, partly to obtain needed revenue, partly to encourage American manufactures, which would pay new taxes; and they had not been decreased since. To decrease them now would be to have less Protection, and the Republicans and Protectionist Democrats voted down the proposal to lower the duties. The question of reducing the "surplus revenue" then passed into the Presidential election.

1917. Presidential Election of 1884.—The Republicans, declaring in favor of Protection, nominated for President James G. Blaine, of Maine, and for Vice-President John A. Logan, of Illinois. The Democrats, declaring in favor of a reduction of the government's surplus revenue, but saying as little as possible about the general question of Free Trade or Protection, nominated Grover Cleveland, of New York, and Thomas A. Hendricks, of Indiana. The election was decided by the 36 electoral votes (§ 298) of New York, which were cast for Cleveland and Hendricks, and they were elected.

The electoral votes were 219 for Cleveland and Hendricks and 182 for Blaine and Logan. The Prohibition party, aiming to prohibit the sale of intoxicating liquors, nominated John P. St. John, of Kansas, and William Daniel, of Maryland, and the former Greenback party (§ 882) Benj. F. Butler, of Massachusetts, and A. M. West, of Mississippi; but none of these received any electoral votes.

SUPPLEMENTARY QUESTIONS.

Locations.—Locate Long Branch, N. J.; Washington, D. C.; Yorktown, Va.; the Mississippi River; Utah; Cincinnati, O.; Atlanta, Ga.; New Orleans, La.

REVIEW.—Give the year in which Garfield's and Arthur's administrations began. The dates of Garfield's assassination and death. Who

917. What were the platform and candidates of the Republicans in 1884? Of the Democrats? What was the result of the election?

succeeded him? Give the year of the Yorktown celebration. Of the Mississippi floods. Of the Cincinnati riot.

918 The Leading Events of the administrations of Garfield and Arthur were as follows:

1881-5: Garfield's and Arthur's Terms of Office.....	§ 908
1881: Death of President Garfield.....	909
Vice-President Arthur succeeds him.....	909
Atlanta Exposition.....	915
Yorktown celebration.....	911
1882: Mississippi floods.....	912
Anti-polygamy Act.....	913
Tariff Commission.....	916
1883: New Tariff Act passed.....	916
Civil-service Act passed.....	910
1884: Cincinnati riot.....	914
New Orleans Exposition.....	915

918. In what years did Garfield's and Arthur's terms begin and end? What were the leading events of 1881? Of 1882? Of 1883? Of 1884?

CHAPTER XXI.

CLEVELAND'S FIRST ADMINISTRATION : 1885-9.

GROVER CLEVELAND, N. Y., President.

T. A. HENDRICKS, Ind., Vice-President.

919. Grover Cleveland was born in New Jersey in 1837. Removing in infancy to the State of New York, he finally became a lawyer in Buffalo, of which city he was elected Mayor in 1881. The Democratic party of the State elected him Governor in 1882 by an enormous majority. In 1884 he was nominated and elected President, serving until 1889. He then resumed the practice of law in New York City. He was again elected President in 1892.



GROVER CLEVELAND.

920. Labor Troubles.—

The wealth of the country was increasing enormously (\$ 942), and the number of very rich men was increasing with it. If all their wealth should be divided among

their fellow-citizens, it would give very little to each; but the sight of their easy and pleasant life was enough to persuade many workingmen that they were working harder than was necessary. Great numbers of them formed associations which refused to work except for higher wages and shorter hours, as they had a perfect right to do. But some of them tried to keep other men from taking their places, threatening, injuring, and in some cases killing them; and there was bad feeling when police protec-

919. Give an account of the life of Cleveland.

920. How did the labor troubles arise? What wrong was done by the labor associations? By the employers? What was the Contract Labor Act? What is said of the Anarchists? Of immigration?

tion was given to the injured parties. Some employers made "black lists" of men whom they did not like; and these men could find employment nowhere. The early years of Cleveland's term were full of these "labor troubles," and of efforts to make laws to settle them. Some rich employers brought large numbers of workmen from Europe at very low wages; and Congress passed a Contract Labor Act, hoping to stop this practice, and a still stronger Act against Chinese immigration (§ 904). Some violent men, called Anarchists, mostly from Europe, who wished to destroy all government, made loud threats of disorder, and rose in riot in Chicago. When they had been put down, there were many proposals to check immigration in some way, but they came to nothing.

921. The President's Policy.—President Cleveland had a decided belief that there was a disposition to pass too many Acts of Congress, and too hastily; and he had no fear of putting his belief in practice. He vetoed (§ 478) a number of Acts, particularly for special grants of pensions, and thus made the opposition to him more intense. He enforced the Civil-service Act (§ 910), but the old system of appointment continued as to many of the offices to which that Act did not apply; and for this he was warmly attacked.

922. The Presidential Succession.—Several important changes, however, were made in regard to the office of President. The Presidential Succession Act provided for successors in case of the death of both President and Vice-President (§ 909). The Presidential Election Act provided for the settlement by the States of disputes as to choice of electors, such as occurred in 1876 (§ 885). The Tenure of Office Act (§ 849) was repealed.

923. Inter-State Commerce Act.—One of the most important laws passed was the Inter-State Commerce Act (1887), intended to prevent railroads operating in more than one State from charging unfair rates for their services. Such practices were forbidden, and a Commission of five persons was appointed to hear and try complaints against any railroad disobeying the law. Each

921. What is said of the President's vetoes? Of his civil-service policy?

922. What was the Presidential Succession Act? The Presidential Election Act? What is said of the Tenure of Office Act?

923. What is said of the Inter-State Commerce Act?

State, however, continued to control the railroads operated only within its own territory.

924. Foreign and Naval Affairs.—A French company had been digging a canal across the Isthmus of Panama, while an American company proposed to dig another across Nicaragua. It was felt by many Americans that the United States ought to have control of the successful canal, as an important route for commerce between our Atlantic and Pacific coasts; and yet other nations would not take this kindly. The French company, however, proved a failure: it broke down in the midst of its work (1889). There were disputes with Great Britain about the right of American fishermen to buy ice and bait in Canadian ports, and with Germany about a group of islands in the Pacific called Samoa. All these misunderstandings were settled peacefully, but they led to the appropriation of large sums for the construction of improved and more powerful and swift ironclads for the navy.

925. North Dakota was admitted into the Union in 1889.



North Dakota was originally a part of the Louisiana purchase (§ 332). With the present State of South Dakota it constituted the Territory of Dakota from 1861 to 1889. It is one of the greatest grain-producing States, and mining is prosecuted to some extent. Much of the arid land may ultimately be reclaimed for farms by artificial irrigation. The population in 1890 was 182,719. The area is 75,000 square miles. Bismarck is the capital.

926. South Dakota was admitted into the Union in 1889.

For its history prior to 1889 see § 925. South Dakota is also a great grain-producing State. Its area is 76,620 square miles. Its population in 1890 was 328,808. Pierre is the capital.



924. What is said of the Panama Canal? Of the Canadian fisheries? Of the new navy?

925. What is said of North Dakota? When was it admitted?

926. What is said of South Dakota? When was it admitted?

927. Montana was admitted into the Union in 1889.

Montana was originally a part of the Louisiana purchase (§ 332). In 1864 it was organized as a Territory (§ 939). Mining is the chief industry. Its joint annual output of gold, silver, lead, and copper exceeds in value that of any other State. Its population in 1890 was 132,159. Its area covers 146,080 square miles. Helena is the capital.



928. Washington was admitted into the Union in 1889.



The State was originally part of the disputed Oregon Country (§§ 520, 544). It was established as a Territory in 1853. The population in 1890 was 349,390. The area is 69,180 square miles. Olympia is the capital. Seattle, on Puget Sound, is a rapidly growing city, whose population in 1890 was 42,837. The manufacturing industry of the State has attained considerable importance.

929. Trusts.—In many branches of industry, the producers tried to stop the competition which lowers prices, by entrusting many of their interests, especially the regulation of prices, to one management. These combinations, called “trusts,” it was asserted, kept prices high, and were aided in so doing by the tariff, which kept out foreign goods from competing in price.

930. Ballot Reform.—During 1887 and 1888, promising efforts began to be made in the different States to change the method of voting to that which had been remarkably successful in Australia, Great Britain, and other countries in stopping bribery and interference with voters, and securing an absolutely secret ballot.

931. Presidential Election of 1888.—The “trusts” and the increasing surplus (§ 916) brought up the question of Protection

927. What is said of Montana? When was it admitted?

928. When was Washington admitted into the Union?

929. What is said of the “trusts”?

930. What is said of ballot reform?

931. What were the platform and candidates of the Democrats in 1888? Of the Republicans? What was the result of the election?

again in 1888. President Cleveland, who had attacked the Protective system warmly in his Annual Message, was renominated by the Democrats, with Allen G. Thurman, of Ohio, for Vice-President. The Republicans, supporting Protection more warmly than ever, nominated Benjamin Harrison, of Indiana, and Levi P. Morton, of New York. The 36 electoral votes of New York again decided the election (§ 917), and elected Harrison and Morton. This completed the first century of the republic under the Constitution (§ 297).

The electoral votes were 233 for Harrison and Morton to 168 for Cleveland and Thurman. The Prohibition candidates, Clinton B. Fisk, of New Jersey, and John A. Brooks, of Missouri, received no electoral votes.

SUPPLEMENTARY QUESTIONS.

Locations.—Locate Chicago, Ill.; the *Isthmus of Panama*; *Nicaragua*; the *Dominion of Canada*; *Samoa*.

REVIEW.—Give the year in which Cleveland's administration began. Of the passage of the Inter-State Commerce Act. Of the failure of the Panama Canal Company. Who was elected to succeed Cleveland?

932. The Leading Events of Cleveland's administration were as follows:

1885-9: Cleveland's Term of Office.....	§ 919
1885: "Labor troubles" began.....	920
Contract Labor Act.....	920
1886: Presidential Succession Act.....	922
1887: Canadian fisheries dispute.....	924
Inter-State Commerce Act.....	923
Presidential Election Act.....	922
Tenure of Office Act repealed.....	922
Anarchist riot at Chicago.....	920
1888: Ballot reform.....	930
Four new States admitted.....	925-8
Chinese Immigration Act.....	920
1889: Panama Canal Company fails.....	924
Samoa dispute.....	924
Election of Harrison.....	931
End of the first century under the Constitution..	931

932. When did Cleveland's first term begin and end? What were the labor troubles? What were the leading events of 1885? Of 1886? Of 1887? Of 1888? Of 1889?

CHAPTER XXII.

HARRISON'S ADMINISTRATION : 1889-93.

BENJAMIN HARRISON, Ind., President.

LEVI P. MORTON, N. Y., Vice-President.

933. Benjamin Harrison was born in Ohio in 1833, the grandson of President W. H. Harrison (§ 513). He studied law, and settled in Indiana. During the Civil War he reached the rank of brigadier-general in the Union army. He was elected United States Senator in 1881 by the Republicans of Indiana. After his presidential term he resumed the practice of law in Indianapolis, Ind.

934. The Struggle over the Rules.—When Congress met in

December, 1889, it was proposed in the House of Representatives, where the Republican majority was small, to change the rules governing the House,

so as to prevent dilatory motions and expedite business. Previously it had been possible for members to defer action on a measure by a policy of delay known as *filibustering*, which consisted essentially either in making irrelevant motions which took precedence of the pending business, or in simply refraining from answering to their names when the roll was called. Unless a majority of the members answered to their names, the progress of business was temporarily suspended until a majority of the whole House answered to the roll-call. Both parties in the past had resorted to this plan of delaying action, and had claimed that such delay was a right to which the minority was entitled in



BENJAMIN HARRISON.

933. What were the leading events in the life of Harrison?

934. Give an account of the struggle in the House of Representatives over the proposed change in the rules.

order to prevent hasty and ill-considered legislation on the part of the majority. The proposed change in the rules allowed the Speaker to count as helping to make a quorum members who were present but who did not answer to the roll, and also authorized him to disregard dilatory motions. After an angry debate, the new rules were adopted.

935. The McKinley Tariff Bill.—The Presidential election had turned upon the principle of Protection. The Republicans had been completely victorious, and had elected the President and a majority in both branches of Congress. In his first Message to Congress President Harrison had recommended the maintenance of the Protective policy. Accordingly, in April, 1890, Mr. McKinley of Ohio introduced into the House a tariff bill which sought at the same time to maintain the Protective system and to reduce the revenues of the Federal Government, which were then in excess of its expenditures. The bill laid high duties on foreign goods which came into competition with home products, and put on the free list many goods which were produced exclusively abroad. In the Senate the bill was so amended as to embrace the principle of Reciprocity. This form of Reciprocity consisted in authorizing the President to impose duties on certain goods imported free from other countries, in case these countries imposed duties "reciprocally unequal and unreasonable" upon certain of our exports to them. In this amended form the bill became law.

936. Silver Legislation.—There were many in Congress who were dissatisfied with the law of 1878 (§§ 900, 901) which authorized a monthly purchase of silver by the government. They claimed that any owner of silver bullion ought to be allowed to take the metal to the Mint and have it coined into dollars, each dollar to contain $371\frac{1}{4}$ grains of pure silver and to be a legal tender in payment of debt. Such a law, they claimed, would make the silver dollar exchange in the bullion market for the gold dollar. As the outcome of this feeling the Bland-Allison Law was repealed; and as a compromise, and in the line of further concession to the

935. What was the principle of the McKinley Bill? What articles were taxed? What articles were admitted free? What is meant by Reciprocity?

936. Why was the Bland-Allison Law repealed? What were the provisions of the Silver Bill of July 14, 1890? What were the effects of the bill?

advocates of the more extended use of silver, a law was passed which required the government to buy each month, at the market price, 4,500,000 ounces of silver. The law further provided that for every gold dollar's worth of silver so purchased an equivalent amount in treasury notes of the United States should be issued and that these notes should be a legal tender in payment of debt. The effect of the law was to increase the circulation of money by about \$50,000,000 annually. It failed, however, to raise the price of silver, or even to maintain the price at its former level.

This law was popularly called the Sherman Law, because Senator Sherman, although an opponent of the free coinage of silver, was the chairman of the committee which reported the bill in its final form to the Senate. The agitation of the question of silver led to an international conference at Brussels (§ 943) in 1892-3, which failed to arrive at any conclusions acceptable to all participants. The Sherman Law was repealed November 1, 1893.

937. Increased Expenditures by Congress.—There was at this time a very noticeable increase in the appropriations of money made by Congress. Many people were alarmed at what seemed to them the sudden and undue extravagance on the part of their representatives at Washington. President Harrison in his first Message to Congress had advocated a more liberal expenditure upon pensions to the former soldiers of the Union. In accordance with this suggestion the Dependent Pension Bill was passed by Congress. This increased very materially the number of those entitled to pensions, and made the securing of pensions much easier than it had been hitherto. The effect of this law has been rapidly to increase the expenditure upon pensions until now over \$160,000,000 are annually paid out for this purpose—a sum not far from half the total expenses of the Federal Government. Besides this, heavy appropriations were made to increase the navy and to refund a tax which had been levied on the loyal States during the Civil War. The Fifty-first Congress spent more than its predecessor by \$170,000,000, and the heavier rate of expenditure has been since maintained.

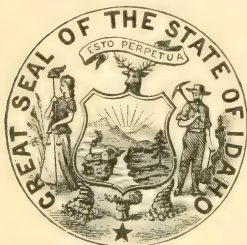
938. The World's Fair at Chicago.—In the early part of 1890 Chicago was designated by Congress as the site of the Columbian

937. Upon what objects did Congress expend an unusual amount of money?

938. Where was the World's Fair held?

Exposition which was to be held in celebration of the four-hundredth anniversary of the discovery of America by Columbus (§ 7); moreover, a commission was appointed to supervise the enterprise. In December, 1890, the President issued a proclamation inviting all nations to take part in the exposition. The great fair was formally opened May 1, 1893, and closed October 31, 1893.

939. Idaho was admitted into the Union in 1890.



Idaho originally embraced Montana and a great part of Wyoming, which were parts of the Louisiana purchase (§ 332). The present State of Idaho was formerly a part of the Oregon Country (§ 333), and for a time constituted part of the Territory of Washington. In 1863 it was made a separate Territory. Its area covers 84,800 square miles, and its population in 1890 was 84,385. Boise City is the capital. The mining of gold and silver is the main industry, both of these metals being found in great abundance. The arid lands

of the State have been partly reclaimed by artificial irrigation. Upon the extension of this process the agricultural future of the State depends.

940. Wyoming was admitted into the Union in 1890.

Wyoming was included in the territory ceded in the Louisiana purchase (§ 332), except the southwestern part of the State, which was embraced in the first Mexican cession (§ 574). Mining, cattle-raising, and agriculture are the main industries. The population in 1890 was 60,705. The area covers some 97,890 square miles. Cheyenne is the capital.



941. The Territories.—Oklahoma Territory was organized in 1890.

Its area had previously been included in Indian Territory, the greater part of which fell under the Louisiana purchase (§ 332), although the extreme western part was covered by the Mexican cession of 1850 (§ 574). Oklahoma was opened to settlers by proclamation of the President, and on September 22, 1891, about sixty thousand immigrants swarmed in and took possession of the fertile farm land. The population in 1890 was 61,834. Guthrie is the capital. In **Utah** the Mormon Church

939. When was Idaho admitted?

940. When was Wyoming admitted?

941. Where and how was Oklahoma settled? What did the Mormon Church declare as to polygamy? What are the remaining Territories?

(§ 913) has formally renounced the doctrine of polygamy, and has tried to split the anti-Mormon party in the Territory, but without much success. **New Mexico** has applied, in vain as yet, for admission into the Union. New Mexico together with Utah, Arizona, Oklahoma, Indian Territory, and Alaska are the only remaining Territories.

942. The Eleventh Census.—The final count as given by the Eleventh Census (§ 892) made the population of the United States on June 1, 1890 (exclusive of Alaska, the whites in Indian Territory, and Indians on reservations), 62,622,250. The actual total was not far from 63,000,000. Several facts of importance were made known by the census. First, while the population is increasing, it is not increasing as rapidly as formerly. Between 1870 and 1880 the increase was thirty per cent; from 1880 to 1890 it was less than twenty-five per cent. Second, it is a noteworthy fact that the rate of increase among the colored population in the South is markedly less than among the white population in the same States. While the negroes increased in the last decade less than fourteen per cent, the whites in the same States increased twenty-five per cent. Third, the geographical centre of population is in southern Indiana, though it is moving slowly but surely towards the Mississippi River.

943. Foreign Affairs.—The administration of President Harrison was marked by a number of complications with foreign powers, some of which seemed at times to render war not impossible. A long-standing wrong to foreigners was redressed when Congress passed the International Copyright Act, which secured their property in their literary productions, provided certain conditions were first complied with. The efforts of the International Monetary Conference which met in Brussels in December, 1892 (§ 936), to secure some international co-operation in regard to the use of silver as a money-metal proved unavailing. With England we had a dispute as to our respective rights in the

942. What was the population of the United States in 1890? Is the population increasing as rapidly as ever? What is said of the increase of the white and colored populations in the South? Where is the geographical centre of the population of the United States?

943. What is the International Copyright Law? What was the object of the Brussels Conference of 1892? What was the nature of our dispute with England about Bering Sea? What was the cause of our trouble with Italy in 1891? How was it settled? What was the origin of our dispute with Chili in 1891? How was it settled? What is the Chinese Exclusion Act? Describe the revolution in Hawaii.

waters of Bering Sea off the coast of Alaska, where our vessels and those of Canada were engaged in taking seals. In June, 1891, both nations agreed to declare a close season, to have English and American ships jointly patrol these waters, and to submit the disputed points to an international commission for arbitration.

On March 14, 1891, there was a riot in New Orleans in which eleven persons of Italian birth were taken from jail and hanged. It was alleged that they belonged to a secret, oath-bound association which had perpetrated certain crimes, and which had attempted to shield certain of their number from the punishment which the law denounced against the crimes so committed. The Federal Government expressed to Italy its deep regret at the occurrence, but disclaimed all responsibility for the affair. It was proved that most of the unfortunates were naturalized American citizens. On behalf of the others Italy demanded reparation in money and a pledge that those engaged in the mob's undertaking should be tried for their crime. This promise the Federal Government refused to give, whereupon the Italian minister left Washington. The matter was finally settled by our paying to Italy \$25,000 as an indemnity to the families of the dead Italian citizens and as a token of our good will to the Italian people.

October 16, 1891, a number of American sailors from the United States ship *Baltimore* while wearing the uniform of the American navy were assaulted by a mob in Valparaiso, Chili, and were badly maltreated, one being killed outright. The demands of our government for an apology and reparation were practically ignored until the President in January, 1892, made a peremptory demand upon Chili, to which they promptly acceded, offering a money indemnity, which was accepted.

The efforts which had been making to exclude the Chinese from the United States (§§ 904, 920) culminated in a law passed in the spring of 1892 which prohibited Chinese immigration for a further period of ten years and required Chinese residents already in this country, under heavy penalties, to provide themselves with certificates of residence.

The Hawaiian Islands were formerly a constitutional monarchy with a queen at their head. The queen, Liliuokalani, had threatened to abolish the constitution and to take more power into her own hands. This threat was followed in January, 1893, by a revolution which set up a provisional government and declared the monarchy at an end. The minister of the United States landed a number of marines from an American war-ship in the harbor of Honolulu. His avowed object was the protection of the property of American residents. The queen declared that the forces of the United States were employed really to aid the revolutionists. She protested against the acts of the provisional government, and declared that she yielded only to the superior force of the United States. On February 1, 1893, Minister Stevens raised the flag of the United States over the islands, and established a protectorate by which the islands were temporarily in the status of a colony. A treaty of annexation was submitted to the Senate, but was speedily withdrawn by President Harrison's successor, and the protectorate came to an end April 13, 1893.

944. Labor Difficulties.—The strife between employer and employee (§ 920) broke out with violence in the summer of 1892. The Carnegie Company at Homestead, Pa., in order to protect their property against violence on the part of striking employees, employed a number of Pinkerton detectives and moved them up the Monongahela River on barges, intending to land them at the works. A battle ensued between the detectives on the barges and the workmen on the river-bank, in which 7 detectives and 11 of their opponents were killed. The militia were ordered to the scene, and for a while the district was placed under martial law. This conflict, with other riots, especially in western New York, drew general attention to the gravity of the question. While lawlessness and disorder must be repressed by armed force if necessary, it is generally admitted that some different and more peaceful method of settling these disputes must eventually be found.

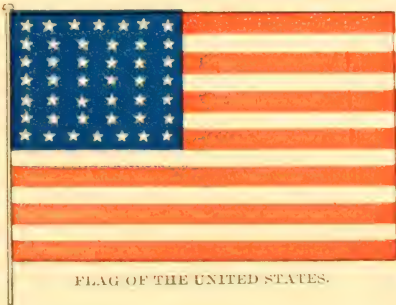
945. Presidential Election of 1892.—The election of 1892

944. Describe the Homestead riots. What question did they raise ?

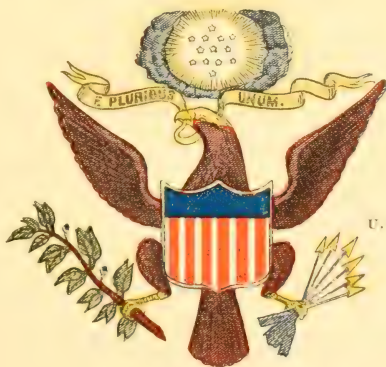
945. What was the nature of the issue in the Presidential election of 1892 ?

again centred about the axial question of Protection. The political problems which were the legacy of the Civil War had almost entirely given place to problems of an economic nature. In the earlier part of this administration the Republicans attempted to pass an election law providing for federal supervisors at the polls. It was aimed especially at some of the Southern States, where, it was alleged, voters were intimidated. Certain Republican Senators from the Western States, deeming the co-operation of Southern Senators in the struggle for silver (§ 936) of more importance than this election law (the so-called Force Bill), were apathetic in their support of the measure, and the bill failed to become law. Business interests had become more important than former political issues. In the Presidential campaign of 1892 the Republicans forcibly reaffirmed the doctrine of Protection, and renominated President Harrison for President, and Whitelaw Reid, of New York, for Vice-President. The Democrats as emphatically denounced the Protective policy, and again nominated Grover Cleveland for President, and Adlai E. Stevenson, of Illinois, for Vice-President. The People's party, the successor of the Greenback or National party (§ 906), declared in favor of the free coinage of silver, a graduated income tax, state control of railroads, and state loans to the farming class. The nominees of the People's party were General James B. Weaver, of Iowa, for President, and James G. Field, of Virginia, for Vice-President. The Prohibition party (§ 931) again put candidates in the field—John Bidwell, of California, for President, and James B. Cranfill, of Texas, for Vice-President. The election resulted in a sweeping victory for the Democrats. Cleveland and Stevenson obtained 277 of the 444 electoral votes. Of the popular vote no ticket received a clear majority, over a million votes being cast for the candidates of the People's party, which controlled 22 votes in the electoral college, the remaining 145 going to the Republican candidates. The Democrats at the same time gained control of both branches of Congress.

Who were the candidates of the four parties? State the platforms of the four parties.



FLAG OF THE UNITED STATES.



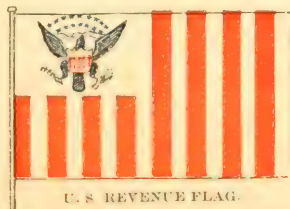
U. S. PENNANT.

U. S. REVENUE PENNANT

ARMS OF THE UNITED STATES.



REVENUE JACK.



U. S. REVENUE FLAG.



UNION JACK.



946. The Leading Events of Harrison's administration were as follows :

1889-1893: Harrison's Term.....	933
1889: Struggle over the rules	934
1890: Chicago designated as the site of the World's Fair	938
Dependent Pension Bill passed	937
Idaho admitted	939
Wyoming admitted	940
The Silver Law passed.....	936
The McKinley Bill passed.....	935
1891: Close season declared in Bering Sea.....	943
Riot in New Orleans	943
Riot in Valparaiso, Chili.....	943
1892: Chinese Exclusion Act passed.....	943
Homestead riots.....	944
Presidential election.....	945
1893: Revolution in Hawaii.....	943

SUPPLEMENTARY QUESTIONS.

Locations.—Locate Chicago; *Valparaiso*; New Orleans, La.; Idaho; Wyoming; *Bering Sea*; Homestead, Pa.; *Hawaii*.

REVIEW.—What was the effect of the Silver Law? What was the McKinley Bill? With what foreign countries did the United States have disputes during Harrison's administration? Who were the Presidential candidates in 1892? What were their respective party platforms?

946. In what years did Harrison's term of office begin and end? What were the leading events of 1889? Of 1890? Of 1891? Of 1892? Of the early part of 1893?

CHAPTER XXIII.

(1) GENERAL SUMMARY.

947. The History which we have been studying is that of a great nation. The rise of other great nations has been long and slow, and many things in their early history are very uncertain; but it is not so with the United States of America. It is just about four hundred years since the discovery of America (§ 8), and less than three hundred years since the English colonies in America were begun (§ 25). During this period there are not many things that are very doubtful: the student can see quite clearly the birth and growth of the nation.

948. The States were the first to appear, and they have always been a necessary part of the nation. Thirteen of them were founded, one by one, along the Atlantic coast, and thirty-one others have since been founded as they have been needed. They have made the United States different from any of the other great nations. France, for example, is everywhere alike, and all parts of it are governed, as far as possible, by the government at Paris. In the United States, each State is left, as far as possible, to govern itself; and it is only in matters relating to the whole people that laws are made by the government at Washington. This is the only wise system by which so large a country as the United States could be kept under one government (§ 485).

If the government at Washington attempted, as in France, to make laws for the whole country in small as well as in great matters, it would not know what would be best for distant parts of the country. The result would be bad laws, discontent, rebellion, and finally the splitting

947. What is the history which we have been studying? How does it differ from that of other great nations? How long a time does it cover? Are its events doubtful?

948. What is said of the States? Of their number? Of their effect on the United States? Compare the United States with France. What is the advantage of the system of the United States?

of the country into different countries. All this is avoided by leaving each State to make laws which relate particularly to its own people and territory.

949. The Nation was born of the union of the colonies or States against Great Britain. They had always been glad to acknowledge the King of Great Britain as their king; but they would not be governed by a distant Parliament, which could know nothing of their needs. Bad laws were made by Parliament, and were resisted peaceably by the colonies. At last the resistance came to force in the fight at Lexington (§ 184), and that made the new nation. It still acknowledged the same king; but, when it found that the king was determined to be on the side of Parliament, it abolished his authority, and declared its independence of him also (§ 206). The States were independent colonies without the nation; the nation could not long maintain its existence without the State organizations. Each is necessary to the other; and the two have made the country what it is.

950. Growth of the Nation.—This history has been told to very little purpose if it has not kept before the mind of the reader the wonderful growth of the nation; a growth which was wonderful even in its small beginnings, and which is now taking such leaps that it is even more talked about and thought about in other countries than in our own. Every year brings to our shores thinking men from other countries, who do not come to settle here, or merely to look at Niagara or the big trees of California, but to see with their own eyes a growth such as has never been seen on earth before. It is proper, then, for us to conclude by considering the present state of the country, the reasons for its wonderful growth, and the possibilities of its future.

(2) STATE OF THE COUNTRY.

951. The Extent of Territory of the United States (§ 831) is not the largest in the world. The Chinese Empire, the British

949. How was the nation born? How did it become independent? What is said of the States and the nation?

950. What is said of the growth of the nation? Of foreign observers? What three things are we to consider in conclusion?

951. Is the territory of the United States the largest of the nations? How does it compare with Italy or Great Britain? With France, Spain, Germany, or Austro-Hungary? What is said of Texas? California?

Empire, including its various dependencies, and the Russian Empire are larger than the United States. But these are not really single nations, like the United States: each of them is a union of a great number of nations, under the control of a single government. If we compare our own country with the single nations that we are accustomed to read of in history, the United States (not including Alaska) would make about twenty-five such countries as Italy or Great Britain, or fifteen such countries as France, Spain, Germany, or Austro-Hungary. Texas alone is larger than any of the four last named (§ 541); and California than either of the two former.

952. Natural Advantages.—The country is almost a world in itself. If the rest of the world were blotted out, the soil of the United States could still produce almost everything needed by its inhabitants. The American may experience almost every variety of climate without leaving his own country: some of the Dakota farmers regularly spend their winters among the orange-groves of Florida. The fertility of the soil is remarkable almost everywhere: regions like Nebraska, which were at first thought to be desert, have been found to be remarkably productive. Most other nations use more wheat than they produce: the United States has produced over 600,000,000 bushels of wheat in a single year, and often has 150,000,000 bushels to sell to other nations. Coal, iron, gold, silver, copper, lead, oil, all the metals and minerals needed by man, are stored away for his use beneath the surface of the United States in abundance. The American may get almost anything he wishes from his own country by working for it.

In modern times, when machinery counts for so much, the wealth of a country depends very much on its supply of coal. Great Britain's coal supply may be used up in a century, and it is hard to say what she will do then. We know already of 200,000 square miles of coal territory in the United States—forty times as much as in Great Britain, and twenty times as much as in all Europe together.

953. The Population of the United States was over 62,000,000 in 1890 (§ 942). This is already greater than that of any other thoroughly civilized nation. It is not so large as the pop-

952. What is said of variety of production? Of variety of climate? Of the fertility of the soil? Of the production of wheat? Of metals and minerals?

953. What was the population in 1890? How does it compare with other countries? How often does it double? What does this natural increase mean? What are the possibilities of the future?

ulation of China, British India, or Russia; but these people are strong only in numbers, while the people of the United States are strong in all the forces of civilization. But it is not the present alone that is remarkable: it is the possibilities of the future. It was noticed long ago that the American people doubled every twenty-five years (§ 942). Now a doubling when the population was only about 2,000,000 was not so striking an event; but a doubling when the population is already 64,000,000 is something which must attract attention. It means that, by natural increase, a regiment of fighting men is added to the strength of the United States every day, or a great army of fighting men every year. It means that the population may be 100,000,000 fifteen years from now, in 1910, and possibly 200,000,000 in 1935. Good judges think that the territory of the United States will support 800,000,000 persons; that, then, may be the population of the United States before the end of the next century.

954. Material Advantages.—Numbers, or extent of territory, would be but poor things if they were all the country could boast of. But the power of the country grows far faster in some respects than its numbers grow. Every year a million sewing-machines are produced; they can do more work than twelve million women could do by hand; and thus the working power of the country grows faster even than its women increase. It is the same with steam machinery in regard to men. When the population numbers 200,000,000, with all the powers of machinery, steam, and electricity to help it, it will be a power such as the world has never seen and will probably not see elsewhere.

The people of Great Britain and other civilized countries have the same advantages of machinery, but their territory is so small that they can never approach the future numbers of the United States.

955. Peace is the natural condition of the American people. They have no neighbors strong enough to annoy them; and they have no desire to war on others, for their territory is already as large as they can manage. Since the disappearance of slavery,

954. What is said of the growth of the power of the country? What instances made of sewing-machines? Of machinery? What will be the state of affairs when the population is 200,000,000?

955. Why are the American people likely to remain at peace?

there is nothing within the country to make war necessary. Other countries may perhaps have wars, battles, wholesale destruction of life and property: the people of the United States have no desire for such things, and should resist having them forced upon them.

956. Armies are not needed here. Russia must keep a million of men constantly in her army, and France and Germany half a million each, for their neighbors will plunder them if they do not. The American people have an army of 25,000 men, and yet the people often grumble as if that were too many. They are fearless of attack from their neighbors, for other countries know that in a just war Congress can have for the asking three million soldiers. And so the people are not taxed, or workingmen taken away from work, in order to keep up a monstrous army in time of peace.

957. Railroads and Telegraphs.—There were more miles of railroad in the United States in 1894 (170,000 miles) than in all Europe, and nearly as many as in all the world outside of the United States. The number is increasing at the rate of many thousand miles each year. There were three times as many miles of telegraph in the United States in 1894 (more than 190,000 miles) as in any other country. This quantity shows a continuous tendency to increase.

958. The National Debt was about \$1,000,000,000 in 1894, deducting cash in the treasury. About \$400,000,000 of this is in the form of paper money: the rest pays interest. That part which bears interest cannot be paid for some years to come. The United States would be glad to go on paying it, but those to whom it is due will not take their money until it falls due: they would rather leave it where they know it is safe. In 1865 the government was weighed down by a debt of nearly three thousand millions (§ 832). The surpluses derived from taxation went to pay the debt as fast as possible. In less than thirty years about

956. What is said of the armies of foreign countries? Of the United States? Why is so small an army possible? What is the result?

957. What is said of railroad lines? Of their increase? Of telegraph lines? Of their increase?

958. What was the debt in 1894? How was it divided? Why has payment grown slack? What is said of payment in the past?

\$2,000,000,000 has been paid, and further payment only stopped because the nation's creditors would not consent to be fully paid at present.

959. Education.—There were in the United States in 1890 about thirteen million children in attendance on the public schools, and about one million in attendance on other schools. The expenses of the public schools are paid by the people, by taxation, and the results have been so excellent that other countries are rapidly following the same plan. There were in 1890 nearly 450 colleges (442) in addition to schools of medicine, law, and theology. There were in 1893 about 19,000 newspapers exclusive of periodicals.

Of the newspapers, 1,759 were published daily, issuing over three billion copies per year.

960. Religion.—It was for a very long time a settled belief of most Christian denominations that the state should aid the church, by taxing the people for its support. Nearly every nation had its state church, and most of the States while they were colonies followed the rule. Since they have become a nation they have changed it. The churches are supported by the free-will offerings of those who belong to them, and they have prospered by the change. It is believed that there are about 165,000 congregations in the United States, belonging to the various denominations, and they are more generally prosperous than if they depended on government aid. They not only carry on their own work, but aid others. In the South, in the frontier towns of the far West, and in the evil places of the large cities, there are great numbers of missionaries, supported by churches.

961. Benevolence.—Private and public benevolence is exceedingly common; so much so as to be sometimes unwisely directed. Hospitals, asylums, charitable associations of every kind, show the kindly spirit of the people for misfortune. That kind of public spirit which is shown by giving money to public uses is exceedingly common in the United States. There are not many cities or towns

959. What is said of public schools? How is the expense paid? What is said of colleges? Of newspapers?

960. What was formerly believed to be the duty of the state to the church? How has the practice been changed in the United States? What is the number of congregations? How do they aid the work of others?

961. What is said of benevolence? Of public spirit? What is the general feeling of the people in this respect?

which cannot show a hospital, a park, a library, a college, or some similar public institution, presented to the public by some one who has prospered in the place. There is a general feeling of contempt for the rich man who dies without "leaving some of his money to the place where he made it."

962. National Wealth.—The country is probably the richest in the world, though in per-capita wealth surpassed by Great Britain. In 1870 the United States stood third in wealth; in 1880 it had passed France and stood second. In its yearly income and increase of wealth it now surpasses Great Britain and all other countries.

The following table will give rough estimates of the wealth, the annual income, the manufactures, and the total industries of Great Britain and the United States, and the increase of each from 1870 to 1880. It is taken from an English writer (Mr. Mulhall), considering the pound sterling as five dollars.

	GREAT BRITAIN.	UNITED STATES.
	(Millions of Dollars.)	(Millions of Dollars.)
Wealth, total.....	44,800	39,400
Increase in ten years.....	3,250	7,800
Annual Income.....	5,780	7,030
Increase in ten years.....	975	1,720
Manufactures.....	3,790	4,440
Increase in ten years.....	580	1,030
Total Industries.....	10,120	10,020
Increase in ten years.....	1,685	2,625

963. State of the Country.—Here, then, is a country in which there was not a settler 290 years ago, and now (1894) it has over one sixth of the wealth of the world. It has territory sufficient to accommodate almost any number of people, and the people who inhabit it are, to say the least, as active, as intelligent, and as civilized as any in the world. The sunlight, as it passes every day from

962. What is said of the wealth of the United States? Of its increase in ten years? Of its annual income and increase?

963. How much of the world's wealth is in the United States? What is said of the people? What part of the world's work is done by them? What is said of their daily growth? What is Mr. Mulhall's remark? What is said of the future?

the Atlantic to the Pacific, wakes a population of 64,000,000, whose workers labor very hard. They already do one third of all the mining in the world, one fourth of all the manufacturing, and one fifth of all the agriculture. Every night they are stronger by a regiment of fighting men, and richer by millions of dollars, than the night before. "It would be impossible," said Mr. Mulhall in 1882, "to find in history a parallel to the progress of the United States in the last ten years." And yet all this is very little, compared with what the future is to see.

(3) CAUSES OF GROWTH.

964. Other Countries have had as fair opportunities as the United States, but have made no such use of them. The Spanish colonies in South America and Mexico had a far larger territory and richer soil than the English colonies of North America, but they have never formed a great nation, or become powerful separately. There must be reasons why these English colonies have prospered so amazingly, and it would be well for us to consider them, that we may do no worse, at least, than our fathers have done.

965. The Institutions of the country have had much to do with its progress. From the beginning the country has had no privileged classes or noble families; no man has been able to claim an office or a support from the people as his right, merely because his father had won a victory or gained wealth. Every man has known that, no matter how poor he might be at first, he could go just as high as he was able to overcome the natural difficulties in the way; there were few artificial ones. When a whole people have ambition, and have hopes of success for themselves and their children, they are certain to do far harder and better work for it. The boy cutting rails on the prairie knows that his poverty cannot of itself prevent him from reaching the highest position the country affords; the children of the President know that the dignity

964. What is said of other countries? Of the Spanish colonies? Why should we consider the reasons of the country's growth?

965. What is said of the institutions of the country? What encouragement have men had to work? What has been the effect on the people?

of his position cannot of itself prevent them from falling to the lowest class, if they should prove unworthy.

966. Education has always been a purpose of the American people. They have set apart a large portion of their wealth to take care that the children of every man, rich or poor, shall have the opportunity, at least, to obtain an education. They have thus made their farmers, mechanics, and miners more intelligent than those of other countries, more quick to hit on new and useful inventions, and more handy in managing the inventions already in use. They have also helped their voters to vote more intelligently, and have helped to diminish crime, for it is not quite so likely that a man will become a criminal if he has the power to vote and a fair share of education.

967. Work.—Americans have always been a hard-working people, and their hard work has done very much to make their country great. They have always been anxious to make inventions, not for the purpose of avoiding work, but for the purpose of making their work still more effective. The young man who goes from the country to the city, because he has or seeks the opportunity to work harder or more effectively, aids in the growth of the country: but he who goes for the purpose of avoiding hard work is really doing all he can to injure the country which should be dear to him. He who gives up farming or a trade to work harder or more effectively in some other way does well: but he who does so only for the purpose of living more easily does foolishly, and will live and die a failure, for he has none of the American spirit in him, and will be beaten in the race by others who have it.

968. Energy.—This power of hard work has come largely from the energy of the people: they have never been afraid of difficulties. The greater the difficulty has seemed, the greater has been the fury with which they have attacked it again and again until it has gone down before them. From the starving time in

966. What have Americans done for education? What has been the effect on their workmen? On their voters?

967. What is said of the working power of the people? Of their inventions? Of the desire to go from country to city? Of the desire to give up farming or a trade?

968. What is said of the energy of the people? How did the experience of 1861 show the nature of their energy?

Virginia, and the first bitter winters of New England, until now, the American has always been ready to do or endure anything if he can see that it is of any use to himself or others. Until 1861, the people of other countries believed that all this energy was simple greed, and that Americans were "dollar-hunters," who thought only of getting money. In 1861 the danger of a tremendous civil war fell on them, and they showed the same energy in granting their money, in taxing themselves unmercifully, and in fighting as stubbornly as men can fight. At the end of the war, they attacked their debt in the same spirit and paid it in the same way. Americans believe that there is no difficulty that they cannot master in time; and their children must be taught the same belief.

969. Honesty and Good Faith.—Many men in other countries believe that, in a country where every man, good or bad, rich or poor, has a vote, the people will vote for evil measures because they seem to be to their own profit. This has not been so in the United States. It would have been to the profit of the people for a time, if they had refused to pay their debt; and there was no power which could have made them pay. Instead of refusing or hesitating, their representatives in Congress were urged to tax the people steadily until the debt was mastered. And now, if the United States should wish to borrow money, the rich men of other countries would contend with one another for the privilege of lending it, for they know that the honesty and good faith of the American people would make it absolutely safe. Americans have made mistakes; but they have regularly meant and tried to do the thing which was right and honest.

970. The Natural Advantages of the country, its soil, mines, rivers, and harbors, are great; but it is the qualities above named that have enabled the Americans to make such wonderful use of their advantages. If their children learn to think, feel, and act as their fathers did not; if they forget the honesty, the energy, the

969. What belief is common in other countries? Is it true of the United States? What instance is made of the debt? What is said of the credit of the United States? Of the intentions of the people?

970. Have natural advantages alone made the United States great? Will they alone make the country great in future?

love of work, the cultivation of education, and the religious feeling which marked their ancestors, the natural advantages of the country will help them no more than those of Brazil or Mexico have helped their people. It is the people that make the land great: the land alone will never make the people great.

(4) THE FUTURE.

971. Fifty Years Hence, when we number two hundred millions or more, there will be no power on earth to be compared with the United States of America. For the two hundred millions will not be such as live in China, Hindostan, or Russia, but civilized men, helped by steam, electricity, and machinery, so that each of them can do the work of a score of Chinese. They can, if they should be foolish or wicked enough to wish to do so, maintain fleets and armies sufficient to overawe the rest of the world. They can make other nations dread their anger and yield to their slightest demand. They can make their country a bully and a nuisance among the nations.

972. Such a Power, so managed, would be the most terrible evil the world has yet seen. It would bring its own punishment upon the guilty people. If the moral forces which have made the country what it is should be lost, national decay would soon rid the earth of the evil, and free other nations from anxiety. North America has been the graveyard of other races before ours (§ 2); and it may yet be the graveyard of our own.

973. Responsibility of the People.—It is the bounden duty of those who are growing up to manhood and womanhood to take care that no such evil shall come to pass. Each of them is, to some extent, an engineer to whose care has been entrusted an engine whose explosion would injure the whole human race. Wherever he sees an ignorant voter, a wicked voter, or a man who makes voters ignorant or wicked, he sees an enemy of himself, of

971. What will be the state of the country fifty years hence? What will be the power of the people? How can they use it?

972. What would be the meaning of such a power? What would be its punishment?

973. What is the duty of the young? What is their position? Who are their enemies? Where is their battle-field? What may be their reward?

his country, and of humanity. Wherever he finds evil, even in himself, he sees his proper battle-ground; and he can there fight for his country as truly as with rifle or sabre. If he lives out man's allotted time of life, he will be rewarded in seeing his country respected and honored by all other nations as no nation has yet been respected or honored, and in feeling that he has done his part in the work.



APPENDIX I.

DECLARATION OF INDEPENDENCE.

IN CONGRESS, JULY 4, 1776.

A DECLARATION BY THE REPRESENTATIVES OF THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA, IN CONGRESS ASSEMBLED.

WHEN, in the course of human events, it becomes necessary for one people to dissolve the political bands which have connected them with another, and to assume, among the powers of the earth, the separate and equal station to which the laws of nature and of nature's God entitle them, a decent respect to the opinions of mankind requires that they should declare the causes which impel them to the separation.

We hold these truths to be self-evident:—That all men are created equal; that they are endowed by their Creator with certain unalienable rights; that among these are life, liberty, and the pursuit of happiness. That, to secure these rights, governments are instituted among men, deriving their just powers from the consent of the governed; that, whenever any form of government becomes destructive of these ends, it is the right of the people to alter or to abolish it, and to institute a new government, laying its foundation on such principles, and organizing its powers in such form, as to them shall seem most likely to effect their safety and happiness. Prudence, indeed, will dictate, that governments long established should not be changed for light and transient causes; and accordingly all experience hath shown that mankind are more disposed to suffer while evils are sufferable, than to right themselves by abolishing the forms to which they are accustomed. But when a long train of abuses and usurpations, pursuing invariably the same object, evinces a design to reduce them under absolute despotism, it is their right, it is their duty, to throw off such government, and to provide new guards for their future security. Such has been the patient sufferance of these colonies; and such is now the necessity which constrains them to alter their former systems of government. The history of the present King of Great Britain is a history of repeated injuries and usurpations, all having in direct object the establishment of an absolute tyranny over these states. To prove this, let facts be submitted to a candid world.

He has refused his assent to laws the most wholesome and necessary for the public good.

He has forbidden his governors to pass laws of immediate and pressing importance, unless suspended in their operation till his assent

should be obtained; and when so suspended, he has utterly neglected to attend to them.

He has refused to pass other laws for the accommodation of large districts of people, unless those people would relinquish the right of representation in the legislature—a right inestimable to them, and formidable to tyrants only.

He has called together legislative bodies at places unusual, uncomfortable, and distant from the depository of their public records, for the sole purpose of fatiguing them into compliance with his measures.

He has dissolved representative houses repeatedly, for opposing, with manly firmness, his invasions on the rights of the people.

He has refused, for a long time after such dissolutions, to cause others to be elected, whereby the legislative powers, incapable of annihilation, have returned to the people at large for their exercise; the State remaining, in the mean time, exposed to all the dangers of invasions from without, and convulsions within.

He has endeavored to prevent the population of these States; for that purpose obstructing the laws for the naturalization of foreigners; refusing to pass others to encourage their migration hither, and raising the conditions of new appropriations of lands.

He has obstructed the administration of justice, by refusing his assent to laws for establishing judiciary powers.

He has made judges dependent on his will alone for the tenure of their offices, and the amount and payment of their salaries.

He has erected a multitude of new offices, and sent hither swarms of officers to harass our people and eat out their substance.

He has kept among us in times of peace, standing armies, without the consent of our Legislatures.

He has affected to render the military independent of, and superior to, the civil power.

He has combined with others to subject us to a jurisdiction foreign to our constitutions, and unacknowledged by our laws; giving his assent to their acts of pretended legislation:

For quartering large bodies of armed troops among us;

For protecting them, by a mock trial, from punishment for any murders which they should commit on the inhabitants of these States;

For cutting off our trade with all parts of the world;

For imposing taxes on us without our consent;

For depriving us, in many cases, of the benefits of trial by jury;

For transporting us beyond seas, to be tried for pretended offences;
For abolishing the free system of English laws in a neighboring province, establishing therein an arbitrary government, and enlarging its boundaries, so as to render it at once an example and fit instrument for introducing the same absolute rule into these colonies;

For taking away our charters, abolishing our most valuable laws, and altering, fundamentally, the forms of our governments;

For suspending our own Legislatures, and declaring themselves invested with power to legislate for us in all cases whatsoever.

He has abdicated government here, by declaring us out of his protection, and waging war against us.

He has plundered our seas, ravaged our coasts, burned our towns, and destroyed the lives of our people.

He is at this time transporting large armies of foreign mercenaries to

complete the works of death, desolation and tyranny, already begun with circumstances of cruelty and perfidy scarcely paralleled in the most barbarous ages, and totally unworthy the head of a civilized nation.

He has constrained our fellow-citizens, taken captive on the high seas, to bear arms against their country, to become the executioners of their friends and brethren, or to fall themselves by their hands.

He has excited domestic insurrection among us, and has endeavored to bring on the inhabitants of our frontiers the merciless Indian savages, whose known rule of warfare is an undistinguished destruction of all ages, sexes, and conditions.

In every stage of these oppressions we have petitioned for redress in the most humble terms; our repeated petitions have been answered only by repeated injury. A prince whose character is thus marked by every act which may define a tyrant, is unfit to be the ruler of a free people.

Nor have we been wanting in our attentions to our British brethren. We have warned them, from time to time, of attempts by their legislature to extend an unwarrantable jurisdiction over us. We have reminded them of the circumstances of our emigration and settlement here. We have appealed to their native justice and magnanimity; and we have conjured them, by the ties of our common kindred, to disavow these usurpations, which would inevitably interrupt our connections and correspondence. They, too, have been deaf to the voice of justice and of consanguinity. We must, therefore, acquiesce in the necessity which denounces our separation, and hold them, as we hold the rest of mankind, enemies in war, in peace friends.

We, therefore, the Representatives of the United States of America, in General Congress assembled, appealing to the Supreme Judge of the world for the rectitude of our intentions, do, in the name and by the authority of the good people of these colonies, solemnly publish and declare, That these united colonies are, and of right ought to be, free and independent states; that they are absolved from all allegiance to the British crown, and that all political connection between them and the state of Great Britain is, and ought to be, totally dissolved; and that, as free and independent states, they have full power to levy war, conclude peace, contract alliances, establish commerce, and to do all other acts and things which independent states may of right do. And, for the support of this declaration, with a firm reliance on the protection of Divine Providence, we mutually pledge to each other our lives, our fortunes, and our sacred honor.

The foregoing Declaration was, by order of Congress, engrossed, and signed by the following members:—

JOHN HANCOCK.

NEW HAMPSHIRE.
Josiah Bartlett,
William Whipple,
Matthew Thornton.

Robert Treat Paine,
Elbridge Gerry.

Samuel Huntington,
William Williams,
Oliver Wolcott.

RHODE ISLAND.

Stephen Hopkins,
William Ellery.

NEW YORK.

William Floyd,
Philip Livingston,
Francis Lewis,
Lewis Morris.

MASSACHUSETTS BAY.

Samuel Adams,
John Adams,

CONNECTICUT.

Roger Sherman,

NEW JERSEY.

Richard Stockton,
John Witherspoon
Francis Hopkinson,
John Hart,
Abraham Clark.

PENNSYLVANIA.

Robert Morris,
Benjamin Rush,
Benjamin Franklin,
John Morton,
George Clymer,
James Smith,
George Taylor,
James Wilson,
George Ross.

DELAWARE.

Cæsar Rodney,
George Read,
Thomas M'Kean.

MARYLAND.

Samuel Chase,
William Paca,
Thomas Stone, [rollton.
Charles Carroll, of Car-

VIRGINIA.

George Wythe,
Richard Henry Lee,
Thomas Jefferson,
Benjamin Harrison,
Thomas Nelson, Jr.,

Francis Lightfoot Lee,
Carter Braxton.

NORTH CAROLINA.

William Hooper,
Joseph Hewes,
John Penn.

SOUTH CAROLINA.

Edward Rutledge,
Thomas Heyward, Jr.,
Thomas Lynch, Jr.,
Arthur Middleton.

GEORGIA.

Button Gwinnett,
Lyman Hall,
George Walton.

Resolved, That copies of the Declaration be sent to the several assemblies, conventions, and committees, or councils of safety, and to the several commanding officers of the continental troops; that it be proclaimed in each of the United States, and at the head of the army

APPENDIX II.

CONSTITUTION OF THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA.

PREAMBLE.

WE, the people of the United States, in order to form a more perfect union, establish justice, insure domestic tranquillity, provide for the common defence, promote the general welfare, and secure the blessings of liberty to ourselves and our posterity, do ordain and establish this CONSTITUTION for the United States of America.

ARTICLE I.

SECTION I. 1. All legislative powers herein granted shall be vested in a Congress¹ of the United States, which shall consist of a senate and house of representatives. Legislative powers.

SEC. II. 1. The house of representatives shall be composed of members chosen every second year, by the people of the several states; and the electors in each state shall have the qualifications requisite for electors of the most numerous branch of the state legislature. House of representatives.

2. No person shall be a representative who shall not have attained to the age of twenty-five years, and been seven years a citizen of the United States, and who shall not, when elected, be an inhabitant of that state in which he shall be chosen. Qualifications of representatives.

3. Representatives and direct taxes shall be apportioned among the several states which may be included within this Union, according to their respective numbers,² which shall be determined by adding to the whole number of free persons, including those bound to service for a term of years, and excluding Indians not taxed, three fifths of all other persons.³ The actual enu- Apportionment of representatives.

¹ The body of senators and representatives for each term of two years for which representatives are chosen is called *one Congress*. Each Congress expires at noon of the 4th of March next succeeding the beginning of its second regular session, when a *new Congress begins*.

² The apportionment under the census of 1890 is one representative to every 73,001 persons.

³ This refers to slaves, and is no longer in force (see Amendment XIII.).

What nation is governed by this Constitution?

PREAMBLE: Who formed the Constitution? For what purposes?

ARTICLE I. Section 1. To what body are legislative (law-making) powers given (§ 282)? What are its branches?

Section 2. How often are representatives chosen? By whom? What are the qualifications of a representative? Can any State be left without representatives? How are vacancies filled? How are the officers of the House of Representatives chosen? What body has the power of impeachment (§ 283)?

meration shall be made within three years after the first meeting of the Congress of the United States, and within every subsequent term of ten years, in such manner as they shall by law direct. The number of representatives shall not exceed one for every thirty thousand, but each state shall have at least one representative; and until such enumeration shall be made, the State of New Hampshire shall be entitled to choose three; Massachusetts, eight; Rhode Island and Providence Plantations, one; Connecticut, five; New York, six; New Jersey, four; Pennsylvania, eight; Delaware, one; Maryland, six; Virginia, ten; North Carolina, five; South Carolina, five; and Georgia, three.

Vacancies. 4. When vacancies happen in the representation from any state, the executive authority thereof shall issue writs of election to fill such vacancies.

Officers, how appointed. 5. The house of representatives shall choose their speaker and other officers,¹ and shall have the sole power of impeachment.

SEC. III. 1. The senate of the United States shall be composed of two senators from each state, chosen by the legislature thereof, for six years; and each senator shall have one vote.

Classification of senators. 2. Immediately after they shall be assembled in consequence of the first election, they shall be divided, as equally as may be, into three classes. The seats of the senators of the first class shall be vacated at the expiration of the second year; of the second class, at the expiration of the fourth year; and of the third class, at the expiration of the sixth year, so that one third may be chosen every second year; and if vacancies happen, by resignation or otherwise, during the recess of the legislature of any state, the executive thereof may make temporary appointments until the next meeting of the legislature, which shall then fill such vacancies.

Qualifications of senators. 3. No person shall be a senator who shall not have attained to the age of thirty years, and been nine years a citizen of the United States; and who shall not, when elected, be an inhabitant of that state for which he shall be chosen.

President of the senate. 4. The vice-president of the United States shall be president of the senate; but shall have no vote, unless they be equally divided.

5. The senate shall choose their other officers,² and also a president *pro tempore*, in the absence of the vice-president, or when he shall exercise the office of president of the United States.

Senate a court for trial of impeachments. 6. The senate shall have the sole power to try all impeachments. When sitting for that purpose, they shall be on oath or affirmation. When the president of the United States is tried, the chief justice shall preside; and no person shall be convicted without the concurrence of two thirds of the members present.

¹ Clerk, sergeant-at-arms, door-keeper, postmaster and others. The *Speaker* is the presiding officer.

² Secretary, sergeant-at-arms, door-keeper, postmaster and others.

Section 3. How is the Senate composed? How are the Senators chosen? How long do they serve? What are their qualifications? Who presides over the Senate? How are the other officers of the Senate chosen? What body tries impeachments (§ 283)? What vote is necessary for conviction? When does the Chief Justice preside? What punishment follows conviction?

7. Judgment, in case of impeachment, shall not extend further than to removal from office, and disqualification to hold and enjoy any office of honor, trust, or profit, under the United States; but the party convicted shall, nevertheless, be liable and subject to indictment, trial, judgment, and punishment, according to law.

Judgment in case of conviction.

SEC. IV. 1. The times, places, and manner of holding elections for senators and representatives, shall be prescribed in each state by the legislature thereof; but the Congress may, at any time, by law, make or alter such regulations, except as to the places of choosing senators.

Elections of senators and of representatives.

2. The Congress shall assemble at least once in every year; and such meeting shall be on the first Monday in December, unless they shall by law appoint a different day.

Meeting of Congress.

SEC. V. 1. Each house shall be the judge of the elections, returns, and qualifications of its own members; and a majority of each shall constitute a quorum to do business; but a smaller number may adjourn from day to day, and may be authorized to compel the attendance of absent members, in such manner and under such penalties as each house may provide.

Organization of Congress.

2. Each house may determine the rules of its proceedings, punish its members for disorderly behavior, and, with the concurrence of two thirds, expel a member.

Rule of proceeding.

3. Each house shall keep a journal of its proceedings, and from time to time publish the same, excepting such parts as may, in their judgment, require secrecy; and the yeas and nays of the members of either house, on any question, shall, at the desire of one fifth of those present, be entered on the journal.

Journal of Congress.

4. Neither house, during the session of Congress, shall, without the consent of the other, adjourn for more than three days, nor to any other place than that in which the two houses shall be sitting.

Adjournment of Congress.

SEC. VI. 1. The senators and representatives shall receive a compensation¹ for their services, to be ascertained by law, and paid out of the treasury of the United States. They shall, in all cases, except treason, felony, and breach of the peace, be privileged from arrest during their attendance at the session of their respective houses, and in going to and returning from the same; and for any speech or debate in either house they shall not be questioned in any other place.

Pay and privileges of members.

¹ The present compensation is \$5,000 a year, with twenty cents for every mile of travel by the most usually travelled post route to and from the national capital.

Section 4. What bodies regulate elections to Congress? What may Congress do? What is the only exception? When *must* Congress meet? When *may* Congress meet?

Section 5. How are disputed elections to Congress decided? How is order provided for? What vote is necessary for expulsion? Can any of the proceedings of Congress be kept secret? Can either branch adjourn without the consent of the other? For how long?

Section 6. How are members of Congress paid? How is their pay fixed? Can they be arrested during a session of Congress? For what offences only? Can they be punished for their speeches in Congress by other bodies? Can they hold any other office under the United States while they are members of Congress?

2. No senator or representative shall, during the time for which he was elected, be appointed to any civil office, under the authority of the United States, which shall have been created, or the emoluments whereof shall have been increased, during such time; and no person holding any office under the United States shall be a member of either house during his continuance in office.

SEC. VII. 1. All bills for raising revenue shall originate in the house of representatives; but the senate may propose or concur with amendments, as on other bills.

2. Every bill which shall have passed the house of representatives and the senate shall, before it become a law, be presented to the president of the United States. If he approve, he shall sign it; but if not, he shall return it, with his objections, to that house in which it shall have originated, who shall enter the objections at large on their journal, and proceed to reconsider it. If, after such reconsideration, two thirds of that house shall agree to pass the bill, it shall be sent, together with the objections, to the other house, by which it shall likewise be reconsidered, and if approved by two thirds of that house, it shall become a law. But, in all such cases, the votes of both houses shall be determined by yeas and nays, and the names of the persons voting for and against the bill shall be entered on the journal of each house respectively. If any bill shall not be returned by the president within ten days (Sundays excepted) after it shall have been presented to him, the same shall be a law in like manner as if he had signed it, unless the Congress by their adjournment prevent its return, in which case it shall not be a law.

3. Every order, resolution, or vote, to which the concurrence of the senate and house of representatives may be necessary (except on a question of adjournment), shall be presented to the president of the United States; and before the same shall take effect, shall be approved by him, or, being disapproved by him, shall be repassed by two thirds of the senate and house of representatives, according to the rules and limitations prescribed in the case of a bill.

SEC. VIII. The Congress shall have power—

1. To lay and collect taxes, duties, imposts, and excises, to pay the debts and provide for the common defence and general welfare of the United States; but all duties, imposts, and excises shall be uniform throughout the United States:

2. To borrow money on the credit of the United States:

3. To regulate commerce with foreign nations, and among the several states, and with the Indian tribes:

Section 7. By which branch of Congress must revenue bills be passed first? What may be done by the senate? What share has the President in the making of laws? What is his objection to signing a bill called (§478)? What vote is necessary to pass a bill over the veto? How many days are allowed to him to veto a bill? If the time passes without a veto, what is the consequence?

Section 8. What power over taxes is given to Congress? Over borrowing money? In relation to commerce? In relation to naturalization and bankruptcies? In relation to coin? To counterfeiting? To post-offices? To authors and inventors? To United States courts? To piracy? To declaring war (§ 550)? To making war on land? On sea? In relation to the government of the army and navy? To governing the District of Columbia? In relation to calling forth the militia? To governing the militia? What general powers are given to Congress?

4. To establish a uniform rule of naturalization, and uniform laws on the subject of bankruptcies throughout the United States:

5. To coin money, regulate the value thereof, and of foreign coin, and fix the standard of weights and measures:

6. To provide for the punishment of counterfeiting the securities and current coin of the United States.

7. To establish post offices and post roads:

8. To promote the progress of science and useful arts, by securing, for limited times, to authors and inventors, the exclusive right to their respective writings and discoveries.

9. To constitute tribunals inferior to the supreme court:

10. To define and punish piracies and felonies committed on the high seas, and offences against the law of nations:

11. To declare war, grant letters of marque and reprisal, and make rules concerning captures on land and water:

12. To raise and support armies; but no appropriation of money to that use shall be for a longer term than two years:

13. To provide and maintain a navy:

14. To make rules for the government and regulation of the land and naval forces:

15. To provide for calling forth the militia to execute the laws of the Union, suppress insurrections, and repel invasions:

16. To provide for organizing, arming, and disciplining the militia, and for governing such part of them as may be employed in the service of the United States, reserving to the states respectively the appointment of the officers, and the authority of training the militia according to the discipline prescribed by Congress:

17. To exercise exclusive legislation, in all cases whatsoever, over such district (not exceeding ten miles square) as may, by cession of particular states, and the acceptance of Congress, become the seat of government of the United States;¹ and to exercise like authority over all places purchased, by the consent of the legislature of the state in which the same shall be, for the erection of forts, magazines, arsenals, dockyards, and other needful buildings; and

18. To make all laws which shall be necessary and proper for carrying into execution the foregoing powers, and all other powers vested by this constitution in the government of the United States, or in any department or officer thereof.

SEC. IX. 1. The migration or importation of such persons as any of the states now existing shall think proper to admit, shall not be prohibited by the Congress prior to the year one thousand eight hundred and eight; but a tax or duty may be imposed on such importation, not exceeding ten dollars for each person.²

¹ The District of Columbia (§ 320).

² This has reference to the foreign slave trade (§§ 280, 331).

Section 9. When was Congress permitted to abolish the foreign slave trade? May Congress suspend the privilege of the writ of habeas corpus? Or pass bills of attainder or ex post facto laws? Or lay direct taxes? Or favor the commerce of any state? Or allow money to be paid out without law? Or grant titles of nobility (§ 945)?

- Habeas corpus. 2. The privilege of the writ of habeas corpus shall not be suspended, unless when, in cases of rebellion or invasion, the public safety may require it.
- Attainder. 3. No bill of attainder, or ex post facto law, shall be passed.
- Direct taxes. 4. No capitation or other direct tax shall be laid, unless in proportion to the census or enumeration hereinbefore directed to be taken.
- Regulations regarding duties. 5. No tax or duty shall be laid on articles exported from any state.
- another; nor shall vessels bound to or from one state be obliged to enter, clear, or pay duties in another.
- Moneys, how drawn. 7. No money shall be drawn from the treasury but in consequence of appropriations made by law; and a regular statement and account of the receipts and expenditures of all public money shall be published from time to time.
- Titles of nobility prohibited. 8. No title of nobility shall be granted by the United States, and no person holding any office of profit or trust under them shall, without the consent of the Congress, accept of any present, emolument, office, or title of any kind whatever, from any king, prince, or foreign state.

SEC. X. 1. No state shall enter into any treaty, alliance, or confederation; grant letters of marque and reprisal; coin money; emit bills of credit; make anything but gold and silver coin a tender in payment of debts; pass any bill of attainder, ex post facto law, or law impairing the obligation of contracts; or grant any title of nobility.

2. No state shall, without the consent of the Congress, lay any imposts or duties on imports or exports, except what may be absolutely necessary for executing its inspection laws; and the net produce of all duties and imposts, laid by any state on imports or exports, shall be for the use of the treasury of the United States, and all such laws shall be subject to the revision and control of the Congress. No state shall, without the consent of Congress, lay any duty of tonnage, keep troops or ships of war in time of peace, enter into any agreement or compact with another state, or with a foreign power, or engage in war, unless actually invaded or in such imminent danger as will not admit of delay.

ARTICLE II.

SECTION I. 1. The executive power shall be vested in a President of the United States of America. He shall hold his office during the term of four years, and, together with the Vice-President, chosen for the same term, be elected as follows:

Section 10. Name the first three of the powers that are altogether denied to the States. What taxing power is denied to the States, unless Congress consents? What war powers are denied to the States, unless Congress consents?

ARTICLE II. Section 1. In what officer is vested the executive power (that of enforcing the laws)? How long does he serve? What officer is elected with him? How are electors chosen? Who are not to serve as electors? How many electors

2. Each state shall appoint, in such manner as the legislature thereof may direct, a number of electors equal to the whole number of senators and representatives to which the state may be entitled in the Congress; but no senator, or representative, or person holding an office of trust or profit under the United States shall be appointed an elector.

Electors.

[3. The electors shall meet in their respective states, and vote by ballot for two persons, of whom one, at least, shall not be an inhabitant of the same state with themselves. And they shall make a list of all the persons voted for, and of the number of votes for each; which list they shall sign and certify, and transmit sealed to the seat of the government of the United States, directed to the president of the senate. The president of the senate shall, in the presence of the senate and house of representatives, open all the certificates, and the votes shall then be counted. The person having the greatest number of votes shall be the president, if such number be a majority of the whole number of electors appointed; and if there be more than one who have such majority, and have an equal number of votes, then the house of representatives shall immediately choose, by ballot, one of them for president; and if no person have a majority, then, from the five highest on the list, the said house shall, in like manner, choose the president. But, in choosing the president, the votes shall be taken by states, the representation from each state having one vote; a quorum for this purpose shall consist of a member or members from two thirds of the states, and a majority of all the states shall be necessary to a choice. In every case, after the choice of the president, the person having the greatest number of votes of the electors shall be the vice president. But, if there should remain two or more who have equal votes, the senate shall choose from them, by ballot, the vice president.]¹

Proceedings of electors,

and of house of representatives.

4. The Congress may determine the time of choosing the electors, and the day on which they shall give their votes; which day shall be the same throughout the United States.²

Time of choosing electors.

5. No person, except a natural born citizen, or a citizen of the United States at the time of the adoption of this constitution, shall be eligible to the office of president; neither shall any person be eligible to that office who shall not have attained to the age of thirty-five years, and been fourteen years a resident within the United States.

Qualifications of the president.

¹ This clause, within brackets, has been superseded by the 12th Amendment. See p. 442.

² The electors are chosen on the Tuesday next after the first Monday in November preceding the expiration of a presidential term, and vote for president and vice-president on the first Wednesday of the December following. The votes are counted and declared in Congress the second Wednesday of the following February.

are chosen by each State? How are the election-days determined? What are the qualifications of the president? When does the vice-president become president (§ 514)? How is a vacancy by the removal, death, resignation, or inability of the vice-president to be provided for (§ 912)? How is the salary of the president provided for? What does the president swear to do?

6. In case of the removal of the president from office, or of his death, resignation, or inability to discharge the powers and duties of the said office, the same shall devolve on the vice-president; and the Congress may, by law, provide for the case of removal, death, resignation, or inability, both of the president and vice-president, declaring what officer shall then act as president; and such officer shall act accordingly, until the disability be removed, or a president shall be elected.

7. The president shall, at stated times, receive for his services a compensation, which shall neither be increased nor diminished during the period for which he shall have been elected; and he shall not receive within that period any other emolument from the United States, or any of them.¹

8. Before he enter on the execution of his office, he shall take the following oath or affirmation:—

Oath. “I do solemnly swear (or affirm) that I will faithfully execute the office of President of the United States, and will, to the best of my ability, preserve, protect, and defend the Constitution of the United States.”

SEC. II. 1. The president shall be commander-in-chief of the army and navy of the United States, and of the militia of the several states, when called into the actual service of the United States; he may require the opinion, in writing, of the principal officer, in each of the executive departments, upon any subject relating to the duties of their respective officers; and he shall have power to grant reprieves and pardons for offences against the United States, except in cases of impeachment.

2. He shall have power, by and with the advice and consent of the senate, to make treaties, provided two thirds of the senators present concur; and he shall nominate, and by and with the advice and consent of the senate shall appoint, ambassadors, other public ministers and consuls, judges of the supreme court, and all other officers of the United States whose appointments are not herein otherwise provided for, and which shall be established by law. But the Congress may, by law, vest the appointment of such inferior officers as they think proper in the president alone, in the courts of law, or in the heads of departments.

3. The president shall have power to fill up all vacancies that may happen during the recess of the senate, by granting commissions which shall expire at the end of their next session.

SEC. III. 1. He shall, from time to time, give to the Congress information of the state of the Union, and recommend to their consideration

¹ The salary of the president was \$25,000 a year until 1872, when it was increased to \$50,000. That of the vice-president is \$8,000 a year.

Section 2. What rank does the president hold in the army and navy? How does he consult his cabinet (§ 299)? What is the president's pardoning power? How are treaties made? Appointments to office (§ 920)? How are vacancies filled?

Section 3. What messages does the president send to Congress? How are extra sessions of Congress called? What further power has the president?

such measures as he shall judge necessary and expedient;¹ he may, on extraordinary occasions, convene both houses, or either of them, and, in case of disagreement between them with respect to the time of adjournment, he may adjourn them to such time as he shall think proper; he shall receive ambassadors and other public ministers; he shall take care that the laws be faithfully executed; and shall commission all the officers of the United States.

SEC. IV. 1. The president, vice-president, and all civil officers of the United States, shall be removed from office on impeachment for, and conviction of, treason, bribery, or other high crimes and misdemeanors. How officers may be removed.

ARTICLE III.

SECTION I. 1. The judicial power of the United States shall be vested in one Supreme Court, and in such inferior courts as the Congress may, from time to time, ordain and establish. The judges, both of the supreme and inferior courts, shall hold their offices during good behavior; and shall, at stated times, receive for their services a compensation which shall not be diminished during their continuance in office. Judicial power, how vested.

SEC. II. 1. The judicial power shall extend to all cases in law and equity, arising under this constitution, the laws of the United States, and treaties made, or which shall be made, under their authority; to all cases affecting ambassadors, other public ministers, and consuls; to all cases of admiralty and maritime jurisdiction; to controversies to which the United States shall be a party; to controversies between two or more states; between a state and citizens of another state;² between citizens of different states; between citizens of the same state claiming lands under grants of different states; and between a state, or the citizens thereof, and foreign states, citizens, or subjects. To what cases it extends.

2. In all cases affecting ambassadors, other public ministers, and consuls, and those in which a state shall be a party, the supreme court shall have original jurisdiction. In all the other cases before mentioned, the supreme court shall have appellate jurisdiction, both as to law and fact, with such exceptions, and under such regulations, as the Congress shall make. Jurisdiction of the supreme court.

¹ The president does this in messages at the opening of each session. Washington and John Adams read their messages in person to both houses of Congress. Jefferson introduced the present practice of sending to the two houses a written message by his private secretary.

² See Amendments, Art. XI.

Section 4. What is said of impeachment (§ 851)?

ARTICLE III. Section 1. In what is the judicial power of the United States vested? How long do the judges hold office? What is said of their salaries?

Section 2. What cases may be brought before the United States courts? What cases may be begun in the Supreme Court? What cases must be begun in lower courts, with power of appeal to the Supreme Court? How and where are trials to take place? How is the place fixed when the offence is committed in a Territory or at sea?

3. The trial of all crimes, except in cases of impeachment, shall be by jury, and such trial shall be held in the state where the said crimes shall have been committed; but when not committed within any state, the trial shall be at such place or places as the Congress may by law have directed.

SEC. III. 1. Treason against the United States shall consist only in levying war against them, or in adhering to their enemies, giving them aid and comfort. No person shall be convicted of treason, unless on the testimony of two witnesses to the same overt act, or on confession in open court.

2. The Congress shall have power to declare the punishment of treason; but no attainder of treason shall work corruption of blood, or forfeiture, except during the life of the person attainted.

ARTICLE IV.

SECTION I. 1. Full faith and credit shall be given in each state to the public acts, records, and judicial proceedings of every other state. And the Congress may, by general laws, prescribe the manner in which such acts, records, and proceedings shall be proved, and the effect thereof.

SEC. II. 1. The citizens of each state shall be entitled to all privileges and immunities of citizens in the several states.

2. A person charged in any state with treason, felony, or other crime, who shall flee from justice, and be found in another state, shall, on demand of the executive authority of the state from which he fled, be delivered up, to be removed to the state having jurisdiction of the crime.¹

3. No person held to service or labor in one state, under the laws thereof, escaping into another, shall, in consequence of any law or regulation therein, be discharged from such service or labor; but shall be delivered up on claim of the party to whom such service or labor may be due.²

SEC. III. 1. New states may be admitted by the Congress into this Union; but no new states shall be formed or erected within the jurisdiction of any other state, nor any state be formed by the junction of two or more states, or parts of states, without the consent of the legislature of the states concerned, as well as of the Congress.

2. The Congress shall have power to dispose of, and make all need-

¹ See also § 518.

² See §§ 285, 591.

Section 3. In what does treason consist? How must it be proved? How is it to be punished?

ARTICLE IV. Section 1. What credit is given in each State to the records of other States? How are the records proved?

Section 2. What rights have citizens when they remove to another State? How are escaped criminals brought back to the State where the crime was committed? How were escaped slaves brought back to their owners' States?

Section 3. How are new States admitted? How are the Territories governed?

ful rules and regulations respecting, the territory or other property belonging to the United States; and nothing in this constitution shall be so construed as to prejudice any claims of the United States, or of any particular state.

Power of Congress over public lands.

SEC. IV. 1. The United States shall guarantee to every state in this Union a republican form of government, and shall protect each of them against invasion; and on application of the legislature, or of the executive (when the legislature cannot be convened), against domestic violence.

Republican government guaranteed.

ARTICLE V.

1. The Congress, whenever two thirds of both houses shall deem it necessary, shall propose amendments to this constitution; or, on the application of the legislatures of two thirds of the several states, shall call a convention for proposing amendments, which, in either case, shall be valid to all intents and purposes, as part of this constitution, when ratified by the legislatures of three fourths of the several states, or by conventions in three fourths thereof, as the one or the other mode of ratification may be proposed by the Congress; provided, that no amendment which may be made prior to the year one thousand eight hundred and eight shall in any manner affect the first and fourth clauses in the ninth section of the first article; and that no state, without its consent, shall be deprived of its equal suffrage in the senate.

Constitution, how to be amended.

ARTICLE VI.

1. All debts contracted and engagements entered into before the adoption of this constitution, shall be as valid against the United States under this constitution as under the Confederation.

Validity of debts recognized.

2. This constitution, and the laws of the United States which shall be made in pursuance thereof, and all treaties made, or which shall be made, under the authority of the United States, shall be the supreme law of the land; and the judges in every state shall be bound thereby, anything in the constitution or laws of any state to the contrary notwithstanding.

Supreme law of the land defined.

3. The senators and representatives before mentioned, and the members of the several state legislatures, and all executive and judicial officers, both of the United States and of the several states, shall be bound by oath or affirmation to support this constitution; but no religious test shall ever be required as a qualification to any office or public trust under the United States.

Oath; of whom required, and for what.

Section 4. How are the States protected?

ARTICLE V. How are Amendments proposed? How may a convention of States be called? How are Amendments ratified, so as to become part of the Constitution? Can a State be deprived of its Senators?

ARTICLE VI. Who paid the debts of the Confederation? What is the supreme law of the land? Can a State resist it? What do officers of the States and of the United States swear to do? Can any religious test be required of them?

ARTICLE VII.

1. The ratification of the conventions of nine states shall be sufficient for the establishment of this constitution between the states so ratifying the same.¹ Ratification.

Done in convention by the unanimous consent of the states present, the seventeenth day of September, in the year of our Lord one thousand seven hundred and eighty-seven, and of the independence of the United States of America the twelfth. In witness whereof, we have hereunto subscribed our names.²

GEO. WASHINGTON,

Presidt. and deputy from Virginia.

NEW HAMPSHIRE.

John Langdon,
Nicholas Gilman.

PENNSYLVANIA.

B. Franklin,
Thomas Mifflin,
Robt. Morris,
Geo: Clymer,
Tho: Fitzsimons,
Jared Ingersoll,
James Wilson,
Gouv: Morris.

VIRGINIA.

John Blair,
James Madison, Jr.

MASSACHUSETTS.
Nathaniel Gorham,
Rufus King.

NORTH CAROLINA.
Wm. Blount,
Rich'd Dobbs Spaight,
Hu. Williamson.

CONNECTICUT.

Wm. Saml. Johnson,
Roger Sherman.

DELAWARE.

Geo: Read,
Gunning Bedford, Jun'r,
John Dickinson,
Richard Bassett,
Jaco: Broom.

SOUTH CAROLINA,

J. Rutledge,
Charles Cotesworth
Pinckney,
Charles Pinckney,
Pierce Butler.

NEW YORK.
Alexander Hamilton.

NEW JERSEY.

Wil. Livingston,
David Brearley,
Wm. Paterson,
Jona. Dayton.

MARYLAND.

James M'Henry,
Dan: of St. Thos. Jenifer,
Danl. Carroll.

GEORGIA.

William Few,
Abr. Baldwin.

Attest: WILLIAM JACKSON, *Secretary.*

AMENDMENTS TO THE CONSTITUTION.

³ART. I. Congress shall make no law respecting an establishment of religion, or prohibiting the free exercise thereof; or abridging the freedom of speech, or of the press; or the right of the people peaceably to assemble and to petition the government for a redress of grievances.

¹ See § 287.

² The number of delegates chosen to the convention was sixty-five; ten did not attend; sixteen declined to sign the Constitution, or left the convention before it was ready to be signed. Thirty-nine signed.

³ The first ten amendments were proposed in 1789, and declared adopted in 1791.

ARTICLE VII. How many State ratifications were necessary to establish the Constitution? How many States finally ratified it (§ 300)?

AMENDMENTS: ARTICLE I. How is freedom of religion, speech, and the press protected?

ART. II. A well regulated militia being necessary to the security of a free state, the right of the people to keep and bear arms shall not be infringed. Militia.

ART. III. No soldier shall, in time of peace, be quartered in any house, without the consent of the owner; nor in time of war but in a manner to be prescribed by law. Soldiers.

ART. IV. The right of the people to be secure in their persons, houses, papers, and effects, against unreasonable searches and seizures, shall not be violated; and no warrants shall issue but upon probable cause, supported by oath or affirmation, and particularly describing the place to be searched, and the persons or things to be seized. Search-warrants.

ART. V. No person shall be held to answer for a capital or otherwise infamous crime, unless on a presentment or indictment of a grand jury, except in cases arising in the land or naval forces, or in the militia, when in actual service, in time of war or public danger; nor shall any person be subject for the same offence to be twice put in jeopardy of life or limb; nor shall be compelled, in any criminal case, to be a witness against himself; nor be deprived of life, liberty, or property, without due process of law; nor shall private property be taken for public use, without just compensation. Capital crimes.

ART. VI. In all criminal prosecutions the accused shall enjoy the right to a speedy and public trial, by an impartial jury of the state and district wherein the crime shall have been committed, which district shall have been previously ascertained by law, and to be informed of the nature and cause of the accusation; to be confronted with the witnesses against him; to have compulsory process for obtaining witnesses in his favor; and to have the assistance of counsel for his defence. Trial by jury.

ART. VII. In suits at common law, where the value in controversy shall exceed twenty dollars, the right of trial by jury shall be preserved; and no fact tried by a jury shall be otherwise re-examined, in any court of the United States, than according to the rules of the common law. Suits at common law.

ART. VIII. Excessive bail shall not be required, nor excessive fines imposed, nor cruel and unusual punishments inflicted. Bail, fines, etc.

ART. IX. The enumeration in the constitution, of certain rights, shall not be construed to deny or disparage others retained by the people. Certain rights.

ART. X. The powers not delegated to the United States by the constitution, nor prohibited by it to the states, are reserved to the states respectively, or to the people. Powers reserved.

ARTICLE II. How is the right to bear arms protected?

ARTICLE III. May house-owners be compelled to receive soldiers into their houses?

ARTICLE IV. How are the people protected against vexatious search-warrants?

ARTICLE V. How are the people protected against vexatious charges of crime? Against the seizure of private property?

ARTICLE VI. How are criminal trials to be conducted? What rights has the defendant?

ARTICLE VII. In what civil suits must trial by jury be maintained?

ARTICLE VIII. How are the people protected against excessive bail and fines?

ARTICLE IX. Who retain rights which are not mentioned?

ARTICLE X. Who retain rights not given to the United States, or forbidden to the States?

Judicial
power
limited.

¹ART. XI. The judicial power of the United States shall not be construed to extend to any suit in law or equity, commenced or prosecuted against one of the United States, by citizens of another state, or by citizens or subjects of any foreign state.

²ART. XII. The electors shall meet in their respective states, and vote by ballot for president and vice-president, one of whom, at least,

Amendment
to Art. II.,
Sec. 4,
respecting
election of
president
and vice-
president.

shall not be an inhabitant of the same state with themselves: they shall name in their ballots the person voted for as president, and in distinct ballots the person voted for as vice-president; and they shall make distinct lists of all persons voted for as president, and of all persons voted for as vice-president, and of the number of votes for each, which lists they shall sign and certify, and transmit, sealed, to the seat of the government of the United States, directed to the president of the senate; the president of the senate shall, in the presence of the senate and house of representatives, open all the certificates, and the votes shall then be counted; the person having the greatest number of votes for president shall be the president, if such number be a majority of the whole number of electors appointed; and if no person have such majority, then from the persons having the highest numbers, not exceeding three, on the list of those voted for as president, the house of representatives shall choose immediately, by ballot, the president. But, in choosing the president, the votes shall be taken by states, the representation from each state having one vote; a quorum for this purpose shall consist of a member or members from two thirds of the states, and a majority of all the states shall be necessary to a choice. And if the house of representatives shall not choose a president, whenever the right of choice shall devolve upon them, before the fourth day of March next following, then the vice-president shall act as president, as in the case of the death or other constitutional disability of the president. The person having the greatest number of votes as vice-president, shall be the vice-president, if such number be a majority of the whole number of electors appointed; and if no person have a majority, then from the two highest numbers on the list the senate shall choose the vice-president; a quorum for the purpose shall consist of two thirds of the whole number of senators, and a majority of the whole number shall be necessary to a choice. But no person constitutionally ineligible to the office of president, shall be eligible to that of vice-president of the United States.

No slavery.

³ART. XIII. SEC. I. Neither slavery nor involuntary servitude, except as a punishment for crime, whereof the

¹ The eleventh amendment was proposed in 1794, and declared adopted in 1798.

² The twelfth amendment was proposed in 1803, and declared adopted in 1804.

³ The thirteenth amendment was proposed and adopted in 1865 (§ 838).

ARTICLE XI. Can a State be sued by citizens of another State? By citizens of a foreign state?

ARTICLE XII. For whom do the electors vote? Can they take both from their own State? Where do they send their lists of votes? Who opens the certificates? In whose presence? What part of the electoral votes must a President have? If no one has a majority, how is the President chosen? If no President is chosen, who acts as President? What part of the electoral votes must a Vice-President have? If no one has a majority, how is the Vice-President chosen?

ARTICLE XIII. Section 1. Can slavery exist in the United States?

Section 2. Who has power to prevent it?

party shall have been duly convicted, shall exist within the United States, or any place subject to their jurisdiction.

SEC. II. Congress shall have power to enforce this article by appropriate legislation.

ART. XIV. SEC. I. All persons born or naturalized in the United States, and subject to the jurisdiction thereof, are citizens of the United States and of the state wherein they reside. No state shall make or enforce any law which shall abridge the privileges or immunities of citizens of the United States; nor shall any state deprive any person of life, liberty, or property, without due process of law, nor deny to any person within its jurisdiction the equal protection of the laws.

SEC. II. Representatives shall be apportioned among the several states according to their respective numbers, counting the whole number of persons in each state, excluding Indians not taxed. But when the right to vote at any election for the choice of electors for president and vice-president of the United States, representatives in Congress, the executive or judicial officers of a state, or the members of the legislature thereof, is denied to any of the male inhabitants of such state, being twenty-one years of age and citizens of the United States, or in any way abridged, except for participation in rebellion or other crime, the basis of representation therein shall be reduced in the proportion in which the number of such male citizens shall bear to the whole number of male citizens twenty-one years of age in such state.

SEC. III. No person shall be a senator or representative in Congress, or elector of president or vice-president, or hold any office, civil or military, under the United States, or under any state, who, having previously taken an oath as a member of Congress, or as an officer of the United States, or as a member of any state legislature, or as an executive or judicial officer of any state, to support the constitution of the United States, shall have engaged in insurrection or rebellion against the same, or given aid or comfort to the enemies thereof. But Congress may, by a vote of two thirds of each house, remove such disability.

SEC. IV. The validity of the public debt of the United States, authorized by law, including debts incurred for payment of pension and bounties for services in suppressing insurrection or rebellion, shall not be questioned. But neither the United States nor any state shall assume or pay any debt or obligation incurred in aid of insurrection or rebellion against the United States, or any claim for the loss or emancipation of any slave; but all such debts, obligations, and claims shall be held illegal and void.

SEC. V. Congress shall have power to enforce, by appropriate legislation, the provisions of this article.

¹ The fourteenth amendment was proposed in 1866, and adopted in 1868 (§ 846).

ARTICLE XIV. *Section 1.* Who are citizens of the United States? May a State abridge the privileges of citizens of the United States?

Section 2. How are representatives apportioned among the States?

Section 3. What persons are forbidden to hold office under a State or the United States? How may this disability be removed?

Section 4. How is the public debt of the United States protected? What debts are illegal and void?

Section 5. Who has power to enforce this amendment?

¹ART. XV. SEC. I. The rights of citizens of the United States to vote shall not be denied or abridged by the United States, or by any state, on account of race, color, or previous condition of servitude.

SEC. II. Congress shall have power to enforce this article by appropriate legislation.

¹ The fifteenth amendment was proposed in 1869, and adopted in 1870 (§ 872).

ARTICLE XV. *Section 1.* May the United States or a State pass laws to prevent citizens from voting, on account of race, color, or previous slavery?

Section 2. Who has power to enforce this amendment?

APPENDIX III.

FORMATION OF STATES.

1.	Delaware ratified the Constitution	Dec. 7, 1787
2.	Pennsylvania " "	Dec. 12, 1787
3.	New Jersey " "	Dec. 18, 1787
4.	Georgia " "	Jan. 2, 1788
5.	Connecticut " "	Jan. 9, 1788
6.	Massachusetts " "	Feb. 6, 1788
7.	Maryland " "	Apr. 28, 1788
8.	South Carolina " "	May 23, 1788
9.	New Hampshire " "	June 21, 1788
10.	Virginia " "	June 25, 1788
11.	New York " "	July 26, 1788
12.	North Carolina " "	Nov. 21, 1789
13.	Rhode Island " "	May 29, 1790
14.	Vermont admitted to the Union	Mar. 4, 1791
15.	Kentucky " "	June 1, 1792
16.	Tennessee " "	June 1, 1796
17.	Ohio " "	Nov. 29, 1802
18.	Louisiana " "	Apr. 30, 1812
19.	Indiana " "	Dec. 11, 1816
20.	Mississippi " "	Dec. 10, 1817
21.	Illinois " "	Dec. 3, 1818
22.	Alabama " "	Dec. 14, 1819
23.	Maine " "	Mar. 15, 1820
24.	Missouri " "	Aug. 10, 1821
25.	Arkansas " "	June 15, 1836
26.	Michigan " "	Jan. 26, 1837
27.	Florida " "	Mar. 3, 1845
28.	Texas " "	Dec. 29, 1845
29.	Iowa " "	Dec. 28, 1846
30.	Wisconsin " "	May 29, 1848
31.	California " "	Sept. 9, 1850
32.	Minnesota " "	May 11, 1858
33.	Oregon " "	Feb. 14, 1859
34.	Kansas " "	Jan. 29, 1861
35.	West Virginia " "	June 19, 1863
36.	Nevada " "	Oct. 31, 1864
37.	Nebraska " "	Mar. 1, 1867
38.	Colorado " "	Aug. 1, 1876
39.	North Dakota " "	Nov. 3, 1889
40.	South Dakota " "	Nov. 3, 1889
41.	Montana " "	Nov. 8, 1889
42.	Washington " "	Nov. 11, 1889
43.	Idaho " "	July 3, 1890
44.	Wyoming " "	July 10, 1890

APPENDIX IV.

GROWTH OF THE STATES.

[The States are arranged according to population in 1890.]

	1790	1800	1810	1820	1830	1840	1850	1860	1870	1880	1890
1. New York	340,120	589,051	959,049	1,372,111	1,918,008	2,438,921	3,097,394	3,880,735	4,382,759	5,082,871	5,997,853
2. Pennsylvania....	424,373	602,365	810,091	1,047,507	1,348,223	1,724,033	2,311,786	2,906,215	3,521,951	4,282,891	5,258,014
3. Illinois.....	.....	.....	12,282	55,102	157,445	476,183	851,470	1,711,951	2,559,891	3,077,871	3,826,351
4. Ohio.....	.....	45,365	230,760	581,295	937,903	1,519,467	1,980,329	2,339,511	2,665,260	3,198,062	3,672,316
5. Missouri.....	.....	.....	20,845	66,557	140,455	383,702	682,044	1,182,012	1,721,295	2,168,380	2,679,184
6. Massachusetts...	378,787	422,845	472,040	523,159	610,408	737,699	994,514	1,231,066	1,457,351	1,783,085	2,238,943
7. Texas.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	212,592	604,215	818,579	1,591,749	2,235,523
8. Indiana.....	.....	5,641	24,520	147,178	343,031	685,866	988,416	1,350,428	1,680,637	1,978,301	2,192,404
9. Michigan.....	.....	.....	4,762	8,765	31,639	212,267	397,654	749,113	1,184,059	1,636,937	2,093,889
10. Iowa.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	43,112	192,214	674,913	1,194,020	1,624,615	1,911,896
11. Kentucky.....	73,677	220,955	406,511	564,135	687,917	779,828	982,405	1,155,684	1,321,011	1,648,660	1,858,635
12. Georgia.....	82,548	162,686	252,433	340,985	516,823	691,392	906,185	1,037,286	1,184,109	1,542,180	1,837,353
13. Tennessee.....	35,691	105,602	261,727	422,771	681,904	829,210	1,002,717	1,109,801	1,258,520	1,542,259	1,767,518
14. Wisconsin.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	30,945	305,301	775,861	1,054,670	1,315,497	1,686,880
15. Virginia.....	747,610	880,200	974,600	1,065,116	1,211,405	1,239,767	1,421,661	1,506,318	1,225,163	1,512,565	1,655,980
16. North Carolina..	393,751	478,103	555,500	638,829	737,987	753,419	869,039	992,622	1,071,361	1,399,750	1,617,947
17. Alabama.....	.....	.....	.....	127,901	309,527	590,756	771,623	964,301	996,992	1,262,505	1,513,017
18. New Jersey.....	184,130	211,149	245,562	277,426	320,823	373,306	489,555	672,035	906,096	1,131,116	1,444,933
19. Kansas.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	107,206	364,399	996,096	1,427,096
20. Minnesota.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	6,077	172,023	439,706	780,773	1,201,826
21. Mississippi.....	.....	8,850	40,352	75,448	136,621	375,651	606,526	791,305	827,922	1,131,597	1,289,600
22. California.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	92,507	379,994	560,247	864,694	1,208,130

GROWTH OF THE STATES—Continued.

	1790	1800	1810	1820	1830	1840	1850	1860	1870	1880	1890
23. South Carolina...	249,073	345,591	415,115	502,741	581,185	594,308	608,507	703,708	705,606	995,577	1,151,149
24. Arkansas.....	.....	.....	.....	11,255	30,388	97,574	209,897	435,450	484,471	802,525	1,128,179
25. Louisiana.....	.....	.....	76,556	153,923	215,739	352,411	517,762	708,002	726,915	939,946	1,118,587
26. Nebraska.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	28,841	122,903	452,402	1,058,910
27. Maryland.....	319,728	341,548	380,546	407,350	447,040	470,019	583,034	687,049	780,891	934,943	1,042,390
28. West Virginia....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	442,014	618,457	762,704
29. Connecticut.....	237,946	251,002	261,942	275,148	297,675	309,978	370,792	460,147	537,454	622,700	746,258
30. Maine.....	96,540	151,719	228,705	298,269	399,455	501,793	583,169	628,279	626,915	618,936	661,086
31. Colorado.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	54,277	39,864	191,327	412,198
32. Florida.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	34,730	51,477	87,445	110,421	187,548	269,493	391,422
33. New Hampshire...	141,885	183,858	214,460	244,022	269,328	284,574	317,976	326,073	318,300	346,991	376,530
34. Washington.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	349,390
35. Rhode Island....	68,825	69,122	76,931	83,015	97,199	108,830	147,545	174,620	217,353	276,531	345,506
36. Vermont.....	85,425	154,465	217,895	235,966	280,652	291,948	314,120	315,098	330,551	332,422	332,422
37. South Dakota....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	13,294	52,465	90,923	174,768	328,808
38. Oregon.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	313,767
39. North Dakota....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	182,719
40. Delaware.....	59,096	64,273	72,674	72,749	76,748	78,085	91,532	112,216	125,015	146,608	168,493
41. Montana.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	132,159
42. Idaho.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	84,285
43. Wyoming.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	60,705
44. Nevada.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	6,855	42,491	62,396	45,701
District of Columbia.	.....	14,093	24,023	33,039	39,834	43,712	51,687	75,080	131,500	177,621	230,392
Other Territories....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	72,927	184,497	311,030	606,819	* 482,952
Total Population...	3,929,214	5,308,483	7,239,881	9,633,822	12,866,020	17,009,459	23,191,876	31,443,321	38,568,371	50,155,783	65,622,250

* The decrease is explained by the fact that the six most recently admitted States were Territories in 1880.

APPENDIX V. GROWTH OF THE CITIES.

	1790	1800	1810	1820	1830	1840	1850	1860	1870	1880	1890
Albany, N. Y.....	3,408	5,349	9,356	12,630	24,238	33,721	50,763	62,367	69,422	90,758	94,640
Allentown, Pa.....							21,261	28,702	53,180	78,682	104,697
Baltimore, Md.....	13,503	26,614	46,555	62,738	80,625	134,379	169,054	212,418	267,354	332,313	434,151
Boston, Mass.....	18,038	24,027	32,250	43,298	61,392	93,383	136,881	177,812	250,526	362,839	446,507
Brooklyn, N. Y.....	1,603	3,298	4,402	7,175	12,042	36,233	96,838	266,661	396,099	566,663	806,343
Buffalo, N. Y.....			1,508	2,005	8,653	18,213	42,261	81,129	117,714	155,134	251,477
Cambridge, Mass.....	2,115	2,453	2,323	3,295	6,078	8,409	15,215	26,960	37,634	52,669	69,837
Chicago, Ill.....		750		9,614	24,831	4,479	29,963	109,290	298,977	503,185	1,098,576
Cincinnati, O.....						46,338	115,436	161,044	216,239	255,139	296,309
Cleveland, O.....		547		606	1,076	6,071	17,034	43,417	92,829	160,146	261,546
Columbus, O.....				1,450	2,437	6,048	17,822	48,629	31,274	51,647	90,328
Detroit, Mich.....		770		1,422	2,222	9,102	21,019	45,619	79,577	116,340	205,669
Indianapolis, Ind.....					1,924	2,692	8,034	18,611	48,244	75,056	107,445
Jersey City, N. J.....						3,072	6,856	29,226	82,546	120,722	163,987
Kansas City, Mo.....								4,418	32,260	55,785	132,416
Louisville, Ky.....	200	359	1,357	4,012	10,352	21,210	43,194	68,033	100,753	129,578	161,005
Lowell, Mass.....					6,474	20,706	33,383	36,827	40,928	59,475	77,605
Milwaukee, Wis.....						1,700	29,061	45,246	71,440	115,587	203,979
Newark, N. J.....				6,507	10,953	17,290	38,894	71,914	105,059	136,508	181,518
New Haven, Conn.....		4,019	5,772	7,147	10,180	14,890	20,345	39,267	50,840	62,882	81,451
New Orleans, La.....	5,500	8,500	17,242	27,176	46,310	102,193	116,375	168,675	191,418	216,090	241,995
New York City.....	33,131	60,489	96,373	123,706	203,007	312,710	515,547	805,651	942,292	1,206,299	1,513,501
Paterson, N. J.....						7,596	11,334	19,583	32,579	51,031	78,258
Philadelphia, Pa.....	42,520	70,287	96,664	108,116	167,188	258,037	390,045	562,529	674,022	847,170	1,044,894
Pittsburgh, Pa.....		1,565	4,768	7,248	12,542	21,115	46,601	69,217	86,076	156,369	238,473
Providence, R. I.....	6,380	7,614	10,071	11,767	16,832	23,171	41,513	50,666	68,904	104,857	132,043
Richmond, Va.....	3,761	5,537	9,735	12,046	16,060	20,153	27,570	37,910	51,038	63,600	80,828
Rochester, N. Y.....				1,502	9,269	20,191	36,403	48,204	62,386	89,366	133,327
St. Louis, Mo.....		1,600	1,600	4,598	5,852	16,469	36,476	56,802	81,064	850,518	450,245
San Francisco, Cal.....						500	34,776	56,802	149,473	233,959	297,990
Syracuse, N. Y.....				1,814	6,929	11,014	22,271	28,119	43,051	51,792	88,387
Tolledo, O.....						1,222	3,829	13,768	31,584	50,137	82,652
Troy, N. Y.....			4,926	5,264	11,605	19,334	28,785	33,232	40,465	56,747	60,605
Washington, D. C.....		3,210	8,208	13,247	18,827	23,364	40,001	61,122	109,199	147,293	229,796
Worcester, Mass.....		2,095	2,577	2,969	4,172	7,497	17,049	24,960	41,105	58,291	84,536

APPENDIX VI.

EXTRACTS FROM WASHINGTON'S FAREWELL ADDRESS TO THE AMERICAN PEOPLE:

SEPT. 17, 1796.

FRIENDS AND FELLOW-CITIZENS:—The period for a new election of a citizen to administer the executive government of the United States being not far distant, it appears to me proper that I should now apprise you of the resolution which I have formed, to decline being considered among the number of those out of whom a choice is to be made. In looking forward to the moment which is intended to terminate my public life, my feelings do not permit me to suspend the deep acknowledgment of that debt of gratitude which I owe to my beloved country for the many honors it has conferred upon me; still more for the steadfast confidence with which it has supported me, and for the opportunities I have thence enjoyed of manifesting my attachment by services faithful and persevering, though in usefulness unequal to my zeal. If benefits have resulted to our country from these services, let it always be remembered to your praise, and as an instructive example in our annals, that the constancy of your support was the essential prop of the efforts, and of the plans by which they were effected. Here, perhaps, I ought to stop; but solicitude for your welfare urges me to offer to your solemn contemplation, and to recommend to your frequent review, some sentiments which appear to me all-important to your felicity as a people.

Interwoven as is the love of liberty with every ligament of your hearts, no recommendation of mine is necessary to confirm the attachment. The unity of government, which constitutes you one people, is also now dear to you. It is justly so; for it is a main pillar in the edifice of your real independence—the support of your tranquillity at home, your peace abroad, of your safety, of your prosperity, of that very liberty which you so highly prize. While, then, every part of our country feels an interest in the Union, all the parts combined cannot fail to find greater strength, greater resource, greater security from external danger, a less frequent interruption of their peace by foreign nations, and an exemption from wars between themselves. Hence, likewise, they will avoid the necessity of those overgrown military establishments, which are particularly hostile to republican liberty. In this sense it is that your union ought to be considered as the main prop of your liberty.

Of all the dispositions and habits which lead to political prosperity, religion and morality are indispensable supports. In vain would that

man claim the tribute of patriotism, who should labor to subvert these great pillars of human happiness. The mere politician, equally with the pious man, ought to respect and to cherish them.

Promote, as an object of primary importance, institutions for the general diffusion of knowledge. In proportion as the structure of a government gives force to public opinion, it is essential that public opinion should be enlightened.

As a very important source of strength and security, cherish public credit. One method of preserving it is to use it as sparingly as possible, avoiding the accumulation of debt, not only by shunning occasions of expense, but by vigorous exertions in time of peace to discharge the debts which unavoidable wars may have occasioned.

The great rule of conduct for us, in regard to foreign nations, is in extending our commercial relations, to have with them as little *political* connection as possible. So far as we have already formed engagements, let them be fulfilled with perfect good faith. Here let us stop. It is our true policy to steer clear of permanent alliances with any portion of the foreign world.

Though, in reviewing the incidents of my administration, I am unconscious of intentional errors, I am nevertheless too sensible of my defects not to think it probable that I may have committed many errors. Whatever they may be, I fervently beseech the Almighty to avert or mitigate the evils to which they may tend. I shall also carry with me the hope that my country will never cease to view them with indulgence; and that, after forty-five years of my life dedicated to its service with an upright zeal, the faults of incompetent abilities will be consigned to oblivion, as myself must soon be to the mansions of rest. Relying on its kindness, and actuated by that fervent love towards it which is so natural to a man who views in it the native soil of himself and his progenitors for several generations, I anticipate with pleasing expectation that retreat in which I promise myself to realize the sweet enjoyment of partaking, in the midst of my fellow-citizens, the benign influence of good laws under a free government—the ever favorite object of my heart, and the happy reward, as I trust, of our mutual cares, labors, and dangers.

G. WASHINGTON.

UNITED STATES, 17th September, 1796.

[The above is but a small portion of this celebrated address, and has been abbreviated with the purpose of enabling the pupil to understand something of Washington's advice to him.]

APPENDIX VII.

A SELECT BIBLIOGRAPHY OF WORKS ON AMERICAN HISTORY.

GENERAL WORKS.

I. HISTORIES OF THE NATION AND OF THE STATES.

(a) *General Works.*

- Bancroft** : History of the United States.
Bryant and Gay : History of the United States.
Gilman : History of the American People.
Green, J. R. : Larger History of the English People.
Higginson : Larger History of the United States.
Hildreth : History of the United States.
Johnston : The United States, its History and Constitution.
Pitkin : A Political and Civil History of the United States.
Ridpath : A Popular History of the United States.
Schouler : History of the United States under the Constitution.
Smith, Goldwin : The United States : an outline of political history.
Tucker : History of the United States.
Winsor : Narrative and Critical History of North America.

(b) *State Histories.*

- Abbott** : History of Maine.
Arnold : History of Rhode Island.
Barrows : History of Oregon.
Bozman : History of Maryland.
Brewer : History of Alabama.
Brown : History of Maryland.
Cable : Creoles of Louisiana.
Campbell : History of Virginia.
Carr : History of Missouri.
Cooke : History of the People of Virginia.
Cooley : History of Michigan.
Davidson : History of Illinois.
Davis and Durrie : History of Missouri.

Dillon : History of Indiana.
Dunlap : History of the New Netherlands.
Dunn : History of Indiana.
Edwards : History of Illinois.
Gayarré : History of Louisiana.
Goodrich and Tuttle : History of Indiana.
Green : History of Rhode Island.
Holloway : History of Kansas.
Johnston : History of Connecticut.
King : History of Ohio.
Mason : History of Illinois.
Onderdonk : History of Maryland.
Parkman : History of California.
Ramsdell : History of New York.
Raum : History of New Jersey.
Roberts : History of New York.
Royce : History of California.
Scott : History of New Jersey.
Shaler : History of Kentucky.
Simms : History of South Carolina.
Stevens, W. B. : History of Georgia.
Sypher and Apgar : History of New Jersey.
Trumbull : The True Blue Laws and the False. (Conn.)
Vincent : History of Delaware.
Watson : Annals of Philadelphia and Pennsylvania.
Williamson : History of Maine.

II. GOVERNMENT AND POLITICS.

Bancroft : History of the Formation of the Constitution.
Bryce : The American Commonwealth.
Burgess : Political Science and Constitutional Law.
Curtis, G. F. : History of the Constitution of the United States.
Ellis : Sources of the Constitution of the United States.
Fiske : American Political Ideas ; Civil Government in the United States.
von Holst : Constitutional History of the United States.
Jameson : Essays on the Constitutional History of the United States.
Johnston : History of American Politics.
Lowell, A. L. : Essays in Government.
Macy : Our Government.
Madison : The Madison Papers.
Nordhoff : Politics for Young Americans.
Stickney : A True Republic ; Democratic Government.
de Tocqueville : Democracy in America.
Wilson, W. : The State, Elements of Historical and Practical Politics ; Congressional Government ; An Old Master and other Political Essays.

III. WORKS OF REFERENCE.

Adams, C. K. : Manual of Historical Literature. (Complete Bibliography.)

- Appleton : Annual Encyclopædia.
 Bolles : Financial History of the United States.
 Census Reports.
 Congressional Record.
 Dunbar : Laws relating to Currency and Finance.
 Encyclopædia Britannica.
 Johns Hopkins University Studies in Historical and Political Science.
 Lator : Encyclopædia of Political Science, Political Economy, and United States History.
 Poole : Index to Periodical Literature (for a bibliography of magazine historical literature).
 Preston : Documents illustrative of American History.
 Sparks : American Biography. (25 vols.)
 Spofford : American Almanac.

SPECIAL PERIODS.

IV. DISCOVERY AND SETTLEMENT : 1492-1775.

- Adams, C. K. : Christopher Columbus.
 Anderson : America not discovered by Columbus, with a Sketch of the Norsemen.
 Browne : George and Cecilus Calvert, Barons Baltimore of Baltimore.
 Bruce : James Edward Oglethorpe.
 Campbell : History of the Puritans in Holland, England, and America.
 Coffin : Old Times in the Colonies.
 Doyle : The English Colonies in America, 3 vols. (previous to the Declaration of Independence).
 Drake : The Making of New England.
 Fisher : The Colonial Era.
 Fiske : Discovery and Spanish Conquest of America ; Beginnings of New England.
 Gammell : Life of Roger Williams.
 Help : The Spanish Conquest in America.
 Irving : Life of Columbus.
 Lodge : A Short History of the English Colonies in America.
 Palfrey : History of New England.
 Parkman : Discovery of the North West ; Pioneers of France ; Jesuits in North America ; Conspiracy of Pontiac ; Montcalm and Wolfe.
 Prescott : Conquest of Mexico ; Conquest of Peru ; Ferdinand and Isabella.
 Scott : English Colonies in America.
 Scudder : Men and Manners in America one hundred years ago.
 Sloane : The French War and the Revolution.
 Thwaite : The Colonies.
 Tuckerman : Peter Stuyvesant.
 Twitchell : John Winthrop
 Weeden : Economic and Social History of New England.

V. CONSOLIDATION AND EXPANSION: 1795-1861.

- Adams, C. F.:** Life of Charles Francis Adams.
Adams, Henry: History of the United States (1804-1817); John Randolph; Public Debts.
Adams, John: Works of John Adams.
Armstrong: Life of Anthony Wayne.
Bancroft, H. H.: History of the Pacific States of North America.
Benton: Thirty Years' View.
Bishop: History of American Manufactures.
Bogart: Daniel Boone and the Hunters of Kentucky.
Bowen: Life of Baron Steuben.
Bruce: Sam Houston.
Calhoun: Works of John C. Calhoun.
Carrington: Battles of the Revolution.
Chalmers: Revolt of the American Colonies.
Clark: Anti-Slavery Days.
Coffin: Building the Nation.
Colton: Private Correspondence of Henry Clay.
Cooper: Naval History of the United States.
Curtis, G. T.: Life of Daniel Webster.
Dwight: History of the Hartford Convention.
Everett: Life of Washington.
Fiske: Critical Period of American History; War of Independence · The American Revolution.
Franklin: Memoirs of Benjamin Franklin.
Frothingham: History of the Siege of Boston; Rise of the Republic.
Gardner: Anecdotes of the Revolution.
Garrison: Life of William Lloyd Garrison.
Gay: James Madison.
Gilman: James Monroe.
Goggeshall: History of American Privateers.
Green: Life of Nathaniel Green.
Gunnison: The Mormons, or Latter-day Saints.
Hale: Franklin in France.
Hammond: History of Political Parties in the State of New York.
Hart: The Formation of the Union.
Headley: Washington and his Generals.
von Holst: John C. Calhoun.
Hosmer: Samuel Adams.
Ingersoll: Historical Sketch of the Second War between the United States and Great Britain.
Irving: Life of Washington.
Jay, Wm.: Review of the Mexican War.
Jefferson: Works of Thomas Jefferson.
Johnston, H. P.: The Yorktown Campaign.
Laughlin: History of Bimetallism in the United States.
Livermore: The War with Mexico reviewed.
Lodge: Alexander Hamilton; Daniel Webster; George Washington.
Lossing: Pictorial Field Book of the Revolution.
Lyman: Diplomacy of the United States.

- Mackenzie** : Lives of Perry and Decatur.
McLaughlin : Lewis Cass.
McMaster : History of the People of the United States.
Magruder : John Marshall.
Mansfield : History of the Mexican War.
Morse : John Quincy Adams ; Thomas Jefferson : John Adams ; Benjamin Franklin.
Parton : Life of Thomas Jefferson.
Peck : Wyoming, its History.
Pellow : John Jay.
Perry : Political Economy. (Free Trade.)
Ramsey : A Succinct Review of the American Contest (Revolution).
Rives : History of the Life and Times of James Madison.
Roosevelt : Naval History of the War of 1812 ; Winning of the West ; Thomas H. Benton ; Gouverneur Morris.
Sabine : Biographical Sketches of Loyalists of the American Revolution.
Schouler : Thomas Jefferson.
Scott : Autobiography of General Winfield Scott.
Schurz : Henry Clay.
Shepard : Martin Van Buren
Sumner, W. G. : Andrew Jackson ; Robert Morris ; Alexander Hamilton.
Taussig : Tariff History of the United States.
Thompson : National Economy (Protection).
Thurston : Robert Fulton.
Trescott : Diplomacy of the Revolution.
Tucker : Origin, Rise, and Progress of Mormonism.
Tylor : Patrick Henry.
Walker : The Adoption of the Constitution and National Consolidation.
Webster : Works of Daniel Webster.
Weems : Life of Marion.
Winsor : Handbook of the American Revolution.

VI. FROM THE CIVIL WAR TO THE PRESENT TIME. 1861-1894.

- Abbott** : Prison Life at the South.
Adams, C. F. : Railroads, their Origin and Problem
Alexander : Railway Practice.
Allen : Governor Chamberlain's Administration in South Carolina.
Andrews : The South since the War.
Badeau : Grant in Peace.
Beaman : Alabama Claims.
Botts : The Great Rebellion.
Burgess : From the Conclusion of Peace in 1815 to the end of Reconstruction.
Callender : Thaddeus Stevens, Commoner.
Century Company's War Book.
Cooke : Stonewall Jackson.
Curtis, G. T. : Life of James Buchanan.
Cushing : Treaty of Washington.

- Dabney** : Life and Campaigns of General Thomas J. Jackson.
Davis : Rise and Fall of the Confederate Government.
Dawes : Charles Sumner.
Dodge : A Bird's-eye View of the Civil War.
Draper : History of the American Civil War.
George : Protection or Free Trade (Free Trade).
Grant : Personal Memoirs of U. S. Grant.
Hadley : Railroad Transportation.
Hart : Salmon P. Chase.
Headley : Farragut and our Naval Commanders.
Johnston, J. E. : Narrative of Military Operations.
Kelley : The Old South and the New.
Lothrop : William H. Seward.
McClellan : McClellan's Own Story.
McPherson : Political History of the Rebellion.
Moore : The Rebellion Record.
Morse : Abraham Lincoln.
Nicolay and Hay : Abraham Lincoln.
Paris, Comte de : History of the Civil War.
Pollard : Life of Jefferson Davis ; The Lost Cause.
Porter : Memoirs of Commodore Porter.
Seward : Chinese Immigration.
Sherman : Memoirs of General W. T. Sherman.
Schuckers : Life and Public Services of Salmon Portland Chase
Soley : The Blockade and the Cruisers.
Spencer : Narrative of Andersonville.
Stephens, Alexander : War between the States.
Still : The Underground Railroad.
Storey : Charles Sumner.
Sumner, Charles : Works of Charles Sumner.
Sumner, W. G. : Protection in the United States.
Wilson, H. : Rise and Fall of the Slave Power.
Wilson, W. : Division and Reunion.

INDEX.



PRONOUNCING INDEX.

NOTE.—The references are to Sections, not to Pages.

St. and *Fort* are considered parts of the reference name: *de* and *von* are not. Thus, look for *St. Louis* under the letter *S*; for *Fort Sumter* under *F*; for *de Grasse* under *G*; for *von Steuben* under *S*.

The pronunciation is indicated in all fairly doubtful cases, and the characters which indicate it have been made as few and simple as possible. Pronounce *ā* as in *mate*, *ē* as in *mete*, *i* as in *mite*, *ō* as in *mote*, *ū* as in *mute*; *ā* as in *bag*, *ē* as in *beg*, *i* as in *big*, *ō* as in *bog*, *ū* as in *bug*; *a* with the obscure sound of *a* in *idea*; *ah* as *a* in *father*; *aw* as in *saw*; *ow* as in *cow*; *oo* as in *foot*; *ch* as in *chamber*; *g* always hard, as in *get*, *j* being used for the soft sound of *g*. Italian *e* is silent, but shows that the vowel preceding it in the same syllable is long. In French names, the capital letters *H* and *R* are to be pronounced more forcibly than we are accustomed to pronounce them in English. *Ang* is the French nasal sound: it is uttered very much as spelled, except that it stops before the sound of *ng* is quite completed. Letters not mentioned here, or unmarked, are to be pronounced as they would be in an English word.

ABOLITIONISTS, their first appearance, 470; their use of the mails, 504; attacks on them, 505; their political action, 511, 532, 578; their increase of numbers, 591; their final success, 724, 838.

Acadia (*a-kā'dī-a*), its settlement by de Monts, 20; conquest by the English, 75, 149.

Acquisitions of territory, 574; in square miles, 831.

Adams, C. F., nominated for Vice-President, 579.

Adams, John, a Massachusetts leader, 172; in the second Continental Congress, 194; connection with the Declaration of Independence, 207, 439; elected Vice-President, 288, 305; President, 312; biography, 319; his defeat in 1800, 324; his death, 439; his career, 446.

Adams, John Quincy, his connection with the Monroe Doctrine, 427; elected President, 433; biography, 435; connection with the American system, 441; defeated in 1828, 445; his career, 446; connection with the Smithsonian Institution, 538; with the Abolitionists, 593.

Adams, Samuel, a Massachusetts leader, 172; in the second Continental Congress, 194; an Anti-Federalist leader, 286.

Africa, early exploration in, 5, 13.

Agricultural machinery, its poor condition in 1790; invention of the mowing and reaping machine, 336, 455; modern condition, 629.

Alabama (*al-a-bah'ma*) unsettled in 1812, 396; admission and history, 421; secession, 659; re-conquest, 801; readmission, 845 (see Appendix IV.).

Alabama Claims, the, their origin, 675, 727; their settlement, 854-6.

Alabama, the, escape of, 727; work of, 759; destroyed by the *Kearsarge*, 799; after-consequences, 854-6.

Alarçon (*ah-laR'sone*) discovers the Colorado, 17.

Alaska bought from Russia, 544, 831.

Albany (*awl'ba-nī*), N. Y., early Dutch settlement, 114; called Fort Orange, 121; threatened by Burgoyne, 220; connected with Buffalo by the Erie Canal, 430 (see Appendix V.).

Albany Plan of Union, the, rejected by both crown and colonies, 148.

Albemarle (*āl-bē-marl'*) Colony, the, a Virginian settlement in North Carolina, 97.

Albemarle Sound, N. C., limit of the Cabot voyage, 11.

Albemarle, the, sunk by a torpedo, 786.

Alert, the, captured by the *Essex*, 367.

Alexandria (*āl-egz-an'drī-a*), Va., held by the Union forces, 677.

Algiers (*al-jeerz'*), one of the Barbary

☞ The references are to Sections, not to pages.

Algiers—Continued.

States, 339; compelled to cease piracy, 412.

Algonquins (al-gon'kwinz), an Indian race, 3.

Alien Laws, the, their passage, 323.

Alleghany (al'lē-gā-nī) Mountains, the, their location, 120; serve as a western boundary to the English colonies, 138, 274; passed by emigration after 1790, 292.

Allen, Ethan, captures Ticonderoga, 200.

Allen, Capt. W. H., captured in the *Argus*, 373.

Altamaha (al-ta-ma-haw') River, the, Oglethorpe's battle near, 110.

Alton, Ill., riot at, 506.

Ambrister (am'bris-ter), Robert C., executed by Jackson, 418.

Amendments to the Constitution, how Amendments are made, 285; object of the first ten Amendments, 287; adoption of the first ten Amendments, 300; adoption of the 12th Amendment, 298, 324; of the 13th Amendment, 838; of the 14th Amendment, 846; of the 15th Amendment, 872.

America, origin of the name, 9.

America, the, presented to France, 244.

American Party, the, its origin, 612; its defeat and disappearance, 623.

American System, the, Clay and Adams unite protective tariff and internal improvements under this title, 441; opposed by the South, 442; by Jackson, 479; adopted by the Whigs, 480; overthrown until 1861 (see Protection), 540.

Amidas (am'id-as), Philip, one of Raleigh's captains, 23.

Anæsthetics, their use in surgery, 536.

Anarchists, 920.

Anderson, Major Robert, in command at Fort Sumter, 664.

Andersonville, Ga., Prison, 799.

André (an'drī), Major John, captured and executed as a spy, 239.

Andros (an'drose), Sir Edmund, his proceedings at Hartford, 65; object of his appointment as governor of New England, 74; his removal, 74; appointed governor of Virginia, 74.

Annapolis (an-nap'ō-lis), Md., founded, 90; Washington surrenders his commission at, 265; first attempt to hold a Federal Convention at, 279; establishment of the Naval School at, 538.

Annapolis, N. S., capture of, 76.

Anne (an), Queen, 75.

Anthracite coal discovered in Pennsylvania in 1791, 336; shipped to Philadelphia in 1806, 336; little used until 1830, 336; used on railroads and steamboats about 1835, 453; general use, 528.

Antietam (an-te'tam), battle of, 721.

Anti-Federal Party, the, its origin, 286; defeat and disappearance, 304.

Anti-Masons, their origin, 482.

Anti-Nebraska Men, the first name of the Republican Party of 1856, 616.

Anti-renters, their purposes, 531.

Antislavery Society, the, its origin, 470 (see Abolitionists).

Appomattox (ap-po-mat'tocks) River, the, Lee's line of retreat, 807.

Appomattox Court-house, Lee's surrender at, 807.

Arabian, the, the first American locomotive, 450.

Arbuthnot (ar'būth-not), Alexander, executed by Jackson, 418.

Argus, the, her successful cruise, 373; captured by the *Pelican*, 373.

Arkansas (ar'kan-saw) slave territory, 426; admission and history, 461; secession, 674; re-conquest, 740; readmission, 845; disorders in, 875 (see Appendix IV.).

Arkansas Post, settlement at, 461; capture of, 735.

Arkansas, the, captured by the Union fleet, 709.

Army, the; formation of an American army, 194; difficulties in the way, 198; flag and uniform, 198; disbanded without just treatment, 265; government of the army, 282; command-in-chief, 283; a new army begun in 1798, 321; inefficiency of the army in 1812, 352; reorganization in 1813, 365; success of the army in 1814, 392; the army of the Southwest, 397; capture of the regular army in the South, 663; formation of a volunteer army, 677; support by Congress, 680; care of the army, 755; reinforcement of the, 756, 796; numbers of the army, 821; losses, 822; disbandment of the army, 827; the army in time of peace, 956.

Arnold, Benedict, his march through Maine and retreat from Quebec, 201; beats the British back from Fort Schuyler, 221; his daring at Saratoga, 224; his treason, 239; ravages Virginia, 253; butchers the garrison at New London, 260.

Arthur, Chester A., elected Vice-President, 906; biography, 908; succeeds to the Presidency at Garfield's death, 909.


Articles of Association put forth by the Continental Congress, 180.

Articles of Confederation ratified by the States, 271; found to be worthless, 276; the impossibility of amending them, 278; succeeded by the Constitution, 288.

Assemblies the real governing power of the colonies, 45, 165; that of Virginia the first, 80; take sides against the Parliament, 165, 175; the people side with the assemblies, 175.

Astor Library, 640.

Atlanta, Ga., not on the map in 1830, 458; held by Johnston, 760, 774; captured by Sherman, 777; burned by Sherman, 780; holds a Cotton Exposition, 915.

 The references are to Sections, not to pages.

Atlanta, the, destroyed by the *Wee-hawken*, 750.

Atlantic telegraph, the, its effect on the security of criminals, 518; the failure to lay it, 641; the final success, 830.

Augusta (*aw-gus-ta*), Ga., founded, 108; captured by the British, 245.

Austria, the, the Koszta dispute with, 605.

Aton, the, taken by the *Wasp*, 375.

Ayllon (*ay-lon*), 10.

Azores (*a-zorz*) Islands, the, Gosnold's route by, 24; Reid's battle in, 377.

BACON, NATHANIEL, his rebellion and death, 86.

Bahama (*ba-hā'ma*) Islands, the, discovered by Columbus, 7.

Bainbridge (*bane'brij*), Capt. William, in command of the *Constitution*, 369.

Baker, E. D., killed at Ball's Bluff, 683.

Ballot Reform, 930.

Ball's Bluff, battle of, 683.

Baltimore (*baw'l-ti-more*), Lord, founder of Maryland, 89.

Baltimore, Md., founded, 90; seat of Congress in 1776, 212; beats off the British, 388; riot in, 671 (see Appendix V.).

Bancroft, George, the historian, 466.

Bank of the United States, first one chartered, 301; charter expires, 411; second chartered, 411; Jackson attacks it, 476; vetoes the renewal of the charter, 477; charter expires, 477; the Whigs support the bank, 480; endeavor to charter a third, but fail, 515.

Banks, Wildcat, 496.

Banks, Gen. Nathaniel P., beaten by Jackson, 717; in command in Louisiana, 734; fails in his Red River expedition, 785.

Barbadoes (*bar-bā'doz*), colonis's from Barbadoes in Carolina, 97.

Barbary States, the, professional pirates, 339; beaten into peace by the American navy, 340; brought to terms, 412.

Barclay, Capt. R. H., commands the British fleet on Lake Erie, 382.

Barlow, Arthur, one of Raleigh's captains, 23.

Baton Rouge (*bat'n-roozh*), La., 709.

Baum (*bowm*), Lieut.-Col., commands the British at Bennington, 221.

Beauregard (*bo-re-gard*), Gen. P. G. T., commands at Manassas Junction, 681; at Corinth, 695.

Bell, John, nominated for the Presidency, 651.

Bemis's Heights, battle of, 223.

Bennington, battle of, 221.

Bering Sea seal fisheries, 943.

Berkeley (*berk'li*), Gov. William, suppresses Bacon's rebellion, 86.

Berkeley, Lord John, one of the proprietors of New Jersey, 122.

Berlin Decree of Napoleon, 341.

Bidwell, John, nominated for President, 945.

Big Bethel, skirmish of, 677.

Big Horn River, Indian battle at, 868.

Biloxi (*be-loks'i*), Miss., settled, 141.

Black Hawk, his war against the whites, 471.

Bladensburgh (*blā'dnz-burg*), battle of, 387.

Blaine, James Gillespie, nominated for President, 917; defeated, 917.

Blair, Francis P., nominated for Vice-President, but defeated, 852.

Blakely (*blake'li*), Capt. J., in command of the *Wasp*, 375.

Blockade (of 1813), 372, 384; (of 1861), 673, 702.

Bonanzas, 800.

Bonaparte, Napoleon, makes peace with the United States, 322; sells Louisiana to the United States, 332; forbids American commerce with Europe, 341; fraudulently arrays the United States against Great Britain, 349; is sent to Elba, 399.

Bonds, 164, 903, 916.

Bonhomme Richard (*bo-nom're-shaR'*), the, captures the *Serapis*, 242.

Boone, Daniel, settles in Kentucky, 160.

Boonesborough, Ky., settled, 302.

Booth, John Wilkes, the murderer of President Lincoln, 812.

Border States, the, their course of action, 674.

Boston, Mass., founded, 53; rebellious proceedings in, 174, 177; the attempt to punish them, 178; siege of, 186; evacuation of, 199; population in 1790, 289; great fire in, 867 (see Appendix V.).

Boston Massacre, the, 174.

Boston Port Bill, the, 178.

Boston Tea-party, the, 177.

Boundaries, colonial and State, Western boundary at first supposed to be the Pacific Ocean, 138; after 1763 the Mississippi, 272; really the Alleghanies, 274; Western boundaries fixed, 275.

Boundaries, United States, in 1783, 264; the northeast boundary, 509; the northern boundary, 519; the northwest boundary, 520, 544, 857; the southwest boundary, 546; changes produced by the Mexican war, 552, 574 (see Acquisitions of Territory).

Bowling (*bole'ing*) Green, Ky., occupied by the Confederates, 689.

Boxer, the, captured by the *Enterprise*, 371.

Braddock, General William, defeated and killed near Fort Duquesne, 149.

Bradford, William, a Massachusetts leader, 51.

Bragg, Gen. Braxton, his raid into Kentucky, 696; fights a battle at Murfreesboro, 697; evacuates Chattanooga, 742; fights at Chickamauga, 743; besieges Chattanooga, 744; beaten back to Dalton by Grant, and removed, 746-7.

Brandywine Creek, battle on, 217.

Brant, Joseph, an Indian chief in the British service, 233.

☞ The references are to Sections, not to pages.

Brazil (bra-zeel'), 793.

Breckinridge, John C., elected Vice-President, 623; biography, 626; defeated for the Presidency, 654.

Breed's Hill, battle on, 195.

Breton (brit'n), Cape, discovered by Cabot, 11; occupied by the French, 76; by the English, 151, 158.

Breyman (brä'man), Col., in command of the British in the second fight at Bennington, 221.

Briar Creek, Ga., skirmish at, 246.

Bridges, early lack of, 136, 291; modern suspension, 603.

Bridgewater, battle of, 394. [204.

Bristol, R. I., destroyed by the British, Brock, Gen. Isaac, captures Detroit and the American garrison, 357.

Broke, Capt. P. V., in command of the *Shannon*, 373.

Brocklyn, N. Y., a ferry station, 121; captured by the British, 210 (see Appendix V.).

Brooks, John A., nominated for Vice-President, 925.

Brooks, P. S., assaults Sumner, 622.

Brown, B. Gratz, nominated for Vice-President, but defeated, 881.

Brown, Gen. Jacob, in command at Sackett's Harbor, 363; reorganizes the army, 365; in command at Chippewa, 393; wounded, 394; returns to command, 395.

Brown, John, his raid on Harper's Ferry and execution, 650.

Brownsville, Tex., captured by Taylor, 546; by the Union forces, 751.

Brown University, foundation of, 190.

Bryant, William Cullen, his literary work, 465.

Buccaneers in New York, 118.

Buchanan (bük-an'an), James, elected President, 623; biography, 626.

Buchanan, Franklin, in command of the *Merrimac* and of the *Tennessee*, 789.

Buel (bü'el), Gen. Don Carlos, in command in Kentucky, 689; reinforces Grant, 694; fights a battle at Perryville, 696.

Buena Vista (bwā'nah vees'tah), battle of, 558-9.

Buffalo, N. Y., not on the map in 1812, 354; benefited by the War of 1812, 408; by the Erie Canal, 430 (see Appendix V.).

Bull Run, battle of, 681.

Bull Run, second battle of, 719.

Bunker Hill, battle of, 195-7.

Burgoyne (bur-goin'), Gen. John, arrives at Boston, 195; organizes an army in Canada for the invasion of New York, 219; surrenders to Gates at Saratoga, 223.

Burlington, N. J., settlement of, 123.

Burnside, Gen. Ambrose E., in command of the Army of the Potomac, 721; defeated at Fredericksburg, 723; in command at Knoxville, 744.

Burr, Aaron, elected Vice-President, 324; shoots Hamilton, 269; not re-elected Vice-President, 337; his Mississippi expedition, 338.

Burrows, Lieut. W., in command of the *Enterprise*, 371.

Butler, Gen. Benj. F., in command at Hatteras Inlet, 685; at New Orleans, 707; removed, 734; sent to attack Petersburg, 765; "bottled up," 768; his Fort Fisher expedition, 787; his treatment of runaway slaves, 835; nominated for President, but defeated, 917.

Butler, John, a Tory leader, 233.

Butler, Wm. Orlando, nominated for Vice-President, 579.

CABAL, the Conway, 224.

Cabinet, the, meaning of the term, 299.

Cable railroads, 894.

Cabots (kab'ots), the, their discoveries, 11.

Cabrillo (kah-breel'yo), a Spanish explorer, 16.

Cairo (kā'ro), Ill., occupied by Grant, 689.

Calhoun (käl-hoon'), John C., elected Vice-President, 433; re-elected, 445; biography, 481; not re-elected Vice-President, 483; his doctrine of nullification, 487; his death, 593.

California, early explorations in, 14; belongs to Mexico, 552; seized by the American forces, 553; transferred to the United States, 572-3; discovery of gold in, 580-1; disorders in, 585; difficulties of admission, 587; admission as a State, 589; history, 590.

Calvert, Cecil (sis'il kol'vert), receives a patent for the colony of Maryland, 89.

Calvert, Sir George, plans a colony in America, 89.

Calvert, Leonard, leads the settlement of Maryland, 90.

Cambridge (kame'brij), Mass., settlement of, 53; Harvard College founded at, 79; headquarters of the American army, 198 (see Appendix V.).

Camden, battle of, 250.


Canada, settled by the French, 20, 30; early explorations by the French, 139; conquered by the British, 155; transferred to Great Britain, 158; attacked by the American forces, 200; the Americans are driven out of it, 201; receives the Tories at the close of the Revolution, 267; unsuccessful invasions of Canada by the American forces, 358, 363-4; battles in, 393-5; Patriot War, 508; Confederate agents in, 798; Fenian attack on, 828; fisheries dispute with, 858, 924.

Canals, in New England, 313; national provision for, 429, 441; the Erie canal, 430; further canal construction by the States, 460, 501.

Canary Islands, the, 7.

The references are to Sections, not to pages.

- Canonicus** (kā-non'y-kus), an Indian chief, 66.
- Capital of the United States.** at Philadelphia, 301; at Washington, 325.
- Carlotta**, empress of Maximilian, 829.
- Carolina**, named for Charles IX. of France and Charles II. of England, 94.
- 'Carpet-bagger,'** meaning of the term, 514-8.
- Carson City**, Nev., 800.
- Carteret** (kar-ter-et'), Sir George, one of the proprietors of New Jersey, 122.
- Cartier**, Jacques (zhak kaR'te-ā), discovers the St. Lawrence, 12; makes an unsuccessful settlement at Quebec, 19.
- Cass**, Lewis, nominated for President, but defeated, 579.
- Castine** (kas-teen'), Me., capture of an American fleet at, 241.
- Catholics**, Roman, formation of a colony for, 89; ill-treatment of the Roman Catholics in Maryland, 92.
- Cavaliers**, a name applied to the king's friends, 32.
- Cayugas** (ka-voo'gaz), an Indian tribe of New York, 3.
- Cedar Creek**, battle of, 772.
- Cemeteries**, National, 822.
- Census**, (first, 1790,) 314; (second, 1800,) 325; (third, 1810,) 353; (fourth, 1820,) 428; (fifth, 1830,) 459; (sixth, 1840,) 502; (seventh, 1850,) 595; (eighth, 1860,) 632; (ninth, 1870,) 863; (tenth, 1880,) 892; (eleventh, 1890,) 942 (see App. IV, V.).
- Centennial anniversary of American independence**, 870; Constitution, 929.
- Central Park**, opening of, 640.
- Cerro Gordo** (seR'Ro goR'do), battle of, 564.
- Chad's Ford**, battle of, 217.
- Champlain** (sham-plane), Samuel de, a French explorer, 20; discovers Lake Champlain, 139.
- Champlain**, Lake, discovery of, 139; importance of, 379; battle of, 383.
- Chancellorsville**, battle of, 729.
- Chapultepec** (chah-pool'ta-pek), battle of, 569.
- Charles I.**, King, 31, 32.
- Charles II.**, King, 33.
- Charleston**, Mass., settlement of, 52; destruction of the town by the British, 197.
- Charleston**, S. C., settlement of, 101; attacked by the Spaniards, 105; by the British, 204; captured by the British, 248; retained by the British until the close of the Revolutionary War, 255, 264; evacuated by the British, 265; importance in 1790, 289; nullification as applied to Charleston harbor, 488-9; decay of its commerce, 642; United States forces in Charleston harbor, 664; importance of Charleston to the Confederates, 705; evacuated by the Confederates, 802-3.
- Charlottesville**, Va., occupied by Sheridan, 805.
- Charters**, given by the king to the colonies, 42.
- Charter Oak**, 65.
- Chase**, Salmon P., a Republican Senator, 393.
- Chasseur** (shās-sūr'), the, an American privateer, 377.
- Chattahoochee** (chat-ta-hoo'chee) River, the, crossed by Johnston and Sherman, 774.
- Chattanooga** (chat-ta-noo'ga), Tenn., location, 303; importance of the place, 742; evacuated by the Confederates, 742; besieged by the Confederates, 744-6.
- Chauncey** (chan'sī), Commodore Isaac, in command on Lake Ontario, 381.
- Cherbourg** (share-booR'), sea-battle off, 792.
- Cherokees** (cher'o-keez), an Indian tribe, 3; difficulties with the State of Georgia, 438; removal, 471.
- Cherry Valley**, N. Y., destroyed by Tories and Indians, 233.
- Cherub**, the, aids in capturing the *Essex*, 374.
- Chesapeake** (ches'a-peek) Bay, entered by Captain Newport, 36; importance to commerce, 93; used by Howe as a road to Philadelphia, 216; by Washington as a road to Yorktown, 258; arrival of the French fleet in, 259; used by the British as a naval station, 384.
- Chesapeake**, the, insulted by a British war-vessel, 342; captured by the *Shannon*, 373.
- Chester**, Pa., settlement of, 127.
- Chicago** (shī-kaw'go), Ill., location and growth, 420; sudden rise of the place, 456; not on the maps in 1830, 458, 634; great fire in, 867; cable railroads in, 894; railroad riots in, 896; anarchist riots, 920; World's Fair, 938 (see Appendix V.).
- Chickahominy** (chik-a-hom'in-I) River, the, its interference with McClellan's plan of campaign, 715-16.
- Chickamauga** (chik-a-maw'ga), battle of, 743.
- Chickasaws** (chik'a-sawz), tribe, 3.
- Chihuahua** (chē-wah'wah), Mex., occupied by Doniphan, 555, 557.
- Chillicothe** (chil-li-koth'e), O., 315.
- Chinese immigration**, 904, 920, 943.
- Chippewa** (chip'pe-waw), battle of, 393.
- Choctaws** (chok'tawz), an Indian tribe, 3.
- Chouteau**, Pierre (pe-are' shoo-to'), his long life in St. Louis, 158.
- Christina** (kris-tee'na), Swedish settlement at, 29.
- Chrysler's** (kris'ler's) Farm, battle of, 364.
- Church**, Benjamin, a Plymouth soldier, 73.
- Churubusco** (choo-roo-boos'ko), battle of, 567.
- Cincinnati** (sin-sin-nah'tī), O., settlement of, 293; first newspaper in, 315;

 The references are to Sections, not to pages.

Cincinnati—*Continued.*

growth, 334; riots in, 914 (see Appendix V.).

Cities in 1790, 289; in 1830, 457; in 1860, 640 (see Appendix V.).

Civil Service, the, Jackson's degradation of it, 475; some of the consequences as seen under Garfield, 910; under Cleveland, 921.

Clarendon Colony, the, comes from Barbadoes to North Carolina, 97; removes to South Carolina, 101.

Clarke, Gen. George Rogers, conquers Illinois for Virginia, 236.

Clay, Henry, aids in passing the Missouri Compromise, 426; nominated for President in 1824, but defeated, 433; a leading supporter of the "American System," 441; his rank as an orator, 467; in politics, 480; biography, 481; nominated for President in 1832, but defeated, 483; nominated for President in 1844, but defeated, 532; aids in passing the Compromise of 1850, 588; death, 593.

Clearing-house, the, 602.

Clermont, the, first successful steamboat, 335.

Cleveland, Grover, nominated and elected President, 919; renominated and defeated, 925; re-elected, 945.

Cleveland, O., settlement, 315; growth, 334 (see Appendix V.).

Clinton, Gen. Sir Henry, lands at Boston, 195; fails to relieve Burgoyne, 223; succeeds Howe at Philadelphia, 229; retreats to New York City, fighting at Monmouth Court-house, 229; captures Charleston, 248; returns to New York City, 249; orders Cornwallis to Yorktown, 256; is outgeneralled by Washington, 258; orders the attack on New London, 260.

Clinton, DeWitt, nominated for President, but defeated, 356; pushes through the construction of the Erie Canal, 430.

Clinton, George, elected Vice-President, 337; re-elected, 346.

Coal. See Anthracite.

Coast Survey, 463.

Cockburn (kō'burn), Admiral, plunders the Atlantic coast, 389.

Coinage, 313.

Cold Harbor, battle of, 767, 774.

Colfax, Schuyler, elected Vice-President, 852.

Colleges, the first six, 151; the next three, 190; in 1790, 313; in 1830, 463; in 1860, 638; in 1890, 959.

Collins, Capt. N. B., in command of the *Wachusett*, 793.

Colonization, 26.

Colorado, silver discovered in it, 635; influence of the railroad system on its growth, 865; admission and history, 869 (see Appendix IV.).

"Color line," 847.

Columbia College, 161.

Columbia River, discovered by an American vessel, 333; claimed as a southwest boundary for British America, 544.

Columbia, S. C., occupied by the Union forces and burned, 802.

Columbia, the, makes the first American voyage around the world, 313.

Columbus, Christopher, his efforts to accomplish his great design, 6; his discovery of land across the Atlantic, 7; subsequent voyages and death, 9.

Columbus, O., 331 (see Appendix V.).

Commerce, early commerce, 131; the attempt of Parliament to regulate it by the Navigation Acts, 71; failure of the Navigation Acts, 166; commercial taxation by Parliament, 171; commercial resistance, 180 (see Revolution, American); commerce under the Confederation, 276; under the Constitution, 282; English interferences with American commerce, 310, 311-2; increase of American commerce, 313, 331; French interferences with American commerce, 320; the Barbary States' interferences with American commerce, 339; the Embargo policy of prohibiting commerce, 344; its failure, 349; war against Great Britain, 351; decay of commerce in 1815, and immediate revival, 409; French injuries paid for, 472; commerce in 1860, 633; injury to commerce by Confederate privateering, 727, 759, 791; revival of commerce, 861; inter-State, 933.

Commission, Electoral, 886-8.

Commission, Inter-State Commerce, 923.

Commission, Tariff, 916.

Common schools. See Public schools.

"Common Sense," title of Paine's pamphlet in favor of independence, 205.

Commons, House of, claims taxing power in England, 31; in the colonies, 163 (see Parliament).

Commonwealth, the English 32.

Compromises, the Missouri Compromise passed, 426; unsuccessful attempt to apply its principle to the Mexican acquisition, 576; the Missouri Compromise repealed, 615-16; the repeal sustained by the Supreme Court, 645-6; the Tariff Compromise of 1833, 490; the Compromise of 1850, 589.


Concessions, the, the charter of New Jersey, 124.

Concord (kong'kurd), Mass., 183-4.

Confederate States, the, organized in 1861, 660; declares war against the United States, 673; enlarged by new secessions, 676; its difficulties, 686; progress of the war, 815-20; distress within the Confederacy, 723, 753, 790, 795; downfall of the Confederacy, 809; its armed forces, 821; loss in men, 822; in money, 823.

Confederation, the. See Articles of Confederation.

Confirmation by the Senate, 282.

 The references are to Sections, not to pages.

Congress of the United States, powers, 282-4; first meets and counts the electoral votes, 297; organizes the government by legislation, 300; proposes twelve Amendments, 300; character of the laws passed, 301; charters the first Bank of the United States, 301; begins taxation by excise, 308; authorizes hostilities against France, 321; passes the Alien and Sedition laws, 323; comes under the control of the Republicans, 329; passes the Embargo Act (see Commerce), 344; passes the Non-Intercourse Act, 345; revives the Non-Intercourse Act against Great Britain, 349; declares war against Great Britain, 351; becomes more disposed to favor the navy, 370; charters the second Bank of the United States, 411; the two sections in Congress, 425, 442, 524; passes the Missouri Compromise, 426; receives La Fayette, 428; appropriates money for internal improvements, 429; begins the National Road, 431; adopts a policy of Protection, 432; carries it further, 441; divides surplus revenue among the States, 460; asserted influence of the Bank on Congress, 476; renews charter of the Bank, but is defeated by the veto, 477; Congress and Protection, 479, 484; passes Compromise Tariff of 1833, 490; special session of 1837, 499; passes Sub-Treasury law, 500; attempt to suppress antislavery petitions to Congress, 506; special session of 1841, 514; passes a third Bank charter, but is defeated by the veto, 515; quarrels with the President, 516; passes the Tariff of 1842, 517; appropriates money to test the electric telegraph, 527; passes the resolution annexing Texas, 533; abandons Protection and passes a revenue tariff, 540; declares war against Mexico, 550; discusses the Wilmot Proviso, 577; and the admission of California, 585, 587; passes the Compromise of 1850, 588-9; new leaders appear in Congress, 593; Congress orders surveys for a Pacific Railroad, 596; repeals the Missouri Compromise by passing the Kansas-Nebraska Act, 614; the Republican party appears in Congress, 616; Congress discusses Kansas affairs, 621; its relations to the Supreme Court, 645; remains inactive through the secession winter, 665; special session of 1861 votes men and money for the war, 680; orders the issue of bonds and legal-tender paper money in 1862, 725; establishes a national banking system in 1863, 725; returns to the protective system, 754; orders a draft, 756; passes the 13th Amendment, 837; refuses to admit members from the seceding States, 839; is controlled by a two-thirds Republican majority, 840; adopts a plan of reconstruction, 843-4; readmits

Congress—*Continued.*

the reconstructed States, 845; passes the 14th Amendment, 846; quarrels with the President, 848; passes the Tenure of Office Act, 849; assists the Pacific Railroad, 864; passes the 15th Amendment, 872; investigates the Credit Mobilier scandals, 879; asserts a right to decide disputes about electoral votes, 885; passes the Electoral Commission Act, 886; demonetizes silver, 900; remonetizes silver, 901; orders specie payments to be resumed, 902; engages in conflicts with the President, 905; passes the Civil Service Reform Act, 910; fails to suppress polygamy in the Territories, 913; orders the Appointment of a Tariff Commission, 916.

Connecticut (kon-net'I-kut), part of the Plymouth grant, 39; history, 61; its western claims, 272; they are transferred to the United States, 275.

Constellation, the, captures *L'Insurgente*, 321.

Constitution, the, chased by the British, 367; captures the *Guerriere*, 368; the *Java*, 369; the *Cyane* and *Levant*, 376.

Constitution of the United States, its formation, 280; its terms, 281-5; its ratification, 287; its inauguration, 297 (see Amendments, and Appendix II.). "Continental," meaning of the term, 179, 234.

Continental Congress, first meeting, 179-80; second meeting, 194; resists Parliament by force, 194; recommends the colonies to become States, 205; adopts the Declaration of Independence, 206; retires to Baltimore, 212; to Lancaster and York, 218; issues paper money, 234; begins to lose public respect, 235; has difficulties with the army, 240; fails to form a navy, 242; its work in the war, 270; gives way to the Confederation, 271 (see Articles of Confederation).

Contract Labor Act, 920.

Contreras (kon-trā'rahs), battle of, 567.

Convention, Federal, 280.


Cooper, Fenimore, his literary work, 465

Copley, John Singleton, a painter, particularly excellent in portraits, 190.

Copper, in Michigan, 462; in Connecticut and New Jersey, 528; discovery of the Lake Superior copper region, 529; in Wisconsin, 543.

Corinth (kor'inth), Miss., captured by Halleck, 695; defended by Grant, 698.

Cornwallis (korn-wol'lis), Lord, in command of the British in New Jersey, 211; beaten at Trenton and Princeton, 213; in command in South Carolina, 249; beats Gates at Camden, 250; chases Greene across North Carolina, 252; fights a drawn battle at Guilford Court-house, 254; retires to Wilmington, 254; moves north into Virginia, 256; caught at Yorktown by the

 The references are to Sections, not to pages.

Cornwallis—*Continued*.

French and Americans, 259; surrenders, 262; results of the surrender, 263; centennial anniversary of the surrender, 911.

Coronado (ko-ro-nah'do), an early Spanish explorer, 17.

Corpus Christi (kor'-pus kris'ti), Tex., 546.

Cortereal (kor-tā-rā-ahl'), a Portuguese sailor, 14.

Cotton, little profit in its cultivation before 1793, 317; invention of the saw-gin by Whitney, 317; cotton in Alabama, 421; in South Carolina, 103; cotton crop of 1860, 633; "King Cotton," 642; importance of the cotton supply during the Civil War, 726; effect of the blockade, 753; cotton under free labor, 915.

Cotton, John, a Massachusetts minister, 54.

Courts, Federal, 284, 301.

Cowpens (kow'penz), battle of the, 252.

Crawford, William H., nominated for President, but defeated, 433.

Credit Mobilier (krā'dē mo-bē'lē-ā), the construction company of the Pacific Railroad, 879.

Creeks, an Indian tribe, 3; hostile to the United States, 396; make war, 397; overthrown by Jackson, 398; effects on settlement, 408.

Criminals, their extradition, 518.

Croghan (kro'han), Lieut. George, his defence of Fort Stephenson, 361.

Cromwell (krum'well), Oliver, Protector of England, 32.

Croton Aqueduct, 457.

Crown Point, N. Y., held by the French, 149; taken by the British, 153.

Crystal Palace, the, 601.

Cuba, attempts to obtain it from Spain, 608; the Ostend manifesto, 610; the *Virginus* affair, 860.

Cumberland Island, Ga., Cockburn's headquarters, 389.

Cumberland, Md., 431.

Cumberland, the, sunk by the *Merri-mac*, 702.

Currency, Paper. See Paper Money.

Cushing (koosh'ing), Lieut. Wm. B., blows up the *Albemarle*, 786.

Custer, Gen. George A., killed by Indians, 868.

Cyane (si'ane), the, captured by the *Constitution*, 376.

Cyclones, 912.

DADE's Massacre, 471.

Dallas, battle of, 774.

Dallas, George M., elected Vice-President, 532.

Dalton (dawl'tun), Ga., held by Johnston, 760; taken by Sherman, 774.

Dana, Richard H., an early American poet, 465.

Danbury (dan'ber-ri), Conn., destroyed by the British, 215.

Daniel, Wm., nominated for Vice-President, 917.

Dare, Virginia, first child born of English parents in America, 23.

Darien (da-ri-en'), Ga., 108.

Dartmouth College founded, 190.

Davenport (dāv'en-port), John, a founder of New Haven, 64.

Davis, Jefferson, a Southern leader, 593; President of the Confederate States, 660; biography, 661; removes Johnston, 776; is compelled to recall him, 802.

Dayton, O., 334.

Dayton, Wm. L., nominated for Vice-President, 623.

Deane (deen), Silas, envoy to France, 225.

Dearborn (deer'burn), Gen. Henry, in command in northeastern New York, 358; fails in an invasion of Canada, 363.

Debt, Imprisonment for, cruelty of the system, 289; its general abandonment, 469.

Debt of Great Britain, 188, 266.

Debt of the United States, hopelessness of paying it under the Confederation, 276; provided for in 1790, 301; nearly paid off in 1809, 331; anxiety of the Republicans to pay it off, 343; increase on account of the War of 1812, 410; all paid off in 1835, 460; Civil War debt put into bonds and paper money, 725; amount at the end of the war, 823; promptness in beginning to pay it off, 832; interest rate reduced by refunding, 903; the general reduction of the debt, 916; the American method of dealing with a national debt, 958, 964.


Decatur (de-kā'tur), Commodore Stephen, burns the *Philadelphia*, 340; in command of the *United States*, 369; forces the Barbary States to conclude peace without payment of tribute, 412.

Declaration of Independence, its adoption, 206; its terms, 207; its effect on France, 227; its authorship, 439; its hundredth anniversary, 870 (see Appendix I.).

Delaware (del'a-wur), settled by the Swedes, 29; taken by the Dutch, 29; taken by the English from the Dutch, 40; bought by Penn, 125; history, 132; its western boundary, 272; a "small" State, 280; freedom from secessionists, 674 (see Appendix IV.).

Delaware River, the, crossed by Washington, 211; obstructed by the Americans to defend Philadelphia, 216.

Democratic Party, the, known at first as the Republican Party (see Republican Party of 1792), 305; often known as the Democratic Party after the war of 1812, 413; regularly called so after 1828, 444; supports Jackson, 445; defeated in 1840, 511; successful in 1844, 532; gets control of the govern-

 The references are to Sections, not to pages.

Democratic Party--*Continued.*

ment and puts an end to Protection, 540; defeated in 1848, 579; the only great party left entire by slavery, 594; successful in 1852, 598; how it was held together, 613; supports the Kansas-Nebraska Bill, 614; part of its Northern members go into the Republican Party (see Republican Party of 1846), 616; successful in 1856, 623; Northern members refuse to support the Dred Scott decision, 648; splits into two parties, 654; defeated in 1860, 655; opposes the management of the war, and is defeated in 1864, 797; supports Johnson, 840; is defeated in 1868, 852; adopts the Liberal Republican ticket in 1872, and is defeated, 881; its nominations in 1876 (see Commission, Electoral), 882; in control of Congress, 905; defeated in 1880, 906; successful in 1884, 917; defeated in 1888, 931; successful in 1892.

Demonetization of silver, 900.

Denmark, not a colonizing power in 1500, 4.

Deny (dā-nese'), an early French explorer, 12.

Deposits, removal of, 477.

Detroit, Mich., an early French settlement, 142; transferred to the English, 155; transferred to the United States, 310; captured by the British, 357; recaptured by the Americans, 362; leading city of Michigan, 462 (see Appendix V).

Dieskau (dī-es-ko'), Baron, in command of a French force, 149.

Dinwiddie (din-wid'dī), Gov., of Virginia, 145.

District of Columbia (see Capital), slavery in the, 586, 589.

Donelson, Andrew J., nominated for Vice-President, 623.

Doniphan (don'ī-fan), Col., his march into Mexico, 554-5.

Dorchester (dor'ches-ter) Heights, 199.

Dorr Rebellion, 530.

Douglas (dug'las), Stephen A., a Northern Democratic leader, 613; introduces the Kansas-Nebraska Bill, 614; separates from the Southern Democrats, 648; nominated for President, 654; is defeated, 655; his Senatorial campaign against Lincoln, 667.

Dover, N. H., 59.

Downie (dow'nī), Commodore G., in command of the British fleet on Lake Champlain, 383.

Draft, the, 756.

Drake, Joseph Rodman, an American poet, 465.

Drake, Sir Francis, an early English explorer, 16.

Dred Scott Case, the, 645-7.

Drunkenness, its former prevalence in America, 468.

Dubuque (du-booke'), Iowa, its settlement, 542.

Duluth (doo-looth'), Minn., 866.

EARLY, Gen. Jubal A., sent by Lee to raid Washington, 768; defeats Sheridan's army at Cedar Creek, but is defeated by Sheridan, 772.

East Indies, 13.

Eaton, Theophilus, one of the founders of New Haven, 64.

Eckford, Henry, an American ship builder, 381.

Education. See Public Schools; Normal Schools; Colleges.

Elba, the island to which Napoleon was banished, 399.

Elberon (el'be-ron), a New Jersey watering-place, 909.

Electors, their duty to choose the President and Vice-President, 283; their first meeting, 288; the first count of their votes, 297; the electoral system in general, 298, how it was changed in 1804, 324; failure of the electors to choose a President in 1824, 433; dispute over their votes in 1876, 883; how the dispute was settled, 885-7, 920.

Electricity, Franklin's discovery, 226; application to telegraphing, 527; to the telephone, light, heat, and machinery, 893.

Elevated Railroads, 894.

Elizabeth, N. J., settlement, 123.

Elizabeth, Queen, commissions Gilbert, 21; Raleigh, 23.

Elkton, Md., Howe disembarks there, 216; Washington embarks there for Yorktown, 259.

Ellsworth, Oliver, member of the Continental Congress, 194.

Emancipation Proclamation, the, its issue and terms, 724; its influence on foreign affairs, 726; completed by the 13th Amendment, 838.

Embargo, the, its passage and failure, 344 (see Commerce).


Emerson, Ralph Waldo, his literary work, 637.

Endicott (en'dī-küt), John, a Massachusetts leader, 54.


England, refuses to help Columbus, 6; sends Cabot, who claims part of North America for her, 11; preliminary failures, 21, 23-4; organizes two colonization companies, 25; how her colonies came to lie together, 27; struggle between the king and the Parliament, 31; the Commonwealth, 32; the Restoration, 33; the first successful English settlement, 36; her relations with her colonies, 45-7; her encouragement of the slave-trade, 48; her passage of restrictions on colonial commerce, 71; her wars with France after the Restoration, 75; how England seized the middle Atlantic coast, 113 (see Great Britain).

English, Wm. H., nominated for Vice-President, 906.

Enterprise, the, captures the Boxer, 371.

 The references are to Sections, not to pages.

- Epervier* (ā-pĕr'vĕ-ā), the, captured by the *Peacock*, 375.
 Era of Good Feeling, 417, 440.
Ericsson (er'ik-sen), John, invents the screw propeller, 454; builds the *Monitor*, 701.
Erie, Lake, battle of, 382.
Erie Canal, 430.
Erie, Pa., a French fort, 145; Perry's ship-yard, 382.
Essex, the, captures the *Alert*, 367; captured by the *Phæbe* and *Cherub*, 374.
Estaing, Count d' (des-tan(g)'), sent to the United States in command of a French fleet, 227; aids in the attack on Savannah, 245.
Ether, its application to surgery, 536.
Europe, why its people turned to discovery, 5; what nations of Europe took part in the discoveries, 13; affairs in Europe, 31-5 (see Great Britain, France, Spain, Austria, Portugal); immigration from Europe after 1848, 612, 920.
Eutaw (u'taw) Springs, battle of, 255.
Everett (ev'er-et), Edward, nominated for Vice-President, 654.
 Exchange of prisoners during the Civil War, 799.
 Executive Department, its duties, 283; the succession in case of death or disability, 909, 922.
 Exhibitions, World's, Crystal Palace, 601; Centennial, 870; Southern, 915; World's Fair, 938.
 Expense of wars, of Revolutionary War, 266; of the War of 1812, 410; of the Civil War, 725, 823, 863.
 Express companies, their origin, 503.
 Extradition of criminals, 518.
 FAIRFIELD, Conn., scene of the Pequot defeat, 63.
 Fair Oaks, battle of, 716.
 Falmouth, Me., destroyed by the British, 204.
 Farewell Address, 311 (see Appendix VI.).
Farragut (far'a-gut), Admiral David G., fights his way up the Mississippi and takes New Orleans, 707-8; returns to the Gulf of Mexico, 710; destroys the Confederate fleet in Mobile Bay, 789.
Fayetteville (fā-et'vil), N. C., settlement, 97; taken by Sherman, 802.
 Federal Convention, 280.
 Federal Government, established by the Constitution, 281; its three departments, 282-4; its inauguration, 297; its success, 304; its relations to the States, 485; its importance, 929 (see Congress).
 Federal Hall, 297.
Federalist, the, 269.
 Federal Party, the, its origin, 286; its success, 304; its purposes, 305; successful in 1796, 312; its great mistake, 323; defeated in 1800, 324; the excellence of its work, 330; defeated in 1804, 337; defeated in 1808, 346; defeated Federal Party—*Continued*.
 in 1812, 356; supports the Hartford Convention, 391; becomes extinct, 413.
 Fenians, the, 828.
 Ferdinand, king of Spain, 9.
Ferelo (fā-rā'lo), Spanish explorer, 16.
Ferguson, Col. Patrick, in command of the British at King's Mountain, 251.
 Filibusters, their attacks on Cuba and Central America, 608, 609.
 Filibustering, 934.
 Fillmore, Millard, elected Vice-President, 579; biography, 583; succeeds to the Presidency, 592; nominated for President, 623.
 Fires, in New York, 457; in Chicago and Boston, 867.
 Fisheries, the Newfoundland, disputes as to them, 858, 922.
 Fishing Creek, skirmish at, 251.
 Fisk, C. B., nominated for President, 931.
 Fitch, John, attempts to propel vessels by steam, 313.
 Five Forks, battle of, 806.
 Flag, the, as it appeared at Cambridge, and its changes, 198; its first use on the ocean, 241.
 Flamboro' Head, 243.
 Florida, its discovery and exploration, 10; De Soto lands in it, 15; the southern boundary of the English colonies, 30; not an English colony until 1763, 37; then transferred by Spain to Great Britain, 157; British troops from Florida attack Savannah, 245; transferred by Great Britain to Spain in 1783, 264; the Spanish governors aid the British in 1814, 400; Jackson seizes Pensacola, 418; Florida transferred to the United States by Spain, 418; admission and history, 525; secedes, 659; attacked by an expedition from Port Royal, 784; reconstructed and readmitted, 845; its electoral votes disputed in 1876, 883; its returning Board, 884 (see Appendix IV.).
Florida, the, a Confederate privateer, 727, 759; captured by the *Wachusett*, 793.
 Foote, Commodore Andrew H., in command of the Western fleet, 691.
 Forrest, Gen. N. B., a Confederate cavalry officer, 788.
 Fort Brown, 546.
 Fort Dearborn, now Chicago, 420, 456.
 Fort Donelson, captured by Grant, 689, 692.
 Fort Duquesne (du kāne), seized by the French, 146; repels the British, 149; captured by the British, 151.
 Fort Erie, captured by the Americans, 393; repels the British, 395.
 Fort Fisher, its capture by Gen. Terry, 787.
 Fort Frontenac, now Kingston, Can., 151.
 Fort Griswold (griz'wuld), massacre by Arnold, 260.
 Fort Henry, captured by gunboats, 689; its garrison escapes to Fort Donelson, 691.

 The references are to Sections, not to pages.

Fort Hindman, captured by Sherman, 735.

Fort Jackson, passed by Farragut, 706; surrenders, 709.

Fort Leavenworth (lev'n-wurth), 554.

Fort Loudoun (loo'dn), established by the British, 303.

Fort McAllister, taken by Gen. Hazen, 782.

Fort McHenry, repels the British, 388.

Fort Meigs (megz), repels the British, 361.

Fort Mims, scene of a massacre by the Creeks, 397.

Fort Necessity, surrendered by Washington, 147.

Fort Niagara, captured by the British, 153.

Fort Orange, now Albany, 121.

Fort Pickens, saved from capture by the Confederates, 661.

Fort Pillow, taken by the Confederates, 788.

Fort Pulaski, taken by Gen. Gillmore, 705.

Fort St. Philip, passed by Farragut, 706; surrenders, 709.

Fort Schuyler, now Rome, N. Y., 221.

Fort Stephenson, repulses the British, 361.

Fort Sumter, held by the Union forces, 664; captured by the Confederates, 669; attacked by iron-clads, 748; battered into ruins, 749.

Fort Wagner, captured by Gen. Gillmore, 749.

Fort Washington, captured by the British, 210.

Fortress Monroe, the southern end of the Union line in Virginia, 677.

Forts Mercer and Mifflin, captured by the British, 218.

Fort Wayne, Ind., 309.

France, early discoveries in Canada, 12; early failures in attempts to colonize, 19; successful settlement, 20; events in France affecting emigration, 34; early French wars, 75; the French strongholds in Canada, 76; influence of the French over the Indians, 77; their claims in New York, 114; their explorations beyond Canada, 139; settlement within the United States, 140-1; their possessions in North America in 1750, 142; the weakness of their empire, 143; their efforts to keep the English back beyond the Alleghanies, 115; they capture Fort Du Quesne, 146; and Fort Necessity, 147; France sends troops to America, 149; declares war against Great Britain, 150; loses Canada, 155; gives up all her American possessions in 1763, 157; secretly aids the colonies, 225; makes a treaty of alliance with the United States, 227; sends a fleet and army to America, 231, 258; sends a fleet to Chesapeake Bay, 259; the French forces aid in capturing Cornwallis, 361-2; France

France—Continued.

becomes a republic, 306; demands aid from the United States, 307; acts in a most unfriendly manner, 320; is answered with war, 321; Napoleon concludes a peace, 322; sells Louisiana to the United States, 332; oppresses American commerce, 341-2; succeeds in bringing the United States into war with Great Britain, 349; inferiority of France to Great Britain in naval warfare, 370; France is conquered and Napoleon banished, 399; pays for damages to American commerce, 472; refuses to intervene in the Civil War, 726; establishes an empire in Mexico, 758; refuses to permit the building of Confederate iron-clads, 759; withdraws her troops from Mexico, 829; comparison of the French and American systems, 958.

Frankfort (frangk'furt), Ky., 302.

Franklin, battle of, 779.

Franklin, Benjamin, proposes a plan of union, 148; agent of Massachusetts at London, 172; member of the Continental Congress, 194; and of the committee to draw up a Declaration of Independence, 207; envoy to France, 225; biography, 226; fits out war-vessels from France, 242; obtains a fleet for Paul Jones, 243; his influence in securing the ratification of the Constitution, 286.

Franklin or Frankland, the State of, 303.

Frazier's Farm, battle of, 718.

Fredericksburgh, Va., 722, 726.

Fredericksburgh, battle of, 722.

Freedmen, meaning of the term, 835; their treatment in the South, 839; they are empowered to vote, 872; how they were peaceably prevented from voting, 873; how they were prevented by violence, 875-7; their other rights are secured to them, 878.


Freehold, N. J., scene of the battle of Monmouth Court-house, 229.

Free-soil Party, its origin, 578; its vote falls off in 1852, 598; it becomes a part of the Republican Party in 1856, 616.

Free Trade, meaning of the term, 432; Congress abandons Free Trade and supports Protection, 432, 441; desire of the South for Free Trade, 443, 484, 651; Jackson is unable to revive Free Trade, 479; the Democrats in 1846 re-establish Free Trade, which remains in force until 1861, 540; the Republicans in 1861 abandon Free Trade and re-establish Protection, which still remains in force, 754, 916, 929 (see Tariff, Protection, American System).

Frelinghuysen, Theodore, nominated for Vice-President, 532.

Frémont, John C., his explorations in the Rocky Mountains, 519; aids in the conquest of California, 553; nomi-

 The references are to Sections, not to pages.

Frémont, John C.—Continued.

nated for President, but defeated, 623; a general in the Union army, 684.

French and Indian War, its origin, 144-5; first fighting of the war, 146-7; effects a union of the colonies, 148; England and France take part in it, 149-50; Pitt's successful management, 151; his use of the Colonies, 152; capture of Quebec, 153-4; conquest of all Canada, 155; peace, 157; one of its consequences, 162.

Friction-matches, not in existence in 1790, 289; invention of, 455.

Frobisher (fro'bish-er), Martin, his failure in Labrador, 11, 21.

Frolic, the, captured by the *Wasp*, 369.

Fuca, Juan de (Hoo-ahn'dā foo'ka), a Spanish pilot, 16.

Fugitive Slaves, the constitutional provisions in regard to them, 285; the complaint of the slave States, 586; passage of a Fugitive Slave law, 589; its nature and effects, 591, 598.

Fulton, Robert, his appl cation of steam to vessels, 335.

GADSDEN, CHRISTOPHER, a member of the Continental Congress, 194.

Gadsden Purchase, the, of land from Mexico, 574.

Gage, Gen. Thomas, in command of the British in Massachusetts, 182.

Gaines's Mill, battle of, 718.

Galena, Ill., lead-mines, 420.

Garfield, James A., elected President, 906; biography, 908; inauguration, assassination, and death, 909.

Garrison, William Lloyd, the demand for abolition of slavery originates with him, 470.

Gas for lighting, not known in 1790, 289; introduced in America, 429.

Gaspée (gäs-pā'), the, taken by the people of Providence, 174.

Gates, Gen. Horatio, appointed in place of Schuyler, 222; forces Burgoyne to surrender, 223; takes all the credit, 224; is defeated at Camden and succeeded by Greene, 250.

General Armstrong, the, an American privateer, 377.

Genet (jē-net'), a French envoy to the United States, 307.

Geneva (jē nē'va), a city of Switzerland, 856.

Genoa (jen'o-a), the birth-place of Columbus, 6.

Geological surveys begun, 463.

George III., king of Great Britain, 107.

Georgia, an English colony in America, 37; under royal government, 44; its origin, 107; settlement, 108; slavery, 109; early wars, 110; unable to take part in the first Continental Congress, 179; conquered by the British, 245; cruelly treated, 247; evacuated, 265;

Georgia—Continued.

western claims, 272; cedes them to the United States, 275; difficulties with the Indians, 438, 471; secedes, 659; crossed by Sherman, 781-2; refuses to accept the first terms of reconstruction, 845; is reconstructed and readmitted, 871 (see Appendix IV.).

Georgia, the, a Confederate privateer, 759; captured by the *Niagara*, 794.

Germantown, battle of, 217.

Gerry (ger'ri), Elbridge, elected Vice-President, 356.

Gettysburgh Address, the, 811.

Gettysburgh, battle of, 732.

Ghent (gent), treaty of, 403.

Gilbert, Sir Humphrey, an early English explorer, 21.

Gillmore, Gen. Quincy A., in command of the Union forces in South Carolina, 749.

Glendale, battle of, 718.

Gloucester (glos'ter), Mass., attacked by the British, 204.

Gold, found in Virginia, North Carolina, and Georgia, 528; in California, 580; excites an exodus to California, 581; amount of its production, 590; found in Colorado and other parts of the Rocky Mountains, 635, 869; increase of production, 861; its comparative value, 899; is made the only coin, 900; is put on a legal par with silver, 901.

Goldsboro, battle of, 803.

Good Feeling, Era of, 417, 440.

Good Hope, Cape of, discovered, 5.

Goodyear, Charles, his process of vulcanizing rubber, 503.

Gorges (gor'jez), Sir Ferdinando, a leader in English colonization, 59.


Gosnold (goz'nuld), Bartholomew, at Buzzard's Bay, 24.

Graham, Wm. A., nominated for Vice-President, 598.

Grand Army, the, an association of veterans, 810.

Grand Gulf, Miss., 737.

Grant, Gen. Ulysses S., at Belmont, 684; biography, 688; in command at Cairo, 689; moves up the Tennessee, 691; takes Fort Donelson, 692; encamps at Pittsburgh Landing, 693; fights the battle of Shiloh, 694; in command at Corinth, 698; at Holly Springs, 734; fails in his first advance on Vicksburgh, 735; crosses the Mississippi, 736; recrosses the Mississippi and drives Pemberton into Vicksburgh, 737-8; captures Vicksburgh, 738; takes possession of Arkansas, 740; called to Chattanooga, 745; relieves it from siege, 746; called to Virginia and put in command of all the Union armies, 761; acts in conjunction with Sherman, 763; changes his method of fighting, 764; his battles in the Wilderness, 766-7; crosses the James River, 769; besieges Petersburg, 770-1, 804; takes

 The references are to Sections, not to pages.

Grant, Gen. Ulysses S.—*Continued.*

Petersburgh and Richmond, 806; captures Lee's army, 807; reviews his army in Washington, 810; elected President, 852; his two Administrations, 861-2; confidence in his integrity, 882; withdraws support from the reconstructed governments, 888.

Grasse (gras), Count de, in command of the French fleet, 244; aids in the capture of Cornwallis, 259, 262.

Great Britain (see England, until after 1707), her relations with her American colonies, 133-5; her colonies begin to cross the Alleghanies, 144; sends troops to America, 149; declares war against France, 150; conquers Canada, 155; forces a peace from France, 157; unfortunate peculiarities of her government, 163; its attempts to regulate the colonies, 166; passes the Stamp Act, 167; taxes American commerce, 172; retains only the tea tax, 176; attempts to punish disobedience, 178; the difficulties of the attempt, 188; proposes conciliation, 203; drives the colonies into declaring their independence, 206; declares war against France, 228; her warfare not a success, 232; determines to attack the Southern States, 237; her commerce injured by American privateers, 241; agrees to a treaty of peace, 263-4; evacuates the United States, 265; and the Northwestern forts, 310; her wars with Napoleon, 322, 321; her injuries to American commerce, 341-2; loses her trade with the United States, 344-5, 349; is involved in war with the United States, 351; her navy, 352, 366, 370; blockades the American coast, 372, 384; plunders exposed points, 385-9; conquers Napoleon and sends an expedition against Louisiana, 399; agrees to a treaty of peace, 403-4; mediates between France and the United States, 472; makes an extradition treaty with the United States, 518; and settles a great part of the northern boundary, 519; claims the Oregon country, 520; compromises it, 544, 857; population, 632; recognizes the Confederate States as a belligerent power, 675; demands the surrender of the Confederate commissioners, 687; refuses to recognize the independence of the Confederate States, 726; allows Confederate agents to build privateers, 727; but not iron-clads, 759; connected with the United States by telegraph, 830; agrees to submit the Alabama claims to arbitration, 854-5; pays the damages awarded, 856; receives damages for the fisheries, 858; renewal of the fisheries dispute, 924; her interest in the Panama Canal, 924; dispute about seals in Bering Sea, 943.

Greeley, Horace, nominated for President, 881.

Greenback Party, the, its objects, 882; defeated, 906, 917, 945.

Greene, Gen. Nathaniel, attacks Newport, 231; succeeds Gates, 250; his brilliant success, 255.

Greenland, discovered by the Northmen, 4.

Grenville, Sir Richard, an early English explorer, 23.

Grenville, George, his connection with the Stamp Act, 167.

Greytown, Nicaragua, bombarded by American war-vessels, 607.

Groton (grot'n), Conn., scene of the Pequot war, 63.

Guadalupe Hidalgo (gaw'da-loop hē-dal'go), treaty of, 573.

Guanahani (gwah-na-hah'nē), discovered by Columbus, 7.

Guerrillas, irregular forces, 699, 740.

Guerriere (ger-re-are), sunk by the *Constitution*, 368.

Guilford Court-house, battle of, 254.

Gunboats, the form used in 1812, 352; their constant battles with blockading vessels, 372; western gunboats in the Civil War, 700; iron-clad gunboats on the Atlantic coast, 704.

HAIL, COLUMBIA, a national song, 321.

Hale, John Parker, an antislavery leader in Congress, 593; nominated for President, 598.

Halifax, N. S., British army goes to Halifax, 199; returns to attack New York, 208.

Halleck, Fitz-Greene, an American poet, 465.

Halleck, Gen. Henry W., in command of the Union forces in Missouri, 684; takes Corinth, 695.

Hamilton, Alexander, biography, 269; Secretary of the Treasury, 299; leader of the Federal Party, 304.

Hamlin, Hannibal, nominated for Vice-President, 634; elected, 655.

Hampton Roads, battle of, 702.

Hampton, Va., destroyed, 385.

Hancock, John, a Massachusetts leader, 172; his sloop seized, 174; a member of the Continental Congress, 194.

Harlem, N. Y., skirmish at, 210.

Harmar's defeat, 309. [panies, 503.

Harden, W. F., and the express company, 503.

Harper's Ferry, W. Va., seized by John Brown, 650; limit of the Confederate line, 676; taken by Jackson, 720.

Harrison, Benjamin, 908; nominated and elected President, 933, 935, 937; defeated for President, 945.

Harrison, Wm. H., fights the battle of Tippecanoe, 350; made commander-in-chief of the West, 359; defends Fort Meigs, 361; defeats the British in the battle of the Thames and recovers the northwest, 362; nominated for President, but defeated, 492; nominated for President and elected, 511; biography, 513; death, 514,

☞ The references are to Sections, not to pages.

- Harrodsburgh, Ky., 302.
 Hartford, Conn., settlement, 62.
 Hartford Convention, 391.
 Harvard College founded, 79.
 Hatcher's Run, part of Grant's line, 801.
 Hatteras Inlet, capture of the forts at, 685.
 Havana, captured by the British and provincials, 156.
 Havre de Grace (havr də grahs), Md., attacked by the British, 385; on the route to Washington, 671.
 Hawaii, 943.
 Hawthorne, Nathaniel, 466.
 Hayes, R. B., nominated for President, 882; his election disputed, 883; decided by the Electoral Commission, 887; biography, 890; prosperity under his Administration, 891; disagreements with Congress, 905.
 Hayne (hane), Isaac, put to death by the British, 255.
 Hayne, Robert Y., his debate with Webster, 481.
 Hazen, Gen. Wm. B., captures Fort McAllister, 782.
 Helena (hě-lě'na), Ark., attacked by the Confederates, 740.
 Hendricks, Thos. A., nominated for Vice-President, 882; his election disputed, 883; the Electoral Commission decides against him, 887; nominated again and elected, 917.
 Henry, Patrick, a Virginia orator, 168; member of the Continental Congress, 194; an Anti-Federalist leader, 286.
 Hessians, the, dislike of the Americans for them, 203; a Hessian garrison captured at Trenton, 213.
 Hobkirk's Hill, battle of, 255.
 Hoe, R. M., and the printing-press, 537.
 Holland does not attempt American discovery until independent of Spain, 13; explores and colonizes the country around the Hudson River, 28; conquers the Swedes in Delaware, 29; the refuge of the English Puritans, 49; the Dutch government of New Netherlands, 113; overthrown by the English, 113; Holland reconquers the country, but finally abandons it to the English, 115.
 Holly Springs, Miss., Grant's headquarters, 734; captured by Confederate cavalry, 735.
 Holmes (hōmz), Oliver Wendell, 466.
 Homestead Riots, 944.
 Hood, Gen. J. B., succeeds Johnston, 776; attacks Sherman, 777; endeavors to transfer the war to Tennessee, 778; is beaten and loses his army, 779; consequences of his mistake, 780.
 Hooker, Gen. Joseph E., succeeds Burnside in command of the Army of the Potomac, 722; is defeated at Chancellorsville, 729; turns over the command to Meade, 731.
 Hooker, Thomas, a Massachusetts min-
- Hooker, Thomas—*Continued*.
 ister, 54; heads the emigration to Connecticut, 62.
 Hornet, the, captures the *Peacock*, 371; and the *Penguin*, 376.
 Horseshoe Bend, battle of, 398.
 Houses, in 1790, 289; in 1860 and since that year, 640.
 Houston (hews'tun), Gen. Sam., a Texas leader, 522.
 Howe, Gen. Sir William, lands at Boston, 195; commands in the assault at Bunker Hill, 196; succeeds Gage and evacuates Boston, 199; lands on Staten Island, 208; fights the battle of Long Island and drives Washington north to Peekskill, 210; attacks Philadelphia by sea, 216; fights the battle of Chad's Ford and takes Philadelphia, 217; is succeeded by Clinton, 229.
 Howe, Elias, and the sewing-machine, 536.
 Hudson, Henry, seeks the Northwest Passage, 22; explores the coast from Hudson River to Chesapeake Bay, 28.
 Hudson River, the, why its name was given, 28; its relation to New Netherland, 114; its importance to New York City, 120; the British hope to control it through their navy, 208; crossed by Washington and Cornwallis, 211; forms part of the route to Canada, 219; crossed by Burgoyne, 222; steamboats on the Hudson, 408; its relation to the Erie Canal, 430; the "anti-rent" disturbances along the river, 531.
 Huguenots (hu'ge-nots), driven from France, 34.
 Hulks, or prison-ships, 233.
 Hunter, Gen. David, in command of the Union forces in the Shenandoah valley, 765; defeated and driven into West Virginia, 768.
 Hull, Capt. Isaac, in command of the *Constitution*, 367.
 Hull, Gov. William, surrenders Detroit and Michigan, 357.
 Hutchinson, Mrs. Anne, banished from Massachusetts, 55.
 Hutchinson, Thomas, a Massachusetts loyalist, 172.
- IBERVILLE, D' (də-bare-veel'), an early French explorer, 140.
 Iceland, discovered by the Northmen, 4.
 Idaho, admitted to the Union, 939.
 Illinois, why its name was given, 3; conquered by Clarke, 236; why Virginia claimed it, 273; made a Territory, 408; admission and history, 420 (see Ordinance of 1787, Appendix IV.).
 Immigration, 918, 942.
 Impeachment of the President, 283; of President Johnson, 851.
 Impressment, Right of, asserted by Great Britain, 342; not expressly given up in the treaty of Ghent, 404.
 Imprisonment for debt, hardship of the system, 289; its gradual abolition, 469.

 The references are to Sections, not to pages.

Independence, Declaration of. See Declaration of Independence.

Independence, Mo., Mormon settlement near, 507.

Indiana conquered by Clarke and made a part of Virginia, 236; why Virginia claimed it, 273; made a Territory, 325; admission and history, 407 (see Ordinance of 1787, Appendix IV.).

Indianapolis, Ind., location, 407 (see Appendix V.).

Indians, the, why the name was given, 2; their tribes and names, 3; troubles with the Indians in Massachusetts, 51; in Connecticut, 63; throughout New England, 72-3; in New York and Canada, 77; in Virginia, 81, 85; in North Carolina, 99; in South Carolina, 106; peace with them in Pennsylvania, 127; the northwestern Indians join the French, 147; submit unwillingly to the English, 147; form a part of Burgoyne's army, 219; sack exposed American villages and are heavily punished by Sullivan, 233; experiences of settlers in Kentucky, 302; in Ohio, 309, 315; take sides with the British in 1812, 350, 362; their cruelty, 360; troubles with the Creeks, 396-98; with the Florida Indians, 418, 471; with the Georgia Indians, 438, 471; with the Illinois Indians, 471; with the Minnesota Indians, 728; with the Modocs and Sioux, 868; with the Nez Percés, 895.

Indian Territory, the, 3, 941.

Indies, East, assigned mainly to Portugal by Spain, 13.

Indies, West, explored by Columbus, 7; French possessions in, 231, 267; a refuge for many of the Tories, 262.

Indigo, cultivated in South Carolina, 102, 317.

Ingersoll, Jared, nominated for Vice-President, 356.

Insurgente, l' dahn(g)-sur-zhahnt', captured by the *Constellation*, 321.

Insurrection, in Massachusetts, 277; power of Congress to suppress, 282; the Whiskey Insurrection, 308.

Insurrection, negro, in South Carolina, 103; in New York, 119; in Virginia, 470; the general Southern feeling, 504, 649; John Brown's, 650.

Interest, reduction of, 903.

Interior, Department of the, establishment of, 299, 539.

Internal Improvements. See American System.

International Copyright, 943.

Inter-State Commerce Act, 923.

Iowa, part of the Louisiana purchase, 332; admission and history, 542 (see Appendix IV.).

Ireland, 828, 830.

Iron, iron-mines of Pennsylvania little known in 1790, 292; iron in Ohio, 334; in Missouri, 423; in Michigan, 462; in New Jersey, 528; in West Virginia, 757; in the United States, 952.

Iron-clad vessels, used during the Civil War on the western rivers, 700; previously built as experiments by Great Britain and France, 701; the first battle of iron-clads, 702-3; introduced into all navies, 704; at New Orleans, 708-9; used in attacking Fort Sumter, 748; capture of the *Atlanta*, 750; destruction of the *Albemarle*, 786; capture of the *Tennessee*, 789.

Iroquois (Ir-o-kwoi'), an Indian race, 3.

Irving, Washington, his literary work, 465.

Isabella, queen of Spain, 6.

Island Number Ten, capture of, 700.

Italy, dispute with, 943.

JACKSON, ANDREW, put in command of the Tennessee troops, 397; overthrows the Creeks, 398; seizes Pensacola, 400; completely defeats the British expedition against Louisiana, 402; seizes Florida, 418; nominated for President, but defeated, 433; nominated again by the Democrats and elected, 445; biography, 448; change of manners during his Administrations, 449; his foreign policy, 472; his political contests, 474; changes the civil service, 475; overthrows the Bank of the United States, 476-7; attacks the American System, 479; re-elected President, 483; resists Nullification, 489; his general success, 493.

Jackson, Gen. Thomas Jonathan (Stonewall), biography, 711; his raid on Banks, 717; returns to the Peninsula, 718; overwhelms Pope, 719; captures Harper's Ferry, 720; aids in defeating Burnside at Fredericksburgh, 722; killed at Chancellorsville, 729.

Jackson, Miss., held by Johnston, 737-8.

Jacksonville, Fla., taken by the Union forces, 784.

Jalapa (Hah-lah' pa), Mex., occupied by Scott, 564-5.

James I., king, charters two colonization companies, 25; difficulties with his Parliament, 31.

James II., king, his reign in England, 33; annoys the colonies, 35; takes away the charter of Massachusetts, 58; attempts to do so in the other New England colonies, 74.

James River, the, why the name was given, 36; McClellan's campaign on the James, 713-18; Grant's campaign on the James, 762-70, 805.

Jamestown, Va., settled, 26, 36, 80; destroyed, 86.

Japan, opened to American commerce, 606.


Jasper, Sergeant William, 204.

Java, the, taken by the *Constitution*, 69.


Jay, John, member of the Continental Congress, 194; concludes a treaty with Great Britain, 310.

☞ The references are to Sections, not to pages.


- Jefferson, Thomas, member of the Continental Congress, 194; author of the Declaration of Independence, 207; Secretary of State, 299; a leader of the Republican Party, 304; nominated for President, but defeated, 312; nominated again and elected, 324; biography, 328; change of manners during his Administrations, 329-30; acquires Louisiana, 332; orders the Oregon country to be explored, 333; re-elected President, 337; death, 439.
- Jersey, the, a notorious prison-ship, 233.
- Johnson, Andrew, Senator from Tennessee, 663; military governor of Tennessee, 693; elected Vice-President, 797; succeeds to the Presidency, 814; biography, 826; his feeling in regard to the States, 835; his plan of reconstruction, 837; vetoes the plan of Congress, but is defeated, 844; quarrels with Congress, 848; removes Stanton, 849; is impeached, but not convicted, 851.
- Johnson, Herschel V., nominated for Vice-President, 651.
- Johnson, Richard M., nominated for Vice-President and elected, 492; re-nominated and defeated, 511.
- Johnson, Sir William, defeats the French and Indians near Lake George, 149.
- Johnston, Gen. Albert Sidney, in command of the Confederate armies in the West, 689; killed at Shiloh, 694.
- Johnston, Gen. Joseph E., decides the battle of Bull Run, 681; in command of the Confederate army on the Peninsula, 714; wounded and retires, 716; succeeds Bragg in the West, 735; tries to aid Pemberton, 737; is driven out of Jackson, 738; takes command at Dalton, 747; his position, 760; biography, 773; his retreat from Dalton to Atlanta, 774; the reasons for it, 775; his removal, 776; recalled to service, 802; attacks Sherman, 803; surrenders, 808.
- Joliet (zho-le-ā'), Louis, finds the Mississippi, 139.
- Jones, Capt. Jacob, in command of the *Wasp*, 369.
- Jones, Capt. John Paul, in command of the *Ranger*, 241; of the *Richard*, 243.
- Judiciary Department, its duties, 284.
- Julian, George W., nominated for Vice-President, 598.
- KALB (kalb), BARON DE, arrives from Europe, 215; killed at Camden, 250.
- Kansas-Nebraska Act, its passage and consequences, 614.
- Kansas, becomes a Territory, 614; the two sections struggle for it, 618-19; the free-State settlers win, 620; admission and history, 631; influence of the Pacific Railway, 865 (see Appendix IV.).
- Kaskaskia (kas-kas'kē-a), Ill., a former French town, 142.
- Kearney (kar'nī), Gen. S. W., conquers New Mexico, 554.
- Kearsarge (ke'ar-sarj), the, sinks the *Alabama*, 792.
- Kenesaw (ken-e-saw') Mountain, battle of, 774.
- Kennebec (ken-e-bek') River, the, early settlement, 38; route to Canana, 201.
- Kent, James, a great American lawyer, 467.
- Kentucky, Boone's settlement, 160; followed by others, 236; the Territory belongs to Virginia, 273; admission, 300; history, 302; massacre of her troops, 360; sends men to defend New Orleans, 400; supports the Union, 674; Confederates in Kentucky, 689; they are driven out, 693; raided by Bragg, 696; by John Morgan, 741 (see Appendix IV.).
- Key, Francis S., writes the song "Star-Spangled Banner," 388.
- Key West, Fla., saved from the Confederates, 664.
- Kidd, Capt. Robert, a New York pirate, 118.
- Kieft (keeft), Sir William, governor of New York, 113.
- King, Rufus, nominated for Vice-President, 337, 346; for President, 414.
- King's Mountain, battle of, 251.
- Kingston, Can., taken from the French by the British, 151.
- Kingston, N. Y., 121.
- Kingston, R. I., scene of the swamp fight, 73.
- King, W. R., nominated for Vice-President, 598.
- Knox, Gen. Henry, Secretary of War, 299.
- Knoxville, Tenn., settlement, 303; besieged by the Confederates, 744, 747.
- "Know Nothings," 612.
- Kosciusko (kös-sī-us'kō), Thaddeus, arrives from Europe, 215.
- Kosztá (kos' tá), Martin, the case of, 605.
- Ku Klux Klan, 877.
- LABRADOR (lab-ra-dore'), failures to settle it, 11, 21.
- Lafayette (lah-fā-et'), Ind., 350.
- La Fayette, Marquis de, arrives from Europe, 215; attacks Newport, 231; fights Arnold and Phillips in Virginia, 253; prevents Cornwallis from escaping, 259; revisits the United States in old age, 428.
- Lancaster (langk'as-ter), Pa., 218.
- Land Companies, 144, 253.
- Lane, Joseph, nominated for Vice-President, 654.
- La Salle (lah sahl), Robert de, names Louisiana, 139.
- Laurens, Henry, member of the Continental Congress, 194.

 The references are to Sections, not to pages.


- Lava Beds**, scene of an Oregon Indian war, 630, 868.
- Lawrence**, Capt. James, in command of the *Hornet*, 371; of the *Chesapeake*, 373.
- Lawrence**, the, Perry's flag-ship, 382.
- Lawrence**, the river St., its discovery, 12; its acquisition by the French, 19; becomes part of the northern boundary of the United States, 261.
- Laws of the United States**, under the Constitution, 281; by whom they are made, 282; by whom they are executed, 283; by whom they are interpreted, 284; laws passed by Congress, 301 (see Congress); how affected by the veto, 478; by the question of slavery, 524.
- Lead**, at Galena, 420; in Missouri, 423; in Iowa, 528, 543; in Wisconsin, 543; in the United States, 952.
- Leavenworth** (lev'n-wurth), Kan., 554.
- Legal Tender**, meaning of the term, 725.
- Legislative department**, its duties and membership, 232.
- Leisler** (lise'ler), Jacob, hung for treason, 117.
- Leon**, Ponce de (pone'thā dā lā'one), discovers Florida, 10.
- Leopard**, the, insults the *Chesapeake*, 342.
- Levant** (lē-vant'), the, captured by the *Constitution*, 376.
- Lewes** (lu'ess), Del., destroyed, 385.
- Lexington, Ky.**, settlement, 302.
- Lexington, Mass.**, fight at, 184.
- Liberal Republicans**, why they left the Republican Party, 880; are joined by the Democrats and defeated, 881.
- Liliuokalani**, 943.
- Lincoln**, Abraham, nominated for President, 654; elected, 655; biography, 667; his disadvantages, 668; orders Fort Sumter to be provisioned, 669; calls for volunteers, 670; proclaims a blockade of Southern ports, 673; calls a special session of Congress, 680; begins the appointment of military governors, 693; issues the Emancipation Proclamation, 724; proclaims a day of thanksgiving for Union victories, 752; re-elected President, 797; the public estimation of him, 811; his assassination and death, 812; his funeral, 813.
- Lincoln**, Gen. Benjamin, in command of the American forces in South Carolina, 245; surrenders at Charleston, 248; receives the surrender of the British at Yorktown, 262.
- Literature**, in 1775, 190; from 1790 until 1830, 465; after 1830, 466; in its maturity, 637.
- Little Belt**, the, beaten by the *President*, 349.
- Lisbon** (liz'bun), 794.
- Livingston**, Robert, member of the Continental Congress, 207.
- Locke**, John, an English philosopher, 95.
- Locomotive engine**, Trevithick's and Stephenson's locomotives, 436; the new machine introduced into the United States, 449; Americans make their own locomotives, 450 (see Railways); possible use of electricity, 893.
- Logan**, John A., nominated for Vice-President, but defeated, 917.
- London Company**, the, chartered, 25; sends out colonists, 36; colonies formed from its territory, 37; loses its charter, 37, 84.
- London, Eng.**, 25, 202.
- Longfellow**, Henry Wadsworth, an American poet, 466.
- Long Island**, battle of, 210.
- Long Island, N. Y.**, claimed by Connecticut, but taken by New York, 114; held by the British, 232.
- Longstreet**, Gen. James, in command of the Confederate forces at Knoxville, 747.
- Lookout Mountain**, battle of, 744, 746.
- Lords**, House of, 31.
- Los Angeles** (lōs ahng'Hā-lēz), Cal., the last battle with the Mexicans in California, 553; terminus of the Southern Pacific Railroad, 866.
- Louisburgh** (loo'is-burg), a French stronghold on Cape Breton Island, 76; taken by the British, 151.
- Louisiana**, State of, admission and history, 406; secedes, 659; operations in the State, 706-10, 734, 739, 785; reconstructed and readmitted, 845; disorders in the State, 875; electoral votes disputed, 883; the Returning Board, 884; the decision, 887 (see Appendix IV.).
- Louisiana territory**, its original extent, 138; so named by La Salle, 139; granted to a French company, 141; France surrenders that portion east of the Mississippi to Great Britain, and it loses the name Louisiana, 157; France transfers the portion west of the Mississippi to Spain, and it keeps the name Louisiana, 158; Spain's territory of Louisiana becomes the western boundary of the United States, 264; transferred by Spain to France in 1800, 332; by France to the United States in 1803, 332; attacked without success by Great Britain, 399; slavery in Louisiana, 424; the territory divided by the Missouri Compromise line, 426 (see Compromise, Missouri); did not cover the Oregon country, 520; or Texas, 521.
- Louisville, Ky.**, settlement and growth, 302 (see Appendix V.).
- Lovejoy**, E. P., killed by a mob at Alton, 505.
- Lowell** (lo'el), Mass., growth, 457 (see Appendix V.).
- Lowell**, James Russell, his literary work, 667.

 The references are to Sections, not to pages.


- Lucifer-match, not known in 1790, 289; its invention, 455.
- Lumber, in Michigan, 462; in Wisconsin, 543.
- Lundy's Lane, battle of, 394.
- Lynchburgh (linch'burg), Va., attacked unsuccessfully from the Shenandoah valley, 765; cut off from Richmond by Sheridan, 805; Lee tries to reach it, 807.
- Lynn (lin), Mass., settlement, 53.
- Lyon. Gen. Nathaniel, in command of the Union forces in Missouri, 684.
- MACDONOUGH, Commodore THOMAS, in command of the American fleet on Lake Champlain, 383.
- Macedonian, the, taken by the *United States*, 369.
- Mackinaw (mak'in-aw), Mich., an early French fort, 142.
- Macon (ma'kon), Ga., 799.
- Madeira (ma-dee'ra), 369.
- Madison, James, one of the leaders in forming the Constitution, 279; elected President, 346; biography, 348; re-elected, 356.
- Magellan (ma-jel'lan), Fernando, discovers the way around South America, from Europe to the East Indies, 22.
- Maine, its Indian names, 3; sighted by Cortereal, 13; attempt to settle it, 38; forms part of the Plymouth Company's grant, 39; becomes a part of Massachusetts, 58; a large part of it conquered by the British in 1814-15, 386; admission and history, 422; boundary dispute with New Brunswick, 509; settled by treaty, 519 (see Appendix IV.).
- Maine Law, the, 597.
- Malvern (mawl'vern) Hill, battle of, 718.
- Manassas (ma-nas'sas) Junction, Va., 681, 714.
- Manhattan (man-hat'tan) Island, bought by the Dutch, 28.
- Manufactures, begun in New England, 79; efforts of Parliament to prohibit them, 71, 166; encouragement of manufactures by the colonies, 189; influence of the patent system, 313 (see Patents); decline of manufactures after 1815, 409; in order to revive them, Congress turns to Protection, 432 (see Protection); rise of manufacturing cities, 457, 634; manufactures in the United States, 963.
- Marietta (mā-rē-et'ta), O., settlement, 293, 334.
- Marion (mā'rī-un), Gen. Francis, 249.
- Marque (mark), letters of, 673.
- Marquesas (mar-kā-sas') Islands, 374.
- Marquette, Jacques (zhahk mar-ke't'), finds the Mississippi, 139.
- Marshall, John, a great lawyer and judge, 467.
- Maryland, part of the London Company's grant, 37; a proprietary col-
- Maryland—*Continued*.
ony, 43; its first proprietor and name, 89; settlement, 90; forces the transfer of the western territory to the United States, 271, 274; one of the "small" States in 1787, 280; holds to the Union, 674; operations in Maryland, 720, 730 (see Appendix IV.).
- Mason and Dixon's Line, 91.
- Mason, John, proprietor of New Hampshire, 59.
- Massachusetts, its Indian names, 3; the remnant of the Plymouth Company's grant, 27; originally two colonies, 39; a charter colony, 42; settlement of the Plymouth colony, 49; its leaders, 51; settlement of the Massachusetts Bay colony, 52; its leaders, 54; religious persecution, 55-6; witchcraft, 57; union of the two colonies, 58; takes part in the war against Philip, 73; loses the charter, 58, 74; captures Port Royal, 76; proposes the Stamp Act Congress, 169; resists commercial taxation, 172; resistance ceases to be peaceable, 174; Parliament declares the Massachusetts people rebels, 175; and attempts to alter the charter, 178; Congress promises to support Massachusetts, 180; state of the colony in 1775, 183; the Massachusetts people fight the British, 184-5; and besiege Boston, 186; stands second in population in 1775 and seventh in 1880, 187; operations in Massachusetts, 195-9; Massachusetts claims western territory, 272; cedes it to the United States, 275; rebellion in, 277; consents to the separation of Maine, 422; introduces the normal-school system, for training public-school teachers, 463 (see Appendix IV.).
- Matamoras (mat-a-mō'ras), Mex., 549, 557.
- Mather (math'er), Cotton, a Massachusetts minister, 57.
- Mauch Chunk (mawk chunk), Pa., 436.
- Maximilian, made emperor of Mexico, 758; taken and shot by the Mexicans, 829.
- Mayflower, the, 49.
- Maysville, Ky., settlement, 302.
- McClellan, Gen. George B., enters West Virginia, 678; biography, 679; called to command the Army of the Potomac, 682; transfers the Army of the Potomac to the Peninsula, 713; takes Yorktown and tries to make a junction with McDowell, 715; the army is divided by the Chickahominy, 716; McClellan loses connection with McDowell, 717; fights the Seven Days' Battles and reaches the James River, 718; recalled to aid Pope, 719; leads his army across Maryland to cover Baltimore, 720; fights the battle of Antietam, and is succeeded by Burnside, 721; nominated for President, but defeated, 797.

 The references are to Sections, not to pages.

- McClure, Capt. R. J. M., finds a "north-west passage," 22.
- McDowell, Gen. Irvin, in command of the Union forces at Bull Run, 681; of the force covering Washington, 715; cut off from McClellan, 717.
- McKinley Tariff Bill, 935.
- Meade, Gen. George G., in command of the Union forces at Gettysburgh, 731-2.
- Mechanicsville, battle of, 718.
- Mediation of Russia to make peace between Great Britain and the United States, 403; of Great Britain to make peace between France and the United States, 472.
- Memphis, Tenn., location, 303; visited by yellow-fever, 897.
- Meridian (mē-rīd'yan), Miss., occupied by Sherman, 762, 788.
- Merrimac, the, turned into a Confederate iron-clad, 701; destroys the Union fleet in Hampton Roads, 702; fights the *Monitor*, 703; results of the battle, 704; destruction of the *Merrimac*, 715.
- Mexico, its Indian empire, 2; Spanish adventure in it, 8; conquered by the Spaniards in 1521, 15; perhaps aimed at by Burr, 338; rebels against Spain and becomes an independent republic, 522; claims Texas, 545; claims the Nueces River as the western boundary of Texas, 546; her disadvantages in war, 549; war declared, 550; loses California, 553; and New Mexico, 554; Taylor's operations, 557-60; Scott's operations, 561-70; peace concluded, 572-3; Maximilian becomes emperor, 758; and is taken and shot by the Mexicans, 829.
- Michigan, claimed by Virginia, 273; covered by the Ordinance of 1787, 294; surrendered by Hull, 357; reconquered by Harrison, 362; made a Territory, 408; admission and history, 462; copper in, 529 (see Appendix IV.).
- Milan (mī-lan') Decree, the, 341.
- Militia, in the Revolutionary armies, 266; power of Congress over, 282; employed in the Whiskey Insurrection, 308; against the "Anti-renters," 531.
- Mill, the Old, at Newport, 4.
- Milledgeville, Ga., 781.
- Millen, Ga., 781.
- Miller, Col. James, 394.
- Mill Spring, battle of, 690.
- Milwaukee (mil-waw'kee), Wis., not on the map in 1835, 458; location, 543; growth, 634 (see Appendix V.).
- Minerals, mineral wealth of Tennessee, 303; of Missouri, 423; of the United States, 528, 552; of the South, 915.
- Minneapolis (mīn-nē-ap'ō-lis), Minn., not on the map in 1835, 458; location and growth, 629; terminus of the Northern Pacific Railroad, 866.
- Minnesota, part of the Louisiana purchase, 332; admission and history, Minnesota—Continued.
629; Sioux war in, 728 (see Appendix IV.).
- Mint, the, established, 301; first coins issued, 313.
- Minuit (min'u-it), Peter, governor of New Netherland, 29; of Delaware, 113.
- Minute-men, in Massachusetts, 183; in the Revolutionary armies, 266.
- Missionary Ridge, battle of, 746.
- Mississippi, claimed by Georgia, 272; ceded to the United States, 275; made a Territory, 335; part of the Southwest Territory, 396; admission and history, 419; secedes, 659; operations in, 695, 698, 734-8, 762, 788, 801; refuses the first terms of reconstruction, 845; electoral votes not received in 1868, 852; reconstructed and re-admitted, 871; disorders in, 875 (see Appendix IV.).
- Mississippi River, the, crossed by De Soto, 15; upper part found by Marquette and Joliet, 139; its mouth found by d'Iberville, 141; becomes the boundary between Spanish Louisiana and the British colonies, 157-8; some of the States claim to extend west to the Mississippi, 272; treaty with Spain as to its use, 316; steamboat used on it, 408, 456; Indians removed beyond it, 437; fortified by the Confederates, 676; opened up as far south as Memphis, 695; gunboat operations on it, 700; opened up throughout, except at Vicksburgh and Port Hudson, 710; the completion of the work falls to Grant, 734; he operates at first on the west side of the river, 736; afterward on the east side, 737; Vicksburgh and Port Hudson surrender and the river is opened, 738-9; results, 752, 753; surrender of the Confederate forces west of the river, 809; difficulties in its navigation, 898, 912.
- Missouri, part of the Louisiana purchase, 332; admission and history, 423; manner of its admission, 426; State officers secessionists, 674; operations in Missouri, 684, 686, 699 (see Appendix IV.).
- Missouri Compromise. See Compromise, Missouri.
- Mobile (mo-beel'), Ala., originally an Indian town, 15; settled by the French, 141; location and importance, 421; one of the last Confederate ports, 783; how Farragut forced his way into the bay, 789; surrender of the city, 801.
- Modoc War, the, 868.
- Mohawk River, the, 220.
- Mohawks, an Indian tribe, 3.
- Molino del Rey (mō-lē'no del rā), battle of, 569.
- Money or Currency, tobacco, 82; rice, 102; paper, 234, 725; coin, 282; State paper, 287; lack of money in 1812, 355.

 The references are to Sections, not to pages.

- Monitor*, the, built by Ericsson, 701; her battle with the *Merrimac*, 703; its effects on naval construction, 704.
- Monk's Corner, battle of, 248.
- Monmouth (mon'muth), battle of, 229.
- Monongahela (niō-non-ga-hē'la) River, the, 145, 944.
- Monroe Doctrine, the, its announcement, 427; violation by France, 758; the United States again enforces it, 829.
- Monroe (mun-ro'), James, elected President, 414; biography, 416; re-elected, 417.
- Montana, 927.
- Montcalm (mont-kahm'), Marquis de, in command of the French forces in Canada, 150; defends Ticonderoga, 151; draws all his forces to defend Quebec, 153; defeat and death, 154.
- Monterey (mon-tě-rā'), Cal., 553.
- Monterey, Mex., occupied by Taylor, 557.
- Montgomery, Ala., location, 421; capital of the Confederate States, 660; capital changed to Richmond, 676.
- Montgomery, Gen. Richard, killed at Quebec, 201.
- Montreal (mont-rē-awl'), a French town, 76, 142; taken by the English, 155; taken and lost by the Americans, 201; an object of American attack, 358.
- Monts (mawn(g)), de, a successful French colonizer, 20.
- Morgan, Gen. Daniel, in command of the Americans at the Cowpens, 252.
- Morgan, John, a Confederate cavalry officer, 741.
- Morgan, William, his abduction and its consequences, 482.
- Mormons, the, their origin and settlement in Illinois, 507; remove to Utah, 638; still resist the laws against polygamy, 913; renounce polygamy, 941.
- Morris, Robert, a member of the Continental Congress, 194.
- Morristown, N. J., the American headquarters during the latter part of the Revolution, 213, 230, 240. [527.]
- Morse, S. F. B., and the electric telegraph, 931. [536.]
- Morton, Levi P., elected Vice-President, 931. [536.]
- Morton, Dr. W. T. G., and anæsthetics, 637.
- Motley, John Lothrop, his literary work, 637.
- Moultrie (mole'trī), William, defends Charleston against the British, 204.
- Mound-builders, the, a race which preceded the Indians, 2, 529, 952.
- Mount Hope, R. I., King Philip's headquarters, 73.
- Mount Vernon, Va., Washington's home, 296, 311, 326.
- Murfreesboro (mur-freez-bur'ro), battle of, 697.
- NAPOLÉON BONAPARTE. See France.
- Narragansett (nar-ra-gan'set), an Indian name, 3.
- Narvaez (nar-vah'eth), a Spanish explorer, 10.
- Nashville, battle of, 779.
- Nashville, Tenn., settlement, 303; taken by the Union forces, 693.
- Natchez (nach'ez), Miss., a former French post, 142; Burr arrested there, 338; in the Southwest Territory, 396; Tennessee volunteers marched thither, 397.
- National Banks, their superiority to the old State banks, 496; institution of the system, 725.
- National Party. See Greenback Party.
- National Republicans, 444, 480 (see Whig Party).
- National Road, appropriations for it, 431.
- Naturalization, position of the United States, 604.
- Nautilus*, the, taken by the *Peacock* after the treaty of peace, and restored to the British, 376.
- Nauvoo, Ill., the Mormon settlement, 507.
- Naval School, the, established at Annapolis, 538.
- Navigation Acts, the, their passage and purpose, 71; aimed particularly at Virginia, 84; the Board of Trade tries to enforce them, 135; they are evaded or disobeyed, 161, 166; why the colonies submitted to them, 171; violent attempts to enforce them, 189.
- Navy, the, the privateer navy of the colonies in 1763, 156; Congress attempts to form one, 194; successes of the vessels built, 241; the poverty of Congress defeats the attempt, 242; purchase of vessels in France, 243; under the Constitution, Congress regulates the navy, 282; and the President is its commander-in-chief, 283; the poverty of the United States still interferes with its navy, 314; France forces Congress to increase the navy, 321; its success, 321; the navy chastises the Barbary States, 339, 340; why the Republicans did not favor a navy, 343; the navy in 1812, 352; very little expected from it, 366; its brilliant successes, 367-378; their effects, 370; the lake navies and their success, 379-383; first attempts to use torpedoes and steam-vessels, 385; subsequent effects of the naval successes, 404; the navy brings the Barbary States to a lasting peace, 412; change of the navy by the introduction of steam war-vessels, 454; a naval force occupies Charleston harbor, 489; the navy occupies the Pacific coast of Mexico, 553; and the coast of the Gulf of Mexico, 563; rescues Koszta, 605; opens up Japan, 606; bombards Greytown, 607; its officers generally hold to the Union in 1861, 663; attempts to provision Fort Sumter, 669; blockades the Southern ports, 673; captures the forts at Hat-teras Inlet, Port Royal, and Ship Isl-

 The references are to Sections, not to pages.

Navy--*Continued.*

and, 685; takes Mason and Slidell, 687; a Western river navy formed, 700; the wooden vessels give way to iron-clads, 704; the navy captures Roanoke Island, 705; forces its way up the Mississippi, 707-8; takes New Orleans, 709; controls the James River, 715; pursues Confederate privateers, 727; runs the Vicksburgh batteries and ferries Grant's army over the Mississippi, 737; attacks Fort Sumter without success, 748; captures the *Atlanta*, 750; blows up the *Albemarle*, 786; joins in the attacks on Fort Fisher, 787; destroys the Confederate fleet at Mobile, 789; takes the *Alabama*, 792; the *Florida*, 793; and the *Georgia*, 794; size of the navy during the Civil War, 821; in 1889, 922, 937.

Nebraska, part of the Louisiana purchase, 332; admission and history, 833; influenced by the Pacific Railroads, 866 (see Appendix IV.).

Nevada (nē-vah'da), part of the Mexican cession, 574; silver discovered in it, 635; admission and history, 800; influence of its silver production on the business of the world, 899 (see Appendix IV.).

New Albion, Drake's name for western North America, 16.

New Amsterdam, the Dutch name for New York City, 28.

Newark, N. J., settlement, 123 (see Appendix V.).

New Bern, N. C., settlement, 97.

New Brunswick, N. J., Washington retreats through it, 211; becomes the British headquarters, 214.

New Brunswick, province of, boundary dispute with Maine, 509.

New England, when the name was given, 38; its colonies, 39 (see Massachusetts, New Hampshire, Connecticut, Rhode Island, Vermont, Maine; the religious feeling of its people, 55; their dealings with the Quakers, 56; the New England Union, 70; their commercial difficulties (see Navigation Acts); with the Indians, 72-3; with Andros, 74; with the French, 75-7; growth and character, 78-9; their first colleges, 161; its colonies join in the siege of Boston, 186; slavery decays in it, 191; military operations in it during the Revolution, 195-9, 204, 208, 215, 221, 231, 244, 246, 260; holds to the Federal Party, 339; dissatisfaction with the Embargo, 344; and with the War of 1812, 355; its coast blockaded, 384; part of it taken by the British, 386; the Hartford Convention, 390-1; dislike to the Mexican War, 551.

Newfoundland (nu'fund-land), its fisheries, 11, 12; Gilbert visits it, 21; Calvert tries to colonize it, 89; the right to the fisheries secured to Americans, 264; disputes arbitrated, 830, 924.

New Hampshire (hamp'shur), part of the Plymouth Company's grant, 39; a royal colony, 44; assigned to John Mason, 59; history, 60; one of the "small" States in 1787, 280; the ninth State to ratify the Constitution, 287 (see Appendix IV.).

New Haven (hāvn), Conn., at first a separate colony, 39; settlement, 64; joined to Connecticut, 65; plundered by the British, 246 (see Appendix V.).

New Jersey, part of the Dutch territory, 28; taken from the Dutch by the English, 113; becomes a royal colony, 122; settlement and history, 123-4; Washington retreats through it, 211; the British occupy a part of it, 214; the British retreat across it, 229; send plundering expeditions into it, 232; one of the "small" States in 1787, 280 (see Appendix IV.).

New Jersey, College of, 124.

New London, Conn., attacked by Arnold, 260.

New Madrid (mad'rid), Mo., 700

New Mexico, explored by the Spaniards, 14; taken from Mexico, 554; part of it claimed by Texas, 586; organized as a Territory, 589; applies for admission, 941.

New Netherlands, settled by the Dutch, 28; taken by the English, 113.

New Orleans (or'lē-anz), La., settled by the French, 141 (see Louisiana); a Spanish city in 1795, 316; the British expedition against it, 396; the city fortified, 400; the expedition defeated, 401-2; growth of the city, 406; importance of the city to the Confederates, 706; surrender to Farragut, 709; the yellow-fever epidemic, 897; exposition, 915 (see Appendix V.); mob, 943.

Newport, Capt. Christopher, an agent of the London Company, 36.

Newport, R. I., the Old Mill, 4; settlement, 66; taken by the British, 215; attacked by the Americans and French, 231; held by the British, 232; evacuated by the British, 248; arrival of a French army, 258.

Newspapers, in 1760, 161; in 1775, 190; in 1790, 290; the first in the Northwest, 315; changes about 1835, 464; improvements in printing and news-collecting, 537; in 1860, 637; in 1890, 959.

New York City, settled by the Dutch, 28; the negro plot, 119; growth of the city, 120; meeting of the Stamp Act Congress, 169; Washington arrives at, 209; taken by the British, 210; part of the British leave it for Philadelphia, 216; return to it, 229; held by the British for the rest of the war, 230; evacuated by them, 265; the city in 1787, 289; inauguration of the new government, 297; ceases to be the capital, 301; fear of an attack on the city, 385; the "great fire," and the Croton Aqueduct, 457; World's Fair, 601; the Clearing-house, 602; the Brooklyn

☞ The references are to Sections, not to pages.

New York City—Continued.

Bridge, 603; the Central Park and Astor Library, 640; the draft riots, 756; the elevated railroads, 894 (see Appendix V.).

New York State, settled by the Dutch as New Netherlands, 28; conquered by the English, 40, 113; a royal colony, 44; its name changed to New York, 113; size of the colony, 114; reconquered by Holland, but given back, 115; the patroon system, 116; history under the English, 117-121; the French driven out of northwestern New York, 151; refuses to obey Parliament, 170; Parliament attempts to punish it, 172; the road into Canada, 200; the Tories in New York, 208; Burgoyne's expedition, 219-223; the whole State, except New York City and part of Long Island, held by the Americans for the rest of the war, 230; the western boundary, 272; cession of the western claims, 275; a "small State" in 1787, 280; ratifies the Constitution, 287; the State in 1790, 292; in 1812, 354; military operations in the State, 363-5, 381, 383, 392; western New York after the war, 408; the Erie Canal, 430; attempt to aid the rebellion in Canada, 508; the "anti-rent" disturbances, 531; the electoral vote of the State in 1844, 532; in 1848, 579; its electoral vote in 1884 and 1888, 917, 931 (see Appendix IV.).

Nez Percés (*nā pare'sāz*), an Indian tribe, 895.

Niagara, the, Perry's new flag-ship, 382.

Niagara, the, captures the *Georgia*, 794. Nicaragua, 23.

Nichols (*nik'uls*), Col. Richard, first English governor of New York, 113.

Non-Intercourse Act, the, takes the place of the Embargo, 345; revived against Great Britain, 349.

Norfolk (*nor'fuk*), Va., attacked by the British, 204, 246, the southern end of the Confederate line, 676; a Confederate navy yard, 701, 715.

Normal-schools, their institution, 463.

Norristown, Pa., 218.

North Carolina, possibly sighted by Cabot, 11; Raleigh's attempts to colonize, 23; part of the London Company's grant, 37; a royal colony, 44, 96 (see Carolina); settlement of North Carolina, 97; its government, 98; manner of life of its people, 100; military operations in it during the Revolution, 251, 252, 254; western claims, 272, 303; ceded to the United States, 275; refuses at first to ratify the Constitution, 287; ratifies it in 1790, 300; secedes, 674; one of the Confederate States, 676; military operations in, 685, 705, 786, 787, 802-3, 808; reconstructed and readmitted, 845 (see Appendix IV.).

North Dakota, 925.

North Point, battle of, 388.

Northmen, the, 4.

Northwest Passage, the, anxiety of our forefathers to find it, 22; what has taken its place, 864.

Northwest Territory, the, claimed by Virginia for herself, 273; by the other States for the United States, 271; ceded to the United States, 275; unsettled in 1786, 292; settlement begun by land companies, 293; Congress arranges a government for it, 294; the Indian title got rid of, 309; the British possession abandoned, 310; the Indians defeated, 350; its population in 1812, 353; roads, 354; the whole Territory surrendered by Hull, 357; regained by the Americans, 362.

Norwalk (*nor'wak*). Conn., attacked by the British, 215, 246.

Norway, 4.

Nova Scotia, settled by the French, 20 (see Acadia); taken and held by the English, 75, 76, 149; a refuge for the Tories, 267.

Nueces (*noo-ā'sēz*) River, the, 546.

Nullification, 486-9.

OCEAN steamers, one crosses the Atlantic in 1819, 335; no more until 1838, 454.

Ocean telegraph, first failure, 641; final success, 830.

Office-holders, Federal, discharged under Jackson for not belonging to the successful party, 475; the Tenure of Office Act, 849; the natural results of the system, 879; reforms in it, 910.

Ogdensburgh, N. Y., 142, 364.

Ogeechee (*ō-gē'chē*) River, the, 781.

Oglethorpe (*ō-gl'thorp*). Gen. James, the founder of Georgia, 107; death, 110.

Ohio, claimed by Virginia, 273; settlement, 292, 315; under the Ordinance of 1787, 294; the Indian title got rid of, 309; growth of the State, 314; difficulties of early settlement in it, 315; admission and history, 334 (see Appendix IV.).

Ohio Company, of 1750, 144; of 1787, 293.

Oil. See Petroleum

Okechobee (*o-lē-cho'bē*), battle of, 471.

"Old Dominion," the, a name for Virginia, 84.

Oklahoma 941.

"Old Hickory," a name for Jackson, 448.

"Old Ironsides," a name for the *Constitution*, 367.

Oliver, Andrew, a Massachusetts loyalist, 172.

Olustee (*o-lus'tē*), battle of, 784.


Omaha (*o'ma-haw*), Neb., 864.

Omnibus Bill, the, 588.

Onaidas (*o-ni'daz*), an Indian tribe, 3.

Onondagas (*o-nōn-daw'gaz*), an Indian tribe, 3.

Orders in Council, adopted, 341; not openly surrendered by the treaty of Ghent, 404.

 The references are to Sections, not to pages.

Ordinance of 1787, the, 204.

Oregon (or é gôn' (see Oregon Country), admission and history, 630; influenced by the Pacific railroads, 865; Indian war in it, 868 (see Appendix IV.).

Oregon Country, the, explored by Lewis and Clarke, 333; Americans begin to settle in it, 519; Great Britain claims it, 520; the claim compromised, 544.

Orinoco (o-rí-no'ko) River, the, 9.

Oriskany (o-ris'ka-ní), battle of, 221.

Osceola (ös-e-o'la), a Florida Indian chief, 471.

Ossabaw Sound, 782.

Ostend (ös-tend') Circular, the, 610.

Otis (o'tis), James, a Massachusetts orator, 168; becomes insane, 172.

PACIFIC RAILROADS, Congress orders surveys in 1853, 596; the work on the Central begun in 1862 and finished in 1869, 864; the Northern and Southern Pacific, 866; effects of the system on the Pacific coast, 590; on Kansas, 631; on the States of the West, 865; scandals connected with it, 879.

Packenham (pak'n-am), Sir Edward, in command of the British expedition against New Orleans, 401; defeated and killed, 402.

Paine (pane), Thomas, author of *Common Sense*, 205.

Palo Alto (pah'lo ahl'to), battle of, 548.

Palos (pah'los), Columbus's point of departure, 7.

Panama (pan-a mah') Canal, the failure of the attempted, 924.

Panic, meaning of the term, 497; the panic of 1837, 498; of 1857, 627; of 1873, 862, 879, 891.

Paper Money or Currency, danger of excessive issues, 234; excessive issues by the Continental Congress, 234, 236; State paper, 287; State banks, 496; results of their issues, 497; paper in the Civil War, 725; in the Confederacy, 753, 795; in the North and West, 754; demands of the Greenback Party, 882; abandonment of an exclusively paper currency, 902.

Parliament, the governing body of England, 31; abolishes the monarchy for a time, 46; defects of its membership, 163; claims the right to tax the colonies, 164; gives no representation to the colonies, 165; its regulation of the colonies, 166; passes the Stamp Act, 167; repeals it, 170; still refuses representation to the colonies, 171; lays a commercial tax on the colonies, 172; provoked with the resistance to it, 175; reduces the tax to a tea tax, 176; tries to punish resistance, 178; war between Parliament and Congress, 193; proposes conciliation, 203; not mentioned in the Declaration of Independence, 207; offers representation to the colonies, 228; compels the king to make peace with the United States, 263.

Parties, formation of parties in 1787, 286; only one party left in 1789, 304; first great change in party control of the government, 329; only one party left in 1816, 413, 433; it begins to split, 440; divides into two parties, 444; party excitement under Jackson, 474; party changes about 1850, 594; re-formation of parties, 616; the parties in 1860, 654; on the war, 797; on reconstruction, 852; on support of reconstructed governments, 881; decadence of party differences, 882; on Free Trade and Protection, 917, 929, 945 (see party names: Democratic, Republican, Federalist, Whig, National Republican, Liberty, Free-Soil, American, Liberal Republican, Greenback, People's Party).

Patents, issue of, 313; their effect on invention, 336; on the wealth of the country, 636.

Paterson, N. J., growth from manufactures, 457 (see Appendix V.).

Patriot War, the, in Canada, 508.

Patroons, the system introduced by the Dutch, 116; its effects in the Revolution, 208; end of the system, 531.

Peacock, the, an English war-vessel, sunk by the *Hornet*, 371; an American war-vessel, takes the *Epervier*, 375; and the *Nautilus*, 376.

Pea Ridge, battle of, 699.

Peekskill, N. Y., the end of Washington's retreat from New York, 210; Lee left in charge of it, 211; too strong for the British, 219; Washington holds it throughout the war, 230.

Peel, Sir Robert, and the police, 640.

Pelican, the, takes the *Argus*, 373.

Pemberton, Gen. J. C., in command at Vicksburgh, 735; surrenders to Grant, 738.

Pendleton, George H., nominated for Vice-President, 797.

Penguin, the, taken by the *Hornet*, 376.


Peninsular Campaign, the, 715-18.

Penitentiaries, a reform in the punishment of criminals, 469.

Penn, William, obtains a grant of land for a colony, 125; comes to America and settles Philadelphia, 127; settles the government, 128; connection of his family with the colony and State, 129.

Pennsylvania, soil conquered from the Dutch, 40; a proprietary colony, 43; granted to Penn, 125; settlement of the colony, 127; the government settled, 128; growth of the colony, 131; Braddock's march through the colony, 149; military operations during the Revolution, 211, 217-18, 233; insurrection in the western part of the State 308; coal, 292, 336; railroads, 436; iron, 292, 528; military operations during the Civil War, 730-2; railroad riots, 896, 944 (see Appendix IV.).

Pennsylvania Hall, destroyed by a mob, 505.

 The references are to Sections, not to pages.

- Pennsylvania, University of, founded, 130.
- Pensacola (pen-sa-ko'la), Fla., seized by Jackson, 400, 418; fort saved, 664.
- Pensions, to Revolutionary soldiers, 235; to Union soldiers, 822; amount of, 823; vetoes, 919; Dependent Pension Bill, 937.
- "People's Party," 917, 945.
- Peoria (pe-o'ri-a), Ill., a French post, 142; taken by the Americans, 362; location and growth, 420.
- Peorias, an Indian tribe, 3.
- Pequots (pe'kwotz), a Connecticut tribe of Indians, 63.
- Perry, Commodore M. C., opens up Japan, 606.
- Perry, Commodore O. H., captures a British fleet off Sandusky, on Lake Erie, 382.
- Perryville, battle of, 696.
- Perth Amboy, N. J., settlement of, 123.
- Peru (pe-roo'), an Indian empire, 2; conquered by Spain, 8.
- Petersburgh, Va., threatened by Butler, 765; reached by Grant, 769; its fortifications, 770; the mine experiment, 771; besieged by Grant, 804; captured, 806.
- Petition, right of, impeded by Congress, 506.
- Petroleum, not known in 1790, 289; in Ohio, 334; in Missouri, 423; in Pennsylvania, 528, 635; in West Virginia, 757.
- Philadelphia, settlement, 127; growth, 130; the taxed tea, 177; First Continental Congress, 180; Second Continental Congress, 194; abandoned by Congress, 212; Howe moves toward it by sea, 216; takes it, 217; makes it his winter-quarters, 217; Clinton, his successor, leaves it for New York, 229; the revolted troops set out for it, 240; Washington and Rochambeau pass through it, 259; the Convention of 1787, 280; the city in 1787, 289; time of travel to New York, 291; made the national capital for ten years, 301; the Bank of the United States and the mint are located at Philadelphia, 301; capital removed to Washington, 325; slavery riot, 505; threatened by Lee, 720; relieved by the battle of Antietam, 721; again threatened by Lee, 730; relieved by the battle of Gettysburgh, 732; the Centennial celebration, 870 (see Appendix V.).
- Philadelphia, the, captured and burned, 340.
- Philip, King, his struggle against the whites, 72.
- Phillips, Gen., in command of the British forces in Virginia, 253.
- Phæbe (fē'bē), the, aids in capturing the *Essex*, 374.
- Pickens, Col. Andrew, an American officer in South Carolina, 246.
- Pierce (peerse or purse), Franklin, elected President, 598; biography, 600.
- Pike's Peak, discovery of gold, 635.
- Pilgrims, the, the first settlers of Plymouth, 50.
- Pinckney, Charles Cotesworth, nominated for President, 324, 337, 346.
- Pirates in New York, 118.
- Pitcairn (pit'karn), Major John, at Lexington, 184.
- Pitt, William, his management of the French and Indian War, 151; favors colonial representation in Parliament, 170.
- Pittsburgh Landing, battle of, 694.
- Pittsburgh, Pa., unsettled in 1745, 131; originally a fort of the Ohio Company, taken by the French, 146; retaken by the English and renamed Pittsburgh, 151; the Whiskey Insurrection, 308; the first steamboat on the Ohio River, 335; the railroad riots, 896 (see Appendix V.).
- Plattsburgh, battle of, 383.
- Pleasant Hill, battle of, 785.
- Ploughs, in 1787, 290 (see Agricultural Machinery).
- Plymouth (plim'uth), part of the Plymouth Company's grant, 39; location and settlement, 49; history, 50; leaders, 51; union with Massachusetts Bay, 58.
- Plymouth Company, the, chartered, 25; loses its charter, 38.
- Plymouth, N. C., the *Albemarle* blown up, 786.
- Pocahontas (po-ka-hon'tas), daughter of Powhatan, 80.
- Poe, Edgar A., his literary work, 466.
- Poictiers (poi-teerz'), the, captures the *Wasp* and *Frolic*, 369.
- Police, a new system introduced, 640.
- Polk (poke), James K., elected President, 532; biography, 535; orders Taylor to the Rio Grande, 546; blamed by the Whigs for the Mexican War, 551; death, 593.
- Polygamy, having more than one wife at the same time, practised by the Mormons, 507; contrary to law in the Territories, 628; not suppressed, 913; renounced, 911.
- Pontiac (pon'ti-ak), an Indian chief, 155.
- Pope's Campaign, 719.
- Population. See Census; Appendix IV., V.
- Porter, Admiral D. D., at New Orleans, 787.
- Porter, Capt. David, in command of the *Essex*, 367, 374.
- Port Hudson, La., its fortifications, 710; its surrender, 739.
- Port Royal, N. S., a French stronghold, taken and kept by the English, 76.
- Port Royal, S. C., the French colony, 19; reached by an English colony, 101; captured by the Union fleet, 685; a harbor for the blockaders, 686; an expedition sent from it to Florida, 784.
- Portsmouth, N. H., settlement, 59.

 The references are to Sections, not to pages.

Portsmouth, R. I., settlement, 66.
Portsmouth, Va., plundered by the British, 246.

Portugal, explores the west coast of Africa, 5; refuses aid to Columbus, 6; agreement with Spain, 13; pays for injuries to American commerce, 472.

Post-office, in the colonies, 166; under direction of Congress, 282; the Post-office Department, 299; regulated by law, 301; increase of, 459.

Potomac (po-to'mak) River, the, the first Maryland settlement, 90; its upper country unsettled in 1750, 145; the Union line in 1861, 677; Banks driven up to it, 717; Lee and McClellan cross it into Maryland, 720; recross it into Virginia, 721; Lee again crosses it, 730; recrosses it into Virginia, 733.

Potomac, Army of the, organized, 682; transferred to the Peninsula, 713; divided by the Chickahominy, 715; fights the Seven Days' Battles, 718; transferred back to the front of Washington, 719; fights the battle of Antietam, 721; Fredericksburgh, 722; Chancellorsville, 729; Gettysburgh, 732; Grant takes command, 761; fights the battles of the Wilderness, 766; besieges Petersburg, 770-1, 804; takes it, 806; pursues and captures Lee's army, 807; is reviewed at Washington, 810.

Pottawatomies (pot-a-wot' a-miz), an Indian tribe, 3.

Powhatan (pow-ha-tan'), an Indian chief of Virginia, 80.

Prescott, Col. William, in command of Bunker Hill, 195.

Prescott, William H., his literary work, 466.

President, the, his legislative power, 282; executive powers, 283; appointing power, 284 (see Tenure of Office Act, Civil Service); mode of election, 298, 920; veto power, 478; succession, 909, 920 (see Impeachment). (For list of Presidents see Table of Contents.)

President, the, disciplines the *Little Belt*, 349; captured by a British fleet, 376.

Presque Isle (presk eel), Pa., a French post, 145.

Press Associations, introduced, 537.

Prima Vista (prē'ma vees'ta), 11.

Princeton College, founded, 124.

Princeton, N. J., Washington passes through it in retreat, 211; returns and takes it, 213.

Printing, in Virginia, 88; in Philadelphia, 130; first press in America, 161; improvements in, 537.

Prisoners of war, their sufferings in the Revolution, 293; in Confederate prisons, 799; deaths, 822.

Prisons, the former brutal system, 469; reformation, 473.

Prison-ships, 233.

Privateers, in 1760, 156; in the Revolution, 193, 241, 244; definition, 241; re-

Privateers--Continued.

fusal to allow France to fit out, 307; in the War of 1812, 377.

Privateers, Confederate, why they were allowed to make captures, 673, 675; their destruction of American commerce, 727, 759, 791; capture of three of them, 792-4 (see Alabama Claims).

Proctor, Gen. Henry, in command of the British forces in the West, 360-1; defeated, 362.

Prohibition Party, 917, 945.

Proprietors, 43.

Protection, why it was first demanded, 409 (see Free Trade, Tariff); definition, and argument for, 432; Congress adopts it in 1824, 432; supported by Clay and Adams (see American System); opposed by Jackson, 479, 487; supported by the Whig Party, 480; opposed by the South, 443, 484, 651; gradually abandoned by Congress after 1833, 490; again adopted in 1842, 517; again abandoned in 1846, 540; resumed in 1861, 754; still maintained, 916; attitude of the parties in 1888, 924; in 1892, 945.

Providence, R. I., part of the Plymouth Company's grant, 39; settlement, 66; the *Gaspée* affair, 174 (see Appendix V.).

Public Schools, provision for them in Ordinance of 1787, 294; established in the States, 463, 473; in 1860, 638; in 1880, 959; importance of the system, 966.

Puebla (poo-a'blah), Mex., taken by Scott, 571.

Puget's (pu'jet's) Sound, terminus of the Northern Pacific Railroad, 866.

Pulaski (pu-las'ki), Casimir, joins the American army, 215; death, 245.

Puritans the, support the Commonwealth, 32; not separated from the Church of England, 52; found the colony of Massachusetts Bay, 52.

QUAKERS, the, why they were persecuted in Massachusetts, 56; Penn obtains a colony for them, 125; why they had been persecuted in England, 126.


Quebec (kwē-bek'), attempt to settle it, 19; successful, 20; a French stronghold, 76; taken by Wolfe, 154; repulses the Americans, 201.

Quebec Act, the, 178.

Queenstown Heights, battle of, 358.

RAIDS, of Jackson and Stuart, 717; of Morgan, 741; against Sherman, 775.

Railroads, how they have given value to the Louisiana purchase, 332; to Illinois, 420; put an end to the National Road, 431; Trevithick's and Stephenson's engines, 436; their effect on the American people, 449; American engines, 450; increase of railroads, 451; their advantages, 452; use of anthracite coal, 452; assist immigration, 459 (see Pacific Railroads); effects in improving roads and bridges, 603; the panic of

 The references are to Sections, not to pages.

Railroads—Continued.

1857, 627; effects of railroads on Kansas, 631; increase in thirty years, 633; effects on the West, 634; defects in the South, 642; damage in the Civil War, 753, 805 (see Raids); railroad-building in Grant's first administration, 861, panic of 1873, 862; the Pacific Railroad system, 864-6; end of the panic, 891; elevated railroads, 894; railroad strikes and riots, 896; railroads in the United States, 957.

Raisin, battle of the river, 360.

Raleigh (raw/ll), Sir Walter, attempts to colonize North Carolina, 23.

Randolph, Edmund, Attorney-General, 299.

Randolph, John, on the terrors of slave insurrection, 649.

Randolph, Peyton, a member of the Continental Congress, 194.

Ranger, the, an American war-vessel, 241.

Rapidan (răp-ld-an') River, the, 760.

Rawdon, Lord, in command of the British in South Carolina, 255.

Reaping-machine, 336, 455.

Reciprocity, 935.

Reconstruction, its difficulties, 834; the President's plan, 835-7; the treatment of the freedmen, 839; Southern members not admitted to Congress, 840; Tennessee reconstructed and readmitted, 841; the Republicans retain control of Congress, 842; form their plan of reconstruction, 843; and pass it, 844; six additional States reconstructed and readmitted, 845; the four remaining States reconstructed and readmitted, 871; disorder in the reconstructed States, 873-5; use of Federal troops to suppress it, 876; what reconstruction had done for the freedmen, 878; the parties on reconstruction 880-1; the use of Federal troops abandoned, 888; how far the plan of reconstruction has failed, 891.

Red River, the, visited by De Soto, 15; by Banks, 785.

Regulators, the, fight Governor Tryon, 98.

Reid, Capt. S. C., in command of the *General Armstrong*, 377.

Reid, Whitelaw, 945.

Reindeer, the, taken by the *Wasp*, 375.

Remonetization of silver, 901.

Removal of the deposits, 477.

Representation of the States in Congress, 280, 282.

Representation, slave, adopted into the Constitution, 285; effects, 524.

Representatives, House of, legislative powers 282; powers of impeachment, 283; elects a President, 324, 433; impeaches Johnson, 851.

Reprisal, the, an American war-vessel, 241.

Republican Party (of 1792), the, its formation, 304; its purposes, 305; opposes the Alien and Sedition laws & 3

Republican Party—Continued.

elects Jefferson and Burr, 324; obtains control of the government in 1801, 330; re-elects Jefferson, 337; opposes a navy, 343; successful in 1808, 346; in 1812, 356; in 1816, 414; the only party left in 1820, 417 (see Democratic Party).

Republican Party (of 1856), the, its formation, 616; obtains control of the House of Representatives, 621; defeated in 1856, 623; its attitude in 1860, 654; successful in 1860, 655; in 1864, 797; its attitude on reconstruction, 840; successful in 1868, 852; in 1872, 880; in 1876-7, 887; in 1888, 924; defeated in 1884, 917; in 1892, 945.

Repudiation, meaning of the term, 501.

Resaca de la Palma (ră-sah'kah dā lah pahl'mah), battle of, 549.

Resaca, battle of, 774.

Restoration, the English, 33.

Resumption of Specie Payments, 902.

Returning Boards, 884.

Revenge, the, an American war-vessel, 241.

Revenue, the Federal, its trifling amount under the Articles of Confederation, 276; provided for in the Constitution, 282; raised by duties on imported goods, 301; by a whiskey tax, 308; increase of, 331; decrease during the War of 1812, 354-5; increase after the peace, 410; deposited in the Bank of the United States, 411; increase, 1831-5, 459; more than the needs of government required, 460; removal from the Bank, 477; the panic of 1837 destroys the revenue, 499 (see Sub-Treasury); during the Civil War, 823; influence on the tariff question, 916.

Revere, Paul, his midnight ride, 183.

Revolt of the American troops, 240.


Revolution, the American, its first blood, 184; the results, 186; the war at first against Parliament, 193-4; in New England; 195; independence, 205-7; in the North, 208-24, 229-33, 238-40; aid from France, 225-8; the war on the ocean, 241-3; in the South, 245-62; peace, 263-7.

Revolution, the English, 33.

Revolution, the French, 34, 306.

Rhode Island, part of the Plymouth Company's grant, 39; a charter colony, 42, 67; the banishment of Williams, 55; settlement, 66; history, 68; refused admission to the New England Union, 70; the "swamp fight," 73; the *Gaspée* affair, 174; the College of, 190; military operations in, 215, 231-3, 248, 260; no western claims, 272; not represented in the Federal Convention, 279; refuses to ratify the Constitution, 287; ratifies, 300; the Dorr Rebellion, 530 (see Appendix, IV.).

Rice, in South Carolina, 102; a Southern product, 317.

 The references are to Sections, not to pages.

Richard, the, 546.

Richmond, Va., Burr's trial, 338; capital of the Confederate States, 676; threatened by McDowell, 681; its fortifications, 682, 769; threatened by way of the Peninsula, 713; relieved by the Seven Days' Battles, 718; again threatened by way of Fredericksburgh 722; by way of Chancellorsville, 729; by Butler, 765; cut off from Lynchburgh by Sheridan, 805; captured by Grant, 806 (see Appendix V.).

Rich Mountain, battle of, 678.

Rio Grande (rē'o grahn'dā), the, 546.

Riots, draft, 756; railroad, 896; Chinese, 904; Cincinnati, 914.

Ripley, Gen. James W., an officer in the American Army, 365; at Lundy's Lane, 393.

Rivers and harbors, 441.

Roads, in 1750, 136; in 1787, 291; turnpike roads, 313; roads in Ohio in 1790, 315; roads in 1812, 354; on the great lakes, 380; in 1824, 429; the National Road, 431; the American System, 441; how railroads have influenced them, 449, 603.

Roanoke (rō-a-noke') Island, N. C., the scene of Raleigh's colonies, 23; Newport sent thither, 36; Confederate forts captured, 705.

Robertson, James, a Tennessee pioneer, 160.

Robinson, John, pastor of the Pilgrims in Holland, 51.

Rochambeau (rō-shahn(g)-bō'), Count de, lands with an army at Newport, 258; takes part in the capture of Cornwallis, 261.

Rochester, N. Y., not on the maps in 1812, 354; its growth, 408 (see Appendix V.).

Rome, N. Y., 221.

Rosecrans (roze'krans), Gen. W. S., in command of the Union forces in West Virginia, 678; at Murfreesboro, 697, 734; pursues Bragg, 742; at Chickamauga, 743.

Ross, Gen. Robert, killed at Baltimore, 588.

Rules, Struggle over the, 934.

Rush, Richard, nominated for Vice-President, 445.

Russia, mediates between Great Britain and the United States, 403; sells Alaska to the United States, 831.

Rutgers College, 190.

SABINE (sa-been') **CROSS ROADS**, battle of, 785.

Sabine Pass, Tex., 751.

Sackett's Harbor, N. Y., attacked by the British, 363.

Sacramento (sak-ra-men'to River, discovery of gold on, 580.

Sacs and Foxes, 3.

St. Alban's, Vt., plundered by a party from Canada, 798.

St. Augustine (aw-gus-teen'), Fla., founded, 18; captured by a force from

St. Augustine—Continued.

South Carolina, 105; besieged by Oglethorpe, 110; the oldest town in the United States, 525; captured by the Union forces, 705.

St. Clair's defeat, 309.

St. Genevieve (jen-ē-veev'), Mo., 158.

St. John, J. P., nominated for President 917.

St. Kitt's, W. I., 321.

St. Lawrence, the river, discovered, 12; held by the French, 19-20.

St. Louis (loo'is), Mo., founded, 158; growth, 423; riots, 896 (see Appendix V.)

St. Paul, Minn., 458.

Salem (sā'lem), Mass., settled, 52; witchcraft, 57.

Salt, found at Syracuse, N. Y., 528; in West Virginia, 767.

Saltillo (sahl-teel'yo), Mex., 558.

Salt Lake City, founded by the Mormons, 628.

Samoa, 924.

San Antonio, Mex., 567; Tex., 557.

San Domingo, attempt to annex it, 859, 879.

Sandusky (sān-dus'ki), O., location, 334; Fort Stephenson, 361; Perry's victory, 382.

Sandwich Islands, proposed annexation of, 608, 943.

Sandy Hook, N. J., 214, 229.

San Francisco, Cal., its fine harbor, 552; taken by the American fleet, 553; sudden growth of the city, 589 634; the Pacific Railroad system, 664; cable railroads in, 894 (see Appendix V.).

San Gabriel, battle of, 554.

Sanitary Commission, the, 755.

San Jacinto (ja-sin'tō), battle of, 522.

San Jacinto, the, arrests the *Trent*, 686.

San Juan de Ulloa (sahn Hoo-ahn'dā ool-yo'ah), 563.

San Salvador (sahn sahl-vah-dore'), 7.

Santa Anna, commands the Mexican troops in Texas, 522; at Buena Vista, 558; at Cerro Gordo, 564; flees from the city of Mexico, 570.

Santa Fe (san'ta fē), N. M., founded, 18; taken by the American forces, 554.

Saratoga, Burgoyne's surrender at, 223

Sault Ste. Marie (soo san(g) mah-rē), French settlement, 140.

Savage's Station, battle of, 718.

Savannah, Ga., settled, 108; taken by the British, 245; held by them through the Revolution, 255; evacuated, 265; taken by Sherman, 782; he leaves it on his march northward, 802.

Savannah, the, steams across the Atlantic, 335.

Saybrook, Conn., settlement, 61.

Scarboro, *The Countess of*, taken by Paul Jones's fleet, 243.

Schenectady (sken-ek'ta-dī), N. Y., a frontier settlement, 114; founded, 121; still on the frontier in 1787, 292.

Schools. See Public Schools.

 The references are to Sections, not to pages.

- Schuyler (ski'ler), Gen. Philip, in command of the American forces in Canada, 201; against Burgoyne, 219; succeeded by Gates, 222; the credit due to him goes to Gates, 224.
- Scott, Winfield, his services in 1814, 365; at the battle of Chippewa, 393; wounded at Lundy's Lane, 394; services in Maine, 509; sent to Mexico, 561; biography, 562; takes Vera Cruz, 563; marches to the city of Mexico, 565; takes Mexico, 570; nominated for President, 598; in command of the Union armies, 677; retired, 682.
- Screw propeller, invented, 454; used in the navy, 526.
- Seals, taking of, in Bering Sea, 943.
- Search, the right of, asserted by Great Britain, 342; not expressly given up in 1715, 404; resisted by Great Britain in 1861, 687.
- Secession, the argument for it, 486; threatened in 1850, 587; not probable in 1856, 624; South Carolina secedes in 1860, 656; the secessionists in other States, 657; their arguments for secession, 658; the first secession of 1861, 659; the second, or border State, secession of 1861, 674.
- Sections, the, produced by slavery, 425; their positions on the American System, 442; as to Abolition, 504; as to Texas, 523; as to slave representation, 524; as to the Mexican acquisition, 576; as to California, 587; increasing influence of slavery, 611; their positions as to the Kansas-Nebraska Act, 615; as to Kansas, 618; their final positions, 651-3; as to the Civil War, 824; as to reconstruction, 834.
- Sedition Law, the, 323.
- Seminoles (sem'i-nōlz), the, a Florida tribe, 418.
- Semmes (semz), Capt. Raphael, 792.
- Senate, the, its formation, 280; its legislative powers, 282; its executive powers, 283; increased by the Tenure of Office Act, 849; impeachment of Johnson, 851.
- Senecas (sen'ē-kəz), 3.
- Separatists, a name for the Pilgrims, 49.
- Serapis (se-rā'pis), the, taken by the *Richard*, 243.
- Sergeant (sahr'jent), John, 483.
- Seward (soo'er'd), William H., an anti-slavery leader, 593; wounded in the conspiracy of 1865, 812.
- Sewing-machine, invented, 536; its importance, 934.
- Seven Days' Battles, 718.
- Seven Pines, battle of, 716.
- Sevier (sē-verē'), John, a Tennessee pioneer, 303.
- Seymour (sē' mur), Horatio, nominated for President, 852.
- Shannon, the, takes the *Chesapeake*, 373.
- Sharpsburgh, battle of, 721.
- Shawnees (shaw-nee'z), 3.
- Shays's Rebellion, 277.
- Shenandoah (shen-an-dō'ah) valley, the, held by Johnston, 681; Jackson drives Banks out of it, 717; Lee passes through it, 730; Early passes through it, 768; is beaten by Sheridan, 772; Sheridan passes through it on his way to Grant, 805.
- Sheridan, Gen. Philip H., beats Early, 772; cuts off Richmond from its western supports and joins Grant, 805.
- Sherman, Roger, a member of the Continental Congress, 194; on the committee to draft the Declaration, 207.
- Sherman, Gen. Wm. T., one of Grant's trusted officers, 734; takes Arkansas Post, 736; at the Yazoo River, 737; at Chattanooga, 745; at Dalton, 761; in command of the Western armies, 762; biography, 773; moves toward Atlanta, 774; leaves Hood to Thomas, 778; burns Atlanta, 780; marches through Georgia, 781; takes Savannah, 782; marches northward to Goldsboro, 802-3; seizes Raleigh, and receives Johnston's surrender, 808; results of his march, 820.
- Shiloh, battle of, 694.
- Ship Island, Miss., 685, 707.
- Shreveport, La., 785, 866.
- Sigel (sē'gēl), Gen. Franz, in the Shenandoah valley, 765; defeated, 768.
- Silver, discovered in Nevada, 635, 800; large yield, 861; in Colorado, 869; decline in its value compared with gold, 899; demonetized, 900; re-monetized, 901; Act of July 14, 1890, 936.
- Sioux (soo) wars, 728, 868.
- Sirius, the, steams across the Atlantic, 454.
- Sitting Bull, 868.
- Six Nations, 3, 77.
- Skenesboro, N. Y., 220.
- Slavery, introduced in Virginia and maintained by the English kings, 48; forbidden in Vermont, 69; slavery in New England, 79; in Georgia, 109; in New York, 119; in 1775, 191; an element of weakness in the South in the Revolution, 237; slavery provisions in the Constitution, 285; forbidden in the Northwest Territory, 294; slavery in Kentucky, 302; in Tennessee, 303; effects of the cotton-gin, 317; in the two sections in 1820, 424-5; in Louisiana, 424; in Missouri, 425; in the Territories, 426; effects of slavery on manufactures, 442, 643; in Arkansas, 461; proposal to abolish slavery (see Abolitionists); riots, 505; petition, 506; slavery in Texas, 521; State representation in Congress, 524; the slavery question becomes more pressing, 533; in the Mexican acquisition, 575; positions of the sections, 576; attempt to prohibit, 577; rise of the Free-Soil Party, 578; slavery in California, 585; political questions of 1850, 586; compromised, 589; the Fugitive Slave Law, 591; anti-

☞ The references are to Sections, not to pages.

Slavery - *Continued.*

slavery leaders, 593; influence of slavery on public affairs, 611; how the Democratic Party escaped it for the time, 613; the Kansas-Nebraska Act, 614; the Republican Party, 616; slavery in Kansas, 618-21; election of 1856, 624; effects of slavery on the South, 643, 651; in the Territories, 644; the Dred Scott decision, 646; the effect on the Democratic Party, 648, 654; the John Brown raid, 650; the sections in 1860, 652-3, 658; parties, 654; emancipation, 724; results abroad, 726; the object of the war, 824; abolition by Amendment, 838; after-effects, 839; free labor in the South, 915.

Slave-trade, the foreign, in 1775, 191; in 1787, 280; abolished, 331.

Slougher (slaw'ter), Gov. Henry, 117.

Smith, John, 80.

Smith, Joseph, 507.

Smithsonian Institution, the, 538.

"Sons of Liberty," 168.

Soto, Hernando de, 15.

South Carolina, discovered, 10; part of the London Company's grant, 37; settled, 101; products, 102; districts, 103; early wars, 105-6; has troops at Fort Mifflin, 148; in 1775 and 1880, 187; military operations in the State during the Revolution, 205, 246-52, 255, 265; Western claims, 270; ceded to the United States, 275; nullification, 487-9; secedes, 656; military operations in, 669, 685, 748-9, 784, 802; reconstructed and readmitted, 845; disorders in, 875.

South Dakota, 923.

Spain, aids Columbus, 6; secures his discoveries, 8; further Spanish discoveries, 10; agreement with Portugal, 13; explorations in the interior of North America, 14 15; conquers Mexico, 15; explores the Pacific coast, 16; drives the French from St. Augustine, 19; colonies south of the United States, 30; early wars with, 105, 110; enters the war in 1762, 156; gives up Florida to Great Britain and receives Louisiana from France, 157-8; enters the Revolutionary War against Great Britain, 228; regains Florida, 264; agrees by treaty to the free navigation of the Mississippi, 316; transfers Louisiana to France, 332; the Spanish in Florida aid the British, 400; Spain transfers Florida to the United States, 418; refuses to sell Cuba, 608; joins France against Mexico, 758; the *Virginus* case, 860.

Specie Circular, the, 497.

Specie Payments resumed, 1879, 902.

Spotsylvania Court-house, battle of, 766.

Springfield, Ill., 813.

Springfield, Mass., 277.

Springfield, O., 334.

Stamp Act, the, passed by Parliament, 107; resisted, 109; repealed, 110.

Stamp Act Congress, the, 169.

Stamp duties, 167.

Standish, Miles, the soldier of the Plymouth Colony, 51.

Stanton, E. M., removed by Johnson, 849; biography, 850.

Stark, John, at Bennington, 221.

Star of the West, the, driven back from Fort Sumter, 664.

Star-Spangled Banner, the, 388.

State Department, the, 301.

Staten (stät'n) Island, N. Y., occupied by the British, 208; held by them during the war, 230, 232; threatened by Washington, 259.

States, the, the formation of State governments, 205; whence they derived their authority, 270; boundary disputes, 272-4; send delegates to a Federal Convention, 280; restrictions of their action under the Constitution, 282; new States and Amendments, 285; their ratification of the Constitution, 287; the great States of the Northwest, 294; the electoral system, 298; the Republicans incline to favor the States, 305; slave States, 424; the Western States in 1835, 456; the Eastern States, 457; the States go into internal improvement, 460; the number of States doubled, 462; distinction between State Rights and State Sovereignty, 485; the right of the States to secede, 486; to nullify the laws of the United States, 487, 281; how State representation in Congress was related to slavery, 524; the right of voting in the States, 530; proposed annexation of slave States, 608; the Kansas struggle between free and slave States, 618-21; secession of a part of the States, 656 (see Secession); the work of the State conventions, 660; of the doctrine of State Sovereignty, 662; action of the border States, 674; the Southern State governments overthrown, 836; reconstructed, 845 (see Reconstruction); equal importance of the Federal and the State systems, 928 (see Appendix IV.).

Steamboat, the, Fitch's attempt to produce one, 313; need of a steamboat on Western rivers, 316; in the Louisiana purchase, 332; Fulton's success, 335; put to use on American rivers, 408, 429; builds up Western towns, 456; put to use on the ocean, 335, 454; facilitates migration, 459.

Steam war-vessels, Fulton's attempt, 335; the screw propeller, 454.

• Stephens, Alexander H., leaves the Whig Party, 594; elected Vice-President of the Confederate States, 660; biography, 661; not a secessionist, 662.

Stevenson, Adlai E., Vice-President, 945.

Steuben (stō'ben), Baron von, 215.


Stewart, Capt. Charles, in command of the *Constitution*, 376.

 The references are to Sections, not to pages.

Stone River, battle of, 697.
 Stone, Samuel, a Connecticut pioneer, 54.
 Stonington, Conn., attacked by the British, 385.
 Stony Point, capture of, 238.
 Story, William, a distinguished American lawyer, 467.
 Strikes, the Railroad, 896, 944.
 Stuart, Gen. J. E. B., a Confederate cavalry officer, 717.
 Stuyvesant (sti've-sant), Peter, the last Dutch governor of New Netherlands, 113.
 Suffrage (or vote), the right of, 873.
 Sugar, in Louisiana, 406.
 Sullivan, Gen. John, in command of the attack on Newport, 231; scourges the hostile Indians, 233.
 Sumner, Charles, an antislavery leader, 593; assault upon him, 622.
 Sumter, Gen. Thomas, a Revolutionary leader in South Carolina, 249, 251.
 Supreme Court, the, its duties, 284, 645; decides the question of slavery in the Territories, 646; its decision rejected, 647.
 Susquehannah (sus-kwē-han'na) River, the, 93.
 Swamp Fight, the, 73.
 Swanzey (swon'zi), Mass., attacked by the Indians, 72.
 Syracuse, N. Y., 354 (see Appendix V.).

TAMPA BAY, Fla., 15.
 Taney (taw'nē), Roger B., Chief Justice, 493.
 Tariff (see Revenue, Free Trade, Protection), the province of the States under the Confederation, 276; transferred to Congress by the Constitution, 282; the first Tariff, 301; the Protective Tariff of 1824, 432; increased in 1828, 441; the Compromise Tariff of 1833, 490; the semi-protective Tariff of 1842, 517; the Revenue Tariff of 1846, 540; the Protective Tariff of 1861, 754; receipts from it, 823; still maintained, 832, 916.
 Tariff Commission, the, 916.
 Tarleton, Major, a British cavalry officer, 248; beaten at the Cowpens, 252; plunders Virginia, 256.
 Tarrytown, N. Y., 239.
 Taxes, in Great Britain, 164; in the colonies, 165; commercial taxation, 172 (see Parliament); under the Confederation, 276; under the Constitution, 282; during the Civil War, 754; in the reconstructed States, 873.
 Taylor, Gen. Richard, surrenders, 801.
 Taylor, Zachary, beats the Seminoles at Lake Okechobee, 471; ordered to the Rio Grande, 546; beats the Mexicans and drives them across the Rio Grande, 548-9; follows to Monterey, 557; deprived of part of his army, 558; wins the battle of Buena Vista, 559; returns to the United States, 560; elected President, 579; biography, 583; death, 592.

Tea Tax, the, 176.
 Tecumseh (tē-kum'sē), defeated at Tippecanoe, 350; killed at the Thames, 362.
 Telegraph, the, its invention, 527; increase, 937.
 Telephone, its invention, 893.
 Tennessee, the first settlers from North Carolina, 98, 160, 236; North Carolina's claim ceded to the United States, 275; admitted as a State, 300; history, 303; secedes, 674; occupied by the Union forces, 693; military operations in, 690-5, 697, 700, 742-7, 779; reconstructed, 841 (see Appendix IV.).
 Tennessee River, the, reached by De Soto, 15; military operations on, 693, 700.
 Tennessee, the, taken by Farragut, 789.
 Tenure of Office Act, the, its passage and purpose, 849; repealed, 920.
 Territories, the, first cessions by the States to the United States, 275; their government under the Constitution, 285; the Ordinance of 1787, 294; acquisition of Louisiana, 332; of Florida, 418; slavery in the Territories, 424-6 (see Compromises, Slavery); the Mexican acquisition, 552, 556, 572-3; polygamy in the Territories, 628, 919; acquisition of Alaska, and summary, 831.
 Texas, supposed at first to be a part of the Louisiana purchase, 332; the claim of the United States exchanged for Florida, 418; becomes a part of Mexico, but is settled by American citizens, 521; secedes from Mexico, 522; its annexation desired by the South, 523; reasons for the desire, 524; annexation, 533; admission and history, 541; boundary, 546; claim to New Mexico, 586; compromised, 589; secedes, 659; military operations in, 751, 809; refuses the first terms of reconstruction, 845; reconstructed and readmitted, 871 (see Appendix IV.).
 Thames (temz), battle of the river, 362.
 Third term, refused by Washington, 311.
 Thomas, Gen. George H., at Mill Spring, 690; at Chickamauga, 743; sent back to Tennessee, 778; defeats Hood, 780.
 Thornton, Capt., capture of, 547.
 Thurman, A. G., nominated for Vice-President, 931.
 Ticonderoga (ti-kon-dē-rō'ga), held by Montcalm, 151; taken by the English, 153; by E. Allen, 200; by Burgoyne, 219.
 Tilden, Samuel J., nominated for President, 882; his election disputed, 883; the decision, 887.
 Tippecanoe (tip-pē-ka noo'), battle of, 350.
 Titusville, Pa., 635.
 Tobacco, 23, 82.
 Tohopeka, tō-hō-pe'ka), battle of, 398.
 Toledo, O., a French post, 142; Wayne's victory, 309; growth, 334 (see Appendix V.).

 The references are to Sections, not to pages.

Tompkins, Daniel D., elected Vice-President, 414; re-elected, 417.

Tories, meaning of the term, 173, 491; in the Middle States, 298; in the South, 247; after the war, 267.

Toronto (tō-rōu'tō), Can., 363.

Torpedoes, their first use, 385; against the Albemarle, 786; in Mobile Bay, 789.

Transportation Bill, the, 178.

Travel, difficulties of. See Roads.

Treasury Department, the, 301.

Treaties, the treaty power, 282; Jay's treaty, 310; treaty of Ghent, 403; extradition treaties, 518; treaty of Washington, 855; the San Domingo treaty, 859; the Chinese treaty, 904.

Trent, the, arrested by the *San Jacinto*, 687.

Trenton, N. J., Washington's retreat through, 211; breaks camp at, 213.

Trevithick (trev'ith-ik), Richard, his locomotive, 436.

Tripolitan War, the, 340, 412.

Trusts, 929.

Truxton, Capt. Thomas, in command of the *Constellation*, 8...

Tryon, Gov. William, 98.

Tunis, (tu'nīs), 340, 412.

Tuscaroras (tus-ka-rō'raz), an Indian tribe, 3; driven north to New York, 99.


Tyler, John, elected Vice-President, 511; biography, 513; becomes President, 514; vetoes the Bank Acts, 515; quarrels with the Whigs, 516; makes an unsuccessful treaty of annexation with Texas, 523; hurries the annexation, 533.

UNDERGROUND RAILROAD, the, 894.

United States, location, 1; first visited by whites, 11; English colonization, 23, 25-30, 36 foll.; the New England Union, 70; general union of the colonies against the French, 148, 162; against taxation by Parliament, 169, 174, 180; against the use of force by Parliament, 194; against the king, and for entire independence, 205-6 (see Revolution, the American); independence acknowledged, 264; boundaries in 1783, 264; the Articles of Confederation, 271; their failure, 276; the Constitution formed, 280; ratified, 287; the United States in 1787, 289-94; the Constitution inaugurated, 297; first legislation, 300-1; parties, 304-5 (see Republican Party of 1792, Federal Party); the United States in 1795, 313-17; hostilities against France, 321; the United States in 1800, 325; the first great change of party government, 329-30; acquisition of Louisiana, 332; the steamboat, 335; the Tripolitan War, 340; difficulties with Great Britain, 341-50; war, 351; the United States in 1810, 353-5; failures in the North, 357-65; successes on the ocean, 366-78; on the lakes, 379-83; dis-

United States—Continued.

asters on the Atlantic coast, 384-9; dissatisfaction at home, 390-1; successes in the North, 392-5; in the Southwest, 396-402; peace, 403-4; the United States in 1815, 408-14; acquisition of Florida, 418; the Missouri dispute, 424-6; the Monroe Doctrine, 427; the United States in 1824, 428-31; Free Trade and Protection, 432; invention of the railroad, 436 (see Railroad); the American System, 441; the United States in 1835, 456-73; political struggles under Jackson, 474-93; financial difficulties under Van Buren, 496-501; antislavery agitation, 504-6; the Mormons, 507; the log-cabin campaign of 1840, 511; the Oregon question, 520; rise of the Texas question, 521-4; the telegraph, 527; annexation of Texas, 532-3; the United States in 1845, 536-9; the Mexican War, 545-51; seizure of the Pacific Coast, 552-6; operations in Northern Mexico, 557-60; in Central Mexico, 561-71; peace, 572-3; summary of territorial acquisitions, 574; sectional strife over the Mexican acquisition, 575-91; gold discovered in California, 580-1; party changes, 593-4; the United States in 1853, 601-3; naturalization questions, 604-5; Japan, 606; the Filibusters, 608-10; slavery and politics, 611-13; the Kansas-Nebraska Act, 614-24; rise of the Republican Party, 316; the Kansas struggle, 618-21; the United States in 1860, 632-40; how slavery had pushed the sections apart, 642-53; the Dred Scott case, 645-8; parties in 1860, 654-5; secession, 656-9; the Confederate States, 660; the second great change in party government, 668; surrender of Fort Sumter, 669; Civil War, 670-5; the opposing lines in 1861, 676-7; military events of 1861, 678-86; the Trent affair, 687; military events of 1862 in the West, 689-700; on the coast, 701-10; in the East, 712-23; Emancipation, 724; financial affairs, 725; privateering, 727; military events of 1863 in the East, 729-33; in the West, 734-47; on the coast, 748-51; the United States in 1863, 753-6; intervention of France in Mexico, 758; military events of 1864 in the East, 764-72; in the West, 774-82; on the coast, 783-9; on the ocean, 791-4; the United States in 1864, 795-800; conclusion of the war, 801-10; assassination of the President, 811-14; military summary of the war, 815-24; acquisition of Alaska, 831; Reconstruction, 834-47 (see Reconstruction); impeachment of President Johnson, 848-52; the treaty of Washington, 854-8; the United States in 1876, 861-70; the disputed election of 1876, 882-8; the United States in 1878, 891-8; the silver question, 899-901; resumption, 902; refunding, 903; the assassination of President Garfield, 909; the United States in 1884, 911-17; in 1888,

 The references are to Sections, not to pages.

United States—*Continued.*

931; the Panama Canal, 924; the States and the Nation, 927-30; the United States in 1885, 931-43; causes of growth, 964-70; the future, 971-3. (For the admission of the States, see Appendix III; for the list of Presidents, see Table of Contents.)

United States, the, captures the *Macedonian*, 369.

Universal Suffrage, 873.

Uplandt (oop' lahnt), Pa., 127.

Utah (yoo'tah), organized as a Territory, 589 (see Mormons).

VALLEY FORGE, 218.

Valparaiso (vahl-pah-ri'so), 374, 943.

Vane, Sir Henry, 54.

Van Buren, Martin, elected Vice President, 483; President, 492; biography, 495; defeated in 1840, 511; in 1848, 579; not nominated in 1844, 532.

Van Twiller, Wouter, governor of New Netherlands, 113.

Vera Cruz (vā'rah kroos), Mex., taken by Scott, 561, 563.

Vermont, part of the Plymouth Company's grant, 39; early history, 69; slavery forbidden, 191; Vermonters seize Ticonderoga, 200; repulse a British expedition at Bennington, 221; not yet recognized by Congress, 221; admitted, 300 (see Appendix IV.).

Verrazzani (veR-Rat-sah'nē), 12.

Vespucci (ves-poot'chē), Amerigo, gives a name to America, 9.

Veto Power, the, belongs to the President, 282, 478; how President Johnson lost the advantage of it, 840, 848; Cleveland's use of it, 921.

Vicksburgh, Miss., Grant's first movement toward it, 698; its fortifications, 710; besieged by Grant, 735-8; surrenders 738.

Vice-President, the, his duties, 283; mode of election, 298.

Vincennes (vin-senz'), Ind., a French post, 142; taken by Clarke, 236.

Virginia, probably visited by Cabot, 11; named by Raleigh, 23; difference between Raleigh's "Virginia" and the modern State, 27; part of the London Company's grant, 37; a royal colony, 44; slavery, 48; first settlement, 80; John Smith, 81; western claims, 83, 273; the "Old Dominion," 84; Bacon's Rebellion, 86; life in Virginia, 87-8, 112; organizes the first Ohio Company, 144; endeavors to drive away the French, 145-7; calls for the Stamp Act Congress, 169; Virginia in 1775 and 1880, 187; calls for Independence, 206; conquers the Northwest Territory, 236; military operations in the State, 253, 256, 259-62; cedes the western claims to the United States, 275; calls for the Federal Convention, 279; ratifies the Constitution, 287; negro insurrection of 1831, 470; John Brown's

Virginia—*Continued.*

raid, 650; secedes, 674; one of the Confederate States, 676 (see West Virginia); military operations in the State begin, 676 (see United States); the State motto, 812; rejects the first terms of reconstruction, 845; electoral votes not counted in 1868, 852; reconstructed and readmitted, 871 (see Appendix IV.)

Virginia City, Nev., discovery of silver, 635, 800.

Virginia, the. See *Merrimac*.

Virginian, the, seized by a Spanish war-vessel, 860.

Vote, the right to, 873.

Vulcanized rubber, invented, 503.

Wachusett (wa-choo'set), the, captures the *Florida*, 793.

Walker, Thomas, 302.

Walker, William, 609.

Wampanoags (wom-pa-nō'agz), an Indian tribe, 72.

War Department, the, 301.

Warner, Seth, at Bennington, 221.


War Power, the, the power to declare and make war, 282; exercised against Great Britain, 351; against Mexico, 550; the Civil War, 673.

Warren, Gen. Joseph, killed at Bunker Hill, 197.

Warwick (wor'rik), R. I., settlement, 66.

Washington, D. C., named as the national capital, 301; capital removed thither, 325; burned by the British, 387; its safety secured in 1861, 671; in the line of war, 677; its fortifications, 682; threatened by the *Merrimac*, 702; necessity of protecting it, 713, 715; threatened by Jackson, 717; by Jackson and Lee, 719; by Early, 768; general review at the capital, 810 (see Appendix V.).

Washington, George, sent to Presque Isle, 145; against Fort Du Quesne, 146; surrenders Fort Necessity, 147; one of Braddock's aides, 149; member of the Continental Congress, 194; appointed to command the American armies, 194; takes command at Cambridge, 198; drives the British from Boston, 199; moves his army to New York, 209; is defeated on Long Island, 210; retreats beyond White Plains, 210; through New Jersey, 211; Congress makes him dictator and retires, 212; wins the battles of Trenton and Princeton, 213; holds northern New Jersey, 214; moves his army to Philadelphia, 216; defeated at Chad's Ford and Germantown, 217; his winter quarters at Valley Forge, 218; scheme to take the command away from him, 224; fights the drawn battle of Monmouth, 229; holds the British in New York City, 230; his difficulties, 235, 257; marches to Yorktown, 258-9; besieges and captures it, 261-2; favors the Fed-

 The references are to Sections, not to pages.

Washington, George—*Continued.*

eral Convention, 279; is made its President, 280; his influence over the people, 286; is unanimously elected President, 288; biography, 296; inaugurated, 297; unanimously re-elected, 305; requests the recall of Genet, 307; suppresses the Whiskey Insurrection, 308; issues his Farewell Address, 311; recalled to the head of the army, 321; death, 326.

Washingtonian Societies, 468.

Washington (State), 928.

Washington, treaty of, 855.

Wasp, the, takes the *Frolic*, 369; the *Reindeer* and *Iron*, 375.

Watauga (waw-taw'ga) River, the, 303.

Waxhaws, battle of the, 248.

Wayne (wane), Gen. Anthony, at Stony Point, 238; defeats the Indians, 309.

Weather Bureau, the, 912.

Weaver, Gen. J. B., nominated for President, 945.

Webster, Daniel, 467; a leader of the Whig Party, 480; biography, 481; voted for President, 492; his share in the extradition treaty, 516; death, 593.

Webster, Noah, 465.

Weehawken (wē-haw'ken), the, takes the *Atlanta*, 750.

West, Benjamin, a painter, 190.

Western Reserve, the, 275.

West Indies, the, discovered by Columbus, 7; French possessions in, 231, 267.

West Virginia, rejects secession, 674; the Confederates driven out of it, 678; admission and history, 757 (see Appendix IV.).

Wethersfield, Conn., settlement, 62.

Wheeler, Wm. A., nominated for Vice-President, 882; his election disputed, 883; decision, 887.

Whig Party, the supporters of the American System, 441; at first take the name of National Republicans, 444; defeated in 1828, 445; support the Bank, 480; defeated in 1832, 483; take the name of Whigs, 491; defeated in 1836, 492; successful in 1840, 511; demand another Bank, 515; quarrel with the President, 516; defeated in 1844, 532; oppose the Mexican War, 551; successful in 1848, 579; the party goes to pieces, 594; completely defeated in 1852, 598; disappears, 612; succeeded by the Republican Party, 616.

Whigs, in the Revolution, 173; in the South, 247; in England, 491.

Whipping, punishment by, 469.

Whiskey Insurrection, the, 308.

Whiskey Ring, the, 879.

Whitefield (whit'feeld), George, a revivalist, 136.

White, Hugh L., nominated for President, 492.

White, John, leader of one of Raleigh's colonies, 23.

White Plains, battle of, 210.

Whitney, Eli, his cotton-gin, 317.

Whittier, John G., his literary work, 466.

Wildcat banks, 496-7.

Wilderness Campaign, the, 766-7.

Wilkinson, Gen. James, 364.

William and Mary College, 88.

William (of Orange), King, 33.

Williamsburgh, battle of, 715.

Williamsburgh, Va., 86.

Williams, Roger, banished from Massachusetts Bay, 55; settles in Rhode Island, 66.

Wilmington, Del., 29.

Wilmington, N. C., held by Cornwallis, 251, 256; recovered by the Americans, 262; a port for blockade-runners, 705,

783; taken by the Union forces, 787.

Wilmot Proviso, the, 577.

Wilson, Henry, Vice-President, 881

Wilson's Creek, battle of, 684.

Winchester, battle of, 772.

Winchester, Gen. James, 360.

Windsor (win'zur), Conn., settlement, 62.

Winslow, Capt. John A., in command of the *Keatsarge*, 792.

Winthrop, John, of Massachusetts, 53.

Winthrop, Jr., John, of Connecticut, 65.

Wiscousin, claimed by Virginia, 273; a wilderness in 1828, 437; admission and history, 543; forest fires, 867 (see Appendix IV.).

Witchcraft, the Salem, 57.

Withlacoochee (with-la-coo'chee), River, the, 471.

Wolfe, Gen. James, at Quebec, 153-4.

Wool, Gen. John E., 557.

Worcester (woo'ster), Mass., 277 (see Appendix V.).

World's Fair at Chicago, 928.

Wyoming (wi-o'ming), Pa., plundered by Tories and Indians, 233; claimed by Connecticut, 275.

Wyoming, admitted to the Union, 940.

YALE COLLEGE, founded, 79.

Yazoo River, the, 737.

Yellow-fever, the, 897.

Yeo, Sir James L., in command of the British fleet on Lake Ontario, 381.

York, Can., 363, 387.

York, Pa., 218.

York River, the, 256, 713.

Yorktown, Va., seized and fortified by Cornwallis, 256; besieged by Washington and Rochambeau, 261; surrendered, 262; taken by the Union forces, 715; anniversary of Cornwallis's surrender, 911.

ZANESVILLE, O., 334.

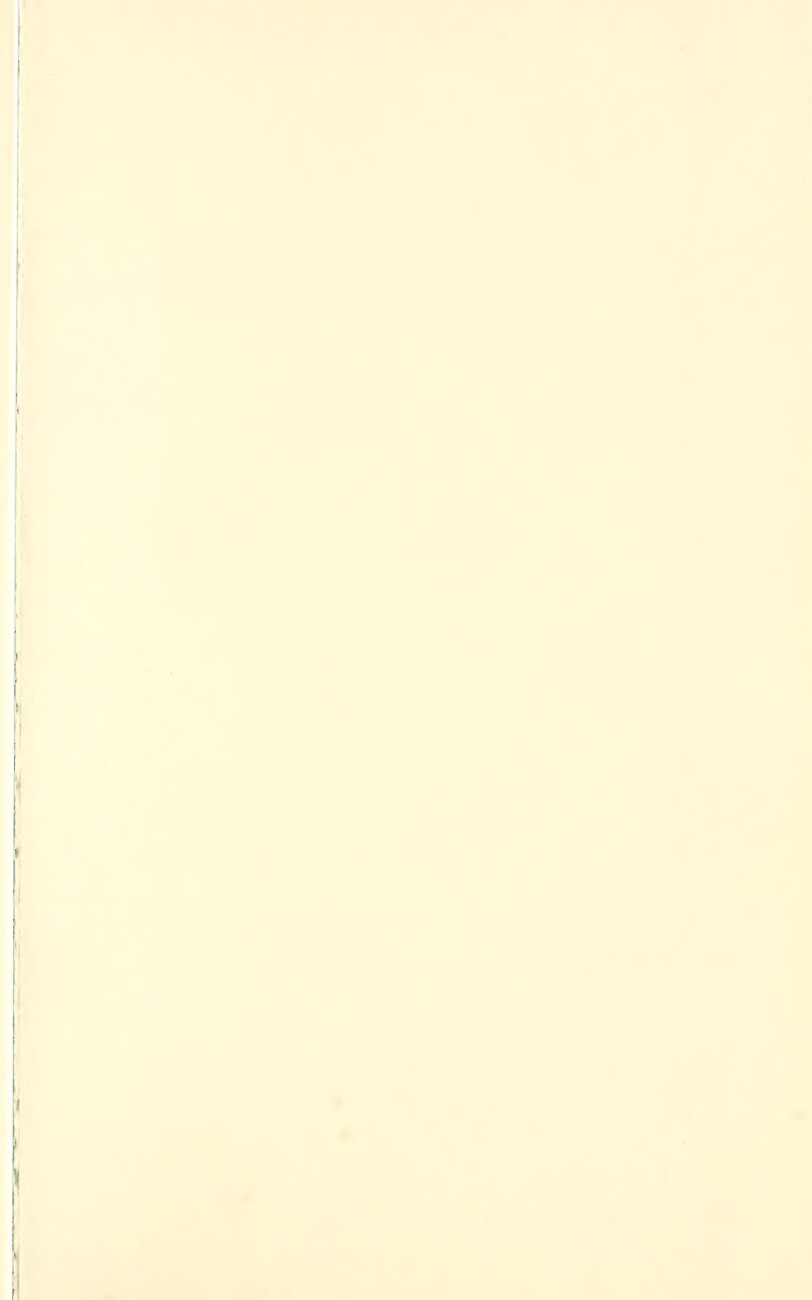
Zollicoffer (zol'li kof fer), Gen. Felix, killed at Mill Spring, 690.

H 291 79













SEPT 79



N. MANCHESTER,
INDIANA 46962

LIBRARY OF CONGRESS



0 011 447 247 5